STUDIES ON IMMUNISATION

WRIGHT

LIBRARIES
UNIVERSITY OF MAINE
AT ORONO

RAYMOND H. FOGLER LIBRARY
ORONO

Mortimer Warren
1909-

STUDIES ON IMMUNISATION

Works by the same Author.

A SHORT TREATISE ON ANTI-TYPHOID INOCULATION.
1904. Constable, London. 3/6 net.

PRINCIPLES OF MICROSCOPY, *being a Handbook to the Microscope.*
1906. Constable, London. 21/– net.

STUDIES ON IMMUNISATION

AND THEIR APPLICATION TO THE

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

By

SIR A. E. WRIGHT, M.D., F.R.S.,

DIRECTOR OF THE DEPARTMENT FOR THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION, ST. MARY'S HOSPITAL, LONDON, W.; LATE PROFESSOR OF PATHOLOGY, ARMY MEDICAL SCHOOL, NETLEY.

The Physician of the Future will be an Immunisator

LONDON

ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE & CO. LTD

1909

BUTLER & TANNER,
THE SELWOOD PRINTING WORKS,
FROME, AND LONDON.

Dedication.

TO

ÉLIE METCHNIKOFF AND PAUL EHRLICH

THIS ACCOUNT OF AN ENDEAVOUR TO WIN
FROM THE INTELLECTUAL SEED SOWN BY THEM
A HARVEST FOR MEDICINE
IS DEDICATED,
AS A TRIBUTE OF FRIENDSHIP AND ADMIRATION,
BY
THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE

I HAVE brought together in this volume the series of studies on the protective elements of the blood, on vaccine-therapy, and on therapeutic immunisation taken generally which I have published during the past dozen years.

The three final papers have been revised. The rest are reprinted here without change, except only in the respect that the detailed description of the technique, which I am reserving for separate treatment, has been omitted.

In Part I, I have placed those papers which deal primarily with the protective elements of the blood, and less directly with the problem of immunisation. These are arranged in three sub-sections entitled respectively *agglutinins*, *bactericidins*, and *opsonins*.

In Part II will be found, arranged in the order of publication, the papers which deal with the real subject-matter of the book, i.e. with the problem of fighting bacterial infection by those defensive agencies which the organism itself employs when it contends with microbic invasion.

The papers in this section of the book fall naturally under three periods.

In the papers of the *first* period the conception of vaccine-therapy originates and takes shape.

Just as the antirabies inoculations of Pasteur—inoculations which are undertaken after the implantation of the rabies virus into the body —are affiliated to his earlier prophylactic inoculations, so also here *phylactic* inoculation, if I may term it so, came to birth from *prophylactic* inoculation.

When once it had become clear in the course of an investigation into the effect of anti-typhoid inoculation upon the blood, that it would be practicable to control the "negative phase" and to confer upon a patient the advantages of immunisation without risk or appreciable delay, the thought lay very near that it might prove possible to elicit, even after microbes had made good their entry into the body, an immunising response which would be therapeutically valuable.

In the papers of the *second* period further points emerge.

These emerge in connexion with research undertaken to account for the failure of vaccine-therapy in individual instances, and to account for the irregularities of the opsonic readings obtained in certain types of infections.

It is brought out in these papers that the antibacterial agencies, even

when present in the circulating blood, may fail to come into effective application upon the microbes in the focus of infection.

The significance of this fact is already emphasized in Part I, in a paper dealing with the distribution of agglutinins in the infected organism.

It is further brought out that instead of the immunisator having the field left free for his operations, he has, in certain classes of cases, to reckon with spontaneous auto-inoculations which seriously complicate his task.

Upon the account of these new developments follows naturally a discussion of the means of dealing with these new difficulties. There follows upon this, in view of the progressive encroachment of vaccine-therapy upon spheres hitherto assigned to other methods of treating bacterial infections, inquiry into the justification for these methods and in particular into the justification for the methods of serum therapy, surgical extirpation, and antiseptic applications.

The papers of the *third* period express the views which I hold to-day. There are three of these papers.

In the *first* I have attempted an exhaustive enumeration and a critical survey of the current methods of combating bacterial disease. Following upon this, I have endeavoured to give a reasoned exposition of the main principles of therapeutic immunisation, assigning in the proposed therapeutic programme to the inoculation of vaccines, and to the determination of protective agencies to the seat of infection, to each its rôle. I then endeavour to show that (with hardly an exception) whatever in either time-honoured or new methods of treating bacterial diseases possesses value, may quite well derive that value from the fact that it carries out some portion of the programme of therapeutic immunisation. I complete the paper by pointing out how the achievements of vaccine-therapy ought to be judged, and what bacteriological knowledge and labour is required for the proper conduct of this method.

In the *second* of this series of papers, so far as has been practicable, each new contention made in the foregoing expository paper is substantiated by detailed evidence.

And in the *last* paper, after a critical review of the position taken up by those physicians who are confident that they need in immunisation no guide except such as is furnished by the clinical symptoms, I pass to consider the rationale and the practical carrying out of all that department of therapeutic immunisation which concerns the conveyance of the antibacterial agencies of the blood into the focus of infection.

It has formed no part of my design in these three final papers either to give a detailed account of achievements of vaccine-therapy in the different bacterial infections, or to supply a manual for treatment.

I have been concerned only with the establishment of a therapeutic principle.

And inasmuch as the success of that principle both in the case of staphylococcus and tubercle infections is abundantly illustrated in my earlier papers, and inasmuch as successes quite similar to those just re-

ferred to are achieved every day in connexion with innumerable other infections, I submit that the principle of therapeutic immunisation, like the principle of prophylactic inoculation, is a principle of general application.

I go even further; I submit that the principle of *phylactic* inoculation—that is to say, the principle of building up the resisting power of the system against any microbe which may have entered the body—will ultimately hold its own even against the principle of warding off infection from the susceptible patient.

It is to me conceivable that curative medicine may give us even more effectual aid against bacterial diseases than has either hygiene and aseptic surgery.

Passing from the subject matter of the book to the method in which that subject matter is presented, I am conscious that something in the nature of an apology or explanation is required, for the fact that the exposition is in the form of a succession of separate papers.

As compared with an exposition in which every point is set out *ab initio* in an orderly manner, and is placed at once in the proper perspective, a collection of papers such as is here offered lays itself open to criticism on the score of frequent repetitions and of the fact that the earlier presentations of the theme are subject to correction by the later expositions.

I would urge that the method which is here adopted may none the less have compensating advantages.

We may take it that no one ever really grasps a new body of facts by following any one exposition—even the most skilful exposition. In fact, the more skilful, i.e. the more fluent and unimpeded, the exposition, the less deeply do the new facts penetrate into the mind, and the less permanent is the impression. This is so because the reader is shown only one aspect of the facts, and because these are shown to him, not from the point of outlook which he himself would have selected, but from some unfamiliar outlook to which, in consideration of the exigencies of the exposition, he has suffered himself at the outset to be transported.

In every advance to new knowledge, it is above all essential that the old experience should be linked up with the new. We ought to start from what is familiar to us, ought to choose our own paths of approach, ought ever and again to retrace our steps to make sure of our bearings, and finally, on arriving upon the new ground, we ought to find at hand an efficient guide.

That this and no other is the royal road to knowledge will be borne in upon us if we reflect that all our effective knowledge—except, of course, such as we may have elaborated for ourselves—is knowledge which has come to us by personal converse, by question and answer, and by demonstration; and the same will come home to us if we recall how urgent is the impulse which impels us, when an author or lecturer

has broken new ground, to seek from him an answer to this and to that, so that we may link up at these points our experience with his.

Now in the case like the present, where an unfamiliar doctrine and an unfamiliar body of facts is set forth, some of the difficulties which stand in the way of its effective apprehension may, if I mistake not, be removed by supplying to the reader, in place of a single consecutive exposition, a series of expositions such as are here furnished. That, at any rate, has been my thought.

There remains the difficulty that no collection of separate papers, such as is here presented, can possess such an organic unity in its structural design as would enable the reader who is referring to the book to place his finger upon the place where the particular point he is in search of might properly be found.

With a view to remedy this defect I have elaborated the index, making it, I would hope, something in the nature of an orderly synopsis.

Incidentally, I have been able to turn the index to account also in other ways.

I have, by a certain exercise of selection in the matter of the entries, found it possible to give prominence in the index to certain points which, by reason of the brevity with which they are treated in the text, might quite well fail to make good their claim to the thoughtful consideration of the reader.

I have also found in the index an agency through which replies might be furnished to certain of my critics. By making use of the index as a finger-post, I have pointed these critics in each case to an impersonal reply inserted in the text. It is a method of rejoinder which I would venture, with all submission, to recommend.

It remains to me, in bringing my task to a close, to express to my friend Dr. William Bulloch and to his pupils, Drs. Atkin, Western and Keith, my grateful acknowledgments for their permission to reprint their papers among my own. To my friends, Col. C. Birt, R.A.M.C., Major George Lamb, I.M.S., Major F. Smith, R.A.M.C., Major F. N. Windsor, I.M.S., and Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N., who have worked with me in the past, and to Capt. Stewart R. Douglas, I.M.S, (retired), Dr. J. Freeman, Dr. J. H. Wells, and Dr. Alexander Fleming, who are working with me now, I desire to express similar acknowledgments with respect to our joint work.

I have also to thank the Proprietors of the *Lancet*, *British Medical Journal*, *Clinical Journal*, and *Practitioner*, and the Council of the *Royal Society* for permission to reprint papers originally published in their Journals.

I have further a debt of special obligation to discharge to my friend Lord Justice Fletcher Moulton for continuous help both in the form of criticism and suggestion in the preparation of this book.

My grateful thanks are also due to Mr. A. Bazire for assistance in the preparation of the index.

Contents

PART I

ON THE ANTIBACTERIAL ELEMENTS OF THE BLOOD FLUIDS

AGGLUTININS

PAGE

On the Application of the Serum Test to the Differential Diagnosis of Typhoid and Malta Fever, and on the Application of the Method of Serum Diagnosis to the Elucidation of certain Problems in connexion with the Duration of Immunity and the Geographical Distribution of Disease, by Author and Surgeon-Captain F. Smith, A.M.S. 3

Reprinted from the *Lancet*, March 6, 1897.

A Note on the Occurrence of Malta Fever in India, by Author and Surgeon-Captain F. Smith, A.M.S. 10

Reprinted from the *British Medical Journal*, April 10, 1897.

Mediterranean or Malta Fever, with Special Reference to the Specific Agglutinating Substances which make their Appearance in the Blood in the course of that Disease, by Major C. Birt, R.A.M.C., and Captain G. Lamb, M.B., I.M.S. 12

Reprinted from the *Lancet*, September 9, 1899.

Observations bearing on the Question of the Influence which is exerted by the Agglutinins in the Infected Organism by Author and Captain George Lamb, M.B., I.M.S. 36

Reprinted from the *Lancet*, December 23, 1899.

BACTERICIDINS

On the Bactericidal Effect exerted by Human Blood on certain Species of Pathogenetic Micro-organisms, and on the Anti-bactericidal Effects obtained by the Addition to the Blood in vitro of Dead Cultures of Micro-organisms in Question, by Author and Captain F. N. Windsor, I.M.S. 45

Reprinted from the *Journal of Hygiene*, vol. ii, No. 4, October, 1902.

On the Comparative Bactericidal Effect of Human Blood drawn off and tested under Aerobic and Anaerobic Conditions . . 73

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxi, 1902.

OPSONINS

PAGE

An Experimental Investigation of the Rôle of the Blood Fluids in connexion with Phagocytosis, by Author and Stewart R. Douglas . 75

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxii, 1903.

Further Observations on the Rôle of the Blood Fluids in Connexion with Phagocytosis, by Author and Stewart R. Douglas . . . 88

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiii, 1904.

On the Action exerted upon the Staphylococcus Pyogenes by Human Blood Fluids, and on the Elaboration of Protective Elements in the Human Organism in Response to Inoculations of a Staphylococcus Vaccine, by Author and Stewart R. Douglas 100

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1904.

On the Action exerted upon the Tubercle Bacillus by Human Blood Fluids, and on the Elaboration of Protective Elements in the Human Organism in Response to Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine, by Author and Stewart R. Douglas 112

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1904.

Experiments on the Nature of the Opsonic Action of the Blood Serum, by William Bulloch, M.D., and E. E. Atkin, B.A. 132

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1905.

Inquiry into the Opsonic Content of the Blood Serum in Healthy Individuals and in Patients affected by Lupus, by W. Bulloch, M.D. 142

Reprinted from the *Transactions of the Pathological Society of London*, vol. lvi, Part III, 1905.

On the Possibility of Determining the Presence or Absence of Tubercular Infection by the Examination of a Patient's Blood and Tissue Fluids, by Author and Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N. . . 150

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

On Spontaneous Phagocytosis, and on the Phagocytosis which is obtained with the Heated Serum of Patients who have responded to Tubercular Infection, or, as the case may be, to the Inoculation of a Tubercle Vaccine, by Author and Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N. 167

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

The Specificity of the Opsonic Substances in the Blood Serum, by William Bulloch, M.D., and G. T. Western, M.A., M.B. . . . 180

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

On the Relationship between Hæmolysis and the Phagocytosis of Red Blood Cells, by R. D. Keith, M.A., M.D. 186

Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

PART II

ON THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION

PAGE

NOTES ON THE TREATMENT OF FURUNCULOSIS, SYCOSIS, AND ACNE BY THE INOCULATION OF A STAPHYLOCOCCUS VACCINE; AND GENERALLY ON THE TREATMENT OF LOCALISED BACTERIAL INVASIONS BY THERAPEUTIC INOCULATION OF THE CORRESPONDING BACTERIAL VACCINES . . . 199

Reprinted from the *Lancet*, March 29, 1902.

A LECTURE ON THERAPEUTIC INOCULATIONS OF BACTERIAL VACCINES AND THEIR PRACTICAL EXPLOITATION IN THE TREATMENT OF DISEASE . 227

Reprinted from the *British Medical Journal*, May 9, 1903.

ON THE TREATMENT OF ACNE, FURUNCULOSIS, AND SYCOSIS BY THERAPEUTIC INOCULATIONS OF STAPHYLOCOCCUS VACCINE 246

Reprinted from the *British Medical Journal*, May 7, 1904.

THE INOCULATION TREATMENT OF TUBERCULOSIS 256

Reprinted from the *Clinical Journal*, November 9, 1904.

ON THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THE THERAPEUTIC INOCULATION OF BACTERIAL VACCINES AS APPLIED TO THE TREATMENT OF TUBERCULOUS INFECTION 269

Reprinted from the *Transactions of the Medico-Chirurgical Society*, vol. lxxxix, 1906.

A CRITICISM OF THE FOUNDATIONS OF SERUM-THERAPY 300

Reprinted from the *Clinical Journal*, May 16, 1906.

SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPLES OF VACCINE-THERAPY AND THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION GENERALLY 317

Originally published in the *Lancet*, August 17 and 24, 1907, and revised and brought up to date, October 31, 1908.

STUDIES IN CONNEXION WITH THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION by Author, S. R. Douglas, M.R.C.S. (Eng.), Captain I. M. S. (retired), J. Freeman, M.D., Radcliffe Travelling Fellow (Oxon.), J. H. Wells, M.B., B.S. (Lond.), Alexander Fleming, M.B., B.S. (Lond.), and other Members of the Staff of the Department for Therapeutic Immunisation, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W. 377

Reprinted from the *Lancet*, November 2, 1907.

ON SOME POINTS IN CONNEXION WITH VACCINE-THERAPY AND THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION GENERALLY 434

Reprinted from the *Practitioner*. Special number on "The Opsonic Method and Vaccine-therapy," May, 1908.

LIST OF SCIENTIFIC PAPERS PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHOR . . . 467

INDEX 473

Plate

WHITE BLOOD CORPUSCLES (FIGS. 1–6) . . . . . *to face p.* 96

Part I

ON
THE ANTI-BACTERIAL ELEMENTS
OF
THE BLOOD FLUIDS

On the Application of the Serum Test To the Differential Diagnosis of Typhoid and Malta Fever

And on the Application of the Method of Serum Diagnosis to the Elucidation of certain Problems in connexion with the Duration of Immunity and the Geographical Distribution of Disease.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Surgeon-Captain F. Smith, A.M.S.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, Army Medical School, Netley.

It is notorious that every clinician in tropical and sub-tropical countries is constantly meeting cases of continued fever of which he finds it impossible to say whether they are cases of typhoid fever, of Malta fever, of malarial fever, or of some other (possibly as yet undescribed) variety of continued fever. In cases of this kind, and further in cases where it is desirable that a diagnosis should be arrived at early in the course of the disease, the prompt and accurate methods of diagnosis which medical research has recently placed at our disposal will be everywhere welcomed.

Three of such methods of diagnosis are at present available.

In the *first* place, the blood may be examined microscopically with a view to determining the presence or absence of pathogenic micro-organisms. This method is of particular utility in connexion with the determination of the presence or absence of the micro-organisms of malaria and of spirillum fever.

In the *second* place, the excretions (and, in particular, the urine [2]) may

[1] Reprinted from the *Lancet*, March 6, 1897.

[2] The importance both from a diagnostic and a hygienic point of view of recognizing the presence of typhoid bacilli in the urine was pointed out in a paper which was written by one of us in conjunction with Surgeon-Major Semple (*The Lancet*, July 27, 1895). The results which were arrived at in that paper have been recently confirmed and somewhat extended by Dr. P. Horton Smith (Royal Medical and Chirurgical Society, February 7, 1897).

be examined by appropriate cultivation methods with a view to determining the presence or absence of pathogenic micro-organisms. This method is applicable to typhoid fever. It is probably also applicable to Malta fever.

Lastly, the method of serum diagnosis may be applied. By this method the blood of a patient who is suffering, or who has suffered, from a continued fever is tested in turn with any pathogenic micro-organisms that may be available, and in particular with the micro-organisms which are causally associated with typhoid fever and Malta fever. We have recently been applying this serum test to the diagnosis, and especially to the after-diagnosis, of tropical and sub-tropical continued fevers. Convalescents from these fevers come under observation in Netley in the persons of soldiers and others who are invalided home from military stations abroad.

Examples of the Application of the Method.

The following are typical examples of the application of the method of serum diagnosis to the differentiation of Malta fever from typhoid fever.

Example 1.—Sergeant L——, of the Medical Staff Corps, arrived from Aldershot in October, 1896, having been detailed for duty at Netley. A few days after arrival at Netley the patient "reported sick," and was admitted to hospital with a recrudescence of a fever from which he had suffered some months before. His papers showed that this fever had been diagnosed to be typhoid fever. The patient's serum showed absolutely no reaction with the bacillus typhosus. His serum in 10,- 25-, 50-, 100-, and 200-fold dilutions showed a very marked reaction with the micrococcus Melitensis of Bruce. Inquiry into the patient's history revealed that when he went into hospital at Aldershot he had only recently returned from Gibraltar.

Example 2.—Sergeant F——, of the Medical Staff Corps. The patient was admitted to hospital in Malta on October 2, 1896. He died in hospital on November 20. Some of his symptoms, such as diarrhoea associated with blood in the stools, were suggestive of typhoid fever. The necropsy, however, showed only slight ulceration of the colon, and the absence of any implication of Peyer's patches. In the light of the facts, his case was diagnosed as having in all probability been a case of Malta fever.

A stepson of the above, aged nine years, contracted fever in Malta and died at the end of November after ten days' illness. The case was diagnosed as probably one of typhoid fever.

Another stepson, aged seven and a half years, contracted fever in Malta at the beginning of last December, and was immediately invalided home. Doubts were expressed in his papers as to whether the case was one of Malta fever or of typhoid fever. He is now quite convalescent.

His serum gives an absolutely negative reaction with the micrococcus Melitensis, but gives a very marked effect in 10-, 25-, 50-, and 100-fold dilutions with the bacillus typhosus.

The wife of Sergeant F—— contracted fever in Malta in the month of September. She was in bed for ten days. The serum gives an absolutely negative reaction with the bacillus typhosus. The serum, however, gives in 10-, 25-, and 50-fold—but not in 100-fold—dilutions a characteristic reaction with the micrococcus Melitensis.

A child of Sergeant F——, a girl aged three years, contracted fever in Malta in May, 1896. She suffered severely from fever till the end of September, 1896. She is now quite convalescent. Her serum gives absolutely no reaction with the bacillus typhosus, but the serum in 10-, 25-, 50-, 100-, and 200-fold dilutions gives very marked reaction with the micrococcus Melitensis.

It will be obvious how very difficult a clinical problem was presented by this last series of cases, and how very easily clinical problems of this kind can be re-solved by the employment of the method of serum diagnosis.

Example 3.—Private P—— (at present under treatment in Netley), invalided home from India for secondary syphilis. He has suffered for the last four months from a continuous but very irregular fever, which has some resemblance to the typical curve of Malta fever. Examination of history discloses that the patient left England in March, 1892, for Gibraltar. He continued in good health until the autumn of that year, when he was attacked with continued fever, which, from its long duration (103 days in hospital) and from the fact that the patient was constipated throughout, may not unreasonably be assumed to have been Mediterranean fever. The patient left Gibraltar for India with his regiment in December, 1893, feeling perfectly well. In India he was noted as having suffered occasionally from attacks of fever. These attacks of fever were, however, not severe enough to require treatment in hospital. The patient began to suffer again from fever very soon after he was put under orders for home. His blood has been examined by us with negative results for malaria, and his urine has recently been examined by us with negative results both for the presence of typhoid and Malta fever micro-organisms. His serum exerts no influence upon the bacillus typhosus. It manifests, even in 1,000-fold dilution, a very characteristic effect upon the micrococcus of Malta fever. It is obvious that the interpretation of the results of serum-diagnosis was here complicated by the fact that the patient has presumably suffered some four years ago from Malta fever and that a reaction with the micrococcus of Malta fever might possibly have persisted for this period. In view, however, of the fact that the serum shows the specific reaction in such an enormous dilution, and, further, in view of the fact that four years have elapsed since he suffered from fever in Gibraltar, and lastly, in view of the fact that the patient

is now suffering from pains in the joints, it seems to us practically certain that this person is suffering from Malta fever.[1]

Having sufficiently illustrated this last point, we may now subjoin in tabular form the results which we have obtained by the application of this method of serum diagnosis.

The results which are tabulated below were obtained by testing the reaction of the serum in the capillary sedimentation pipettes.

*In the tables which are subjoined a voluminous sedimentation is indicated by the sign + ; a slighter but still perfectly characteristic sedimentation is indicated by the sign * ; a negative result is indicated by the sign* 0.

TABLE I.—*Cases diagnosed as "Malta Fever," which showed Reaction on the Micrococcus Melitensis of Bruce.*[2]

No. of Case.	Period elapsed since Illness.		Degree in which Serum was Diluted.				
	Years.	Months.	1 in 10.	1 in 25.	1 in 50.	1 in 100.	1 in 200.
1[3]	—	5	*	*	*	0	0
2[4]	—	6	+	+	+	—	—
3	—	6	+	+	+	+	+
4	—	8	+	+	+	+	+
5	1	8	+	+	+	+	+
6[5]	1	9	+	+	+	+	+
7	3	—	+	*	*	0	+
8[6]	Now ill.		+	+	+	+	0

[1] The question of greatest clinical interest in connexion with this case is, of course, the question whether the patient was re-infected with Malta fever in India, or whether the attacks of fever from which he suffered at intervals in India were mere recrudescences of his original Malta fever. In view of the facts which one of us has, in conjunction with Surgeon-Major Semple, elicited on the survival of the micrococcus Melitensis in the spleen of monkeys who have perfectly recovered from Malta fever, both these interpretations appear to us to be equally admissible.

[2] We are deeply indebted to Surgeon-Captain L. Hughes for sending us a culture of this micro-organism. The culture which was sent to us was obtained in Malta from a fatal case of the disease.

[3] Said to have been a very slight attack.

[4] Higher dilutions not tried.

[5] Marked effect in this case up to 1 in 300.

[6] Gives a positive reaction up to, but not above, a 1,000-fold dilution.

TABLE II.—*Cases diagnosed "Typhoid Fever" which showed Reaction on Typhoid Bacillus.*

No. of Case.	Period elapsed since Illness.		Degree in which the Serum was Diluted.				
	Years.	Months.	1 in 10.	1 in 25.	1 in 50.	1 in 100.	1 in 200.
1	—	5	+	+	*	0	0
2	—	6	*	*	0	0	0
3	—	6	+	+	+	+	+
4[1]	—	6	+	+	+	—	—
5	—	6	*	*	0	0	0
6	—	7	*	*	0	0	0
7[1]	—	9	+	+	+	—	—
8	—	9	+	*	0	0	0
9	—	10	+	*	0	0	0
10	1	2	*	*	0	0	0
11	1	8	+	+	*	0	0
12	2	—	+	*	0	0	0
13[1]	6	—	+	+	—	—	—
14	6	—	+	*	0	0	0
15	12	—	*	*	0	0	0

TABLE III.—*Cases diagnosed "Typhoid Fever" which had no Effect on the Typhoid Bacillus, but showed a distinct Reaction on the Malta Fever Micrococcus.*

No. of Case.	Place in which Illness Occurred.	Period elapsed since Illness.		Degree to which the Serum was Diluted.				
		Years.	Months.	1 in 10.	1 in 25.	1 in 50.	1 in 100.	1 in 200.
1	Aldershot . . .	—	9	+	+	+	+	+
2[3]	Sabathu, India[2] .	—	7	+	+	+	+	+
3[3]	Sabathu, India[2] .	—	7	+	—	—	—	—

TABLE IV.—*Cases diagnosed "Typhoid Fever" which showed no Reaction on either the Typhoid or Malta Fever Organism.*

No. of Case.	Place in which Illness occurred.	Period elapsed since Illness.	
		Years.	Months.
1, 2, 3, and 4	Sabathu, India	—	8, 8, 6, and 6
5	Nowshera, India	—	7
6	Lucknow, India	—	10
7	Line of march, India . . .	—	3
8	Rangoon, Burmah . . .	—	6
9	Shwebo, Burmah	—	9
10	Cannanore, India	—	10
11	Hong-Kong	—	9
12	Benares, India	—	8
13	Umballa, India	—	6
14	Natal, South Africa . . .	17	—

[1] Higher dilutions not tried.
[2] India was the only foreign station in which the patient had served.
[3] Higher dilutions not tried.

TABLE V.—*Cases diagnosed "Malarial Fever," or not specifically diagnosed, which showed Reaction on the Malta Fever Organism.*

No. of Case.	Place in which Illness occurred.	Period elapsed since Illness.		Sedimenting Effect.				
		Years.	Months.	1 in 10.	1 in 25.	1 in 50.	1 in 100.	1 in 200
1[1]	Nowshera, India .	—	11	+	+	+	+	+
2	Hong-Kong . .	—	6	*	*	0	0	0
3[2]	Meean-Meer . .	Now ill.		+	+	+	+	+

TABLE VI.—*Case diagnosed "Malta Fever" which showed no Reaction on the Micrococcus Melitensis, but which showed a Distinct Effect on the Typhoid Bacillus.*

No. of Case.	Place in which Illness occurred.	Period elapsed.		Degree to which the Serum was Diluted.				
		Years.	Months.	1 in 10.	1 in 25.	1 in 50.	1 in 100.	1 in 200
1	Malta	Ill at time of examination		+	+	+	*	0

A not inconsiderable number of interesting facts are disclosed by a study of these tables. The following are perhaps the more important of these :—(1) Consideration of Table I discloses the fact that the micrococcus Melitensis, which was discovered by Surgeon-Major D. Bruce, is in reality, as he asserted it to be, the true cause of Malta fever. Out of nine clinically more or less well-characterized cases which were examined by us, the eight which are tabulated here have shown a perfectly characteristic reaction to the micrococcus Melitensis. The only one of the nine cases which failed to react was that of a patient who had suffered from Malta fever five years previously to the date of our examination. We may not unreasonably surmise that the specific power of sedimenting the microorganisms of Malta fever may, in this case, have passed away. (2) Consideration of Tables III and V discloses the fact that Malta fever is, as Bruce and others have long surmised, a disease which is not by any means confined to the Mediterranean basin. We have here what we take to be definite evidence of its existence in three stations in Northern India. We have, further, what we take to be probable evidence of its existence in Hong-Kong. (3) Table III shows that a certain number of cases which are from their clinical symptoms diagnosed to be typhoid fever, are in reality cases of Malta fever. (4) Table IV shows that a considerable number of cases which are from their clinical characters diagnosed to be typhoid are in all probability neither cases of typhoid fever nor cases of Malta fever. It is possible that the fevers from which

[1] India was the only foreign station in which the patient had served.
[2] Distinct effect up to 1,000-fold dilution.

these particular patients suffered may have been malarious in character. It is also possible that these fevers may have belonged to some as yet undefined category of continued fever. What is important for us to note is the fact that any tropical fever which is unaccompanied by the presence of malaria parasites in the blood, and which can by the method of serum-diagnosis be shown to be neither typhoid fever nor Malta fever, is a fever which might very profitably be made the subject of bacteriological investigation. (5) Tables I and II show that the specific agglomerating and sedimenting power, whch is acquired by the blood in cases of fever, persists in the blood for a considerable term of years. We have been able to demonstrate its existence in the blood in the case of typhoid fever after no less a period than twelve years. Similarly, we have been able to demonstrate its persistence in the blood for at least three years after an attack of Malta fever.

These facts are of the greatest importance, if, as was urged in a paper on typhoid vaccination [1] which was written by one of us in conjunction with Surgeon-Major D. Semple, the sedimenting and agglomerating power of the blood is in reality a true index of the condition of immunity.

[1] Vide *British Medical Journal*, January 30, 1897.

A Note on the Occurrence of Malta Fever in India.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Surgeon-Captain F. Smith, A.M.S.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, Army Medical School, Netley.

We have elsewhere [2] in a paper on the application of the method of serum diagnosis to the differential diagnosis of typhoid and Malta fever directed attention to the fact that Malta fever probably prevails not only in the Mediterranean basin, but also in India. We have since the date of the publication referred to further investigated this question, and we have found confirmation of our conclusions.

In view of the importance of the question, and in view further of the fact that public attention has recently been called (in Parliament and elsewhere) to the extreme prevalence of typhoid fever in an Indian station (Sabathu), where, as our serum examinations teach us, Malta fever must be very prevalent, we desire to be allowed briefly to refer to the matter.

Our observations have been made on soldiers who have recently been invalided home from India to the Royal Victoria Hospital, Netley. A minute quantity of blood was drawn off from the finger of each of these invalids. This blood was diluted and was then examined in capillary sedimentation tubes in the manner which was recently described by one of us in the *Journal*.[3]

The results of our examinations are subjoined below in tabular form).

In confirmation of the results which we have obtained by the application of the serum test to the after-diagnosis of these cases of continued fever, we may mention that many of these patients have since their arrival in Netley suffered from the ordinary sequelæ of Malta fever (such as swollen testicle, sciatica, and rheumatoid joint pains), and that others have suffered from definite relapses of fever. Further, we may direct attention to the fact that careful Indian observers have described cases of " atypical typhoid " which presented a set of symptoms and a temperature curve which we now know to be almost characteristic of Malta fever. In this connexion we would particularly direct attention to an able report on typhoid fever in India which was published by Brigade-Surgeon Marston in the Appendices to the Army Medical Report for 1879.

[1] Reprinted from the *British Medical Journal*, April 10, 1897.
[2] *Lancet*, March 6, 1897 (*vide* p. 3.) [3] *British Medical Journal*, January 16, 1897.

Table of Cases examined.

No. of Case.	Station from which invalided.	Regiment.	Whether Served previously in the Mediterranean.	Whether had suffered from Fever while on Service in Mediterranean.	Highest Dilution in which Sero-sedimentation Effect was obtained upon the Micrococcus Melitensis of Bruce.	Remarks.
1	Sabathu . .	Black Watch	No	—	1 in 150	
2	,, . .	,, ,,	No	—	1 in 10	Higher dilutions not tried in this case.
3	Nowshera .	Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders	No	—	1 in 200	
4	Meean-Meer .	Somerset Light Infantry	Yes, in 1893	Yes	1 in 1,000	
5	,, .	,, ,, ,,	,,	No	1 in 200	
6	,, .	,, ,, ,,	No	—	1 in 1,000	All these served in Sabathu before going to Meean-Meer.
7	,, .	,, ,, ,,	Yes, in 1893	No	1 in 200	
8	,, .	,, ,, ,,	,,	No	1 in 300	
9	,, .	,, ,, ,,	,,	No	1 in 150	
10[1]	,, .	,, ,, ,,	Yes, in 1892	No	1 in 150	

[1] This patient had enteric fever in Madras before he went to Sabathu.

Mediterranean or Malta Fever

With Special Reference to the Specific Agglutinating Substances which make their Appearance in the Blood in the course of that Disease.[1]

By Major C. Birt, R.A.M.C., and Captain G. Lamb, M.B. (I.M.S.).

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department of the Army Medical School, Netley.

History of the Bacteriology of Malta Fever—Biological Characteristics of the Micrococcus Melitensis—Causal Association of the Micrococcus Melitensis with Malta Fever—The Effect of Specific Serum on Micrococcus Melitensis—Data Bearing on the Early Appearance of Agglutinins in the Blood—The Persistence of the Agglutinins in the Blood after Recovery—Incubation Period for Man—Geographical Distribution—Data Bearing on the Evolution of the Agglutinins during the Course of Malta Fever—Inferences which may be drawn from the above Observations—Value of an Estimation of the Agglutinating Substances as an Aid to Prognosis

Mediterranean fever is a disease too seldom recognized. It is often disguised under such names as simple continued fever, sweating typhoid,[2] etc., accounts of which still unfortunately find a place in current medical literature. Clinically the main features of Malta fever are briefly stated as follows: pyrexia of a more or less chronic type, accompanied by constipation and copious perspiration. Relapses are frequent, and convalescence is often retarded by neuralgias, joint-pains, and orchitis. This fever is the cause of much sickness among the British troops stationed at Malta and Gibraltar. Many men in the convalescent stage are invalided to England, and come under treatment in the Royal Victoria Hospital, Netley. Among these men relapses are not unfrequent after their arrival, and thus a wide field for study of the disease is afforded.

History of the Bacteriology of Malta Fever.

In 1887 Bruce [3] isolated a micro-organism in pure culture from the spleens of nine fatal cases and from blood drawn from the spleen during life in two instances. This organism he named the micrococcus Melitensis.

[1] Reprinted from the *Lancet*, Sept. 9, 1899.

[2] Jaccored: *Journal de Médecine*, March 10, 1899.

[3] *Practitioner*, September, 1887, and April, 1888; *Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1893, vol. vii, p. 289.

He succeeded in infecting monkeys by subcutaneous injection of small quantities of the pure culture of this coccus. In these animals the micrococcus Melitensis gave rise to a continuous fever, not unlike that in man, and usually caused death after a variable time. In the monkeys which died from this infection Bruce found in pure culture in the spleen the same bacterium as he had inoculated. Hughes [1] has corroborated these observations of Bruce. He has isolated the micrococcus Melitensis from the spleens of fourteen men who succumbed to this disease. Further, he has infected monkeys with the cultures of the organism and, like Bruce, afterwards recovered the micro-organism from the spleens of the animals which died. Gipps [2] has also obtained the same micrococcus in two fatal cases. In this country we have grown the microbe from the blood and spleens of the only two fatal cases which have come under our notice.[3] The observations of the disease in infected monkeys, as described by Bruce and Hughes, have been amply confirmed in this laboratory by a long series of experiments undertaken some two years ago by Professor Wright and Major D. Semple with an organism sent from Malta by Hughes. We also have infected monkeys with the cultures obtained from the two fatal cases mentioned above. As the details of these experiments coincide in almost every particular with the descriptions previously given by Bruce it is unnecessary to enter further into them. Durham [4] has shown that the infection can be conveyed to rabbits and guinea-pigs (animals regarded by Bruce as immune to the disease) by means of intra-cerebral and intra-peritoneal inoculation. These observations have also been confirmed in this laboratory by Professor Wright and Major D. Semple. Various attempts have been made by us to isolate the organism from the urine during the course of the fever in man. These have in all cases been unsuccessful. The plates either remained sterile or were overgrown by more quickly growing bacteria. No bacteriologist has described the micrococcus Melitensis as having been isolated in any other disease.

Biological Characteristics of the Micrococcus Melitensis.

These have been fully described by Bruce,[5] Hughes [6] and Durham.[7] A brief *résumé* of their and our own observations will therefore suffice. The micrococcus Melitensis is a small coccus or cocco-bacillus about $0{\cdot}33\mu$ in diameter, the bacillary form being more pronounced when grown on gelatin. We have not been able to satisfy ourselves as to the presence of any motility other than Brownian movement. Gordon,[8] however, figures it as possessing usually a single and sometimes three or four short flagella. Neither Durham [9] nor the workers in this laboratory have been

[1] *Mediterranean, Malta, or Undulant Fever*, London, 1897.
[2] *Transactions of the Epidemiological Society of London*, vol. ix, p. 76.
[3] These cultures had the same biological characters as the cultures supplied by Hughes to this laboratory.
[4] *Journal of Pathology and Bacteriology*, December, 1898.
[5] Loc. cit. [6] Loc. cit. [7] Loc. cit.
[8] *The Lancet*, March 11, 1899, p. 688. [9] Loc. cit.

able to confirm this observation. It stains readily with all the basic aniline dyes, while it does not retain its stain by the Gram-Weigert method. The growth of this microbe on all media is characterized by its slowness. On agar (at 37° C.) no colonies are visible to the naked eye for at least two days. In cultures made directly from the spleen or blood in fatal cases the agar appears sterile to the unaided eye for from four to six days. The colonies, when developed, are small, transparent and dew-like, and are often limited to the lower end of the tube. Broth (at 37° C.) becomes turbid, the turbidity appearing on the second or third day. After a time there is a deposit of flocculi, the broth still, however, remaining turbid. Short chains are also found in this medium. If the specific serum is added to the broth the fluid remains clear, and a compact, felt-like growth takes place at the bottom of the tube in the course of weeks. On gelatin the growth is extremely scanty and slow; there is no liquefaction. It may be further noted that on media which are highly alkaline there is little or no growth. Its slow growth, the appearance on agar, and the microscopical characters will generally lead to its identification. The behaviour of the culture in question in the presence of the specific serum will confirm with certainty the diagnosis. In bacteriological literature no description of another microbe possessing the same biological characters can be found.

Causal Association of the Micrococcus Melitensis with Malta Fever.

The evidence collated above shows (*a*) that the micrococcus Melitensis has been recovered from almost every case of Mediterranean fever which has been examined bacteriologically after death, and has not been found elsewhere; (*b*) that the micrococcus Melitensis is capable of infecting monkeys, giving rise in them to a continuous fever not unlike that in man, and usually causing death, and that by special methods rabbits and guinea-pigs have also been infected; and (*c*) that from all these animals after death the same organism has been recovered in pure culture from the blood and organs, and after cultivation this has again occasioned the disease in other animals. The final link in the chain—i.e., the proof that the micrococcus Melitensis can produce Malta fever in man—has not heretofore been forthcoming. This is now furnished by two cases which have occurred as a result of inoculation with the micrococcus Melitensis; and by a third case the method of infection in which is not quite so definite; all these cases happened among the staff of this laboratory. They are given here in chronological order.

Case 1.—On September 17, 1897, D.S. accidentally scratched himself with the needle of a syringe with which he had just injected into a horse a living growth of micrococcus Melitensis.[1] He immediately sucked the minute wound, plunged the hand into a 5 per cent. solution of phenol

[1] This culture was derived from a culture which had been isolated two years previously by Hughes from the spleen of a fatal case of the disease in Malta.

which he had by his side, and almost at once cauterized the puncture with pure phenol. But all to no purpose, for on October 2, fifteen days later, his temperature rose and he went through a typical attack of Malta fever (*vide* Chart 1).

Case 2.—On March 1, 1898, A.E.W., in connexion with some experiments regarding the elaboration of a method of vaccination against Malta fever, injected into his arm $\frac{1}{100}$th of an agar tube of a seven-day growth of micrococcus Melitensis.[1] On March 17, sixteen days later, febrile symptoms set in and pursued a course characteristic of this fever (*vide* Chart 2). It is worthy of note that, as in most bacterial infections, there was a marked increase in the number of polynuclear white cells in the blood just before the onset of fever.

Case 3.—In February, 1899, Corporal S., the head attendant of the laboratory, who was constantly employed in bacteriological operations with this microbe, contracted an illness which soon assumed the typical characters of Malta fever and which was complicated by severe double orchitis (*vide* Chart 5). The method of infection could not be definitely traced in this case.

We shall have occasion to refer in more detail to these three cases in connexion with the question of the estimation of the agglutinating substances. We may here add that the diagnosis was confirmed in all three cases by the serum sedimentation reaction. The reaction took place in high dilutions of the serum, and during the course of the fever there were considerable variations in the agglutinating power of the serum. In the first two cases the agglutinating reaction still persists a year and a half and a year respectively after convalescence.

The Effect of Specific Serum on Micrococcus Melitensis.

If the above observations left any room for doubt as to the causal relation of this organism with Malta fever, that doubt would be completely removed by the investigation through which Professor Wright established that the serum of patients who are suffering from or who have recovered from Malta fever produces a specific agglutinating reaction on the micrococcus Melitensis. This observer[2] has published fourteen observations in which this coccus was sedimented after agglutination by high dilutions of the sera of patients who were suffering from or had recently recovered from Mediterranean fever, and he showed that the agglutination and sedimentation which were obtained in these cases with the coccus was more marked and definite than the corresponding reaction which is obtained with the bacillus typhosus in typhoid fever. In a more recent publication, along with Semple,[3] he has further shown that dead cultures of the bacteria can be employed with the same result as living cultures. During the course of our investigations we have arrived

[1] This culture was derived from a culture which had been isolated two years previously by Hughes from the spleen of a fatal case of the disease in Malta.

[2] *The Lancet*, March 6, 1897, p. 656 (*vide supra*, pp. 3–9.)

[3] *Brit. Med. Jour.*, May 15, 1897.

at a like conclusion. These observations have been confirmed by other observers. Aldridge[1] has reported fourteen cases in Malta in which this reaction was obtained, and Elkington [2] has detected agglutination of this microbe seventy-five times in 158 samples of blood of various febrile patients in Gibraltar. Durham [3] has likewise obtained this phenomenon with the blood of rabbits and guinea-pigs which he had infected by means of intra-cerebral and intra-peritoneal inoculation. Further, the test is being daily employed in the laboratory of the Public Health Department of Malta.

Since the date of Professor Wright's original publications we have carefully investigated this reaction. It is the result of this investigation which we have now to present and which we shall preface by giving a short account of the methods employed. All observations were made microscopically by means of the sedimentation tubes (rather less than one millimetre in diameter) devised by Professor Wright.[4] Equal quantities of the serum, diluted with normal salt solution, and of sterile emulsions of the micrococcus were employed in all cases. The emulsions were prepared from fresh agar cultures with normal saline solution.

It is obvious that the sedimentation reaction of any serum when one and the same culture is used, will vary with the number of bacteria which the emulsion contains. In order to make the quantitative estimations which are here reported comparable amongst themselves the following procedure was adopted. (1) The emulsions were all prepared in exactly the same way. A uniform growth in agar of from five to seven days was obtained. This was emulsified with sterile normal saline solution, a fixed quantity of which—viz., 0·25 cubic centimetre—was used for every square centimetre of agar culture. The bacteria were then killed by heating at 60° C. for from ten to fifteen minutes and finally 0·5 per cent. carbolic acid was added. In this way emulsions containing approximately the same number of bacteria were obtained. (2) When the estimation of the agglutinins was made during the whole course of a case the same emulsion, if possible, was used throughout. If a fresh emulsion had to be substituted the sedimentation reaction of the same specimen of serum was compared in the two emulsions and any difference taken into account in recording the results. Following this method we first examined as controls more than 50 samples of blood of healthy people, among whom were eleven negroes, and 101 samples taken from patients suffering from the following diseases: enteric fever, 38 cases; malarial fevers, 20 cases; liver abscess, 4 cases; local suppurations, 10 cases; acute streptococcic infections, 5 cases; rheumatic fever, 5 cases; tuber-

[1] *The Lancet*, May 21, 1898, p. 1394: Report of the Health Department of Malta, 1898.
[2] *Reports of the Sanitary Officer of Gibraltar*, 1897 and 1898.
[3] Loc. cit.
[4] *British Medical Journal*, February 5, 1898.

culosis, 5 cases ; secondary syphilis, 6 cases ; cancer, 2 cases ; dysentery, 4 cases ; acute tonsilitis, 1 case ; and diabetes, 1 case. In the course of these estimations we found that nearly all the specimens of blood examined gave a well-marked, sometimes complete, sedimentation in dilution of 1 in 2. Many gave a faint trace in dilution of 1 in 10, but the majority did not give any reaction in that dilution. In none of the above instances did we ever observe a complete sedimentation to occur in a 10-fold dilution, nor did we ever see a trace of sedimentation in a 20-fold dilution. Having thus fixed the limit of the agglutinating power of normal sera and of sera derived from patients suffering from other diseases, we may proceed to consider the cases in which sedimentation above these normal limits was observed. We have notes of over 120 individuals in whom this reaction was found, and as many cases were examined on several occasions we have made several hundred observations in all. A list of these cases with dilutions in which the serum reacted is given in Table I and Table II.

On referring to the above tables it will be seen that fifty-three cases came under observation while still suffering from Malta fever, the remainder at varying periods after convalescence had been established. In forty-four febrile cases in which the sedimentation value was quantitatively determined the average dilution for a complete reaction [1] was between 600 and 700, though the limits were very wide ; one serum was tested in which complete sedimentation took place in a 6,000-fold dilution. When we contrast these figures with those obtained by us in cases of typhoid fever, we find that as compared with the serum of typhoid patients the serum of Malta fever patients sediments its homologous micro-organism in considerably higher dilutions. Moreover, the clumps of agglutinated micrococci which are deposited are much more compact and are better defined than those of Eberth's bacillus. Indeed, the serum reaction of Malta fever is one of the most delicate bacteriological tests with which we are acquainted, and ought undoubtedly to supersede the ordinary clinical methods of diagnosis, especially as it occurs, as we shall show later, comparatively early in the course of the disease. By its means we have recognized cases invalided home as gonorrhoeal rheumatism, simple continued fever, debility, rheumatic fever, enteric fever, malaria, etc.

Data bearing on the Early Appearance of the Agglutinins in the Blood.

In experiments on monkeys performed by us, and in those previously referred to as done by Wright and Semple, it is definitely shown that the agglutinating substances may appear in the blood as early as the fifth day after inoculation of the living virus, and that they are well developed by the ninth or eleventh day. The curves of the sedimentary values of the sera of a series of guinea-pigs

[1] In these cases traces of sedimentation occurred on an average up to 1,000-fold dilution.

TABLE I.—*Cases of Malta Fever examined during the Course of Disease.*

No. of Case.	—	Dilutions of Serum. 10	20	30	50	70	80	100	150	200	300	400	500	600	800	1,000	1,200	1,500	2,000	4,000	6,000	9,000	10,000	Remarks.
1	Now ill.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—
2	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—
3	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—
4	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—
5	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—
6	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
7	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
8	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
9	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
10	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
11	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
12	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
13	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
14	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
15	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—
16	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
17	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	— —
18	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
19	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
20	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
21	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
22	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
24	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
25	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

26	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
27	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
28	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
29	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
30	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
31	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
32	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
33	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
34	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
35	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
36	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
37	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
38	,,	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
39	,,	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
40	,,	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
41	,,	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
42	,,	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
43	,,	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
44	,,	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
45	,,	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
46	,,	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
47	,,	—	+	—	×	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
48	,,	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions
49	,,	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
50	,,	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
51	,,	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
52	,,	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
53	,,	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions

+ denotes complete sedimentation. × denotes marked, but not complete sedimentation.

TABLE II.—*Recoveries from Malta Fever which have shown Complete Reaction in 10-fold Dilution and over.*

No. of Case.	Period after Fever. Year.	Month.	Dilutions of Serum. 10	20	40	50	60	80	100	150	200	300	400	500	600	800	1,000	1,500	Remarks.
1	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—
2	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—
3	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
4	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
5	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
6	—	1	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	No higher dilutions.
8	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—
9	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—
10	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—
11	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
12	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
13	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
14	—	2	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
15	—	2	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
16	—	2	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
17	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—
18	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
19	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
20	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
21	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—
22	—	3	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—
23	—	3	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
24	—	3	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
25	—	3	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
26	—	3	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
27	—	4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—
28	—	4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
29	—	4	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
30	—	4	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
31	—	5	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
32	—	5	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

33	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—
34	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
35	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
36	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
37	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—
38	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
39	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
40	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
41	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
42	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
43	—	6	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
44	—	6	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Do.
45	—	6	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
46	—	6	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
47	—	6	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
48	—	6	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
49	—	6	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
50	—	7	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
51	—	7	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
52	—	8	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
53	—	8	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
54	—	9	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	No higher dilutions.
55	—	10	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
56	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
57	1	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
58	1	2	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
59	1	2	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
60	1	4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
61	1	8	—	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
62	1	9	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
63	3	—	—	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
64	4	—	+	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
65	4	—	+	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
66	5	—	—	—	—	+	—	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
67	5	—	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
68	7	—	—	+	—	×	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

+ denotes complete sedimentation. × denotes marked, but not complete, sedimentation.

which Durham [1] has figured show no rise before the fifth day after inoculation. This observer further states that the rate of development of the agglutinins varies inversely with the amount of the dose. Some experiments of Wright and Semple bear this out; for instance, in a monkey which had been inoculated with half an agar tube of the micrococcus the serum showed no reaction until the ninth day after inoculation, whereas the serum of a monkey infected with but one loopful of a culture gave a reaction on the fifth day.

In the case of man, Aldridge,[2] in the paper to which previous reference has been made, notes his failure to observe the reaction before the fifth day after the onset of the fever. In two cases which we have investigated from the onset of the disease and in which this could be determined with accuracy, a complete reaction in 400-fold dilution was observed in one and in 1,500-fold dilution in the other, both on the fourth day of the pyrexia.

In Case 1, mentioned above, the first observation, owing to unavoidable causes, was not made till the ninth day after the onset of fever and the twenty-third after accidental inoculation. This observation showed complete sedimentation in 800-fold dilution.

In Case 2, the case of A. E. W., it will be seen from the chart that the sedimentation value of his serum had been raised before inoculation to 100 by previous treatment with sterilized cultures. This declined to 20 on the third day after inoculation while on the eighth day after the onset of the fever there was noted a large increase in the amount of agglutinins present in the blood, the sedimentation value being 800. From these data it will be seen that in Malta fever the agglutinating substances appear in the blood comparatively early, much sooner than in the average case of typhoid fever. They therefore possess a greater diagnostic value.

The Persistence of the Agglutinins in the Blood after Recovery.

With a view of estimating the duration of the reaction after recovery, we have investigated sixty-eight cases at different periods after convalescence, with the following results. In twenty-seven individuals examined within six months after convalescence was established the average serum dilution in which sedimentation was manifest was found to be about 350-fold. In eighteen cases examined between six months and a year after recovery the mean sedimentation value was approximately 250. In seven cases examined between one and two years after recovery an average value of about 100-fold dilution was determined. After two years the reaction has been obtained, in many instances, in no higher dilutions than in normal sera; eight out of fourteen samples of blood taken from persons who had suffered from the illness from two to eight years previously gave no more marked reaction than

[1] Loc. cit. [2] Loc. cit.

normal sera, while the remaining six gave a complete or well-marked sedimentation in 10-fold dilutions or over. We have only met with one example in which the characteristic effects of the serum were apparent at a longer interval than seven years—this case, examined seven and a half years after recovery, gave a complete reaction in 20-fold dilution.

Incubation Period for Man.

Case 1 and Case 2 mark with accuracy the incubation period. In the former there was an interval of fifteen days between the date of infection and the onset of fever, while in the latter this interval was sixteen days. Bruce [1] states that the disease has developed in England in persons who left Malta from fourteen to seventeen days previously, while Hughes [2] has observed instances of the onset of fever eight, ten, and fourteen days after arrival in Malta. Two cases have come under our notice in which the first symptoms began at least from eighteen to twenty days after leaving Malta. From these data it will be seen that the incubation period may vary between eight and twenty days, the usual period being probably about fifteen days.

Geographical Distribution.

Wright and Smith [3] by means of the serum sedimentation test confirm the fact that Bruce and others had long surmised—viz., that Malta fever is not confined to the Mediterranean basin. In the publication referred to these authors tabulated ten cases invalided from India, in which the serum reaction gave a sedimentation value of an average of about 300-fold dilution. Many of these cases at the time of examination presented the usual sequelae of the disease. Since the date of that note ten other examples have been observed by us in Royal Victoria Hospital, Netley. These had been invalided for such diseases as malaria, enteric fever, and rheumatism. It is worthy of remark that fourteen out of the total of twenty such cases observed came from a comparatively small station in the Punjab—namely, Mecan-Meer; the other places in India where infection has occurred are Calcutta, Sabathu, and Nowshera. One man contracted the disease in Hong-Kong. This list may be further extended by the following cases, which have all been tested with cultures sent out originally from this laboratory. (1) Lieutenant W. Glen Liston, I.M.S., has privately reported to us a case of fever contracted in Secunderabad in the Deccan, the serum from which gave a reaction in 80-fold dilution at least with the micrococcus Melitensis. (2) Dr. Musser and Dr. Sailer [4] report the case of an army officer who appears to have contracted the disease in Puerto Rico during the Spanish-American war. Malarial plasmodia were

[1] *British Medical Journal*, May 18, 1889. [2] Loc. cit.
[3] *British Medical Journal*, April 10, 1897. (*Vide supra*, pp. 10–11.)
[4] *Proceedings of the Pathological Society of Philadelphia*, February 1, 1899.

frequently sought for in the blood of this officer, but never found. A culture of micrococcus Melitensis was agglutinated by high dilutions of the patient's blood. (3) Kretz [1] records the case of a physician who had contracted an obstinate fever in Ajaccio, Corsica. This continued six months. After recovery his blood serum agglutinated the micrococcus Melitensis in a dilution of 300-fold. 4. The following case, which has recently come under our notice, evidently contracted the disease in this country. Patient was a medical man, aged twenty-six years, who had not been abroad since the age of eight years. From March, 1897, till the end of September of the same year he was resident physician in a hospital in Plymouth. On October 1 he assumed the duties of junior house physician in the out-patient department at St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, where he was employed during the whole of that month. He first began to feel ill in the beginning of November, complaining of headache, loss of appetite, lassitude and general malaise. This condition persisted more or less till December, when it became complicated by oedema of the feet. The oedema afterwards extended up the legs. No cardiac lesion could be detected and the urine was normal. Up to this period of the illness he was not confined to bed, but rested as much as was consistent with the fulfilment of his duties. The oedema lasted for about a month, and was succeeded by pain and swelling in certain joints. The hips, knees, ankles, left wrist and left temporo-maxillary joints were all attacked in turn. After the disappearance of these latter symptoms left orchitis set in and lasted for about a fortnight. Convalescence was established in March, 1898. Only during the period when the joints were affected was the temperature ever taken. At that time it was usually found to be about 102° F. in the evenings. The serum reaction was not tried during the course of the illness, but was tested by us one year and two months after convalescence. It was found then to give complete sedimentation of micrococcus Melitensis in 20-fold dilution and traces up to 50-fold dilution. From the facts stated above we may fairly conclude that this was a case of Malta fever contracted either in Plymouth or in London, although no definite source of infection can be traced.

Data bearing on the Evolution of the Agglutinins during the Course of Malta Fever.

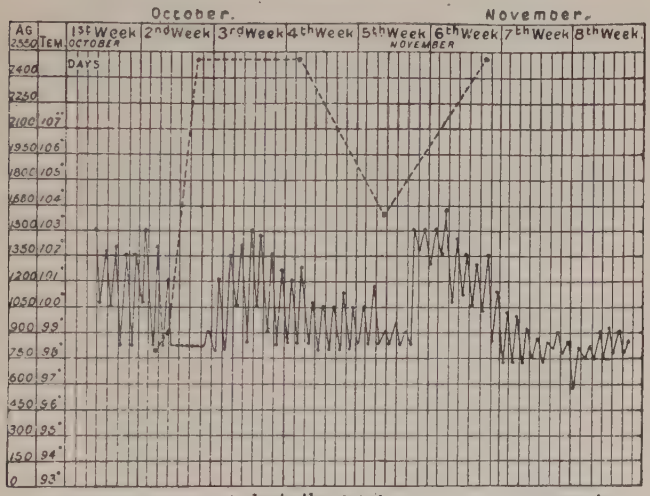
We have seen above that the agglutinating substances which make their appearance in the blood in cases of Malta fever are specific, and that their action on the micrococcus of Bruce, dead or alive, affords an easy and absolutely trustworthy method of diagnosis between this disease and other fevers which clinically simulate it. We have now to put on record the data which we have collected relating to the evolution of these

[1] *Wiener Klinische Wochenschrift*, No. 49, 1897.

substances during the course of the disease. We have already described the method which was used in making quantitative estimations of agglutinins, and have only to add that in drawing up the agglutination curves herewith presented the expression which has been adopted for the sedimenting value of each serum was the dilution in which that serum completely sedimented the bacteria with which it was brought in contact, so as to leave the supernatant fluid clear. The data were obtained from observations taken during the course of Malta fever in man. In all fifteen cases were investigated. Seven of these came under observation practically from the beginning of the fever, while the remaining eight were brought before our notice during relapses some months after the initial attack.

CASE 1.—This is the case of D. S., already referred to. The fever ran a comparatively short course and presented no complications. On turn-

D. S. CHART 1.

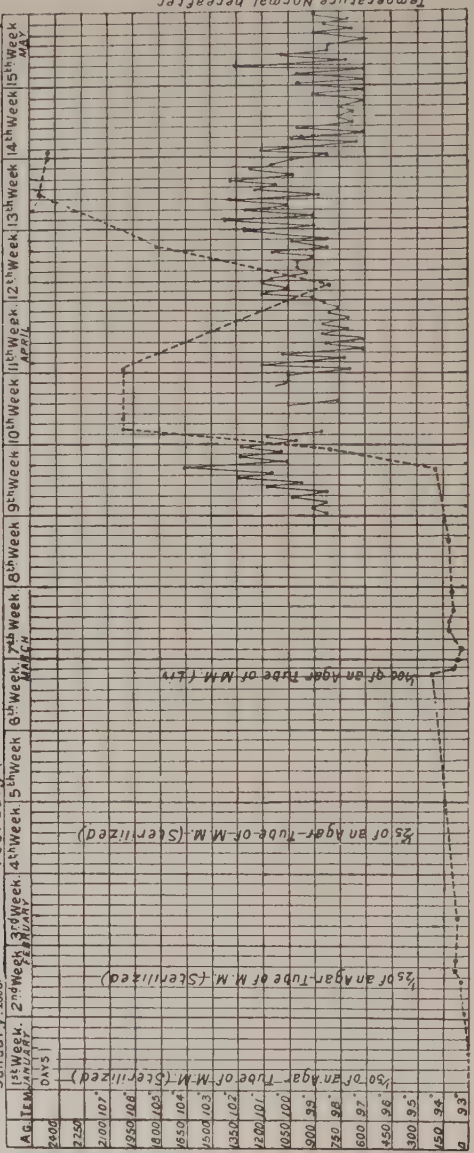


In this and subsequent charts the curve •——•——• represents the temperature, while the curve •----•----• represents the agglutinating power of the serum. This was taken as the highest dilution in which complete sedimentation was observed.

ing to Chart 1. it will be seen that the agglutinating substances were developed in large quantity soon after the onset of fever, and that, with the exception of a slight diminution just before a short relapse, this quantity was maintained till convalescence was established.

CASE 2.—This is the case of A. E. W., to which reference has already been made. The attack was a sharp one, although of comparatively short duration. It was complicated by severe muscular pains, which, however, did not retard convalescence. The evolution of the agglutinins in this case is of great interest. The salient features of the curve (*vide* Chart 2) are

these: (1) that only a small amount of agglutinins was developed as a result of the three injections of sterilized cultures,[1] which preceded the

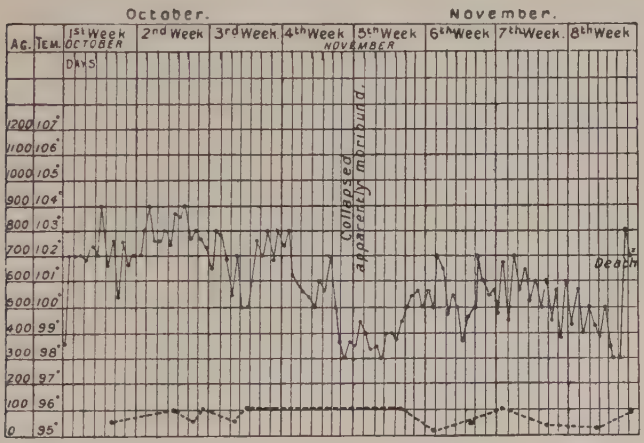


[1] The quantities injected on these occasions were as follows: First injection, one-fiftieth of an agar tube (killed at 60° C.); second injection, one twenty-fifth of an agar tube (killed at 60° C.); third injection, one-twenty-fifth of an agar tube (killed at 60° C.); and fourth injection, one-hundredth of an agar tube (living).

inoculation with the living culture; (2) that a well-marked diminution in the amount of agglutinins followed the inoculation of the living organism; (3) that a slight and gradual recovery in the amount of agglutinins occurred during the period of incubation; (4) that a rapid increase in the amount of agglutinins began soon after the onset of the fever; and (5) finally, that, with the exception of a slight fall at the beginning of a recrudescence of the temperature, this large amount of agglutinins persisted till convalescence was well established.

Case 3.—J. T., aged twenty-seven years. Patient had been stationed at Malta for six years, but had never suffered from any fever during this period. Three days before leaving Malta he began to feel lassitude and general malaise. Pyrexia began on the voyage home. He came under our observation about the thirteenth day of the disease. The case was a severe one, and presented all the symptoms of an acute specific fever.

J. T. Chart 3.

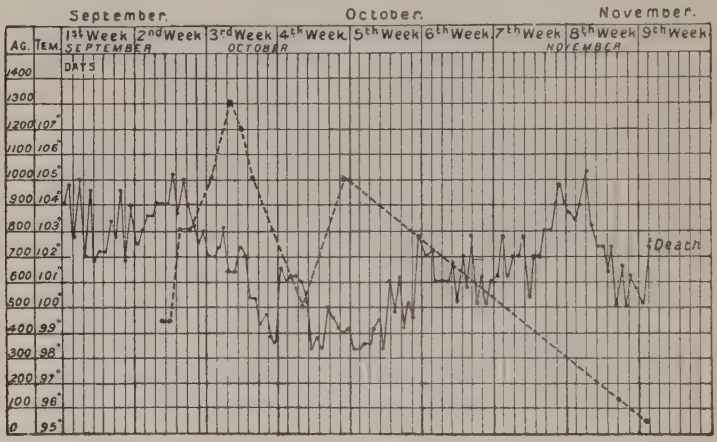


The fever was practically continuous till death, which took place about the sixty-eighth day of the illness. During the short period of apyrexia (from November 3 to 7) the patient was in a collapsed condition and was apparently moribund (*vide* Chart 3). The agglutination curve shows that throughout the course of the disease the agglutinins were present in the blood only in small quantity. The highest dilution which gave complete sedimentation was 100-fold. The micrococcus Melitensis was obtained *post mortem* from the blood and spleen.

Case 4.—G. W., aged twenty-seven years. Patient had served in Malta for four months. During this time he had suffered from an attack of "simple continued fever"; in other words, the nature of this fever had not been diagnosed. He was invalided to Netley at the end of August, 1898. He came under our observation in the third week of September, at which

time he had been suffering from fever for about a week. With the exception of two very short periods of apyrexia fever was continuous till death, which took place about eight weeks after the beginning of the illness (*vide* Chart 4). The agglutination curve shows: (1) that the agglutinins were present in the blood in considerable quantity during the earlier period; (2) that their amount was markedly increased just before and during the two periods of comparative apyrexia; and (3) that these substances almost disappeared from the blood shortly before death. Pure cultures of the micrococcus Melitensis were obtained after death from the blood and spleen.

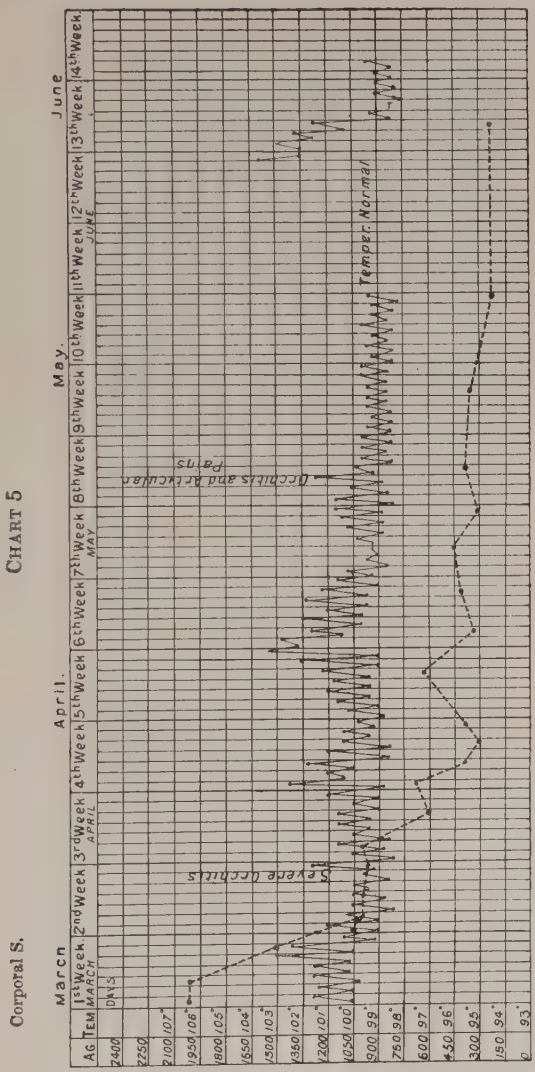
G. W. CHART 4.



CASE 5.—This is the case of the laboratory attendant, Corporal S., to which we have had occasion to refer above. Owing to the patient being on leave he did not come under observation till about the thirty-ninth day of the illness. The case was acute for the first week after admission to hospital; thereupon it became subacute and ultimately it assumed a chronic form. Neuralgia and severe double orchitis were present as complications in the earlier period, and in the later stages severe articular pains accompanied by a return of the orchitis. A relapse supervened upon this (*vide* Chart 5). During the early period of observation there was a very large quantity of agglutinins present in the blood. This amount diminished markedly at the beginning of the subacute stage and continued to diminish till the chronic relapsing stage was reached. Since then they have varied but little. And now, four and a half months since the onset of the disease, the amount practically remains the same.[1]

[1] *The patient subsequently succumbed to the fever.*

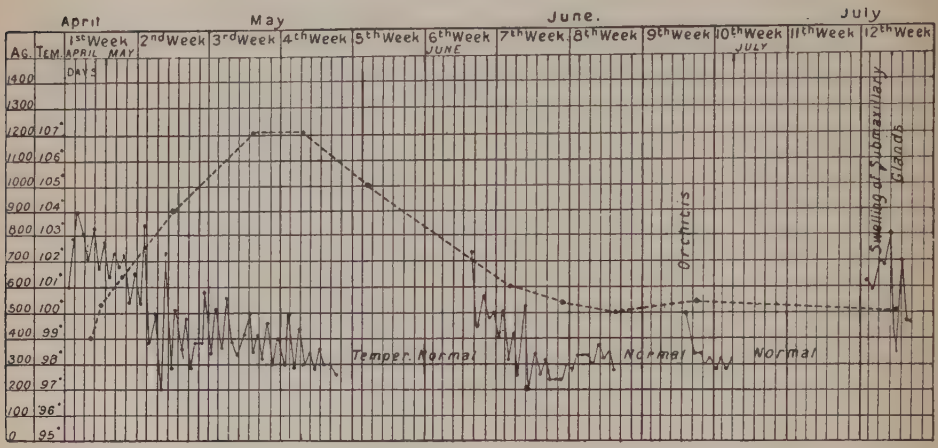
Case 6.—T. F., aged twenty-six years. Patient had served in Malta for eight months. The onset of his illness dates from about eighteen days after leaving Malta and ten days after his arrival in England. The case was acute at the outset. After about three weeks the temperature fell to normal.



This defervescence was soon followed by a relapse which lasted for a week. This was succeeded by an orchitis which was accompanied, however, by little disturbance of temperature. About three weeks after the orchitis a second relapse began. This was complicated with swelling of

the submaxillary glands. At the time of writing this relapse still persists (*vide* Chart 6). The agglutinins were developed gradually in the blood during the initial stage and had reached a large amount by the time the temperature fell. The quantity began to diminish before the onset

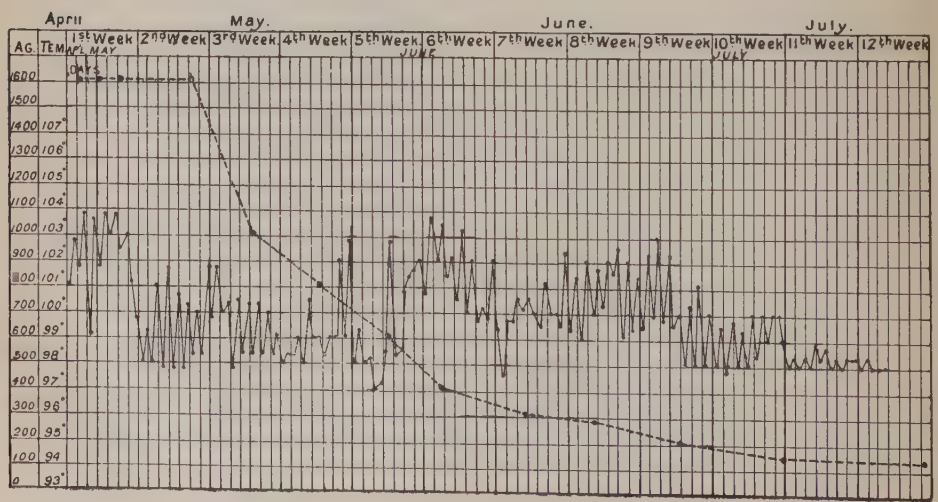
T. F. CHART 6.



of the first relapse, and continued to fall throughout its course. Since this the sedimentation curve has varied little up to the present.

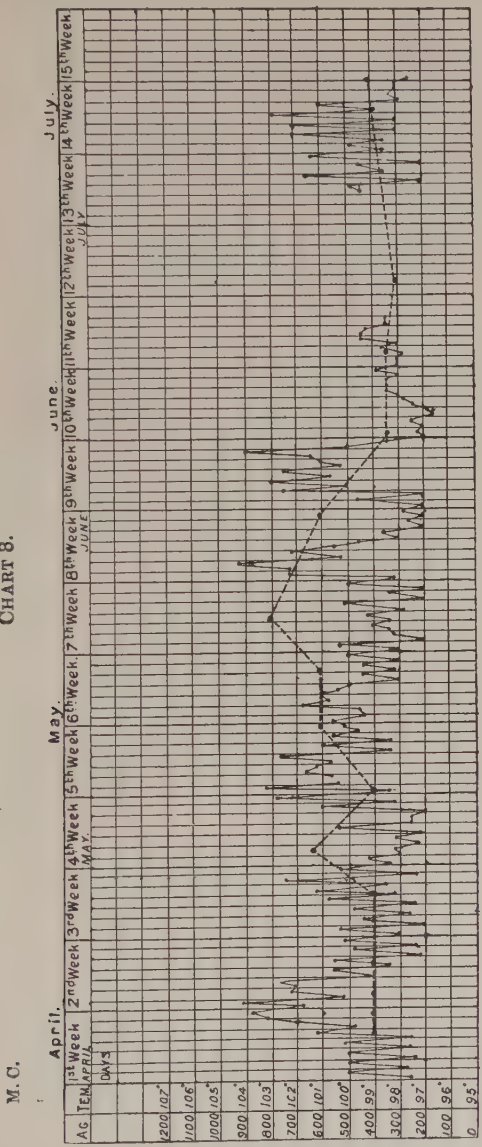
CASE 7.—G. M., aged twenty-two years. Patient had served in Malta for a year and a half. He had never suffered from any kind of fever

G. M. CHART 7.



during this period. A few days after his arrival at Netley he complained of malaise, lassitude and loss of appetite; this was soon followed by fever. He came under our direct observation on the fourth day from the com-

CHART 8.

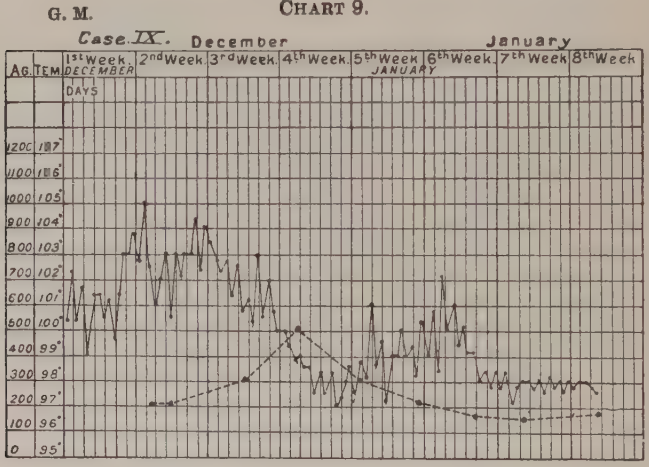


mencement of the fever. The case may be compared with that of Case 5, although it was more severe. In other words, there was an initial acute stage, which was followed by a subacute stage interrupted by frequent

relapses. This condition has lasted up to the time of writing, two and a half months after its onset (*vide* Chart 7). The agglutinating substances, as the curve shows, were present in large quantity during the early period. The amount diminished, at first rapidly, then more slowly in the later stage until it becomes comparatively small. At present it is maintained in this amount.

The remaining eight cases came under our notice at periods varying from two to six months after the onset of the disease. They had been invalided from Malta on account of this malady. They were cases of subacute or chronic fever, with periods of apyrexia of variable duration. Neuralgia and joint pains were common complications. The quantity of agglutinins present in the blood of these patients varied considerably, but was never great. In each individual case the agglutinating curve

CHART 9.



shows distinct rises and falls, more marked in some cases than in others. Two cases are given in detail as types of this class.

CASE 8.—M. C., aged twenty-one years. While in hospital in Malta for some slight surgical affection patient suffered from his first attack of fever. This lasted for about six weeks, and left him very weak and anaemic. Four months after this primary attack and two months after his arrival at Netley the fever recurred. While the patient was under our observation he suffered from a well-marked subacute attack of Malta fever, with occasional periods of higher pyrexia (*vide* Chart 8). This was complicated with neuralgias, joint pains and profuse perspirations. The agglutination curve shows that the agglutinins were never present in the blood in very large amount, on an average a dilution of about 500-fold causing complete sedimentation.

CASE 9.—G. M., aged twenty-seven years. Previously to being invalided

home patient had suffered in Malta from continued fever for seven weeks. He was admitted to Netley about two and a half months from the onset of the original attack, and about the seventh day of a relapse, which had begun on the voyage home. This relapse lasted for about three weeks and after a week of apyrexia was followed by a second relapse, which was, however, less severe and of shorter duration than the first (*vide* Chart 9). The agglutination curve shows that the agglutinins during the period under review were present in the blood in variable but at no time in large quantities. The increase in the amount at the beginning of the apyrexial period is worthy of note.

Inferences which may be drawn from the Above Observations.

The easiest way of critically sifting the data which have been placed on record above will be to classify the cases in accordance with their clinical features, thereupon to take up each category of cases separately and inquire what is the agglutinating curve which corresponds to each particular category. From the brief sketch of the cases which have been collated above it appears that they may be divided into the following clinical groups :—(1) Severe cases which end fatally within a comparatively short time. Case 3 may serve as an example of this category. (2) Severe cases which run a more prolonged course, and succumb after one or two relapses. Case 4 and Case 5 may serve as examples of this class. (3) Sharp attacks of fever, which last for a comparatively short time, convalescence being rapidly established without any or after a slight relapse only. These cases have none of the usual complications of the subacute and chronic cases. Cases 1 and 2 are types of this group. (4) Cases which begin acutely, but which become subacute or chronic. Frequent relapses are usual. They last often for many months, and are complicated with orchitis, severe neuralgias, joint pains and profuse perspirations. They recover eventually. Cases 6, 7, 8, and 9 belong to this category.

Having thus framed our clinical groups we may now inquire what is the nature of the agglutinating curve in each group. In the first group the agglutinins are present in the blood only in small quantity throughout the course of the disease, a 100-fold dilution being the highest in which complete sedimentation was observed in the only case in this category which we have had the opportunity of observing. In the second group the agglutinins may be present in large quantity in the early period of the disease, but almost disappear from the blood some time before death. In the case which falls under this category at one time such a high dilution as 1,300-fold gave complete sedimentation, whereas at death the highest dilution giving this reaction was 50-fold. In the third group the agglutinating substances are present in large quantity early in the disease. The amount remains about constant till convalescence is established. The average of the highest dilutions in the cases of

this category was about 2,000-fold. Finally, in the fourth group the agglutinins are found in the blood in large quantity in the initial stage, but fall to a much lower and variable amount during the later stages, the average which then gives complete sedimentation being about 300-fold dilution. The contrast between the evolution of these substances in Group 3 and Group 4 is especially worthy of note.

These results substantiate as far as they go, the inferences which Durham [1] has drawn from a series of observations carried out on rabbits and guinea-pigs infected by means of intra-cerebral inoculation of micrococcus Melitensis. This observer showed that in these animals: (*a*) rapidly fatal infections do not lead to a development of agglutinins in any large quantity in the blood; (*b*) infections in which the animals survive a longer time but ultimately die, may be divided into two groups—(1) those in which the amount of agglutinins, at one time comparatively large, diminishes greatly before death, and (2) those in which the quantity of the agglutinating substances remains comparatively high up to death; and (*c*) infections in which the animals survive may lead to either a great or small production of agglutinins. It will thus be seen that our observations on man coincide with those of Durham on animals in all points but one—namely, that we have no cases to correspond to those constituting Durham's class (*b*) (2), cases, that is, in which the agglutinins were present in comparatively large quantity at death.

Value of an Estimation of the Agglutinating Substances as an Aid to Prognosis.

A cursory study of the cases which have been detailed above and the charts of which are appended will be sufficient to make it apparent that a single estimation of the agglutinins at any one time during the course of an attack of Malta fever would not yield much information as to the severity of the case, nor would it serve as a guide as to its future progress. Further, even a series of observations without an accompanying knowledge of the main clinical features of the case would not justify the observer in forming an opinion as to the probable issue of the case. On the other hand, a series of observations in conjunction with a knowledge of the clinical symptoms would afford much valuable help in arriving at a prognosis. From the data collated above, and from the inferences we have drawn from these data, it would appear to us that the following conclusions are justified: (1) An unfavourable prognosis would be suggested in those cases which are severe from the outset and have a persistently low agglutinating reaction. In such cases the prognosis would no doubt be already indicated by the clinical symptoms, but the fact that the agglutinating power of the blood was low throughout would materially strengthen the clinician in his opinion. (2) We should also be apprehensive of the result in grave attacks in which the agglutination reaction value rapidly falls

[1] Loc. cit.

from a high figure to almost zero. (3) On the other hand, a persistently high and rising agglutination curve sustained well into convalescence would augur an auspicious and speedy ending to the case notwithstanding the acuteness of the symptoms. (4) Finally, a guarded prognosis would seem requisite in those cases in which the amount of agglutinins, at first large, decreases considerably, although the clinical features of the case might not give rise to any anxiety. In such instances a long illness and one complicated with relapses would be anticipated. It is evident that the estimation of the amount of agglutinins present in the blood is the only sure method of deciding whether a case belongs to one or other of the last two categories.

It is interesting and important to note that Courmont of Lyons [1] has arrived at similar conclusions in regard to typhoid fever. This observer investigated the evolution of the agglutinins in fifty-two cases of typhoid fever, and also critically analysed the observations of Widal and Sicard [2] bearing on the same problem. His conclusions are as follows: (1) A large quantity of agglutinins present in the blood is always favourable (the larger it is the better), especially if this coincides with a remission of the temperature. (2) A small quantity of agglutinins with a rise of temperature is always unfavourable. (3) A strong agglutinating power is good at all times in the course of the disease; a low agglutinating power is usually bad, as the latter condition is found either in slight forms with a tendency to relapse or in very severe cases.

In conclusion, it is our pleasant task to have to thank Professor Wright and Major D. Semple for placing at our disposal the records of many observations and experiments done by them in this laboratory.

[1] Courmont: *Sero Pronostic de la Fièvre Typhoïde*, 1897, and *Presse Médicale*, No. 2, January 5, 1898.

[2] *Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*, May 25, 1897, p. 403.

Observations bearing on the Question of the Influence which is exerted by the Agglutinins in the Infected Organism.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Captain George Lamb, M.B. (I.M.S.).

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, Army Medical School, Netley.

The question as to how far the production of specific agglutinating and sedimenting substances stands in relation to the process of immunisation is a question which is manifestly of the highest moment. That there must be some relation between the production of agglutinins and the production of immunity appears certain, not only from the fact that bacteria undergo distortion and become immobilized under the influence of their corresponding agglutinins, but also from the fact that the bacteria in question are inhibited in their growth when they are transferred to a highly agglutinative culture medium. If nothing else had been elicited concerning the agglutinins, these facts would of themselves suffice to show that agglutinins are "*bacteriotropic*" [2] and anti-bacterial substances.

About this particular point, therefore, there would appear to be no controversy. Widely divergent views have, however, been expressed on the question as to how far the agglutinins exert an influence in warding off a bacterial invasion and in restraining the growth of such bacteria as may before the production of agglutinins have established themselves in the interior of the organism. We do not propose here to enter into consideration of all the arguments which have been advanced with the view of showing that no sensible influence in restraining the growth of bacteria is exerted by agglutinins in the organism. We propose here to confine ourselves to the consideration of the argument that the agglutinins must be inoperative *in vivo*, inasmuch as the bacillus typhosus or the micrococcus Melitensis, as the case may be, continues to cultivate itself in the organism long subsequent to the appearance of agglutinins in the blood. We may begin by pointing out that the conclusion that the agglutinins are inoperative *in vivo* is forced upon us only if it can be established for a

[1] Reprinted from the *Lancet*, Dec. 23, 1899.

[2] The term "*bacteriotropic*," which is here employed, is formed upon the analogy of the terms "neurotropic," etc., which have been introduced by Ehrlich. The affix "tropic" as thus used signifies the property of "turning towards" and of entering into chemical composition with.

certainty that the micro-organisms which cultivate themselves in the organism are, as a matter of fact, cultivating themselves in the presence of agglutinins. Now this is a question which is capable of being resolved by a quantitative determination of the amount of agglutinins in the organs in which the micro-organisms are cultivating themselves. The observations which we have made in connexion with this question are as follows.

Case 1.—The patient had a very severe attack of typhoid fever and died during the third week. At the necropsy, held twenty-four hours [1] after death, the typhoid bacillus was isolated in pure culture from the spleen. 12 grammes of splenic substance were extracted with an equal weight of normal saline solution. The amount of agglutinating substance in the clear filtrate which was obtained from the above was quantitatively determined in sedimentation tubes by the method which was described by one of us in the *British Medical Journal* of February 5, 1897. At the same time the agglutinating power of the heart blood was determined in the same manner. The results may be tabulated exactly as follows :—

—	Dilutions.					
	4-fold.	6-fold.	12-fold.	16-fold.	20-fold.	100-fold.
Serum of heart-blood .	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Incomplete
Serum of spleen . . .	Trace	Trace	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*

Note.—A slight inaccuracy has been admitted into these and all the subsequent records, inasmuch as the 12 grammes of spleen which were employed for this experiment are treated here as if they had been the equivalent of 12 grammes of splenic serum. They were in reality the equivalent of only 10 grammes of splenic serum, inasmuch as the solid substances of the spleen amount to about one-sixth of its weight. The difference is manifestly one which is not worth taking into account in view of the considerable differences which are revealed in the tables of results.

Case 2.—The patient had a typical attack of typhoid fever. He succumbed about the end of the fourth week. At the necropsy, held twenty-four hours after death, the typhoid bacillus was obtained in pure culture from the spleen. The agglutinins in the heart-blood and in the spleen were estimated in the same manner as in the first case. The following were the results :—

—	Dilutions.					
	10-fold.	20-fold.	40-fold.	100-fold.	150-fold.	200-fold.
Serum of heart-blood .	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Incomplete
Serum of spleen . . .	Incomplete	Trace	Trace	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*

[1] In view of the fact that this and all the subsequent observations were made in the winter months, when the temperature of the dead house was very low—so

Case 3.—The patient died after a short typical attack of typhoid fever. At the necropsy, which took place twenty hours after death, Peyer's patches were found to be much swollen and congested. They were not ulcerated. The bacillus typhosus was recovered in pure culture from the spleen. The agglutinins were quantitatively estimated (by the same methods as were employed above) in the heart blood, spleen, and in the Peyer's patches. The estimation of the agglutinins in the spleen miscarried through an accident. The results obtained on the heart blood and in the extract from the Peyer's patches are given below :—

—	Dilutions.					
	8-fold.	16-fold.	20-fold.	50-fold.	80-fold.	100-fold.
Serum of heart blood .	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Incomplete
Serum from Peyer's patches	Incomplete	Traces	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*

Case 4.—The patient suffered from a continued fever. This fever was during life diagnosed as typhoid only by the agglutination reaction, Death occurred suddenly five days after the fall of temperature. At the necropsy, which was conducted twenty-four hours after death, the bacillus typhosus was obtained in pure culture from the spleen, which was absolutely normal in appearance. The agglutinins in the blood and spleen were estimated as above. The following are the results :—

—	Dilutions.				
	4-fold.	8-fold.	16-fold.	20-fold.	50-fold.
Serum of heart blood . .	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete
Serum of spleen . . .	Trace	Trace	Trace	*Nil*	*Nil*

—	Dilutions.			
	100-fold.	150-fold.	200-fold.	300-fold.
Serum of heart blood . .	Complete	Incomplete	Incomplete	Traces
Serum of spleen . . .	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*

Case 5.—The patient succumbed to a severe attack of Malta fever which ran a comparatively short course. Death took place in the third

low, in fact, that it held in check the growth of all putrefactive micro-organisms—it would appear justifiable to assume that the results which are exhibited above cannot have been due to any *post mortem* cultivation of typhoid bacilli in the spleen. *Vide* also in this connexion note to Observations 5 and 6.

week of the disease. A necropsy was made twelve hours after death.[1] The micrococcus Melitensis was obtained in pure culture both from heart blood and spleen. It was obtained in small quantities from the former, and in relatively large quantities from the latter. The estimation of the agglutinins in heart blood and spleen was carried out in the same manner as in previous cases. The results were as under :—

	Dilutions.					
	4-fold.	10-fold.	20-fold.	50-fold.	100-fold.	200-fold
Serum of heart blood .	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Incomplete
Serum of spleen . . .	Traces	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*

Case 6.—The patient suffered from a severe and long-continued attack of Malta fever. Death took place five and a half months after the commencement of the disease. At the necropsy, conducted eighteen hours after death, the micrococcus Melitensis was obtained in pure culture from spleen and heart-blood. The bacteria in the blood were few, while they were plentiful in the spleen. The estimation of the agglutinins, which was conducted as above, gave the following results :—

—	Dilutions.						
	5-fold.	10-fold.	20-fold.	50-fold.	100-fold.	200-fold.	400-fold.
Serum of heart-blood	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Incomplete	*Nil*	*Nil*
Serum of spleen	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	—	—	—	—

The above observations would appear clearly to establish that the spleen in the case of typhoid and Malta fever is much poorer in agglutinating substances than the circulating blood. So far as the spleen in typhoid fever is concerned our observations merely confirm what had previously been established by Courmont in the course of a research which he instituted with a view to determining the distribution of agglutinins in various parts of the body. The research in question showed that in nine cases of typhoid fever examined *post mortem* the agglutinating power of the spleen juice was in every case much less than that of the heart blood. This fact, which was arrived at by us independently in following

[1] In view of the fact that the results here and in the next case are similar in all points to the results obtained in the case of typhoid fever it is obvious that the inference which is drawn in Note 2 above is justified. For the results which are obtained here cannot be explained as being the results of a *post-mortem* cultivation of the bacteria in the spleen. This interpretation of the results is inadmissible in view of the fact that the *post-mortem* examination was here undertaken only twelve hours after death and that we are here dealing with a micro-organism which can hardly develop at all at temperatures below 37° C.

up an entirely different line of inquiry, seems to us to acquire a fundamental importance in view of its bearing on the question of the effect exerted by the agglutinins *in vivo*.

We may therefore proceed to consider the general bearing of the conclusion arrived at above, that the micro-organisms of typhoid and Malta fever cultivate themselves in the interior of the infected organism in a medium which is relatively poor in agglutinins. We may consider in this connexion, first, the case in which a relatively large number of bacteria are introduced into the subcutaneous tissue of a man or animal whose blood and lymph contain sensible quantities of agglutinins.

Before we embark upon this question we shall do well to place before ourselves two facts. First, we must note that when we introduce bacteria into an agglutinative medium we effect a corresponding reduction in the agglutinative power of that medium, inasmuch as the agglutinins enter into chemical combination with the bacteria. Secondly, we must note that when the mass effect of the agglutinins in any medium is reduced beyond a certain minimum an agglutinative effect is no longer exerted by that medium. A plasma or lymph whose agglutinative power is reduced below a certain minimum [1] may therefore for our present purposes be regarded as a non-agglutinative fluid.

Keeping these points in view, we are now in position to consider what will probably happen when a large number of bacteria are subcutaneously introduced into an organism which contains agglutinins. Here and throughout this paper we may, in considering the particular case of the agglutinins, bear in mind that we may draw inferences from what happens in the case of these to what will happen in the case of other anti-bacterial substances. It will be manifest that the bacteria when subcutaneously introduced will come in contact in the first instance only with the agglutinins which are contained in that quantum of lymph which occupies the meshes of that portion of the subcutaneous tissue which is the seat of infection. If now the bacteria have been injected in sufficient quantities to abstract from the lymph all, or what for our purpose amounts to all, the agglutinins that lymph will be converted into a non-agglutinative medium. Within "the non-agglutinative envelope" which will thus have been formed such of the bacteria as have not been chemically affected by the agglutinins will be able to cultivate themselves perfectly unchecked, so far at least as any influence on the part of the blood is concerned. It may be urged

[1] The minimum concentration in which a lymph or serum will agglutinate may thus and *à priori* be expected to vary according as the micro-organisms which are exposed to it are virulent or attenuated bacteria. In the case of the former variety of bacteria—i.e., in the case of the variety of bacteria which are most adapted for preserving their vitality in the interior of the animal organism—we must assume that the cohesive forces which hold together the bacterial protoplasm are relatively more powerful. They are therefore more capable of resisting the disruptive force which is exerted on the bacterial protoplasm by the chemical affinity of the agglutinins or certain elements of that protoplasm. This *à priori* deduction is in conformity with the balance of experience, which is, we think, to the effect that a greater concentration of serum is required when virulent bacteria are to be agglutinated.

that, seeing that the agglutinins which have been abstracted will be replaced either by the diffusion of others from the blood into the lymph or, failing that, by the transudation through the capillary wall of an agglutinative lymph, it will very soon come about that the bacteria in the tissue will again be exposed to the full *bacteriotropic pressure* of the blood. But consideration will show that where the bacteria have been introduced in relatively considerable quantities and where the agglutinative power of the blood, is relatively low the passage of agglutinins outwards from the blood into the lymph will not under ordinary circumstances [1] suffice to keep up the agglutinative power of the lymph. For agglutinins will be abstracted from the lymph *pari passu* with the increase of the bacteria which will be taking place.

At this stage we may pause for a moment to consider the bearing of these considerations on the prognosis and therapeutics of local bacterial invasions. First, with regard to prognosis. The prognosis will, in conformity with the above considerations, be *pro tanto* good wherever the seat of infection becomes hot. For this local rise of temperature and the bright red colouration will be indicative of an increased afflux of arterial blood and of a correspondingly increased lymph-flow. Under conditions such as these the bacteria will not readily find an opportunity of establishing round themselves a non-bacteriotropic envelope. The prognosis will, on the contrary, be serious when local temperature falls, and whenever cyanosis is developed at the seat of infection. For this will be indicative of an arrested or lessened arterial supply and of a consequent stagnation of lymph in the tissue. Under these conditions the bacteria will readily be able to establish round themselves a non-bacteriotropic envelope and within this will be able to cultivate themselves unrestrained.

Next with regard to therapeutic measures. The facts which have been considered above bring out very clearly that even where a sufficiency of effective anti-bacterial substances are contained in the blood the invading bacteria may none the less gain the upper hand if these anti-bacterial substances are not poured in a continuous stream through the invaded tissue so as everywhere to envelop the invading micro-organisms. This inference is in agreement, not only with the results of experiments on animals, but with the therapeutic principle which has been established

[1] We may remark in passing that if this holds true of the bacteria which lie free in the meshes of the subcutaneous tissue it will *à fortiori* hold true of bacteria which have been enclosed in a collodion bag. It does not appear to have been sufficiently realized by the observers who have employed these collodion bags in their experiments that a collodion membrane must inevitably, while it holds back the white blood corpuscles, also restrain the lymph stream which would otherwise be passing over the bacteria. Now it appears to us quite possible that it may be this restraint of the lymph stream rather than the holding back of the white blood corpuscle which is the operative factor in favouring the growth of the bacteria. These same considerations would apply also to the enveloping pellets of agar which were employed by Vaillard in his well-known experiments with tetanus.

by experience in the case of man, that exposure to cold exerts a prejudicial effect by increasing the susceptibility to infection, while the application of heat, either in the form of hot fomentations or in any other form, exerts a beneficial effect on local bacterial invasion. The explanation of this prejudicial influence of cold is to be found in the fact that it arrests the lymph stream and thus permits of the bacteria cultivating themselves in a non-bacteriotropic medium. The contrary good effect of heat is explained by assuming that it increases the lymph stream, and that it does so is shown by its effect in raising a blister.

Having briefly glanced at these questions, we may now turn back and consider what is the bearing of the fact that micro-organisms cultivate themselves in the infected organism in a non-agglutinative medium, upon the phenomena which come under observation when the bacteria, which have introduced them into the subcutaneous tissue, are carried on by the lymph stream into the blood. We may in this connexion with advantage consider what is the probable sequence of events when at the very outset of a typhoid or Malta fever attack the bacteria are carried on into the blood. At the particular stage we may assume that in a person who has not been previously immunised the agglutinins, if they are present at all, will be present only in very small quantities. Consequently we may assume that some at least of the invading bacteria will pass through the blood-stream quite unharmed. These will, in conformity with the general law which obtains when bacteria are introduced in the blood stream, be deposited in the spleen and other internal organs. Having definitely established a lodgment there the bacteria will grow out into colonies, and each of these colonies will as it grows establish round itself a non-agglutinative envelope. As the result of this, and we have seen that the inference has been confirmed, the spleen will as a whole contain less agglutinative substances than the circulating blood. We may further assume that as the fever develops, and as the agglutinins and other anti-bacterial substances are produced in greater quantities, a period will arrive when the agglutinins will be present in the blood in sufficient concentration to permit of their penetrating and abolishing the non-agglutinative envelopes which surround individual colonies. This done, the production of toxins will be arrested and the temperature will fall.

But if when this was effected there happened to remain over somewhere in the organism, shut off, for instance, in a capillary which had become blocked or in some other part which was not freely permeated by the blood stream or the lymph stream, a single bacterial colony, conditions would obviously exist which might afterwards lead on either to a relapse or to secondary local inflammatory process. For the bacteria, sheltered as they would be in the interior of such a *non-bacteriotropic nidus*, might go on cultivating themselves there until they had, as occurs before relapses in typhoid and Malta fever, modified the blood in such a manner as to render it less agglutinative. Such is the mental picture or theory of the typhoid and Malta fever process which is suggested to us by our

observations. We have endeavoured to test the theory by controlling, so far as opportunity offered, the deductions which can be drawn from this theory by actual observations. With a view to doing this we endeavoured to determine whether the characteristic distribution of the bacillus typhosus in the infected organism (absence of the bacillus from the circulating blood and growth of the bacillus in discrete colonies in the spleen and other internal organs and in the typhoid spots) can be satisfactorily explained in conformity with the theory. The first point which attracts attention here is the absence of the bacillus typhosus in blood and the growth of that bacillus in the spleen in the form of discrete colonies. As we have seen from the comparative estimation of the agglutinins in the blood and spleen, this distribution accords well with the assumption that the agglutinins are an effective factor in checking the growth of the bacillus. It, however, appeared desirable further to test the correctness of this hypothesis, and it appeared that light might be thrown upon the question by determining whether in those septicaemic diseases in which bacteria ordinarily run riot all over the organism the bacteria would, after the introduction of anti-bacterial substances, be found to survive only in the form of discrete colonies in the organs. Opportunities for determining this point presented themselves in connexion with certain experiments which were made by one of us in conjunction with Lieutenant W. Glen Liston, I.M.S., on the effects of the introduction of Roux's anti-plague serum into the organism of plague-infected guinea-pigs. It was determined in the experiments in question that in the case of animals which had received sufficient quanta of serum such plague bacilli as survived were to be found only in discrete colonies in the organs. In the untreated control guinea-pigs the bacilli were, as usual, found in countless numbers in the circulating blood and all over the body. It would appear that the hypothesis enunciated above wins support from these observations. With regard to the question as to whether the cultivation of the bacillus typhosus in the typhoid spots was or was not, as in the case of the cultivation of this bacillus in the spleen, to be regarded as a cultivation which is taking place in a non-agglutinative medium, it seemed possible to learn something by making comparative estimations of the agglutinating power of the blood from the finger-tip and of the mixture of blood and lymph which can be obtained by puncturing and pressing the typhoid spots. We have had only three opportunities of applying this test to the theory. In each case we made a comparative estimation of the agglutinating power of (*a*) the serum derived from a typhoid spot, and (*b*) the serum derived in the ordinary way from the finger-tip of the patient in question. The result of these comparative estimations (made in capillary sedimentation tubes by methods employed above) were as follows :—

CASE 1.

	Dilutions.				
	12-fold.	24-fold.	48-fold.	96-fold.	192-fold.
Serum from typhoid spots	Incomplete but marked	Incomplete but marked	Trace	*Nil*	*Nil*
Serum from finger-tip	Complete	Nearly complete	Incomplete but very well marked	Incomplete but very well marked	Incomplete but distinct

CASE 2.—*Child, beginning of the Second Week of Fever; Delirious; Copious Eruptions of Rose Spots: very marked Improvement supervened twenty-four hours after.*

	Dilutions.						
	12-fold.	24-fold.	48-fold.	96-fold.	192-fold.	384-fold.	768-fold.
Serum from typhoid spots	Reaction marked	Marked	Trace	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*	*Nil*
Serum from finger-tip . .	Reaction complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Trace

CASE 3.—*Child; beginning of the Second Week of Fever; Mild Attack; Copious Eruptions.*

	Dilutions.				
	12-fold.	24-fold.	48-fold.	96-fold.	192-fold.
Serum from typhoid spots	Mere trace	Mere trace	Mere trace	*Nil*	*Nil*
Serum from finger-tip	Complete	Complete	Complete	Trace	*Nil*

It will be seen that these observations, so far as they go, confirm the correctness of the theory enunciated.

On the Bactericidal Effect exerted by Human Blood on certain Species of Pathogenic Micro-organisms,

And on the Anti-bactericidal Effects obtained by the Addition to the Blood in vitro of Dead Cultures of Micro-organisms in Question [1]

By A. E. Wright and Captain F. N. Windsor, I.M.S.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, Army Medical School, Netley.

I. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood as affecting the Bacillus Typhosus and Spirillum Cholerae Asiaticae—II. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood as affecting the Staphylococcus Pyogenes—III. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood as affecting the Bacillus Pestis—IV. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood and the Micrococcus Melitensis—Conclusions.

The fact that the blood of ordinary laboratory animals exerts a very marked bactericidal effect upon the *Bacillus typhosus* and the *Spirillum cholerae asiaticae*, while it exerts little or no effect upon the *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes*, has hardly received the attention which it would seem to merit, in view of the circumstance that these facts involve the important problem as to whether the blood exerts its bactericidal action upon pathogenic organisms generally, or only upon certain species of such micro-organisms.

We have addressed ourselves to the task of re-investigating this general problem by the aid of the methods of bactericidal estimation which have been elsewhere described by one of us,[2] conducting our experiments upon human blood, and drawing within the sphere of our observation, not only the micro-organisms particularized above, but also the micrococcus Melitensis of Bruce and the *bacillus pestis*.

I. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood as affecting the Bacillus Typhosus and Spirillum Cholerae Asiaticae.

We may begin by setting forth certain data in connexion with the bactericidal power of human blood upon the *bacillus typhosus*, and

[1] Reprinted from the *Journal of Hygiene*, Vol. II., No. 4, Oct., 1902.
[2] *Lancet*, June 1, 1901, p. 1,532; *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, Vol. 71.

TABLE I.—*Exhibiting* (a) *the Bacterial Action exerted by Human Serum on Bacillus Typhosus, and* (b) *the Anti-bactericidal Effect obtained by the Addition of a Sterilized Typhoid Culture to the Mixture of Serum and Living Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Typhoid Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with Mixture of											
	2 vols. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 33,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. H. B.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 220,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		2 vols. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 210,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. H. B.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 220,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 260,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 540,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Culture which contained 210,000,000 *T.B.*	1 vol. Sterile Broth	1 vol. Sterilized Dead Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Culture which conta ned 260,000,000 *T.B.*	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.
Undiluted . .	Growth	—	Growth	—	Growth	—	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilut.	,,	Growth	,,	Growth	,,	Growth	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	—	—	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Growth	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

F. N. W. and H. B. were normal men. A. E. W. had nine months previously, and also on previous occasions, undergone anti-typhoid inoculation.

In every case, both in this and in the subsequent tables, the serum was employed within two or three hours after the blood had been drawn off.

In every case, both in this and in the subsequent tables, the living cultures employed were, unless otherwise stated, twenty-four hour old broth cultures.

Here and in the subsequent tables the sterilized bacterial cultures employed had been sterilized by exposure to a temperature of about 60°–65° C. for ten to twenty minutes.

Here and in the subsequent tables the sera were allowed to act upon the bacteria with which they were mixed for eighteen to twenty-four hours at 37° C. before the effect was tested.

In every case the term "growth" denotes that the growth obtained presented the characters of a pure cultivation of the micro-organism employed in the test. In cases of doubt the purity of the culture was tested by subcultures and microscopical examination. Where contaminations were found the series of experiments was in almost every instance rejected. Where such a series is retained the fact that a contamination was found is in each case specifically mentioned.

TABLE II.—*Exhibiting the Anti-bactericidal Effects produced by the Addition to a Mixture of Serum and Living Typhoid Culture of Filtrates from Typhoid Cultures.*

Dilutions in which the Living Typhoid Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with						
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 76,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c. and				1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of living Culture which contained 76,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Filtrate from a 24 hours Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Filtrate from a 5 months old Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. same 5 months old Typhoid Culture unfiltered.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Filtrate rom a 24 hour Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Filtrate from a 5 months old Typhoid Culture.
2-fold dilution .	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Sterile	Growth	Growth
5 „ „	Sterile[1]	„	„	„	„	„	„
10 „ „	Growth	„	„	„	„	Sterile	„
25 „ „	Sterile	Sterile	„	„	„	„	Sterile
50 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
100 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
1,000 „ „	„	„	Sterile	Sterile	„	„	Contamination[2]
10,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	Sterile
100,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
1,000,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	—

With regard to F. N. W. and A. E. W. and general condition of the experiments, see notes to Table I.

[1] Sterility of the tube probably due to accidental overheating. [2] Staphylococcus.

with regard to the "anti-bactericidal effect" obtained by the introduction of a sterilized culture of the typhoid bacillus into human blood *in vitro*.[1]

A point of incidental interest here suggests itself in connexion with the question as to what is the element in the sterilized culture which exerts the anti-bactericidal effect exemplified in Table I.

The experiments subjoined in Table II are typical examples of a number of experiments instituted with a view to the determination of this question.

These results show that a filtrate from a young culture of B. typhosus exerts little or no anti-bactericidal effect; while a filtrate from an old culture which contains in solution elements derived from the dissolution of the typhoid bacilli exerts a very marked anti-bactericidal effect. Of particular interest are the results in columns 3 and 4, which show that the filtrate derived from a culture in which the bacilli had been macerating at 37° C. for a period of five months, diminished the bactericidal power of the serum with which it was mixed to exactly the same degree as the unfiltered culture.

Passing to the consideration of the bactericidal effect exerted by human serum upon the cholera vibrio, we subjoin a selection of typical experiments illustrating on the one hand the bactericidal effect exerted upon the cholera vibrio, and on the other hand, the diminution of bactericidal power which is achieved by the addition of a sterilized cholera culture to a mixture of serum and living cholera culture.

It will be manifest from a comparison of the experiments in Table I and Table III that the bactericidal and anti-bactericidal effects proceed on precisely the same lines whether we are employing a culture of typhoid or a culture of cholera.

It becomes, therefore, a point of interest to determine whether a diminution of the bactericidal effect exerted on the typhoid bacillus is obtained by the addition of a sterilized cholera culture to the mixture of serum and living typhoid culture; and *vice versâ* whether a diminution of the bactericidal effect exerted on the cholera vibrio is obtained by the addition of a sterilized typhoid culture to a mixture of serum and living cholera vibrios.

Tables IV and V, which show the effect invariably obtained in our experiments, supply the answer to this question.

As shown in the Tables IV and V, taken in conjunction with Tables I and III, the anti-bactericidal effect which is in each case obtained, is obtained indifferently with either variety of sterilized culture. We

[1] Data with regard to the first of these points have already been set forth by one of us in a paper published in the *Lancet*, September 14, 1901, p. 715, dealing with the changes produced in the blood by anti-typhoid inoculation. The second of these questions has also been briefly adverted to in the same journal, June 1, 1901, p. 1534, in connexion with a suggestion that the anti-bactericidal effect exerted might serve as a criterion for the standardization of bacterial vaccines.

TABLE III.—*Exhibiting* (a) *the Bactericidal Effect exerted by Serum on a 24-hour old Culture of the Cholera Vibrio, and* (*b*) *the Anti-bactericidal Effect achieved by the addition of a Sterilized Cholera Culture to the Mixture of Serum and Living Cholera Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Cholera Culture was employed.	Capillary Tubes were filled with							
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 240,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 45,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. Serum of Rabbit No. 1, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 45,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. Serum of Rabbit No. 2, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Culture which contained 45,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,

With regard to F. N. W. and A. E. W. see notes to Table I.

Rabbit 1 had been inoculated with one tube of typhoid bacillus.

Rabbit 2 ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, cholera vibrio.

TABLE IV.—*Exhibiting* (a) *the Bactericidal Effect exerted on a Typhoid Culture, and* (b) *the Diminution of that Effect which is achieved by the Addition of a Sterilized Cholera Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Typhoid Culture was employed.	Capillary Tubes were filled with							
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of 24-hour old Living Broth Culture of the Typhoid Bacillus, and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of 24-hour old Living Broth Culture of the Typhoid Bacillus, and		1 vol. Serum of Rabbit 1, 1 vol. Dilution of a 24-hour old Living Broth Culture of the Typhoid Bacillus, and		1 vol. Serum of Rabbit 2, 1 vol. Dilution of 24-hour old Living Broth Culture of the Typhoid Bacillus, and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Cholera Culture.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000,000 ,, ,,	—	—	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

With regard to F. N. W., A. E. W., and Rabbits 1 and 2, see notes to Table III.

TABLE V.—*Exhibiting* (a) *the Bactericidal Effect exerted on a Cholera Culture, and* (b) *the Diminution of that Effect produced by the Addition of a Sterilized Typhoid Culture.*

Dilutions of the Living Cholera Culture which were employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with							
	1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture which contained 466,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. Serum of Rabbit 1, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture which contained 85,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. Serum of A. E. W., 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture, and		1 vol. W. G. L.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture containing 2,600,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c. and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Typhoid Culture.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Sterile	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	—	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	—	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	—	—	,,	,,

With regard to A. E. W. and Rabbit No. 1, see notes to Table III.

TABLE VI.—*Exhibiting the Results of the Blood Examinations carried out on Two Rabbits which were Inoculated with similar quantities, in the one case of a Sterilized Typhoid Culture, in the other case of a Sterilized Cholera Culture. These Rabbits are in the table below denoted respectively as the Typhoid Rabbit and the Cholera Rabbit.*

Dilutions of the Living Cultures which were employed in the testings.	Tests carried out immediately antecedent to Inoculation.				Tests carried out 24 hours after Inoculation.			
	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with				Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with			
	1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Typhoid which contained 94,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. Dilution of a very thin Culture of Cholera and		1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Typhoid which contained 446,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. Dilution of a very thin Culture of Cholera and	
	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile
10 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,			

TABLE VI—(*continued*).

Dilutions of the Living Cultures which were employed in the testings.	Tests carried out 48 hours after Inoculation.				Tests carried out 14 days after Inoculation.			
	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with				Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with			
	1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Typhoid which contained 324,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Cholera which contained 400,000 *C.V.* per c.c., and		1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Typhoid which contained 480,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. Dilution of a Culture of Cholera which contained 85,000,000 *C.V.* per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Typhoid Rabbit.	1 vol. Serum of Cholera Rabbit.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Sterile	Growth	Growth	Growth	Sterile
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

must consequently assume either that the bactericidal substance in the serum which kills the typhoid bacillus is one and the same substance which kills the cholera vibrio, or alternatively, that the bactericidal substance which kills the cholera vibrio possesses an element in common with the bactericidal substance which kills the typhoid bacillus.

With a view to deciding between these alternatives, we have investigated the question as to whether the inoculation of a full dose of anti-typhoid vaccine, which produces in man a preliminary diminution and subsequent increase in the bactericidal effect exerted on the typhoid bacillus,[1] brings about any similar diminution and increase in the bactericidal effect exerted upon the cholera vibrio.

The following observations bear on the question.

The bloods of three healthy men, who recently came up for prophylactic inoculation with anti-typhoid vaccine, were tested before inoculation, and afterwards, at intervals of a few days, against both the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio. In no case was any indication obtained of an alteration in the bactericidal effect exerted on the cholera vibrio, although the negative and positive phases of diminished and exalted bactericidal power with respect to the typhoid bacillus manifested themselves in a typical manner.

These results confirm those obtained by one of us on two previous patients.

We further investigated the point upon two rabbits inoculated respectively with sterilized cultures of cholera and typhoid.

The results of the blood examinations here made are subjoined in tabular form (Table VI).

A comparison of the first and second testings of the cholera-inoculated rabbit[2] would seem to suggest that an initial reduction of the bactericidal power was exerted upon both species of micro-organisms. It would, in other words, seem to point to the comparability of the immediate effect exerted by the introduction of a sterilized culture of cholera into the animal organism with the effect exerted by the direct introduction of the culture into the serum *in vitro*.

On the other hand, a comparison of the results obtained in the first and last testings of both the typhoid and the cholera-inoculated rabbit will show that the increase of the bactericidal power which was achieved by inoculation was, in each case, an increase only with respect to the particular species of micro-organism which had been inoculated.

The latter datum is for our present purpose the essentially important one of the experiment. It seems to indicate clearly that the bacteri-

[1] Wright, *Lancet*, September 1, 1900, p. 715.

[2] The circumstance that a positive phase of increased bactericidal power was obtained in case of the typhoid rabbit without the intervention of a negative phase of diminished bactericidal power is in accordance with what occurs in man after the inoculation of a relatively small dose of typhoid vaccine (Wright, *Lancet*, September 14, 1901, p. 715).

cidal effects of a serum, at any rate in the case of a serum derived from the immunised animal, is, as is assumed by the theories of Ehrlich and Bordet respectively, achieved by the co-operation of two bactericidal elements, one of these being a chemical agent which exerts an action on more than one species of micro-organism, and the other a chemical agent which is specific for each particular species of micro-organism.

There is, however, nothing to forbid our explaining the bactericidal action of normal serum by the more simple assumption that the non-specific element referred to above (" complement " of Ehrlich," alexin " of Bordet) suffices by itself to exert a bactericidal effect.

From the study of the action of the serum upon the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio, we pass to the consideration of the action of the serum upon the staphylococcus pyogenes.

II. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood as affecting the Staphylococcus pyogenes.

As a preliminary to setting forth our results, we may observe that we have not in our numerous experiments found any difference of behaviour as between the different varieties of the staphylococcus pyogenes. For this reason we have thought it unnecessary to encumber the tables given below by specifying in each case the particular variety of staphylococcus employed. Suffice it to say that these were chiefly cultures of the staphylococcus aureus and albus freshly cultivated from operation wounds, furuncles and sycosis.

We set forth first a series of typical experiments conducted by mixing in capillary testing pipettes in each case one volume of serum and one volume of a progressively increasing dilution of a twenty-four-hour old staphylococcus culture.

It will be manifest that the results set forth in Table VII are in conformity with the results obtained with the blood of animals in the classical researches of Nuttall.[1] They show that human serum does not exert any bactericidal effect whatever upon the staphylococcus ; nay, more, they suggest, and this suggestion is confirmed by direct observation on the colonies grown[2] in capillary testing pipettes filled with equal volumes of serum and gelatine cultures of staphylococcus, that additions of serum exert a favourable influence on the growth of this germ.

Not obtaining any indication of a bactericidal effect exerted in the case of the volume for volume mixture of serum and broth dilutions of staphylococcus cultures, we experimented further, using dilutions of broth cultures made with the serum under examination. In the higher dilutions thus obtained, we are in point of fact dealing with practically undiluted serum.

[1] *Zeitschrift f. Hygiene*, 1888, vol. iv. pp. 353–394.

[2] The technique employed in connexion with the observations here in question was that which was described by one of us in the *Lancet*, December 1, 1900, pp. 1556–1560.

TABLE VII.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained on Cultivating a Mixture of equal volumes of Serum and of a Graduated Dilution of Staphylococcus Culture which had remained in contact for* 18–24 *hours at* 37° C.

Dilutions in which the Living Staphylococcus Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with				
	1 vol. Dilution of Staphylococcus Culture and				
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum.	1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum.	1 vol. W. B. L.'s Serum.	1 vol. J. A.'s Serum.
10-fold dilution .	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
100 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000,000 ,, ,, .	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,

With regard to F. N. W., A. E. W., and the general conditions of the experiments, *see* notes to Table I. W. B. L. was a man in normal health. J. A. had suffered from furunculosis and sycosis barbae for a period of nine years, and had completely recovered after three successive inoculations of a sterilized culture of staphylococcus aureus cultivated from his boils.

TABLE VIII.—*Exhibiting the Results of the Cultivations undertaken in the case of Staphylococcus Cultures diluted* (a) *with Sterile Broth, and* (b) *with Undiluted Serum.*

Dilutions of the Cultures which were employed.	6 day Broth Culture of Staphylococcus		2 day Broth Culture of Staphylococcus		
	diluted with Sterile Broth, then transferred to Nutrient Agar and Incubated.	diluted with A. E. W.'s Serum, digested with this 24 hours at 37° C., and then cultivated in Nutrient Broth.	diluted 1,000,000-fold with Sterile Broth, then transferred to Nutrient Agar and cultivated.	diluted with A. E. W.'s Serum, digested with this 24 hours at 37° C., and then cultivated in Nutrient Broth.	diluted with M. G.'s Serum, digested with this 24 hours at 37° C., and then cultivated in Nutrient Broth.
10-fold dilut.	—	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	—	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
100 ,, ,,	—	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	9 colonies from 25 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
1,000 ,, ,,	—	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	6 colonies from 15 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
10,000 ,, ,,	—	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	6 colonies from 15 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
100,000 ,, ,,	40 colonies developed from 10 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	2 colonies from 10 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
1,000,000 ,, ,,	—	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	0 colonies from 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 5 cmm.
10,000,000 ,, ,,	0 colonies developed from 20 cmm.	Growth obtained from circ. 10 cmm.	0 colonies from 5 cmm.	Sterile	—

M. G. who had been a martyr to furunculosis, had recently undergone three successive therapeutic inoculations with sterilized staphylococcus cultures.

TABLE IX.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained on adding a Sterilized Culture of Staphylococcus to a Mixture of Serum and Living Typhoid Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Typhoid Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with									
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Typhoid Culture, and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Typhoid Culture, and		1 vol. E. A. S.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Typhoid Culture, and		1 vol. W. G. L.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Typhoid Culture, and		1 vol. W. G. L.'s Serum, 1 vo. Dilution of Living Typhoid Culture containing 6,500,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.
2-fold dilution	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
5 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
10 „ „	„	„	Sterile	Sterile	„	„	„	„	„	„
25 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
50 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	Sterile	„	„	„
100 „ „	Sterile	Sterile	„	„	Sterile	„	„	„	„	„
1,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	Sterile	„	Sterile	Sterile	„
10,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„
100,000 „ „	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	„	Sterile

E. A. S. was a man in normal health.

TABLE X.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained when a Sterilized Culture of Staphylococcus is added to a Mixture of Serum and Living Cholera Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Cholera Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with							
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture, and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture, and		1 vol. W. G. L.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture containing 2,600,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. W. B. L.'s Serum, 1 vol. Dilution of Living Cholera Culture containing 21,500,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Staphylococcus Culture.
Undiluted	—	—	—	—	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	—	—	—	—	,,	,,	,,	,,

The method of experimentation adopted was as follows :—Two series of progressive dilutions of the culture were made, the diluents employed being in the one case sterile nutrient broth, and in the other case human serum.

A series of equal volumes of each dilution was measured off into capillary testing pipettes. These measured volumes were in the case of the broth dilutions immediately transferred to the surface of the nutrient agar with a view to the enumeration of the contained staphylococcus. The serum dilutions, on the contrary, were before implantation upon agar digested for twenty-four hours at 37° C. with a view to allowing the serum to exert its full effect upon the micro-organisms.

The results are set forth in Table VIII.

An arithmetical calculation based upon the data set forth in Table VIII indicates that in the first experiment 10 cmm. of practically undiluted serum failed to kill 0·4, and in the second experiment the same quantity of practically undiluted serum failed to kill 3 of the staphylococcus employed.

From the fact that the serum does not exert any bactericidal effect upon the staphylococci, we surmised that no bactericidal substances would be extracted from the serum *in vitro* by the addition of a sterilized culture of staphyloccus.

The substantial correctness of this inference was tested by means of the experiment set forth in Tables IX and X. It must be noted that in these experiments we employed, not as in the experiments set forth in Tables I, III and IV, a sterilized broth culture, but a very dense bacterial suspension made from one or more agar cultures.

It will be seen that with the exception of experiments 3, 4 and 5 in Table IX, where the difference is in each case a very small one, the bactericidal effect exerted was in no case less in the case of the serum which had received an addition of sterilized staphylococcus culture than in the case of the serum which had received only an addition of sterile nutrient broth.

On reviewing the results obtained, we cannot fail to be struck with the sharp contrast between those obtained with the staphylococcus and those obtained with the typhoid bacillus and cholera vibrio.

We have seen (*a*) that the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio are killed off in very large numbers by the normal serum.

(*b*) That sterilized cultures of these micro-organisms when added to the serum *in vitro* extract from this last a bactericidal element.

(*c*) That the introduction of sterilized cultures of these bacteria into the human and animal organism confers upon the animal an increased bactericidal power, with respect to the particular species of micro-organisms inoculated.

On the other hand, we have seen in the case of the staphylococcus :

(*a*) That this micro-organism is favourably, rather than unfavourably, affected by a contact with the normal serum.

TABLE XI.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by cultivating Mixtures of one volume of a Graduated Dilution of a culture of the Bacillus of Plague and one volume of Broth or of Serum.*

Dilutions in which the Living Plague Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with		
	1 vol. Dilution of Living Plague Culture (cultivated 4 days at 37° C.) and		
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum.	1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum.
10-fold dilution . . .	Growth	Growth	Growth
25 „ „ . . .	„	„	„
50 „ „ . . .	„	„	„
100 „ „ . . .	„	„	„
1,000 „ „ . . .	„	„	„
10,000 „ „ . . .	Sterile	„	„
100,000 „ „ . . .	„	Sterile	„

A. E. W. had undergone an inoculation with "half-a-dose" of Haffkine's plague vaccine two years previously.

TABLE XII.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by making Graduated Dilutions of a 2 day old Living Plague Culture, with Sterile Broth and Serum respectively; and incubating one, or in most cases two, 10 cmm. volumes of each Dilution after transference to the surface of Nutrient Agar. This transference was in case of the Serum Dilution postponed for 24 hours. The Capillary Testing Pipettes were in the interval kept at a Temperature of 37° C.*

Dilutions of the Living Plague Culture which were employed.	Number of Colonies which developed on the Nutrient Agar in case of the			
	Dilution made with Sterile Broth.	Dilution made with F. N. W.'s Serum.	Dilution made with A. E. W.'s Serum.	Dilution made with E. A. S.'s Serum.
1,000-fold dilution . .	60	Innumerable	Innumerable	Innumerable
10,000 „ „ (*a*) .	12	„	„	„
10,000 „ „ (*b*) .	14	„	„	„
100,000 „ „ (*a*) .	0	60	40	„
100,000 „ „ (*b*) .	2	50	35	35
1,000,000 „ „ (*a*) .	1	1	1	50
1,000,000 „ „ (*b*) .	1	4	—	50

With regard to A. E. W., see note to Table XI.

(*b*) That sterilized cultures of this micro-organism added to the serum *in vitro* do not, unless possibly to a very small extent, diminish its bactericidal action upon the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio.

Lastly, it would seem from the experiment in the last column of Table VIII, and from certain other observations which will be discussed elsewhere :

(*c*) That the introduction of sterilized cultures of the staphylococcus into the human organism does not confer upon the serum any bactericidal power.

In view of the important bearing of facts such as those just disclosed in connexion with the theory of immunity and in connexion with protective inoculation, we now proceeded to draw within the scope of our inquiry, on the one hand, the bacillus pestis, and on the other hand, the micrococcus Melitensis.

III. Data with regard to the Bactericidal power of the Blood as affecting the Bacillus pestis.

The observations recorded below suggest that, as in the case of the staphylococcus, a favourable rather than an unfavourable influence is exerted upon the plague bacillus by human serum when mixed in equal volumes with a plague culture (see Table XI).

The effect of the serum was further investigated by comparing the number of living plague colonies obtained from equal volumes of progressive dilutions of a plague culture made (*a*) with sterile nutrient broth, and (*b*) with human serum.

The results obtained are set forth in Table XII.

It will be manifest that the results bear testimony to the absence of a bactericidal effect and to a multiplication of the plague bacilli in almost all the serum tubes.

Following out the plan pursued in the case of the other micro-organisms treated of above, we now sought to determine whether any bactericidal element was extracted when a sterilized plague culture was added to a mixture of serum and living typhoid or living cholera culture. The method of investigation was the same as in the staphylococcus experiments (Tables IX and X), a very dense bacterial suspension being made from one or more agar cultures. The results obtained are given in Tables XIII and XIV.

It will be seen that the bactericidal power was practically unaffected by the addition of a sterilized plague culture.

IV. Data with regard to the Bactericidal Power of the Blood and the Micrococcus Melitensis.

The data obtained in the case of the Malta fever micrococcus hardly seem to require anything in the way of verbal comment. They are subjoined in the form of Tables XV to XIX inclusive.

TABLE XIII.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained on adding a Sterilized Culture of the Plague Bacillus to a Mixture of Serum and Living Culture of Typhoid.*

Dilutions of the Living Typhoid Culture which were employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with							
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Living Typhoid Culture containing 3,000,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Living Typhoid Culture containing 3,000,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and		1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Living Typhoid Culture, and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Living Typhoid Culture containing 1,100,000,000 *T.B.* per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
25 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	Sterile[1]	Sterile[1]	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	Growth	Growth	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,, . .	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile
100,000 ,, ,, . .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

[1] The irregularity was probably due to an accidental overheating of the tube.

TABLE XIV.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by the Addition of a Sterilized Plague Culture to a Mixture of Serum and Living Culture of Cholera.*

Dilutions in which the Living Culture of Cholera was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with							
	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 18,000,000, Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 18,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Living Cholera. Culture containing 44,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 44,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c., and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized Plague Culture.
Undiluted culture	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

TABLE XV.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained on cultivating equal volumes of Serum and Diluted Micrococcus Melitensis Culture which had remained in contact at* 37° C. *for* 24 *hours.*

Dilutions in which the Living Malta Fever Culture was employed	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with				
	1 vol. of a 4-day-old Broth Culture of Micrococcus Melitensis, and				
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum.	1 vol. W. B. L.'s Serum.	1 vol. A. B.'s Serum.	1 vol. J. W.'s Serum.
10-fold dilution .	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
25 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000,000 ,, ,, .	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile

TABLE XVI.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by cultivating at 25° C. in Capillary Tubes equal Volumes of Serum and Diluted Gelatine Culture of the Micrococcus Melitensis.*

Dilutions of the Gelatine Culture which were employed.	Capillary Tubes were filled in with 1 volume of the Culture of Micrococcus Melitensis diluted with Nutrient Gelatine (15% Gelatine) and		
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum.	1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum.
	No. of Colonies which developed in the Tubes.	No. of Colonies which developed in the Tubes.	No. of Colonies which developed in the Tubes.
10-fold dilution . . .	Innumerable	Innumerable	Innumerable
100 ,, ,, . . .	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, . . .	100 (circ.)	100 (circ.)	100 (circ.)
10,000 ,, ,, . . .	17	20	14
100,000 ,, ,, . . .	15	23	20
1,000,000 ,, ,, . . .	3	6	4

The capillary tubes were filled in and the colonies in them were counted under the microscope by the technique described by one of us in the *Lancet*, December 1, 1900, pp. 1556–1560.

TABLE XVII.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by diluting a 4 day old Culture of the Micrococcus Melitensis with Sterile Broth and Human Serum respectively, and by cultivating 10 cmm., or, where specified, 5 cmm., of each Dilution, on Nutrient Agar. The transference to Nutrient Agar was in the case of the Serum Dilutions postponed for 24 hours. During this interval the Capillary Testing Pipettes were kept at 37° C.*

Dilutions in which the Culture was employed.	Number of Colonies which developed in the case of the			
	Dilutions of Culture No. 1 made with Sterile Broth.	Dilutions of Culture No. 1 made with F. N. W.'s Serum	Dilutions of Culture No. 2 made with Sterile Broth.	Dilutions of Culture No. 2 made with A. E. W.'s Serum.
100-fold dilution . .	—	Innumerable	—	—
1,000 „ „ . .	—	„	—	—
10,000 „ „ (*a*) .	Innumerable	„	—	Innumerable
10,000 „ „ (*b*) .	—	„	—	„
100,000 „ „ (*a*) .	Innumerable	„	113	100 (circ.)
100,000 „ „ (*b*) .	—	„	68	—
1,000,000 „ „ (*a*) .	50	„	15	50 (5 cmm.)
1,000,000 „ „ (*b*) .	—	„	1	—
10,000,000 „ „ . .	1	80	—	—

TABLE XVIII.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by the addition of a Sterilized Dense Suspension of the Micrococcus Melitensis to a Mixture of Serum and Living Typhoid Culture.*

Dilutions in which the Living Typhoid Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with									
	1 vol. Living Typhoid Culture, 1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Typhoid Culture, 1 vol. E. A. S.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Typhoid Culture, 1 vol. W. B. L.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Typhoid Culture, 1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Typhoid Culture, 1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vo . Sterile Broth.	1 vo . Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.
Undiluted culture . .	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,, .	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile
10,000 ,, ,, .	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

TABLE XIX.—*Exhibiting the Results obtained by the Addition of a Sterilized Dense Suspension of the Micrococcus Melitensis to a Mixture of Serum and Living Cholera Culture.*

Dilutions in which Living Cholera Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled with									
	1 vol. Living Cholera Culture, 1 vol. E. A. S.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 18,000,000 C. vibrios per c.c. 1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum and		1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 18,000,000 C. Vibrios per c.c., 1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 44,000,000 C. Vibrios per c.c., 1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, and		1 vol. Living Cholera Culture containing 44,000,000 C. Vibrios per c.c., 1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, and	
	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.	1 vol. Sterile Broth.	1 vol. Sterilized M.M. Culture.
Undiluted culture . .	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution .	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,
5 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile
25 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,, .	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,
100 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,, .	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

Tables XV and XVI show that human serum, when mixed volume for volume with cultures of micrococcus Melitensis, is without action upon this micro-organism.

Table XVII establishes that even the undiluted serum is entirely without bactericidal action, and that a multiplication of the micro-organism may take place in this medium.

Tables XVIII and XIX establish that the anti-bactericidal effect exerted by the addition of a dense suspension of micrococcus Melitensis upon human serum is quite insignificant.

Conclusions.

On reviewing the experimental data which we have set forth, it would seem clear that—

1. Human serum exerts a powerful bactericidal effect upon the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio, while it is without bactericidal action upon the staphylococcus pyogenes, B. pestis, micrococcus Melitensis, (and, so far as we have gone) upon the streptococcus pyogenes and B. diphtheriae.

2. Sterilized cultures of those species of pathogenic micro-organisms which are killed by the serum, appear, in contra-distinction to those species of micro-organisms which are not affected by the serum, to possess the power of directly abstracting a bactericidal element from the blood.

The first of these generalizations appears to possess a far-reaching significance in connexion with the general theory of immunity.

(*a*) It has an obvious bearing on the question of the mechanism by which bacteria are destroyed in the organism.

(*b*) It also bears on the question as to whether the bactericidal action is acquired only after withdrawal from the organism, and after the disintegration of leucocytes.

For it would seem difficult to assume that the bactericidal power of the serum is only a particular manifestation of a digestive power originally resident in the leucocyte, when we have realized that the serum exerts a bactericidal action only on particular species of micro-organisms, while the leucocyte exerts a digestive action on bacteria generally.

The second of the generalizations arrived at above would seem to point to the bactericidal effects being the result of definite chemical combinations occurring between the bactericidal substance or substances in the blood and the affected bacteria.

In conclusion, reference may be made to a possible relation between the danger or relative absence of danger associated with the hypodermic inoculation of different species of bacteria, and the effect or absence of effect of the blood upon these micro-organisms. A notable contrast obtains in this respect between the event of inoculations of cholera and typhoid on the one hand, and plague and Malta fever on the other hand.

While inoculation with living cultures of cholera is, as has been

shown in connexion with Haffkine's anticholera inoculations, practically unassociated with risk, and while inoculations with small quantities of living typhoid bacilli are—judging from the event of an experimental inoculation undertaken by one of us, and from the immunity from accident which has attended wholesale manipulations with this micro-organism —associated with only slight risk, the results are quite other in the case of even minimal inoculations of plague and Malta fever cultures.

That extreme risk attaches to the inoculation of even minimal quantities of living plague bacilli is attested by the numerous cases of plague which have supervened upon the accidental inoculation of infected material into small superficial scratches.

The risk attaching to even minimal inoculations of the micrococcus Melitensis is less well known. Six cases of the disease have occurred in connexion with bacteriological work on Malta fever undertaken at Netley, and two further cases have originated at the Royal Naval Hospital, Haslar, and in the Philippines respectively, in connexion with bacteriological work.

Of the cases ocurring at Netley, one originated from an accidental prick with a needle of a syringe containing a Malta fever culture ; a second arose in connexion with an experimental inoculation ; and a third has recently occurred in connexion with the accidental projection of the end of a contaminated capillary sedimentation tube into the eye. The three other cases at Netley arose apart from a recognized inoculation in the case of observers working with living cultures. It would seem difficult to conceive of inoculations with quite minimal quantities of cultures being so effectual in the case of micro-organisms subject to the bactericidal action of the blood and lymph.

On the Comparative Bactericidal Effect of Human Blood drawn off and tested under Aerobic and Anaerobic Conditions.[1]

By A. E. Wright.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, Army Medical School, Netley.

In view of the fundamental theoretical importance which attaches to the assumption that the bactericidal power of the blood is acquired only after withdrawal from the organism, and, in particular, after the disintegration of the leucocytes under the influence of air and contact with the wall of unoiled or unparaffined receptacles, it seemed important to re-investigate the question; I have therefore endeavoured to ascertain whether there is any constant and important difference between the bactericidal power of human blood (*a*) drawn off and tested by the aerobic procedure described in Section I[2] of this paper, and (*b*) drawn off and tested by the anaerobic procedure described in Section II[2] of this paper.

The results of this investigation are set forth below in tabular form, and it will be observed that while they are, of course, inconclusive on the wider question of the derivation of the bactericidal substances of the serum, they would seem definitely to show that neither contact with the external air, nor contact with ordinary glass surfaces, exerts any important influence on the bactericidal power exerted by human blood upon the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio.

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxi, 1902.
[2] The portions of the paper which deal with the technique are not reprinted here.

Table exhibiting the Bactericidal Effect produced by one and the same Serum (a) *drawn off and tested by the Aerobic - Procedure described in Section I; and* (b) *drawn off and tested by the Anaerobic Procedure described in Section II.*

Dilutions in which the Culture was employed.	Capillary Testing Pipettes were filled in with—																			
	1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture, containing 156,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. W. B. L.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture, containing 156,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 156,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 120,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. F. N. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 150,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 100,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. A. B.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 220,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. J. N.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Typhoid Culture containing 540,000,000 T. B. per c.c.		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Cholera Culture containing 18,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c.		1 vol. A. E. W.'s Serum, 1 vol. of a Cholera Culture containing 60,000,000 Cholera Vibrios per c.c.	
	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.	Aerobic Procedure.	Anaerobic Procedure.
Undiluted . . .	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Growth	Growth	—	—	—	—	—	—	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth
2-fold dilution	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	,,	,,	Growth	Growth	—	—	Growth	Growth	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,
5 ,, ,,	Sterile	Sterile	Growth	Sterile	Growth	Growth	Growth	Growth	,,	,,	,,	,,	—	—	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10 ,, ,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	Growth	Growth	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
25 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
50 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	Sterile
100 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Growth	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
1,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	Sterile	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
10,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,
100,000 ,, ,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

A. E. W. had been inoculated against typhoid; W. B. L., F. N. W., and A. B. were normal men; J. N. had recently convalesced from typhoid. The sera were in each case tested within 2–3 hours after the blood had been withdrawn. The cultures were in all cases aerobically grown 24-hour old broth cultures. The serum was in each case allowed to act upon the culture for 18–24 hours at a temperature of 37° C.

An Experimental Investigation of the Rôle of the Blood Fluids in connexion with Phagocytosis.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Stewart R. Douglas.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

Methods of Experimentation.—Accuracy of the Method, and Special Points which come up for consideration in connexion with it—Does the Substitution of another Medium for the (Citrated) Blood Plasma which Bathes the Corpuscles exert an Influence on Phagocytosis?—Do the Blood Fluids co-operate in Phagocytosis by exerting a Direct Stimulating Effect upon the Phagocytes, or by effecting a Modification in the Bacteria?—Does the Unheated Serum contain, in addition to Elements which render the Bacteria more liable to Phagocytosis (Opsōnins), also Elements which directly stimulate the Phagocytes (Stimulins)?

It is still a matter of uncertainty whether the blood fluids perform any rôle in connexion with phagocytosis.

Certain facts suggest that the rôle of the blood fluids, if it comes into consideration at all, is very subordinate. The facts we have in view are, on the one hand, the facts brought forward by Metchnikoff to show that bacteria may be ingested in the living condition, and on the other hand those brought forward by one of us in conjunction with Captain F. Windsor, I.M.S.,[2] which show that the human serum exerts absolutely no bactericidal action on the staphylococcus pyogenes, the micrococcus Melitensis and the plague bacillus.

These facts are, however, not conclusive. They are not inconsistent with the idea that the blood fluids, apart from actually killing the particular pathogenic bacteria here in question, may in some way co-operate in their destruction.

What are required for the resolution of the problem are experiments in which the phagocytes are tested apart from the blood fluids.

The experimental methods which we now pass on to describe enable these crucial experiments to be made.

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Vol. lxxii, 1903.

[2] Wright and Windsor, *Journal of Hygiene*, vol. ii, No. 4, Oct., 1902 (pp. 44–72 *supra*).

Method of Experimentation.

We have employed a modification of the method of measuring the phagocytic power of the blood, which was devised by Major W. B. Leishman, R.A.M.C., at that time our fellow-worker.[1]

In the procedure described by this author equal volumes of a bacterial suspension of appropriate density and of blood drawn from the finger are measured off in a capillary tube, mixed on a slide and covered in with a cover-glass. The blood and bacterial culture are then left in contact for fifteen minutes in an incubator standing at blood heat. After this interval the cover-glass is, if necessary, loosened from the side by a drop of physiological salt solution, and the slide and cover-glass are drawn apart by a sliding movement.

The films thus obtained are stained by Leishman's [2] modification of Romanovski's stain, and are subjected to examination under an immersion lens. By enumerating the bacteria ingested in a number of polynuclear white blood corpuscles and dividing, an average is obtained. This average is taken as the measure of the phagocytic power of the blood. It is compared, when comparative experiments are made, with the phagocytic power of a normal blood.

We have modified this method for our purposes (*a*) by conducting the phagocytosis in capillary tubes, making afterwards film preparations in the ordinary way; (*b*) by decalcifying the blood with citrate of soda, thus avoiding the complications introduced by blood coagulation, and making it possible to separate the white corpuscles from the blood fluids by centrifugalization, decantation and washing.

Three different procedures, varying only in details, were employed in our experiments.

Procedure No. 1, *employed where nothing more than a Comparison between Bloods from different Sources or Blood subjected to Different Conditions is required.*

Having provided ourselves with a simple capillary pipette, furnished with a rubber teat and a pencil mark on the stem, we aspirate into the stem of the pipette—dividing off by bubbles of air in accordance with the procedure introduced by one of us—one volume of blood from the finger, one volume of a 1 per cent. solution of citrate of soda in physiological salt solution, and one volume of a bacterial [3] suspension made by shaking up a 24-hour agar culture in physiological salt solution, and centrifugalizing so as to remove any bacterial clumps. We mix together the three equal

[1] *British Medical Journal*, Jan. 11, 1902.
[2] *British Medical Journal*, 1901.
[3] This bacterial suspension may conveniently contain about 10,000,000,000 bacteria in the cubic centimetre. The number may be readily adjusted by the help of the method of enumeration under the microscope described by one of us in the *Lancet*, July 5, 1902.

volumes of blood, bacterial suspension and citrate of soda solution, by blowing these out upon a clean slide and re-aspirating several times in succession. Mixture completed, an aliquot portion of the mixed fluids, such as suffices for our purposes, is drawn up into the capillary stem, and the orifice of the capillary tube is sealed in the flame. This done, the pipette is placed either in an incubator standing at 37° C., or in a vessel of water kept at this temperature.

After the lapse of fifteen minutes we break off the extremity of the pipette, *carefully mix* the contents so as to get an average sample, and proceed to make films, and then to stain them by Leishman's dye.

Procedure No. 2, where we desire to elicit separately the rôle of the White Corpuscles and the Blood Fluids in Phagocytosis, and to study the Effect produced by Experimental Modification of one or other of these Elements separately.

Having provided ourselves with a capsule with a recurved limb (such a capsule has already been figured in a previous communication),[1] we introduce into it such a quantity of mercury as will fill it to about one-third of its capacity. Having marked off by a pencil mark (made with a glass writing pencil) the level at which the upper surface of the mercury stands, we displace the mercury in such a manner as to cause it to occupy the middle instead of the lower region of the capsule. We again mark off on the outside of the capsule the upper limit of the mercury.

Then, emptying out this last, we bend round in the flame the curved limb in such a manner as to cause it to lie in the plane of the equator of the capsule. This enables us to siphon into it from a watch glass, filled and placed ready to hand, the citrate of soda solution. We introduce of this solution such a quantity as suffices to fill the capsule up to the level of the first pencil mark. This done, we draw blood from the finger and let it run into the capsule until the combined volume of citrate of soda solution and blood attains the level of the second pencil mark.

Having sealed up the upper orifice in the flame—rarefying as we do so the air in the interior of the capsule by the application of warmth—we shake up the contents and suspend the capsule by means of its curved limb into the receptacle of the hand centrifugal machine.

When centrifugalization has caused the corpuscles to settle to the bottom, we pipette off and reserve the supernatant citrated plasma and replace it by physiological salt solution. In conducting this last operation we employ a capillary pipette, and we carry down its orifice to the very bottom of the capsule in such a manner as effectively to mix up the corpuscles and the newly added fluid. We wash and centrifugalize in this manner three times. The upper layers of the corpuscular deposit,

[1] Wright, *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxi, 1902.

containing as they do a large proportion of white corpuscles, supply the phagocytes required for experimentation.

In the experiments set forth below we mixed in each case three volumes of the upper layers of the washed corpuscular deposit with three volumes of blood fluid and one volume of a staphylococcus suspension, containing generally from 7,000–10,000 million staphylococci per c.c. The mixture of corpuscles, blood fluid and staphylococci was kept in each case for fifteen minutes at a temperature of 37° C., in order to give opportunity for the occurrence of phagocytosis.

Procedure No. 3, employed where we desire to obtain Citrated Serum for Comparison with the Citrated Plasma furnished by Procedure No. 2.

Where we desire to obtain citrated serum for comparison with the citrated plasma furnished by Procedure No. 2, we graduate our blood capsule in precisely the same manner. Having filled in with blood from the finger up to the first mark, we allow it to clot, and we then introduce into the capsule from a capillary pipette a sufficiency of citrate of soda solution to complete up to the second mark. Finally, we churn up the citrate of soda solution with the blood clot and then centrifugalize.

Accuracy of the Method, and Special Points which come up for Consideration in connexion with it.

The accuracy of the method is attested by the concordant results set forth below of the large number of experiments which we conducted in duplicate. We desire to point out that the results incorporated below represent not exceptional fortunate achievements, but simply what may be obtained by the ordinary every-day application of the method.

Before dismissing the consideration of the experimental method, it may be well to elucidate very briefly three points which suggest themselves for consideration in connexion with it.

The first of these relates to the calibre of the capillary tubes.

In our earlier experiments we considered it advisable, with a view to providing against a possible cause of fallacy, to conduct our experiments in capillary tubes of a standard calibre. The tubes were in each case calibrated by the method described by one of us,[1] to wit, by introducing into the wide end of a tube drawn out in the flame 5 cmm. of mercury from an "automatic pipette," and marking off that portion of the capillary stem where this quantum of mercury formed a column 5 cm. in length. The experiments which we conducted with calibrated tubes are those which occupy the two next following sections of this paper.

[1] *Transactions of the Roy. Medico-Chirurg. Soc.*, vol. lxxxiv and *Lancet*, July 5, and Dec., 1902.

In our later experiments, to wit, in the experiments which occupy the later sections of this paper, we discarded calibrated for uncalibrated tubes, making only the condition that the capillary tubes employed in comparative experiments should appear to the eye to be more or less comparable in calibre. It will be seen, on looking into our results, that the concordance obtained was not less in the case where uncalibrated tubes were employed than in the case where calibrated tubes were employed.

Different results, however, emerge when experiments in duplicate are conducted with tubes presenting extreme differences in calibre. In a series of comparative experiments, in which we employed in each case an almost hair-fine tube as a fellow to a tube almost too large to be reckoned as a capillary tube, the results were irregular, being generally but not consistently in favour of the narrower tube.

A *second point* which comes up for consideration is the possible effect of the addition of citrate of soda to the blood.

The concentration of the solution in particular comes into consideration. Finding that phagocytosis is inhibited when the white corpuscles are bathed in a medium containing 3 per cent. of citrate of soda, we took the precaution to add to the blood in comparative experiments precisely the same amounts of citrate of soda. It may be noted that the morphological structure of the white corpuscles is extremely well preserved, and phagocytosis proceeds actively in a medium containing up to 1·5 per cent. of citrate of soda.

The *third* and last *point* to be considered relates to the maintenance of the activity of the phagocytes for a sufficient period after they have been withdrawn from the organism and have been subjected to the procedures described above. It will be manifest that, apart from a maintenance of the activity of the phagocytes under the conditions which come into consideration here, it would be impracticable to compare the results of experiments instituted in succession with one and the same quantum of washed corpuscles, or to compare the phagocytic power of different bloods, unless in the case where these were withdrawn from the organism simultaneously.

A number of experiments undertaken with a view of obtaining information with regard to the point here raised have shown us that the phagocytic power is well maintained under the circumstances of our experiments. Even after the lapse of three days (our observations have not extended beyond this limit) the phagocytic power has not declined to less than one-half or one-third of that of the blood freshly drawn. We have found no indication of a variation within the space of a few hours.

These preliminary points having been dealt with, we may pass to the consideration of the problem to which attention was directed in the opening paragraph of this paper.

Does the Substitution of another Medium for the (Citrated) Blood Plasma which bathes the Corpuscles exert an Influence on Phagocytosis ?

1. *Comparative Experiments with Citrated Plasma and Citrated Serum (obtained respectively as described in Connexion with Procedure 2 and 3).*

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s *plasma*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (obtained by averaging the number of staphylococci ingested by 20 P.W.B.C.) . .	34·6	34·1
Tube 2.— Do. do.	33·6	

B.

S. R. D.'s *serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (obtained as above) . . .	35·6	34·7
Tube 2.— Do. do. . . .	33·8	

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s *plasma*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol, ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (obtained as above) . . .	31·2	33·6
Tube 2.— Do. do. . . .	36·0	

B.

A. E. W.'s *serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (obtained as above) . . .	31·2	32·1
Tube 2.— Do. do. . . .	33·0	

It is clear that the phagocytic power is uninfluenced by the substitution of serum for plasma.

2. *Comparative Experiments with Ordinary (Uncitrated) Serum Unheated and Heated for* 10–15 *min. to* 60–65° C. *and then cooled.*

Experiment 1.

A.

A. E. W.'s *unheated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged)	17·4
Tube 2.— Do. do.	19·8

B.

A. E. W.'s *heated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 52 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged)	0·6
Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 46 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged)	3·4

Experiment 2.

A.

S. R. D.'s *unheated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; S. R. D.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . **18·5**

Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 22 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . **16·0**

B.

S. R. D.'s *heated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; S. R. D.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 29 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . **1·5**

Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 46 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . **1·8**

Experiment 3.

A.

A. E. W.'s *unheated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 9 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged). . . . . **25·4**

Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 18 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged). . . . . **16·0**

B.

A. E. W.'s *heated serum*, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) **0**

Tube 2.— Do. do. **0**

Experiment 4.

A.

S. R. D.'s *unheated serum*, staphylococcus suspension and corpuscles in the same proportions as before.

Phagocytic count (bacteria in 15 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) **15·7**

B.

S. R. D.'s *heated serum*, staphylococcus suspension, and corpuscles in the same proportions as before.

Phagocytic count (bacteria in 45 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) **0·2**

These experiments show that we must ascribe an important rôle to the blood fluids in connexion with phagocytosis.

For the alternative assumption, the supposition, to wit, that inhibiting elements are developed in the serum during the process of heating, is rebutted by the results of a series of control experiments, which showed that the phagocytes display no greater activity in a medium of physiological salt solution than in a medium of heated serum.

It is further rebutted by the circumstance that the activity of phagocytosis falls off at the same rate when the unheated serum is diluted with salt solution as when it is diluted with heated serum.

The experiment whose results are tabulated below illustrates this last point.

Results of a Comparison made between the Activating Power of (a) *Unheated Serum diluted with Heated Serum, and* (b) *Unheated Serum diluted with Physiological Salt Solution.*

In each case 3 vols. of serum dilution were mixed with 1 vol. of staphylococcus suspension and 3 vols. of washed corpuscles.

Dilution in which the unheated serum was employed.	Average phagocytic count obtained in the case where the unheated serum was diluted with previously heated serum.	Average phagocytic count obtained in the case where the unheated serum was diluted with physiological salt solution.
3-fold	—	34·2
6-fold	27·4	27·2
12-fold	23·1	30·5
24-fold	20·6	24·8
48-fold	5·0	4·95
96-fold	—	0·8
192-fold	—	0·6

It is clear that we may conclude that the heated serum, like the salt solution, acts merely as an inert diluent, and that we may, in referring to such heated serum, characterize it simply as "inactivated serum." It is further clear that we may legitimately [1] ascribe the small amount of phagocytosis which occurred in Experiments 1, 2, and 4 *supra*, to the presence of a residuum of unheated serum, which the washing operations had failed to separate from the corpuscles.

Do the Blood Fluids co-operate in Phagocytosis by exerting a Direct Stimulating Effect upon the Phagocytes, or by effecting a Modification in the Bacteria ?

The following experiments were instituted with a view to elucidating the problem as to the nature of the activating influence exercised by the blood fluids. It will be seen that a comparison is in each case instituted between serum inactivated (by heating) before it came in contact with either bacteria or white corpuscles, and serum inactivated after it had come in contact with the bacteria, but before it had come in contact with the white corpuscles :—

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s *inactivated* serum, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension (previously heated to 60° C. for 15 minutes and cooled), 1 vol. ; S. R. D.'s corpuscles, 3 vols.

[1] *At the time this was written the alternative that the residual phagocytosis might be due to 'spontaneous phagocytosis' did not suggest itself.*

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . 3·4
Tube 2.— Do. do. 3·35

B.

S. R. D.'s *unheated* serum, 3 vols.; digested at 37° C. for 15 minutes, with 1 vol. of staphylococcus suspension, then heated to 60° C. for 15 minutes and cooled. 4 vols. of the above mixed with 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . 27·5
Tube 2.— Do. do. 28·9

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s *inactivated* serum, 3 vols.; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol.; digested together for 15 minutes at 37° C., then heated for 10 minutes to 60° C. and cooled. 4. vols. of the above mixed with 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . 4·0
Tube 2.— Do. do. 3·2

B.

A. E. W.'s *unheated* serum, 3 vols.; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol.; digested together for 15 minutes at 37° C., then heated for 10 minutes to 60° C. and cooled. 4 vols. of the above added to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 24 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) 33
Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 19 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) 36

Experiment 3.

A.

S. R. D.'s *inactivated* serum, 3 vols.; staphylococcus suspension (previously heated to 75° C. and cooled), 1 vol.; digested together for 15 minutes at 37° C. 4 vols. of the above added to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Phagocytic count (bacteria in 30 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . 4·2

B.

S. R. D.'s *unheated* serum, 3 vols.; staphylococcus suspension (previously heated to 75° C. and cooled), 1 vol.; digested together for 15 minutes at 37° C., then heated for 10 minutes to 60° C., and cooled.
4 vols. of the above added to 3 vols. of corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 15 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . 28·2
Tube 2.— Do. do. 31·0

We have here conclusive proof that the blood fluids modify the bacteria in a manner which renders them a ready prey to the phagocytes.

We may speak of this as an "*opsōnic*" effect (opsōno—*I cater for; I prepare victuals for*), and we may employ the term "opsōnins" to designate the elements in the blood fluids which produce this effect.

Does the Unheated Serum contain, in addition to Elements which render the Bacteria more liable to Phagocytosis (Opsonins), also Elements which directly stimulate the Phagocytes (Stimulins) ?

We have sought to elucidate this question by three separate methods.

In the first series of experiments, we experimented with staphylococci which had been exposed to high temperatures (115° C.) with the design of rendering them insusceptible to the opsonic power of the blood fluids. Our expectations from this method—expectations based on the fact that we had noticed that typhoid bacilli acquired, when heated to over 70° C., a resistance to the bacteriolytic effect of the blood fluids—were unrealized. We found that the quantitative differences between the phagocytosis in heated and unheated serum respectively were not less in the case of staphylococci which had been exposed to a temperature of 115° C., than in the case of staphylococci which had not been subjected to high temperatures.

In a second series of experiments we substituted for suspensions of staphylococci suspensions of particles, which we assumed would be uninfluenced by the opsonic power of the blood. The results of these experiments, conducted both with carmine particles and with Indian ink, were inconclusive by reason of the circumstance that we were not able to obtain any satisfactory enumerations. An impression was, however, left on our minds that phagocytosis was in every case more active in unheated than in the heated serum.

A third method of experimentation was then resorted to. In a first operation we mixed and digested together at blood heat a suspension of staphylococci and unheated serum. After allowing what we supposed would be a sufficient interval for the exhaustion of the effect of the serum upon the bacteria, we divided the mixture into two portions. While the first of these portions was mixed with the corpuscles without undergoing any further treatment, the other was heated to 60° C., and cooled before it was so mixed. In each case the phagocytic power exerted was greater in the case where the heating was omitted, and the differences were not less marked where the serum had been digested with the bacteria for fifty minutes and one hour respectively than in the case where it had been digested with these only for fifteen minutes.

These results are ambiguous.

The question as to whether the blood fluids contain, in addition to opsonins, also an element which directly stimulates the phagocytes, remains for the present unsolved.

The third series of experiments, which has just been adverted to, is subjoined :—

Experiment 1.

S. R. D.'s serum, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; digested for 15 minutes at 37° C.

A.

4 vols. of the above mixture heated to 60° C. for 15 minutes, then cooled and added to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 16 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . 22·0
Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 31 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . 20·7

B.

4 vols. of the above mixture added directly to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 16 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) 27
Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 28 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) 28

Experiment 2.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; digested for 50 minutes at 37° C.

A.

4 vols. of the above mixture heated to 60° C. for 20 minutes, then cooled and added to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . 13·5
Tube 2.— Do. do. 17·1

B.

4 vols. of the above mixture added directly to 3 vols. S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 15 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . 40·6
Tube 2.— Do. do. . 44·5

Experiment 3.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum, 3 vols. ; 1 vol. of staphylococcus suspension ; digested together 1 hour at 37° C.

A.

4 vols. of the above mixture heated to 60° C. for 10 minutes, cooled and added to 3 vols. of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 16 P.W.B.C. enumerated and averaged) . . . . . 15·1

B.

4 vols. of the above mixture added directly to 3 vols of S. R. D.'s corpuscles.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 16 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . 22·1

In conclusion we would briefly refer to the following points :—

The opsonic power of the blood fluids disappears gradually on standing, even when the serum is kept in a sealed capsule sheltered from the light.

After five or six days we have found the opsonic power of the serum kept under these conditions to stand at little more than half of what it was originally.

The opsonic power of the blood fluids is but little impaired by the action of heat until temperatures above 50° C. are arrived at. The following are the results of a typical experiment:—Phagocytic count obtained with the serum before exposure to heat, 12·7; with the same serum heated for ten minutes to 45° C., 13·1; with the same serum heated for ten minutes to 50° C., 10·2; with the same serum heated for ten minutes to 55° C., 5·7.

The opsonic [1] power of the serum is diminished when this last has been digested with typhoid bacteria. This "anti-opsonic" effect may be compared with the "anti-bactericidal" effect [2] obtained on digesting the serum with typhoid or cholera cultures.

The opsonic power of the blood fluids is diminished while the phagocytic capacity of the W.B.C. is preserved when the blood fluids and corpuscles are separately digested with Daboia venom. In the anti-opsonic effect, exerted by the venom on the blood fluids, we have probably the explanation of the reduced resistance to septic invasion which supervenes upon viper bites.

It would seem probable that the bacteriolytic, bactericidal, and bacterio-opsonic effects exerted by the blood fluids are each in their degree manifestations of a digestive power exerted by the blood fluids on bacteria brought into contact with them.

Lastly, a fact which has a practical importance in connexion with the study of immunity may be adverted to. It will be manifest that we have not exhausted the study of a condition of immunity when we have measured the phagocytic power of the white corpuscles, and the agglutinating, bacteiolytic, and bactericidal power of the blood fluids. We must, in connexion with these last, take into consideration also the opsonic effect.

A concrete example may be added to show the kind of elucidation which may be gained from an inquiry which takes into consideration also the factor last mentioned.

The condition of immunity to staphylococcus which can be induced in patients unduly susceptible to staphylococcus infections, by the inoculation of properly adjusted doses of a sterilized staphylococcus culture is, as was shown by one of us, associated with an increase of the phagocytic power [3] and is unaccompanied by any development of a bactericidal power in the blood fluids.

The result of the subjoined blood examinations undertaken upon a patient who had been subjected to two successive therapeutic inoculations of a sterilized staphylococcus culture, suggests that the increased phagocytic power may depend upon an increase in the opsonic power of the blood fluids.

[1] *We had here in view the staphylo-opsonic power, and we failed to reflect that the serum, after digestion with the typhoid bacilli, might exert a toxic effect upon the washed leucocytes.*

[2] Wright and Windsor, *Journal of Hygiene*, vol. ii, No. 4, 1902 (pp. 44–72 *supra*).

[3] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902 (pp. 99 *et seq.*).

A.

A. E. W.'s serum, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; and A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 20 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . **17·4**
Tube 2.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 26 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) . . . . . **19·9**

B.

The patient's serum, 3 vols. : staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; the patient's washed corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 15 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) **35**
Tube 2.— Do. do. **36**

C.

The patient's serum, 3 vols. ; staphylococcus suspension, 1 vol. ; A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles, 3 vols.

Tube 1.—Phagocytic count (bacteria in 15 P.W.B.C. counted and averaged) **30**
Tube 2.— Do. do. **26**

Further Observations on the Rôle of the Blood Fluids in connexion with Phagocytosis.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Stewart R. Douglas.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

Relation of the Opsonic Power of Human Blood to the Capacity of Resisting Invasion by the Staphylococcus Pyogenes—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus of Plague—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in Relation to Micrococcus Melitensis—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in Relation to the Bacillus Dysentericus (Shiga)—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus coli—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Pneumococcus of Fraenkel—Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus of Anthrax—Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus typhosus and the Cholera Vibrio—Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Diphtheria Bacillus and the Xerosis Bacillus.

In a previous communication we showed that the phagocytosis which occurs when cultures of the staphylococcus pyogenes are added to human blood, is directly dependent upon the presence of certain substances in the blood which exert a specific effect upon the bacteria. We suggested that the bacteriotropic substances here in question might appropriately be denoted by the term "opsonins."

In the present paper we propose to bring out certain further points in connexion with the "opsonic power" of the blood.

Relation of the Opsonic Power of Human Blood to the Capacity of Resisting Invasion by the Staphylococcus Pyogenes.

It has already been shown [2] by one of us that patients who are the subjects of acne, sycosis, or boils are characterized by a defective phagocytic power for the staphylococcus pyogenes. We have recently been able to satisfy ourselves that this defective phagocytosis is dependent upon a defect of opsonic power.

It has also been shown by one of us that the cure of these bacterial infections, which can in almost every instance be achieved by the inoculation of appropriate quantities of sterilized staphylococcus cultures, is

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, Vol. lxxiii, 1904.
[2] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902 (pp. 99 *et seq.*).

associated with the acquirement of an increased phagocytic power. We have now succeeded in establishing the fact—already adumbrated in our previous paper—that the increased phagocytosis which is associated with the achievement of the condition of immunisation here in question is dependent, not upon a modification of the white corpuscles, but upon a development of opsonins in the blood fluids.

The results of the subjoined experiment bring out this fact into clear relief.

Details of the Experiment.

Immunised Patient's Blood.—The patient, F.F., who had long been the subject of aggravated staphylococcic sycosis, had, after prolonged and ineffectual treatment with antiseptics, been subjected to three successive inoculations of a sterilized staphylococcus culture. Under these inoculations his clinical condition had ameliorated itself in an astonishing manner, and his phagocytic power, which had previous to the date of inoculation been less by half than that of a normal man who served as a control, had increased in a progressive manner after each inoculation.

A sample of blood was now (by the technique elsewhere described) [1] drawn off and mixed with $\frac{1}{10}$th of its volume of 10 per cent. citrate of soda. A second sample of blood was drawn off and allowed to clot in the ordinary way.

In the case of the first sample of blood the corpuscles were isolated from the plasma by repeated washing with physiological salt solution, and centrifugalization. The corpuscles thus isolated are referred to below as "washed corpuscles."

In the case of the second sample of blood the serum was simply separated from the corpuscles in the ordinary way by centrifugalization.

Control Blood from a Normal Man.—The blood which served as a control was obtained from a normal healthy man. It was drawn off in exactly the same manner and was treated in each case by exactly the same procedures as the blood obtained from the patient.

Bacterial Culture.—The bacterial culture employed in the experiments set forth below was obtained by suspending in physiological salt solution a portion of a twenty-four hours' growth of staphylococcus albus on agar.

The quantities of serum, washed corpuscles, and staphylococcus culture which are specified below were then in each case taken up into a capillary tube, mixed on a glass slide, re-aspirated into the tube, and digested together at blood heat for fifteen minutes. Films were then made and stained by Leishman's stain. Finally the number of ingested bacteria were enumerated in a series of polynuclear W.B.C. taken in order as they came.

[1] *Lancet*, January 23, 1904.

The phagocytic count given below—and the same applies throughout this paper—represents in each case the average number of bacteria ingested by the individual P.W.B.C. The number of polynuclear white blood corpuscles which were counted is in each case inserted in brackets :—

Experiment.

A.

Immunised patient's washed corpuscles	3 vols.
Immunised patient's serum	3 „
Suspension of staphylococcus culture	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.). **25·7.**

B.

Washed corpuscles from normal man	3 vols.
Serum from normal man	3 „
Suspension of staphylococcus culture	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (15 P.W.B.C.). **13.**

C.

Immunised patient's washed corpuscles	3 vols.
Serum from normal man	3 „
Suspension of staphylococcus culture	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (15 P.W.B.C.). **13.**

D.

Washed corpuscles from normal man	3 vols.
Serum from immunised patient	3 „
Suspension of staphylococcus culture	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (15 P.W.B.C.). **28·2.**

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus of Plague.

In these and all subsequent experiments, unless where otherwise specified, the technique employed was exactly the same as that employed in the experiments set forth above. It may further be premised that the bacterial suspensions employed were in each case suspensions of very young agar cultures—in most cases 24-hour cultures—in physiological salt solution. By the term " heated serum " is in each case to be understood serum which has been subjected to a temperature of 60° C. for ten minutes or more.

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **3·0.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (25 P.W.B.C.), **0·7.**

Experiment 2.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **13·1.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **2·1.**

Experiment 3.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **19·6.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (54 P.W.B.C.), **8·4.**

Experiment 4.

A.

B. H. S.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (43 P.W.B.C.), **5·3.**

B.

B. H. S.'s heated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of plague bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (43 P.W.B.C.), **1·4.**

It may incidentally be noted in connexion with these experiments that while the plague bacilli which lay free in the films were in each case quite unaltered, many of these which had been ingested showed extremely characteristic involution forms [1] such as we have not seen since we worked with freshly isolated plague cultures in Bombay in connexion with the Indian Plague Commission. So typical were the involution forms of the ingested plague bacilli, that we should not hesitate to employ the method of phagocytosis as an aid to diagnosis in the case of a doubtful plague culture.

[1] It may be observed that our plague culture—like other plague cultures which have been cultivated on artificial nutrient media for a number of generations—has altogether lost the property of developing in a spontaneous manner the involution forms which are characteristic of freshly isolated plague cultures.

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in Relation to Micrococcus Melitensis.

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (10 P.W.B.C.), **26·9.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (10 P.W.B.C.), **9·2.**

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **10·0.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **2·4.**

Experiment 3.

A.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **12·9.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of *Micrococcus Melitensis.* . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **0·9.**

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in Relation to the Bacillus Dysentericus (Shiga).

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 W.P.B.C.), **4·2.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 ,,
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **0·0.**

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **5·4.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (33 P.W.B.C.), **0·1.**

Experiment 3.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **3·6.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of Shiga's bacillus . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **0·2.**

A certain number of the bacilli (and these bacilli were found indifferently in the interior of the cells and free in the preparation) had, in the case of the experiments undertaken with unheated serum, undergone spherulation.

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus coli.

Experiment 1.

A.

B. H. S.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of the *Bacillus coli* . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **3·8.**

B.

B. H. S.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of the *Bacillus coli* . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **0·75.**

Experiment 2.

A.

F. F.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
F. F.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of the *Bacillus coli* . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **5.**

B.

F. F.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
F. F.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of the *Bacillus coli* . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **0·76.**

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Pneumococcus of Fraenkel.

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of the pneumococcus of Fraenkel . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (15 P.W.B.C.), **16.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of Fraenkel's pneumococcus . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (40 P.W.B.C.), **1·1.**

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of Fraenkel's pneumococcus . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (23 P.W.B.C.), **6.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of Fraenkel's pneumococcus . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (40 P.W.B.C.), **0·2.**

Experiments on the Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus of Anthrax.

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of *Bacillus anthracis* . . . . 1 vol.

Enumeration was here impossible, but there was everywhere evidence of phagocytosis. In the few cases where the leucocytes had not ingested bacteria, they were found to have extended themselves in a characteristic grasping manner along the bacterial threads (Plate 5).

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum . . . . . 3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 3 „
Suspension of the *Bacillus anthracis* . . . . 1 vol.

Here there were practically no signs of phagocytosis. The cells were everywhere empty, and they had not drawn themselves into intimate contact with the anthrax threads (Plate 6).

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Broth culture of anthrax . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (36 P.W.B.C.), **2·4** (approximate only).

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Broth culture of anthrax	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (100 P.W.B.C.), **0.**

Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Bacillus typhosus and the Cholera Vibrio.

It is well known that human blood exerts a very considerable bactericidal power upon cultures of the *Bacillus typhosus* and of the cholera vibrio. The destructive effect in question manifests itself to microscopical observation in the form of very profound morphological changes which come under observation in cultures which have been digested with unheated serum. The bacteria in such cultures, after undergoing agglutination and spherulation, swell up and lose their chemical affinity for aniline dyes. Finally they are completely dissolved.

It is manifest that where disintegrative changes of this kind are occurring under the influence of the serum, opsonic effects will be more or less thrust into the background. These last will, in the case of phagocytic experiments conducted with unheated serum, be masked, on the one hand, by the fact that there will be fewer bacteria available for phagocytosis, and on the other hand by the fact that intracellular disintegration will, it may be presumed, be more rapid in the case where the serum has already exerted a disintegrating effect on the bacteria anterior to their ingestion.

Lastly, ingested bacteria which have lost their characteristic chemical affinity for their stain may readily escape enumeration.

All these points must be taken into consideration in connexion with the subjoined experiments :—

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the cholera vibrio	2 „

Everywhere considerable phagocytosis. Complete spherulation of almost all the micro-organisms within and all the micro-organisms outside the cells. No indication of vacuolation round the ingested bacteria (Plate 3).

Phagocytic count (14 P.W.B.C.), **24** (*circ.*).

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum.	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the cholera vibrio	2 „

Everywhere considerable phagocytosis. No spherulation of the

micro-organisms either within or without the leucocytes. Very marked vacuolation of the leucocytes round the ingested bacteria (fig. 4).

Phagocytic count (11 P.W.B.C.), **26·2** (*circ.*).

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the cholera vibrio	1 vol.

Complete spherulation of all the bacteria, whether within or without the cells.

Phagocytic count (21 P.W.B.C.), **8·1** (*circ.*).

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the cholera vibrio	1 vol.

No spherulation of the micro-organisms, either within or without the leucocytes.

Phagocytic count (13 P.W.B.C.), **0·8.**

Experiment 3.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Broth culture of the typhoid bacillus	2 „

Much phagocytosis. Complete spherulation of all the extracellular micro-organisms. Many of the bacilli in the interior of the leucocytes have completely preserved their original contours, others—probably the later ingested ones—are spherulated (Plate 1).

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Broth culture of the typhoid bacillus	2 „

Much phagocytosis. All the micro-organisms, whether within or without the leucocytes, are morphologically unaltered and have preserved their staining properties unimpaired (Plate 2).

Experiment 4.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Broth culture of the typhoid bacillus	2 „

Complete spherulation of all the extracellular bacteria which have escaped solution. In interior of leucocytes most of the bacteria have undergone spherulation, but in the centre of the corpuscles some—

probably those which were soonest ingested—are morphologically unaltered and preserve their staining properties unaltered.

Phagocytic count, **100** (estimated).

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Broth cultivation of the typhoid bacillus	1 vol.

No spherulation, either within or without the cells.

Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.), **31·8** (*circ.*).

Experiment 5.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the typhoid bacillus	1 vol.

All the bacilli both within and without the cells have undergone spherulation.

Phagocytic count (11 P.W.B.C.), **13·6.**

B.

S. R. D.'s heated serum	3 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the typhoid bacillus	1 vol.

No spherulation either within or without the leucocytes.

Phagocytic count (23 P.W.B.C.), **7·2.**

Of incidental interest in connexion with the above experiments is the demonstration which they afford, that the spherulation of the intracellular ingested micro-organisms, which has been often ascribed to the agency of the leucocytes, is in reality due to agency of the blood fluids.

Opsonic Power of Human Blood in its Relation to the Diphtheria Bacillus and the Xerosis Bacillus.

Experiment 1.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	3 „

Phagocytic count (27 P.W.B.C.), **0·7.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum	3 vols.
A. E. W's washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	3 „

Phagocytic count (29 P.W.B.C.), **4·1.**

Experiment 2.

A.

B. H. S.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	2 „
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.),	**8·0.**

B.

B. H. S.'s heated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	2 „
Phagocytic count (20 P.W.B.C.),	**10·9.**

Experiment 3.

A.

B. H. S.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (44 P.W.B.C.),	**4·0.**

B.

B. H. S.'s heated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the diphtheria bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (50 P.W.B.C.),	**3·3.**

Experiment 4.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
E. A. W.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the xerosis bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (40 P.W.B.C.),	**2·8.**

B.

A. E. W.'s heated serum	3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the xerosis bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (25 P.W.B.C.),	**3·2.**

Experiment 5.

A.

B. H. S.'s unheated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the xerosis bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (30 P.W.B.C.),	**6·3.**

B.

B. H. S.'s heated serum	3 vols.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Suspension of the xerosis bacillus	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (30 P.W.B.C.),	**6.**

Conclusions.

The experimental data which have been set forth above establish that the opsonic action of the blood fluids—to which attention was for the first time directed in our previous communication—is exerted not

exclusively upon the *Staphylococcus pyogenes*, but also upon the *Bacillus pestis*, the *Micrococcus Melitensis*, the *Diplococcus pneumoniae* of Fraenkel, the *Bacillus coli*, the *Bacillus dysenteriae* (Shiga), the *Bacillus anthracis*, the *Bacillus typhosus*, and the *Vibrio cholerae Asiaticae*.

So far as we have gone, the *Bacillus diphtheriae* and its congener the *Bacillus xerosis* have proved to be the only pathogenetic bacteria which are insensible to this action of the blood fluids.

Taking these experimental data in conjunction with other facts which have been elicited by us, or as the case may be by one of us working in connexion with Captain F. Windsor,[1] I.M.S., with regard to the bactericidal action exerted by human blood upon the various species of pathogenetic micro-organisms, we may classify these bacteria in the following categories :—

(1) *Bacteria which are eminently sensible to the bactericidal, bacteriolytic, and opsonic action of normal human blood fluids.*—The *Bacillus typhosus* and the *Vibrio cholerae Asiaticae*.

(2) *Bacteria which are in some measure sensible to the bactericidal action of the normal human blood fluids, and which are eminently sensible to its opsonic action.*—The *Bacillus coli* and the *Bacillus dysenteriae*.

(3) *Bacteria which are absolutely insensible to the bactericidal action of the normal human blood fluids, but are eminently sensible to the opsonic action of these fluids.*—The *Staphylococcus pyogenes*, the *Bacillus pestis*, the *Micrococcus Melitensis*, the *Diplococcus pneumoniae* of Fraenkel.

(4) *Bacteria which are insensible both to the bactericidal and to the opsonic action of the normal human blood fluids.*—The *Bacillus diphtheriae* and *Bacillus xerosis*.

It may be pointed out in conclusion that the demonstration furnished above, that successful immunisation against the staphylococcus pyogenes is dependent upon an elaboration of opsonins in the system of the inoculated patient, suggests that successful immunisation against plague and Malta fever, and we may add against streptococcal invasions, may be likewise dependent upon the elaboration of opsonins.

It will be manifest that if this is so, the determination of the opsonic power of the blood is calculated to render services also in connexion with the testing of any therapeutic sera which may find an application in connexion with the disease.

[1] *Journal of Hygiene, loc. cit.* (*vide supra*, pp. 45–72).

On the Action exerted upon the *Staphylococcus pyogenes* by Human Blood Fluids, and on the Elaboration of Protective Elements in the Human Organism in Response to Inoculations of a Staphylococcus Vaccine

By A. E. Wright and Stewart R. Douglas.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

1. Nature of the Action which is exerted upon the Staphylococcus pyogenes by Normal Blood Fluids, and by the Blood Fluids of Patients inoculated with a Staphylococcus Vaccine—2. Comparison of the Phagocytic Power of the Subjects of Staphylococcus Invasion with the Phagocytic Power of Normal Persons—3. On the Distribution of Opsonins in the Infected Organism—4. Determination of the Question as to whether the Opsonins which come into Consideration in Connexion with the Protection of the Organism against Staphylococcus Invasion are present in the Blood of the Infant at Birth—5. Determination of the Course of the Reaction of Immunisation obtained in response to Inoculations of a Staphylococcus Vaccine.

The subject matter with which we have here to deal may be distributed under the following headings :—

(1) Determination of the nature of the action which is exerted upon the *Staphylococcus pyogenes* by normal human blood fluids, and by the blood fluids of patients who have been inoculated with a staphylococcus vaccine.

(2) Comparison of the phagocytic power of the subjects of staphylococcus invasion with the phagocytic power of normal individuals.

(3) Distribution in the infected organism of the opsonins which here come into consideration.

(4) Determination of the question as to whether the opsonins are present in the blood of the infant at birth.

(5) Determination of the course of the reaction of immunisation which supervenes upon the inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine.

1. Nature of the Action which is exerted upon the Staphylococcus pyogenes by Normal Blood Fluids, and by the Blood Fluids of Patients inoculated with a Staphylococcus Vaccine.

Bactericidal Action.—It was shown in the course of the classical

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1904.

researches on the bactericidal power of the blood which were conducted by Nuttall [1] in Flügge's laboratory, that the staphylococcus offers resistance to the bactericidal action of the blood fluids. Two years afterwards the observations of Nuttall, which had reference to the blood of animals, were extended by Stern [2] to human blood. The methods employed by Nuttall and Stern alike did not, however, permit of a comparatively small bactericidal action being distinguished from a complete absence of bactericidal action.

The question as to how far the staphylococcus offers resistance to the bactericidal action of human blood was reinvestigated by one of us, the results being published (*a*) in a paper dealing with anti-staphylococcus inoculations,[3] and (*b*) in a paper written in conjunction with Captain F. Windsor, I.M.S.,[4] on the bactericidal action exerted by human blood upon a variety of pathogenic micro-organisms. It was established in the researches here in question, which were conducted with the more delicate methods of investigation set forth in the *Proceedings of the Royal Society* [5] and in the *Lancet* [6] respectively, (*a*) that normal human blood does not exert upon the staphylococcus any bactericidal action whatever, and (*b*) that anti-staphylococcus inoculations do not lead to a development of any bactericidal power in the blood.[7]

Opsonic Action.—It having become evident in the course of these researches that the effect of anti-staphylococcus inoculation is not to be found in a development of bactericidal properties in the blood fluids, attention was directed to the measurement of the phagocytic power of the blood. Taking to aid the method of phagocytic estimation devised by Major W. B. Leishman, R.A.M.C., who was then our fellow-worker, it was ascertained that successful immunisation against staphylococcus goes in every case hand in hand with the acquirement of increased phagocytic power.

Certain difficulties having suggested themselves in connexion with the attribution of this result to a "training" of the white blood corpuscles, we addressed ourselves to a further investigation of the phenomena of phagocytosis.

In the course of this investigation [8] it became clear that phagocytosis of bacteria is dependent upon an effect exerted upon the bacteria by the blood fluids. We spoke of this effect as an "opsonic effect."

In a second research,[9] in which we extended our previous observations,

[1] Nuttall, *Zeitschrift f. Hygiene*, 1888, vol. iv.
[2] Stern, *Verhandlungen des IX Congresses f. Innere Medicin*, 1890.
[3] Wright, *Lancet*, March 29, 1902 (pp. 99 *et seq.*).
[4] Wright and Windsor, *Journal of Hygiene*, vol. ii, No. 4, March, 1902 (pp. 45–72 *supra*).
[5] Wright, *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. 71, 1902.
[6] Wright, *Lancet*, December 1, 1900, and March 2, 1901.
[7] *Vide Journal of Hygiene* (loc. cit.), Tables VII and VIII. (pp. 56–57 *supra*).
[8] Wright and Douglas, *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1903, vol. 72 (pp. 75–87 *supra*).
[9] Wright and Douglas, *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1904, vol. 73 (pp. 88–89 *supra*).

on the opsonic power of the blood fluids, we showed that the increased phagocytic effect which is obtained with the blood of successfully immunised persons is attributable not to any modification induced in the leucocytes, but to an increased opsonic power in the blood fluids. Conclusive evidence of this was obtained by separating, in the case of two bloods of conspicuously different phagocytic power in each case, the blood fluids from the corpuscular elements, and then effecting an interchange of the blood fluids. The leucocytes of the successfully immunised patient exhibited under these circumstances the smaller phagocytic action characteristic of the blood of the normal individual who served as a control, while the leucocytes of the normal individual exhibited the increased phagocytic action characteristic of the blood of the successfully immunised patient. (See pp. 89–90.)

The witness of the experiment just referred to, and of a previous experiment incorporated in our first paper, is confirmed by similar results obtained in connexion with the tubercle bacillus. (See p. 117.)

Agglutinating Action.—Normal human serum does not exert any characteristic agglutinating action upon the staphylococcus. Such agglutination as is obtained is not very sensibly increased under the influence of staphylococcus inoculations.

2. Comparison of the Phagocytic Power of the Subjects of Staphylococcus Invasion with the Phagocytic Power of Normal Persons.

It is clear from what has been said above that the essential change which takes place in human blood, as a result of the inoculation of staphylococcus cultures, is an increase in the phagocytic power, dependent upon an increase of the opsonic elements in the blood.

Further evidence of the essential importance of the phagocytic and opsonic power in connexion with resistance to staphylococcus invasions is obtained by contrasting the phagocytic power of the subjects of staphylococcus invasion with that of normal individuals.

Our observations on this subject were made in some instances by comparing the phagocytic power of the decalcified blood of the patient with the phagocytic power of the decalcified blood of a normal person. More frequently we employed in our experiments, respectively, the patient's serum and the serum of a normal person in each case in association with the washed corpuscles derived from a normal man.

The results of our observations are tabulated below :—

Table showing the Ratio in which the Phagocytic or Opsonic Power of the Patients Blood stood in each case to the Phagocytic or Opsonic Power of the Normal Individual who furnished the Control Blood.

(The phagocytic power of the control blood is taken in each case as unity.)

Initials of Patient.	Form of Staphylococcus Invasion.	Phagocytic or Opsonic Index.
E. G.	Furunculosis	0·48
F. F.	Sycosis	0·49
J. E.	Acne	0·64
J. H.	Furunculosis	0·87
W. B.	Acne	0·55
E. H.	„	0·82
W. H.	Furunculosis	0·79
R. G.	„	0·7
G. L.	Acne and sycosis	0·74
S. C.	Furunculosis	0·87
W. L.	„	0·88
W. P.	„	0·39
S. F.	Very aggravated sycosis	0·1
E. F. D.	Acne	0·73
D. C.	Sycosis	0·8
J. M.	Acne	0·48
W. M.	Sycosis	0·37
E. P.	Acne	0·6
M. S.	Pustular affection of lips	0·6
F. V.	Repeated septic infection	0·67

In view of these observations and of the fact that we have not come across any instance of the association of a normal phagocytic power with a staphylococcus infection,[1] the conclusion would seem justified that a low phagocytic power and staphylococcus infection are related to each other by some fact of causation. While it is *à priori* possible that the diminished phagocytic power which characterizes those infected by the staphylococcus might be the result of the staphylococcus invasion, it is infinitely more probable, in view of the entire absence of clinical symptoms in the slighter cases of staphylococcus infection, that it is the defective phagocytic power of the patient which furnishes to the staphylococcus which is normally present upon the surface of the body the opportunity for invading the skin.

It is shown elsewhere (see p. 118) that a similar problem arises in connexion with the circumstance that a low phagocytic power, with respect to the tubercle bacillus, is generally found in association with tubercular infection.[2]

3. On the Distribution of Opsonins in the Infected Organisms.

It is a fundamentally important but unappreciated fact in connexion with bacterial infections that the *bacteriotropic pressure*—we designate

[1] *We have since come across such instances. They are, however, exceptional.*

[2] *We had here in view strictly localized tubercular infections.*

by this term the mass effect exerted upon the invading bacteria by the anti-bacterial substances contained in the blood fluids—does not stand at the same level in every part of the infected organism.

One of us has, in conjunction with Captain George Lamb, I.M.S.,[1] demonstrated in the case of patients who had succumbed respectively to typhoid and Malta fever that the amount of agglutinins in the splenic pulp is invariably less,[2] in some instances over 200 times less, than in the circulating blood. It was further shown in the paper in question that there was a similar difference as between the fluid obtained from the typhoid spots and the fluid of the circulating blood. Captain Lamb [3] gave a further extension to these observations by demonstrating, in the case of monkeys, examined immediately after the crisis of spirillum fever, that the splenic pulp (where the spirilla still survive after they have disappeared from the circulation) is much poorer in bactericidal and bacteriolytic substances than the circulating blood.

It is shown by these observations that the *Bacillus typhosus*, the *Micrococcus Melitensis* and the *Spirillum Obermeyeri*, respectively multiply, or, as the case may be, maintain their existence, within the infected organism in regions of low bacteriotropic pressure. We may legitimately assume that the lowered bacteriotropic pressure in the nidus, where the micro-organisms are cultivating themselves, results from a retarded replacement of anti-bacterial substances which are removed from the body fluids where these come into contact with bacteria.

Influenced by the results of the observations which have been just set out, we have addressed ourselves to the task of investigating the distribution of the opsonins in the case where the human organism is invaded by the staphylococcus. With this intent we have instituted comparisons between the serum obtained from the circulating blood and the fluid obtained by centrifugalization, from pus. It will be seen from the observations set forth below that what has been shown to hold true with respect to the distribution of agglutinins and bactericidal and bacteriolytic substances respectively in the bacterial infections beforementioned, holds true also in the case of the opsonins in the case of staphylococcic infection. In view of this fact, and of the similar facts which we set out elsewhere in connexion with tubercular infection (see pp. 119–120), it may be enunciated as a proposition of general application that the invading micro-organisms cultivate themselves in the organism in regions of lowered bacteriotropic pressure.

Case 1.

13.4.04. Patient with an alveolar abscess pointing on the cheek. Pus gives a pure culture of staphylococcus.

[1] Wright and Lamb, *Lancet*, December 23, 1898 (pp. 36–44 *supra*).

[2] This observation, so far as it applies to typhoid, had been anticipated by Paul Courmont, *Soc. de Biologie*, February 20 and March 28, 1897.

[3] Lamb, *Scientific Memoirs by Officers of the Medical and Sanitary Departments of the Government of India*, vol. xii, pp. 96 *et seq.*

A.

Patient's serum	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count [1] (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **30·3.**

B.

Supernatant fluid from pus	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **5·1.**

Ratio of phagocytic count of serum to phagocytic count of supernatant fluid from pus, 1 : 0·17.

15.4.04. Patient has had fomentations applied to cheek since abscess was opened on 13.4.04. Abscess rapidly healing.

A.

Patient's serum	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **10·05.**

B.

Supernatant fluid from pus	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **10·1.**

Ratio of phagocytic count of serum to phagocytic count of supernatant fluid of pus, 1 : 1.

Case 2.

Patient with patellar abscess. Pus from abscess furnishes a pure growth of streptococcus.

A.

Patient's serum	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **14·2.**

B.

Supernatant fluid of pus	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 40 P.W.B.C.), **1·25.**

Ratio of phagocytic count of serum to phagocytic count of supernatant fluid of pus, 1 : 0·09.

4. Determination of the Question as to whether the Opsonins which come into Consideration in Connexion with the Protection of the Organism against Staphylococcus Invasion are present in the Blood of the Infant at Birth.

Opportunity offering, we have thought it worth while to determine whether the protective substances which come into consideration in

[1] The phagocytic count was here, as elsewhere, determined by counting the number of bacteria ingested in the specified number of polynuclear leucocytes after digesting together in a capillary tube for 15 mins. at 37° C. the serum, corpuscles, and bacterial suspension.

connexion with the Staphylococcus pyogenes are present in the blood at birth. For this purpose we have made a series of comparative estimations of the opsonic power of the blood of child and mother, employing for this purpose respectively placental blood and blood drawn off directly from the mother immediately after the completion of parturition. We are indebted to Messrs. B. H. Spilsbury and J. Freeman for the collection of the bloods. The observations we have made are as follows :—

Observations.

Blood drawn off, in the case of the mother from the finger ; in the case of the child, from the umbilical cord.

No. 1.

A.

Mother's serum	3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **15·1.**

B.

Infant's serum	3 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	3 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **16·5.**

No. 2.

A.

Mother's serum	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **12·65.**

B.

Infant's serum	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Staphylococcus emulsion	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **12·25.**

5. Determination of the Course of the Reaction of Immunisation obtained in response to Inoculations of a Staphylococcus Vaccine.

We have in a very considerable number of cases plotted out by the aid of the phagocytic method the course of the reaction of immunisation which occurs in response to inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine.

A preliminary word or two may be devoted to the description of the mode of preparation of the vaccine.

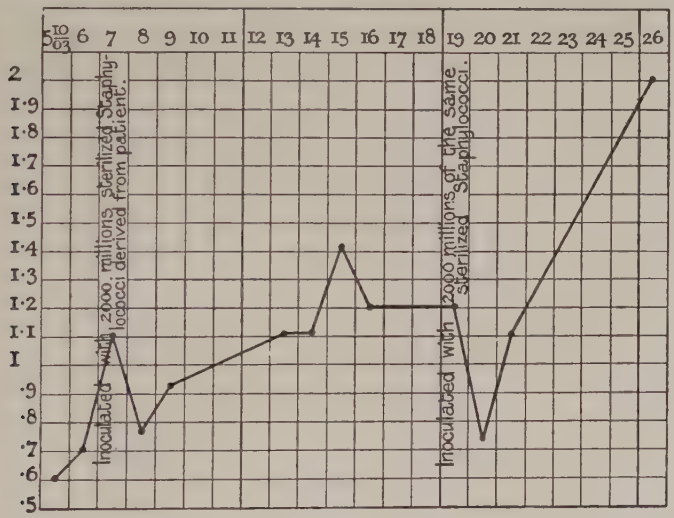
The procedure we adopt is as follows :—

We add to a 24-hours' growth of staphylococcus on sloped agar tube about 10 c.c. of sterile physiological salt solution. Churning up our culture with this, and letting it stand in order to allow all the unresolved bacterial masses to subside, we draw off the supernatant fluid by syphon action into a special form of tube, and heat to 60° C. for half an hour.

We now place the tube in an incubator and incubate for 24 hours in order to allow of a multiplication of any bacteria which may have survived the heating. We now take a sample of the vaccine and inoculate it upon agar with a view to testing its sterility. Before heating, a sample of the suspension has been drawn off for enumeration under the microscope by the procedure described by one of us in the *Lancet* of July 5, 1902.

After verifying the sterility of the vaccine we now dilute with a sufficiency of physiological salt solution to bring down the number of staphylococci in the cubic centimetre to 2,500,000,000. Finally we add lysol in sufficient quantity to bring the content of the vaccine in this antiseptic to 0·25 per cent.

In connexion with boils and sycosis a vaccine made from the *Staphylococcus aureus*; in cases of acne a vaccine made from a mixture of *Staphylococcus albus* and *citreus* is appropriate.



Curve 1.

A dose of 0·5 to 1 c.c. of the vaccine made as above is a suitable quantum for a first inoculation. For subsequent inoculations 1 to 2 c.c. of the vaccine may be employed.[1]

Below are subjoined four of the more instructive of the curves which we have obtained by the periodical examination of the phagocytic power of the blood subsequent to inoculations of staphylococcus vaccines.

Curve 1.—The curve here in question applies to a medical man who had suffered from boils almost continuously for 4 years.

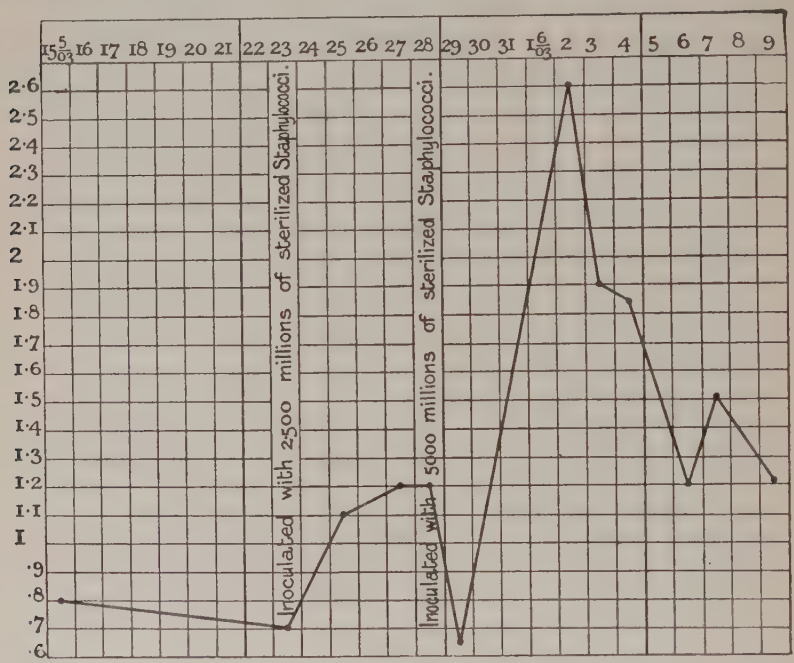
On the date when he presented himself for treatment he had two boils on his neck. It will be seen that the phagocytic index recorded for that day was 0·6—the phagocytic power of the normal control blood being throughout taken as unity.

[1] *We have since found that much smaller doses may with advantage be employed.*

On the next day and the day subsequent phagocytic indices of 0·7 and 1·1 respectively were recorded. This altogether spontaneous improvement of the phagocytic power went hand in hand with a striking improvement in the condition of the boils.

The patient was now inoculated with a quantum of sterilized culture of staphylococcus corresponding to 2,000,000,000 of staphylococci. The culture employed was derived from the patient's boils.

On the day subsequent to inoculation the patient's phagocytic power was found to be reduced. Contemporaneously with the development of this "negative phase," an irritable pimple developed on the neck.



Curve 2.

We may see in this, for it is a phenomenon which has manifested itself again and again in this connexion with our inoculations, an indication that the negative phase is associated with a diminished resisting power to invasion by the staphylococcus.

On the second day after the inoculation an improvement in the phagocytic power was recorded. The "positive phase," which is here heralded, reached its acme on the eighth day subsequent to inoculation.

On the twelfth day the patient was re-inoculated with the same quantum of vaccine as was employed on the first occasion. As on the previous occasion, inoculation was followed by a negative, succeeded by a positive

phase. For a period of weeks after the inoculation, when the patient passed out of observation, he remained perfectly free from boils.

Curve 2.—This curve has reference to a patient who suffered from aggravated sycosis. A pure cultivation of *Staphylococcus citreus* was obtained from the inflamed hair follicles. He had been treated without appreciable benefit for seventeen months by antiseptics.

Reference to the curve will show that the patient's phagocytic power with respect to the staphylococcus was here, as in the last case, less than that of the normal man who served as a control.

After his phagocytic power had been twice observed, he was inoculated with a quantum of sterilized staphylococcus culture corresponding to 2,500,000,000 of staphylococci. These staphylococci were derived from the culture above referred to.

Subsequent to inoculation we have here upon the curve instead of a rise preceded by a fall, only a rise. The absence of recorded negative phase is in all probability to be referred to the circumstance that two days here intervened between the inoculation and the first subsequent blood examination.

On the sixth day subsequent to inoculation the patient was reinoculated with a double quantum of staphylococcus vaccine. This inoculation was followed in a typical manner by a negative and positive phase. With respect to this last it will be seen that the curve attained its acme on the fifth day, and then declined in the usual manner.

Within a week after the second inoculation practically every trace of sycosis had disappeared. The patient was now lost sight of.

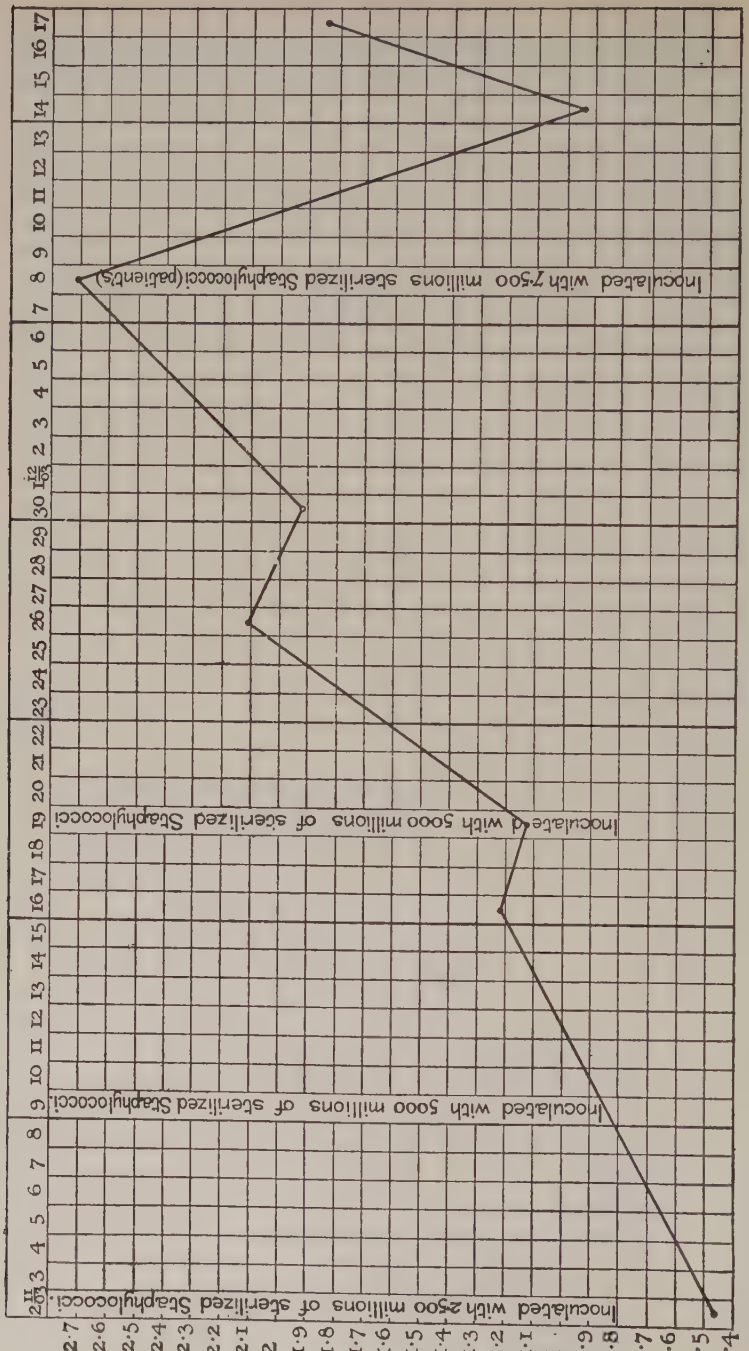
Curve 3.—The curve here in question applies to a labourer who was the subject of aggravated sycosis. He had suffered at intervals from childhood from boils and other chronic staphylococcus infections. A pure cultivation of *Staphylococcus aureus* was obtained from the inflamed hair follicles. He had been treated ineffectually for months by the usual methods.

As will be seen on reference to the chart, the phagocytic power of the blood was here investigated only from week to week instead of at more frequent intervals. As a result the positive phase of the reaction is alone on record in the case of the first three inoculations. In the case of the fourth inoculation—conducted with a larger quantum of the vaccine—the negative phase was still in evidence six days after the inoculation.

The patient, who was all but completely cured at the date upon which the curve concludes, afterwards relapsed after free indulgence in alcohol. He is now, as a result of further inoculations, again practically well.

Curve 4.—This curve applies to a healthy man of 24 who, while in training for a boat race, developed a boil on his gluteal region and subsequently a crop of boils on his neck.

Reference to the curve will show that his phagocytic index stood at the date of his first inoculation at 0·84.

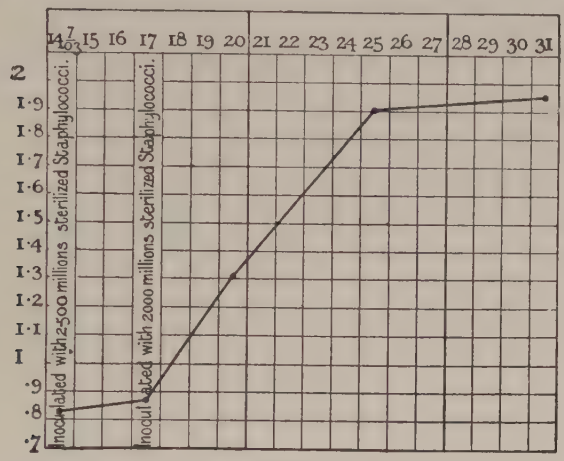

Inoculated with 2500 millions of sterilized Staaphylococci.
Inoculated with 5000 millions of sterilized Staaphylococci.
Inoculated with 5000 millions of sterilized Staaphylococci.
Inoculated with 7·500 millions sterilized Staaphylococci (patients)

CURVE 3.

A quantum of sterilized staphylococcus culture corresponding to 2,500,000,000 of staphylococci was inoculated.

Three days afterwards his phagocytic index stood at 0·88.

A further quantum of 2,000,000,000 staphylococci was inoculated:



Curve 4.

On the fifth and again on the eleventh day after inoculation the patient's phagocytic index stood respectively at 1·9 and 1·95.

Improvement in the patient's boils was already apparent at the date of the second inoculation. After this they completely aborted.

The patient afterwards relapsed, but did not come up for further observation.

On the Action exerted upon the Tubercle Bacillus by Human Blood Fluids, and on the Elaboration of Protective Elements in the Human Organism in Response to Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Stewart R. Douglas.

From the Laboratory of the Pathological Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

1. On the Tuberculotropic Elements of Human Blood, and on the Content of the Normal Blood in these Elements—Preliminary Experiments—2. Action exerted upon the Tubercle Bacillus by the Blood fluids of those who are the subject of Tubercular Infection—3. Distribution of Tuberculotropic Substances in the Infected Organism—4. Question as to whether the Protective Substances which come into consideration with Tubercle are present in the Blood of the Infant at Birth—5. On some Points in connexion with the Elaboration by the Human Organism of Tuberculotropic Elements in response to Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine—Principle upon which the Patients were Selected and General Procedure followed in Connexion with the Inoculations—Data furnished by the Measurement of the Agglutinating Power in the Case of Patients undergoing Anti-Tubercle Inoculation—Data furnished by the Measurement of the Opsonic Power of the Blood in the case of Patients undergoing Anti-tubercle Inoculations.

We propose to consider in this communication (1) the action exerted upon the tubercle bacillus by normal human blood fluids and the tuberculotropic[2] substances which come here into consideration; (2) the action exerted upon the tubercle bacillus by the blood fluids of those who are the subject of tubercular infection; (3) the distribution of tuberculotropic substances in the infected organism; (4) the question as to whether these protective substances are present in the blood of the infant at birth; and (5) some points in connexion with the elaboration in the human organism of tuberculotropic substances in response to inoculations of a tubercle vaccine.

I.—On the Tuberculotropic Elements of Human Blood and on the Content of the Normal Blood in these Elements.

Agglutinins.—The technical difficulties created by the circumstance

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1904.

[2] The term *tuberculotropic* is, in accordance with the scheme of terminology introduced by Ehrlich, employed by us to connote the property of *turning towards* and entering into chemical combination with the tubercle bacillus.

that the tubercle bacillus grows in artificial culture in agglomerated masses stood for a long time in the way of the demonstration of the presence of agglutinins in the serum. These difficulties were for the first time overcome by Arloing, who obtained, by the operation of a process of selection, a strain of tubercle which gives a homogeneous growth when the culture is frequently shaken up. For the homogeneous cultures of Arloing, Koch substituted a homogeneous suspension of bacillary fragments obtained by the trituration of ordinary tubercle cultures. Koch made his suspension with physiological salt solution.

The test fluid thus constituted exhibits—and this point did not escape the observation of Koch—a proneness to spontaneous agglutination. This defect, and it is a defect which may invalidate the results of any test examination, can, as was pointed out by one of us,[1] be eliminated by employing in lieu of the 0·85 per cent. NaCl solution prescribed by Koch, a 0·1 per cent. NaCl solution.[2]

We have in the case of the investigations on agglutination which are embodied in this paper, in every case employed this 0·1 per cent. salt solution both for the dilution of the serum and for the suspension of the tubercle powder.

In some of our more recent experiments we have substituted for the test fluid constituted as above a homogeneous suspension of tubercle bacilli obtained by heating an ordinary tubercle culture to 60° C. for an hour, filtering off the bacterial growth, breaking up this last in a mortar with a solution of 0·1 per cent. NaCl in 0·5 per cent. carbolic acid, and finally centrifugalizing to remove any bacterial masses which have not been resolved into their elements.

In experiments conducted with either the one or the other of these test fluids agglutination effects are obtained with normal human serum. Conducting the experiments in throttled capillary tubes by the method described by one of us,[3] and taking cognisance of the effect by naked-eye inspection, a complete sedimentation is generally obtained in the two- and four-fold dilution, and incomplete sedimentation in the eight-fold dilution. With some normal bloods complete sedimentation is obtained up to the 16-fold dilution.

Bactericidal Elements.—Our investigations into the question as to the presence of a bactericidal element in human serum are as yet incomplete.

Opsonins.—As already brought out by us in previous papers,[4] the phagocytic effect obtained when bacteria are introduced into the blood

[1] Wright, *Lancet*, July 25, 1903.

[2] The principle which suggested the replacement of the stronger by the weaker salt solution finds application, as one of us (S. R. D.) has recently elicited, also in the case of plague cultures. The spontaneous agglutination which has up to the present been a source of difficulty in measuring the agglutination effect exerted by sera upon plague cultures can be completely avoided by employing a 0·1 per cent. solution of salt in lieu of the broth or physiological salt solution ordinarily employed.

[3] Wright, *Lancet*, July 25, 1903.

[4] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vols. 72 and 73 (pp. 75–88 and 89–99 *supra*).

is dependent upon an action exerted by the blood fluids directly upon the micro-organisms.

We have investigated this question also in connexion with the tubercle bacillus. In doing so a two-fold technical difficulty confronted us :— *first*, a difficulty associated with the circumstance that the tubercle bacillus is available in ordinary cultures only in the form of agglomerated bacterial masses, and *secondly*, a difficulty associated with the circumstance that unaltered tubercle bacilli when they have been obtained in homogeneous suspension, are agglutinated by the action of both serum and physiological salt solution.

The first difficulty can be surmounted by breaking up the bacterial masses in a mortar in a 0·1 per cent. NaCl solution, i.e. in a salt solution diluted up to the point at which it will no longer bring together by its agglutinating action tubercle bacilli which have been mechanically separated.

The second difficulty can be surmounted by heating the tubercle culture to 100° C.[1]

We subjoin here a series of experiments (conducted before the procedure last mentioned was thought out), with living tubercle bacilli suspended in a 0·1 per cent. NaCl solution. It will be seen that the difference between the phagocytic effect obtained with the unheated and the heated serum respectively is sufficiently pronounced to throw altogether into the background the source of disturbance which is associated with the presence of an agglutinating element in the serum.

Preliminary Experiments.

In this series of experiments a homogeneous suspension of living tubercle bacilli was made by rubbing up a small quantity of a tubercle growth (obtained from a glycerine potato culture) in an agate mortar in 1 in 1000 NaCl solution, and then centrifugalizing to get rid of the bacterial masses which had not been resolved into their elements.

Experiment 1.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 67 P.W.B.C.), **5·4**.

B.

A. E. W.'s serum heated to 60° C. for 20 mins.	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 30 P.W.B.C.), **0·75**.

Experiment 2.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum	2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 16 P.W.B.C.), **17·3**.

[1] *Such heating, destroying as it does the agglutinability of the tubercle bacillus, makes it, in point of fact, quite unnessary to employ salt solutions of low concentration.*

B.

S. R. D.'s serum heated to 60° C. for 20 mins. . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 37 P.W.B.C.), **3·0.**

Experiment 3.

A.

C. J.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 19 P.W.B.C.), **14.**

B.

C. J.'s serum heated to 60° C. for 20 mins. . . 2 vols.
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 37 P.W.B.C.), **3·0.**

With cultures which have been exposed to a temperature of 100° C. precisely similar results are obtained, while an advantage is gained in the respect that the count is no longer rendered difficult by the massing together of the bacilli.

All the experiments hereafter subjoined have been carried out with such a culture, i.e., a culture heated to 100°, broken up in 1 in 1000 NaCl solution, and centrifugalized until all unresolved clumps had been carried down.

Our next series of experiments was undertaken with a view to determining whether the increased phagocytic effect obtained with the unheated serum is due to an action exerted by the serum directly upon the tubercle bacilli.

Experiment 1.

A.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **6·9.**

B.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.

The above were digested together for 15 mins. at 37° C.; were then heated to 60° C. for 10 mins.; and finally 3 vols. of the mixture were added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 31 P.W.B.C.), **3·5.**

C.

S. R. D.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.

The above were immediately, after mixture, heated to 60° C. for 10 mins., and were then added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **0·16**.

Experiment 2.

A.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 49 P.W.B.C.), **5·2**.

B.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . 2 „

The above were digested together for 15 mins. at 37° C.; were then heated to 60° C. for 10 mins.; and finally 3 vols. of the mixture were added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 40 P.W.B.C.), **2·6**.

C.

A. E. W.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . 1 vol.

The above were immediately after mixture heated to 60° C. for 10 mins.; and were then added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **0·34**.

Experiment 3.

A.

H. B. S.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **4·8**.

B.

H. B. S.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . 1 vol.

The above were digested together for 15 mins. at 37° C.; were then heated to 60° C. for 10 mins.; and finally 3 vols of the mixture were added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 30 P.W.B.C.), **2·6**.

C.

H. B. S.'s unheated serum . . . . . 2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . 1 vol.

The above were immediately after mixture heated together for 10 mins. to 60° C.; and were then added to—

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 vols.
Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), **0·4**.

It will be manifest that these experiments testify to an opsonic action exerted by the serum directly upon the tubercle bacilli.

The smaller phagocytic effect recorded in each experiment in B as compared with A is at present without explanation.

The experiment next subjoined indicates that it is the potency of the serum rather than the potency of the white corpuscles which determines the amount of phagocytosis. In this experiment the corpuscles of the tubercular patient's blood, and the corpuscles of the normal blood respectively were employed in A′ and A″ in combination with their native blood fluid. In B′ and B″ a reciprocal exchange of blood fluids was made.

A′.

Tubercular patient's washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Tubercular patient's serum	2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 36 P.W.B.C.), **0·66**.

A″.

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s serum	2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 32 P.W.B.C.), **3·1**.

B′.

Tubercular patient's washed corpuscles	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s serum	2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 31 P.W.B.C.), **2·1**.

B″.

A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Tubercular patient's serum	2 „
Suspension of living tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 30 P.W.B.C.), **1·3**.

It will be seen that the phagocytic effect obtained with the patient's white corpuscles (in A′) was (in B′) increased more than three-fold in consequence of the replacement of their native serum by that of the control blood. The phagocytic effect obtained with the white corpuscles of the control blood (in A″) was (in B″) diminished in an almost corresponding degree (approximately two and a half times), by the replacement of their native serum by that of the patient.

These results are, it may be pointed out, in conformity with those recorded in our previous paper [1] in connexion with the phagocytosis of the staphylococcus pyogenes.

2. Action exerted upon the Tubercle Bacillus by the Blood-fluids of those who are the subject of Tubercular Infection.

The blood fluids of the subjects of a particular bacterial infection may be expected to differ with respect to their content in bacteriotropic substances from the blood fluids of normal persons. An increased content in these elements may be expected in the case where there has been active response on the part of the machinery of immunisation to the stimulus of infection; diminished content (*a*) where that machinery is becoming exhausted, and (*b*) where infection is dependent upon a native, or at any rate, antecedent deficiency in protective substances.

[1] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. 73 (pp. 89–90 *supra*).

Agglutinating effect.—We have in no instance found the agglutinating power of the blood of tubercular patients higher than that of certain normal bloods. Sometimes we have found it notably decreased. In three cases we have found it altogether absent. On the average we find that it does not differ sensibly from that of the normal blood.

It would seem to follow—and this conclusion is in conformity with that arrived at by others—that no indication as to the presence or absence of tubercular infection can be drawn from the measurement of the agglutinating power, unless perhaps in the case where that reaction is found to be quite absent.

Opsonic effect.—The measurement of the opsonic power of the blood fluids discloses very definite differences. We have not in any of the subjoined patients recorded at the outset an opsonic power equal to that of our own bloods. On the contrary there has been in each such case a definite defect of opsonic power. The results of our observations on this point are embodied in the table below.

TABLE I.—*Showing the Opsonic Power of the Blood Fluids in a Series of Tubercular Patients.*

The procedure adopted was to mix together in each case the patient's serum with a suspension of heated tubercle bacilli and with washed corpuscles derived from a normal person. In each case the opsonic power of the normal serum employed as a control (derived in practically every case from A. E. W. or S. R. D.) was taken as unity.

Serial Number of the Observation.	Form of the Tubercular Infection.	Opsonic Index.
Case 1	Tubercular peritonitis	0.67
„ 2	Laryngeal phthisis	0·6
„ 3	Psoas abscess	0·4
„ 4[1]	Tubercular sycosis	0·4
„ 5	Nasal and pharyngeal lupus	0·56
„ 6	Tubercular cystitis	0·8
„ 7	„ „	0·6
„ 8	Generalized lupus	0·5
„ 9	Lupus of hand	0·9
„ 10	Tubercular prostatitis	0.8
„ 11	„ glands	0·85
„ 12	„ abscess of thigh	0·64
„ 13[2]	Lichen scrophulosorum	0·56
„ 14	Pulmonary phthisis	0·75
„ 15	„ „	0·69
„ 16[3]	Tubercular infection of ovary and peritonitis	0·65
„ 17	„ abscesses of arm and chest wall	0·56

[1] It is interesting to note in connexion with this case that the definite diagnosis of tubercular infection, which was based upon the histological structure of a piece of excised tissue, was anticipated in view of the inductions obtained from the phagocytic test recorded above.

The alternative diagnosis of staphylococcus infection was excluded by the fact that the patient was found to possess a normal opsonic index with respect to the staphylococcus.

[2] The patient gave a typical local and general reaction when inoculated for diagnostic purposes with a test dose of Koch's old tuberculin.

[3] The diagnosis was based upon a histological examination of the extirpated ovary.

As indicated above, a diminished content in bacteriotropic substances such as we have here on record may be ascribed either to the exhaustion of the protective elements under the influence of the bacterial invasion; or, alternatively, to an antecedent deficiency in these elements.

The following considerations appear to us here to plead in favour of interpreting the low opsonic power of the tubercular patients here in question as the occasion and not the consequence of infection.

(*a*) Very low phagocytic indices have been obtained where constitutional symptoms were absent or insignificant. The cases denoted by the serial numbers 3, 4, 5, and 8 are instances in point.

(*b*) We have in practically every case found it possible to increase, by an inoculation of a tubercle vaccine, the opsonic power of a patient's blood fluids.

3. Distribution of Tuberculotropic Substances in the Infected Organism.

We have made the subjoined observations on this question. It will be seen that they are in consonance with the observations (see pp. 104–105) we have made in connexion with the distribution of the staphylococcic opsonins in the infected organism, and with the induction that the bacteriotropic pressure is always reduced in the actual foci of infection.

Observation 1.

The patient was a child æt. 2 years, affected with tubercular necrosis of the sternum, and with a tubercular abscess in the thigh.

A.

Serum obtained from blood drawn from finger	1 vol.
Physiological salt solution	1 „
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), 3·9.

B.

Supernatant fluid of pus withdrawn from abscess	1 vol.
Physiological salt solution	1 „
S. R. D.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic co unt (average of 20 P.W.B.C.), 1·1.

Observation 2.

The patient was a young man suffering from a psoas abscess due to tubercular infection.

A.

Serum obtained from blood withdrawn from finger	1 vol.
Physiological salt solution	1 „
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	2 „

Phagocytic count (average of 40 P.W.B.C.), 0·6.

B.

Supernatant fluid of pus derived from sinus	1 vol.
Physiological salt solution	1 „
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 vols.
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	2 „

Phagocytic count (40 P.W.B.C. searched), **0**.

With a view to ascertaining whether the tissue lymph might not normally be poorer in opsonic substances than the serum, the following experiment was made :—

A.

Serum of blood withdrawn from A. E. W.'s finger	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **0·92**.

B.

Fluid from blister raised by friction upon A. E. W.'s finger	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.

Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **0·86**.

Observation 3.

The patient was a young man operated upon for ascites dependent upon extensive tubercular infection of the peritoneum.

A.

Serum obtained from blood withdrawn from finger	1 vol.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	1 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 „

Phagocytic count (average of 21 P.W.B.C.) **25·4**.

B.

Fluid withdrawn from peritoneum	1 vol.
B. H. S.'s washed corpuscles	1 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 „

Phagocytic count (average of 34 P.W.B.C.), **4·6**.

It is interesting to bring into relation with the data of this last observation (*a*) the fact that the phagocytic count of this patient's serum stood to the phagocytic count of the control serum employed (A.E.W.'s) as 1·5 : 1 ; (*b*) the fact that the prognosis, so far as the restriction of the infection to the existing focus of disease, is comparatively favourable in cases of tubercular peritonitis ; and (*c*) the fact that a retrogression of the infection often follows in these cases upon the evacuation of the peritoneal fluid.

The *first* and *second* of these facts suggest that a reaction of immunisation may be set up by the absorption of vaccinating elements from the infected peritoneum. The *third* fact, and the same applies (*vide* Case 1 of the foregoing paper, pp. 104 and 105 *in this volume*), also in connexion with the evacuation of abscesses may, perhaps, find its explanation in the data given above. It would be reasonable to expect that the flow of new and active lymph, which would follow upon the evacuation of the stagnant and exhausted lymph, would operate in the direction of checking the growth of invading micro-organisms.

4. Question as to whether the Protective Substances which come into consideration in connexion with Tubercle are present in the Blood of the Infant at Birth.

In view of the asserted superior susceptibility of infants to tubercular infection, it appeared to us to be of interest to measure the respective opsonic power of mother and infant. We employed for this purpose blood taken from the umbilical cord and blood taken from the mother's finger immediately after completion of labour. Our observations are subjoined.

Observation 1.

A.

Serum from mother No. 1 . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 45 P.W.B.C.), **1·6**.

B.

Serum of infant No. 1 . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **1·38**.

Observation 2.

A.

Serum of mother No. 2 . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 50 P.W.B.C.), **0·4**.

B.

Serum of infant No. 2 . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 100 P.W.B.C.), **0·37**.

Observation 3.

A.

Serum of mother No. 3 . . . . . 2 vols.
J. F.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 40 P.W.B.C.), **3·55**.

B.

Serum of child No. 3 . . . . . 2 vols.
J. F.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 40 P.W.B.C.), **1·85**.

Observation 4.

A.

Serum of mother No. 4 . . . . . 2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles . . . . . 2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli . . . . . 1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 31 P.W.B.C.), **17·9**.

B.

Serum of infant No. 4	2 vols.
A. E. W.'s washed corpuscles	2 „
Suspension of heated tubercle bacilli	1 vol.
Phagocytic count (average of 30 P.W.B.C.),	10.

Observation 5.

A.

Serum of mother No. 4 agglutinates a suspension of fragments of tubercle bacilli completely in dilutions of 1 in 2, 4, 8, and 16; incompletely in a dilution of 1 in 32.

B.

Serum of infant No. 4 agglutinates the same suspension completely in dilutions of 1 in 2 and 1 in 4; incompletely in dilutions of 1 in 8 and 1 in 16.

5. On some Points in connexion with the Elaboration by the Human Organism of Tuberculotropic Elements in response to Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine.

We propose to set down here in briefest outline the more important of the facts which have emerged in the course of a study of the blood changes elicited by inoculations of a tubercle vaccine undertaken for therapeutic purposes.

Nature of the Tubercle Vaccine employed.—A tubercle vaccine may be defined, with respect to its derivation and its effect upon the organism, as any derivative of the protoplasm of the tubercle bacillus, which is capable of inducing an elaboration of tuberculotropic substances in the organism.

We may include under this definition :—

(1) Such a vaccine as would be arrived at by (*a*) sterilizing a tubercle culture at 60° C.; (*b*) breaking up the culture in a mortar in 0·1 per cent. salt solution; (*c*) centrifugalizing to remove any residual bacterial masses; (*d*) re-sterilizing at 60° C.; and (*e*) standardizing by enumeration, or by centrifugalization in graduated tubes in a sufficiently concentrated salt solution.

(2) The preparation which is sold as a therapeutic agent, under the name of Koch's new tuberculin or T.R. tuberculin.

This preparation consists, as is well known, of a fine suspension of triturated tubercle bacilli. The trituration to which the tubercle culture is subjected is employed with the two-fold object of sterilizing the vaccine by a process of comminution, and of obtaining the fine suspension which is desired.

It is doubtful whether the first of these ends can be efficiently secured by any process of trituration. The homogeneous suspension which is desired can, as was shown above (p. 113), be obtained by means other than the comminution of the bacilli by machinery.

(3) The preparation which is now sold, chiefly for diagnostic uses, under the name of Koch's old tuberculin.[1]

This preparation consists, as is well known, of the inspissated filtrate of a tubercle culture which has been grown for a period of weeks upon glycerinated broth, and which has afterwards been sterilized at 100° C.

Pending the working out of a vaccine upon the lines indicated in (1), the T.R. tuberculin has been the vaccinating material employed.

In our earlier experiments this preparation was simply diluted with sterilized salt solution.

In our later experiments we have—after satisfying ourselves that the vaccinal properties of Koch's preparation are unaffected by the adoption of such precautions—in every case heated the T.R. tuberculin to 60° C. for one hour, and have made our dilutions with a sterilized salt solution which had received an addition of 0·25 per cent. lysol.

Principle upon which the Patients were Selected and General Procedure Followed in Connexion with the Inoculations.

We have in our selection of cases been guided by the desire to deal at first only with the most aggravated and seemingly intractable cases of localized tubercular infection, and only with cases which would furnish unambiguous objective evidence of any progress or regress of the infection.

The general procedure followed was to begin in each case after the measurement of the content of the patient's blood in tuberculotropic substances, with very small doses (generally $\frac{1}{500}$ milligramme[2]) of the vaccinating material, and to reinoculate at intervals of ten days, re-testing the blood on each occasion, and in the case of each patient expressing the results in the form of a curve.

In our earlier experiments, before we had elaborated the procedure for measuring the opsonic power of the blood, we were necessarily restricted to a measurement of the agglutinating power.

[1] The proposition that the old tuberculin may appropriately be denoted a vaccine derives its justification, first, from the consideration that the prolonged cultivation and the prolonged digestion of the culture which is involved in the process of manufacture must be associated with autolysis, and secondly, from the observations made in connexion with Case 13 of Table I, and the last patient in Table III.

In the former case, the opsonic index of the patient's blood stood at 0·56 immediately before the inoculation of 1 milligramme old tuberculin. It stood at 0·55 18 hours afterwards in the height of the febrile reaction, and at 1·01 three days later.

In the latter case, the opsonic index of the blood stood at 0·67 immediately before the inoculation of 1 milligramme of the old tuberculin. It stood next day at 0·4, and eight days later at 0·76.

[2] *Owing to the fact that the question of dry tubercle powder in Koch's T.R. tuberculin was, owing to the fact that* 10 *mgr. of the powder were used for the manufacture of* 1 *cubic centimetre, declared as* 10 *mgr. in* 1 *cc., when the actual content was, in reality, only* 2 *milligrammes in* 1 *cc. (Ruppel, "Deutsche medic. Wochenschr.," 1908, Jan.* 30), *the dose here in question would in reality be not* $\frac{1}{500}$ *milligramme but* $\frac{1}{2500}$ *milligramme.*

Data Furnished by the Measurement of the Agglutinating Power in the Case of Patients undergoing Anti-Tubercle Inoculation.

The method of investigation here in question—and we would note that it had before us been employed by Koch in connexion with inoculations of his T.R. tuberculin—furnishes, it seems to us, indications which have a certain value.

An increase in the agglutinating power of the blood is generally, as in the cases tabulated below, obtained in the course of a successful immunisation.

It is, however, to be noted that the rise in the agglutination curve may occur long subsequent to the achievement of very marked clinical improvement, and further that such clinical improvement may be obtained quite apart from any sensible increase in the agglutinating power of the blood.

In addition to furnishing indications of successful advance in the direction of immunisation, the measurement of the agglutinating power of the patient's blood may afford also indications of regress in the direction of increased susceptibility resulting from an overtaxing of the machinery of immunisation.

In exemplification of this we may quote three passages from the history of a patient (E. S., Tables II and III) with tubercular infection of the kidney and bladder, whose agglutination curve was followed for nearly 18 months.

The patient in question, who had in association with the inoculations set forth in Table II put on 5 lb. in weight, received on April 30, the date on which the record in Table II closes, 0·025[1] milligramme, on May 5 0·05 milligramme,[1] and on May 13 0·2[1] milligramme of T.R. tuberculin.

In association with the first two of these inoculations, the agglutination curve sank away rapidly from 64 to 8, the patient losing at the same time 3½ lb. in weight, and suffering from considerable constitutional disturbance (see *infra*, Chart 1, fig. 271).

In association with the third of these inoculations the agglutinins disappeared entirely from the blood.

On a later occasion, in the beginning of November, 1903, when the general condition of the patient had very markedly improved, and when her body weight had increased by 23 lb., a similar negative phase effect, accompanied by constitutional disturbance, was obtained in association with the inoculation of three 1 milligramme[1] doses of the T.R. tuberculin on November 2, 6, and 11 respectively. Here the complete agglutination, which was on the first of these dates obtained in a 32-fold dilution of the serum, was obtained after the inoculations only in an 8-fold dilution.

Again, in the beginning of December, when another attempt was made to press the inoculations, the agglutination curve, which had risen again to 32 after the inoculations referred to in the preceding paragraph, declined in consequence of two 1 milligramme inoculations, first to 8 and then to 2, and the patient's symptoms were aggravated.

[1] *Vide* p. 123, *note* 2.

A similar decline of the agglutination curve has come under observation also in other cases in association with the premature increase of the dose of vaccine, and with the shortening of the interval between successive inoculations.

TABLE II.—*Showing the Agglutinating Power of the Blood in the case of a Series of Patients, before Inoculation, and after a Series of Inoculations of Tubercle Vaccine.*

Patient's Initials.	Highest Dilution of Serum in which complete Agglutination was obtained, and Date of Observation (in brackets).	Highest Dilution of Serum in which complete Agglutination was obtained after the Inoculations particularized in the next column, and Date of Observation (in brackets).	Doses of T.R. Tuberculin, and Dates of Inoculations (in brackets).
			mgrm.[1]
A. R.	3 (2.12.03)	32 (23.3.04)	0·0025 (2.12.03) 0·01 (17.12.03) 0·01 (4.1.04) 0·01 (14.1.04) 0·0075 (21.1.04) 0·0075 (1.2.04) 0·015 (15.2.04) 0·02 (1.3.04) 0·04 (11.3.04)
J. A.	0 (6.4.03)	64 (21.4.03)	0·002 (6.4.03) 0·01 (8.4.03) 0·02 (15.4.03)
N. T.	4 (6.1.04)	64 (23.3.04)	0·003 (20.1.04) 0·005 (2.2.04) 0·01 (23.2.04) 0·015 (2.3.04) 0·02 (12.3.04)
N. W.	8 (10.12.03)	32 (20.3.04)	0·01 (17.12.03) 0·0075 (4.1.04) 0·0075 (19.1.04) 0·01 (28.1.04) 0·01 (10.2.04) 0·015 (19.2.04) 0·02 (3.3.04) 0·02 (14.3.04)
E. J.	4 (27.1.04)	32 (16.3.04)	0·003 (27.12.03) 0·0066 (11.1.04) 0·01 (23.1.00) 0·015 (1.3.04)
E. S.	2 (17.4.03)	64 (30.4.03)	0·005 (21.4.03) 0·01 (24.4.03)
M. O.	0 (15.12.03)	24 (17.2.04)	0·004 (23.12.03) 0·008 (5.1.04) 0·016 (21.1.04)

[1] The weights here in question refer in each case to the weight of tubercle power stated to be contained in the quantum of T.R. tuberculin administered. (But *vide* p. 123, *note* 2).

TABLE III.—*Shows the Changes induced in the Opsonic Power of the Blood Fluids by the Inoculation of Tubercle Vaccine and furnishes Illustration of the Fact that the Cumulative Increase of the Protective Elements which is desired can be achieved only by the Proper Regulation and Interspacing of the Successive Doses of Vaccine.*

Initials.	Brief History of Case.	Dates and Particulars of Inoculations with T.R. undertaken since March, 1904.		Opsonic Index (Opsonic Power of the normal Blood —A. E. W.'s— used as a Control was taken as = 1).
			mgrm.[1]	
E. J. . .	Patient, a man of 30, developed tubercular glands on the left side of neck and a tubercular abscess on the point of the shoulder in the autumn of 1902. He was admitted to hospital and was operated upon for the first time in January, 1903. The wounds becoming invaded with tubercle, and refusing to heal, while the area of infection gradually extended, six further (scraping, extirpating, and skin-grafting) operations were undertaken during the course of the year. In December, 1903, when patient came up for treatment by inoculation, the whole area from the point of the shoulder to the ear had been converted into an ulcerated surface, there was a deep crater undermining the angle of the jaw and the ear, the left side of the face was distorted with swelling, and the axilla was occupied by a gland as large as a pigeon's egg. The patient was very anaemic and emaciated.	28.3.04	0.04	—
		18.4.04	0·1	0·73
		25.4.04	0·1	—
		10.5.04	0·1	—
		7.6.04	0·1	1·6
		27.6.04	nil	1·45
		15.7.04	0·02	—
		19.7.04	nil	1·15
	Steady improvement has been made under the inoculation treatment, the swelling of the face has almost entirely dispersed, the cavity under the jaw has healed up from the bottom, the gland in the axilla can no longer be felt, the ulcerated wound surfaces have almost completely closed, and the patient has the constitutional aspect of a healthy man.			

Note.—During the period 7.6.04–15.7.04 the inoculations of tubercle vaccine were suspended while the patient was being immunised against the staphylococcus pyogenes, which, by its presence on wound, appeared to be preventing the process of healing.

E. S. . .	Patient came into hospital in December, 1902, with the characteristic symptoms of an infection of the urinary tract. Tubercle bacilli were constantly present in phenomenal numbers in the urine, and a tubercular ulcer of the bladder was detected. Patient had been losing flesh and suffered from night sweats and from constant pain and frequency. Treatment by inoculation was begun on 21.4.03 and has been continued up to date, inoculations and examinations of the blood and urine being undertaken on an average once in 10 days. Under the treatment the tubercle bacilli in the urine have gradually diminished, and since the beginning of May they have been completely absent. The patient has increased 36 lb. in weight, and is now to all intents and purposes well, except for an infection of the urinary tract by the bacillus coli and pneumococcus, which is being dealt with by the inoculation of the appropriate vaccines.	25.3.04 8.4.04 18.4.04 27.4.04 9.5.04 1.6.04 15.6.04 6.7.04	0·5 0·5 0·5 nil 0·5 0·5 nil nil	— 0·93 0·4 0·42 0·77 0·4 1·3 2·2

Note.—The results of the blood examinations bring out that the inoculations were here conducted with excessive doses or perhaps at too short intervals. It will be seen that the opsonic power of the patient's blood declined in consequence of the inoculation undertaken on 8.4.04 from 0·93 on that date to 0·4 on 18.4.04. On the date last mentioned another 0·5 milligramme was inoculated—and it may be noted in this connexion that here as elsewhere it was often necessary to inoculate before the result of the blood examination was known. On 27.4.04, recovery was still incomplete, the patient being obviously poorly, and the inoculation was postponed. When next examined twelve days later the opsonic power of the blood was found to have risen to 0·77. A further dose of 0·5 milligramme was then inoculated, with the result that the opsonic power was reduced again to 0·4 on 1.6.04. On this day the patient again received a dose of 0·5 milligramme, the effect of this became manifest fourteen days after in the rise of the opsonic power to 1·3 and thirty-six days after in the rise of opsonic power to 2·2.

N. W. .	Patient, a woman 31 years of age, developed a tubercular infection of the glands of the neck at the age of 14. When the abscesses which formed in association with these were opened the overlying skin became invaded, the infection spread to other glands, and tubercular disease developed in the little finger of the right hand. The two terminal joints of this finger were removed when the patient was 16. When the patient was 19 she was treated with Koch's old tuberculin, receiving three to four inoculations a day (150 inoculations in all). As a result of these inoculations the patches of lupus on hand, neck and face became inflamed, a piece of bone sloughed out of the arm and the patient lost weight and became seriously ill. She remained in hospital in all thirteen weeks.	18.4.04 3.5.04 16.5.04 1.6.04 10.6.04 19.6.04 6.7.04 22.7.04	0·04 0·05 0·05 0·05 nil 0·04 0·04 —	0·16 0·6 — 0·78 — — 1·85 1·7

[1] The weights here in question refer in each case to the weight of tubercle powder stated to be contained in the quantum of T.R. tuberculin administered. (*Vide* p. 103 *note* 2.)

TABLE III—*continued.*

Initials.	Brief History of Case.	Dates and Particulars of Inoculations with T.R. undertaken since March, 1904.		Opsonic Index (Opsonic Power of the normal Blood —A. E. W.'s— used as a Control was taken as = 1).
			mgrm.	
	Four years later energetic local treatment was adopted, and scraping operations were undertaken upon the glands in the neck. In 1900 the Finsen light treatment was adopted, and was persevered in for eighteen months. This effected an improvement in the condition of the face and neck, but the disease continued to extend in the deeper structures, and in particular in the bones of the left arm. Finally it became necessary to amputate this limb. The disease now broke out in the stump, on the point of the shoulder, and in the chest wall, while it persisted all over both sides of the face and neck. After Röntgen rays had been tried unavailingly, recourse was had to inoculations of tubercle vaccine, the treatment being begun on December 10, 1903. After six months' treatment the discharge from the stump and chest wall has practically ceased, the patch on the point of the shoulder has healed up, the face appears to be in a better condition, and the patient's general health, which was previously very unsatisfactory, has improved in a remarkable manner. Her body weight has steadily gone up, and has now reached 141½ lb., as much as 5 lb. having on one occasion been gained in the interval between two successive inoculations.			
A. R. .	Patient, when referred for treatment by antitubercular inoculations in December, 1903, was found to be an emaciated, anaemic, physically and mentally undeveloped child of 19 affected by lupus of the nose, throat, angle of jaw, and feet and hands. The last were a mass of ulceration, the bones of the hand being involved in many places. After six months' teatment the patches of lupus on the nose and throat have almost dried up, and the condition of the hands and feet is much amended.	22.3.04	0·02	—
		7.4.04	0·05	1·1
		18.4.04	0·1	0·25
		28·4.04	nil	—
		5.5.04	0·05	0·61
		6.5.04	nil	0·85
		16.5.04	0·1	—
		7.6.04	0·1	1·2
		4.7.04	0·04	0·95
		19.7.04	—	1·3
		22.7.04	0·04	2·9

Note.—The obviously excessive dose of 0·1 milligramme was administered on 18.4.04 before it had been elicited by blood examination that the patient had not yet responded to the dose of 0·05 milligramme administered on 7.4.04. As a result—it may be assumed—of this cumulation of doses considerable constitutional disturbance was experienced. In view of this and of the development of a phlyctenule on the eye (a phenomenon which had once before been noticed in connexion with the development of a negative phase) the inoculation fixed for the 28.4.04 was postponed and on the next occasion a smaller dose was administered.

A. A. . .	Patient, a young man, had been in bed for twelve months with a psoas abscess which discharged continuously and showed no signs of improvement. Treatment by inoculation was begun on April 8. The patient is reported to have made rapid progress towards recovery immediately after the adoption of the treatment.	8.4.04	0·002	0·4
		20.4.04	0·002	—
		3.5.04	—	0·5
		10.5.04	0·004	—
		31.5.04	0·01	—
		2.6.04	—	0·8
		16.6.04	—	1·1
M. O. .	Patient, a young married woman, developed a double psoas abscess, which was opened up before and behind in January, 1903. The discharge from the wound continued till December without any sign of improvement, the temperature reaching 101° F. practically every night. The treatment by inoculations of tubercle vaccine was begun in the middle of December, 1903, and has been continued since that date. The temperature became normal ten days after the first inoculation, the wounds are practically healed and the patient is able to go out for drives. Her body weight has increased by 16 lb.	Record of the inoculations which were carried out by the surgeon in charge of the case is not to hand.		
		10.6.04	0·1	—
		19.6.04	—	1·95
S. T. . .	Patient, a man of 35, is the subject of phthisis associated with tubercular disease of the larynx.	2.6.04	0·002	0·6
		8.6.04	—	1·15
		9.6.04	0·004	—
		21.6.04	—	0·98
		22.6.04	0·008	—
		12.7.04	0·008	0·84
		25.7.04	—	1·36

[1] *Vide* p. 123, *note* 2.

TABLE III—*continued.*

Initials.	Brief History of Case.	Dates and Particulars of Inoculations undertaken since March, 1904.		Opsonic Index (Opsonic Power of the normal Blood —A. E. W.'s— used as a Control was taken as = 1).
			mgrm.[1]	
S. N. . .	Patient, a woman æt. 34, developed at age of 14 a tubercular abscess in left shoulder, at age of 16 a similar affection of the right leg behind knee, and at 17 lupus of the hand and foot. The little finger of the right hand was amputated in 1887, the third finger of the same hand in 1903, and three toes in April, 1904. In each case the tubercular infection has recurred in the site of the wound.	13.6.04	0·004	0·9
		21.6.04	0·01	—
		27.6.04	0·005	0·7
		5.6.04	—	0·65
		14.7.04	—	1·05
		15.7.04	0·008	—
		21.7.04	—	0·73
S.B. . .	Patient, a man of 22, has been the subject of lupus for the last fifteen years. He has been treated by all the ordinary methods, including the application of Röntgen rays. Practically the whole of his face and neck are affected. He has also large patches on the scalp, trunk, and elbow of the right arm.	7.7.04	0·002	0·5
		11.7·04	—	0·44
		15.7.04	0·004	—
		18.7.04	—	1·3
P. C. . .	Patient, a woman of 55, has for a long period of years been the subject of lupus of nose. The affection has now spread to her pharynx and larynx.	5.7.04	0·002	0·56
		12.7.04	0·004	0·48
		19.7.04	—	1·0
J. S. . .	Patient, a man æt. 35, has suffered for two years from an inflammatory tumefaction of the subcutaneous tissues in the region of the angle of the jaw and anterior portion of the throat. The patient has been treated by scraping and the application of antiseptics.	4.7.04	1·0[2]	0·67
		5.7.04	—	0·4
		13.7.04	0·004[3]	0·76
		21.7.04	—	1·06

[1] *Vide* p. 123, *note* 2. [2] Old tuberculin. [3] New tuberculin.

Data furnished by the Measurement of the Opsonic Power of the Blood in the case of Patients undergoing Anti-tubercle Inoculations.

Much more valuable than the indications which can be gleaned from the measurement of the agglutinating power of the blood are the indications furnished by a measurement of the opsonic power of the patient's blood. While the measurement of the agglutinating power of the blood may fail to furnish indications of an abnormally low resisting power on the part of the untreated patient; and while it may yield only tardy information of the alterations effected in the blood fluids by inoculation; and while it may sometimes altogether fail to distinguish between the patient's condition before and after successful immunisation; the measurement of the opsonic power satisfies, it would seem, all these desiderata.

We have already seen in Table I that it distinguishes [1] between the tubercular subject and the person with normal resistance. And we shall see in the table below that it furnishes prompt and clear indication of the negative phase which supervenes upon inoculation, and again of the positive phase whch succeeds the negative phase wherever the organism possesses the necessary power of response. Furthermore the measurement of the opsonic power of the blood distinguishes clearly between the untreated tubercular patient and the patient who has made progress in the direction of immunisation. This will appear clearly on comparing, in Table III below, the opsonic indices achieved after inoculation with those set forth in Table I.

In conclusion we may note that while we are jointly responsible for the observations set forth in Sections 1, 3, and 4 of this paper, the work which is embodied in Sections 2 and 5 has been separately undertaken by one of us.

[1] It will not, however, invariably do so.

Experiments on the Nature of the Opsonic Action of the Blood Serum.[1]

By William Bulloch, M.D., and E. E. Atkin, B.A.

From the Laboratory of the Bacteriological Department, London Hospital, London, E.

Effect of Heat upon Serum containing Opsonin—Effect of Cold upon Opsonin—Effects of Exposure to Light—Are the Opsonins, or are the Leucocytes, the Variable Factors when the Phagocytic Power of Different Bloods is Compared?—On the Constitution of the Opsonic Body in the Serum—Can the Opsonin act on Bacteria which have been subjected to High Temperatures?—Can Prolonged Heating at 60° C. of Opsonised Cocci destroy the Opsonic Power so that these Cocci cannot be picked up subsequently by Leucocytes?—Experiments on the Rate of Disappearance of Opsonin from Serum when the latter is brought into Contact with Cocci at 37° C. and at 0° C.—Experiments to Determine the Nature of the Opsonic Body, and its Mode of Action—If Heated Serum is unable to exert an Opsonic Action on Staphylococci, are the latter, when digested with Heated Serum, capable of being Opsonised by Unheated Serum?

In a series of simple and convincing experiments Wright and Douglas [2] have shown that in phagocytosis so called, an important if not a cardinal rôle is played by the body humours, whereby they act upon the bacteria, thus rendering the latter an easy prey for the polynuclear leucocytes. The demonstration of this *opsonic* action of the serum or plasma was mainly brought about by testing separately and combined the body humours and the corpuscles, which had been washed in salt solution. Contrary to general opinion, Wright and Douglas found that the leucocytes were capable of engulfing microbes only when the latter had been attacked by the serum or plasma. This attack on the microbe does not lead to the death of the latter, as sera may manifest a marked opsonic effect without being in the slightest degree bactericidal. Wright and Douglas found that the opsonic substance was more or less thermolabile, being destroyed in ten to fifteen minutes at a temperature of 60° to 65° C. In subsequent papers these authors have demonstrated that there is a definite type of immunity in which the blood fluids co-operate with the leucocytes to destroy the invading micro-organisms, this being different from the antitoxic and bactericidal types of immunity which have already been studied with completeness.

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1905.

[2] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vols. lxxii and lxxiii (pp. 75–99 *supra*).

Technique.—The technique we have employed is that described by Wright, and for the most part the experiments were made with living cultures of *Staphylococcus albus* not more than twenty-four hours old. For accurate and uniform results it is essential that the emulsions of the cultures should be homogeneous, the bacteria being uniformly distributed and separated from each other. This is best obtained by shaking, and the subsequent application of the centrifuge. From their tendency to group themselves into masses, certain strains of staphylococci are unsuitable for determining the opsonic power of the serum. Where different bacterial emulsions are compared with each other it is essential that they should contain the same number of bacteria, a result best obtained by counting and diluting as required.[1] The leucocytes were obtained from the citrated blood of the authors and other human beings or from rabbits. The sera used were either of human or animal origin, and were for the most part from normal individuals.

In all cases the proportion of serum, bacteria, and corpuscles was 3 : 1 : 3.

Effect of Heat upon Serum containing Opsonin.

Serum ceases to exert an opsonic effect upon bacteria after it has been heated in the water bath at 60° to 65° for ten to fifteen minutes. In most cases the opsonic effect is totally abolished at this temperature, in a few cases, however, some slight effect can be witnessed, but this is mainly, if not entirely, due to traces of serum left attached to the leucocytes where these have been incompletely washed in normal salt solution.

Experiment.

Normal rabbit's serum (three parts), mixed with staphylococcus emulsion (one part), and washed human blood corpuscles (three parts). A portion of this was tested, the serum being unheated. Other portions were heated to 60° C. for varying periods. In each case a phagocytic count was made by numbering the cocci in fifty leucocytes and then striking the average per leucocyte.

					Cocci per leucocyte.
1. (Control). Normal serum	+ cocci	+ corpuscles	=	14
2. Serum heated to 60° C. for 3′	+ „	+ „	=	0
3. „ „ 6′	+ „	+ „	=	0
4. „ „ 9′	+ „	+ „	=	0
5. „ „ 12′	+ „	+ „	=	0
6. „ „ 15′	+ „	+ „	=	0

The opsonin can, however, be destroyed at even lower temperatures if the heat is prolonged.

[1] See Wright, *Lancet*, July 5, 1902.

Experiment.

Here the conditions of the experiment were the same, with the exception that the serum was heated to 55° and 50° respectively, instead of at 60° C.

						Cocci per leucocyte.
(1)	1. (Control). Unheated serum		+ cocci	+ leucocytes	=	10·9
	2. Serum heated to 55° C. for	30′	+ „	+ „	=	0·3
	3. „ „	60′	+ „	+ „	=	0
(2)	1. (Control). Unheated serum		+ cocci	+ corpuscles	=	13
	2. Serum heated to 50° C. for	10′	+ „	+ „	=	3·4
	3. „ „	15′	+ „	+ „	=	2·4
	4. „ „	20′	+ „	+ „	=	2
	5. „ „	25′	+ „	+ „	=	1
	6. „ „	30′	+ „	+ „	=	1

Effect of Cold upon Opsonin.

Cold exerts little effect upon the opsonic power of the serum; when immersed in ice water for twenty-four hours the opsonic value sinks about one-third. At ordinary temperatures the opsonin is remarkably stable, showing practically no diminution for twenty-four hours.

Effects of Exposure to Light.

In ordinary diffused daylight the opsonic power of the serum remains unaltered for many hours, but when exposed to bright sunlight for three hours a serum was seen to become less opsonic in the proportion of 10 : 7.

Are the Opsonins, or are the Leucocytes, the Variable Factors when the Phagocytic Power of Different Bloods is Compared?

For many years Metchnikoff has taught that the leucocyte is the dominant factor in phagocytosis. He has also emphasized the training of the leucocyte as the essential thing in immunity. The experiments we have made confirm the results already obtained by Wright, and point to the conclusion that the leucocyte is indifferent, the variable in a series of bloods being the serum. In a first series of experiments the *leucocytes* derived from seven different persons were tested with respect to their phagocytic power, one and the same staphylococcic emulsion and one and the same serum (rabbit's) being used in each case.

In a second series the *sera* of the seven individuals whose corpuscles had been used in the above experiment were tested in respect of their opsonic power, one and the same suspension of cocci, and one and the same variety of leucocytes (derived from one of ourselves, W.B.) being employed throughout.

Experiment 1.

Rabbits' serum mixed with emulsion of staphylococci and human leucocytes (from seven persons) in the proportion of 3 : 1 : 3. Phagocytic count obtained by counting the number of cocci in thirty-five polynuclear leucocytes, and then calculating the number per leucocyte.

		Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Rabbit's serum + cocci + corpuscles (of W. B., a normal male)	= 9·8
2.	„ + „ + „ (of F. T. „)	= 9·3
3.	„ + „ + „ (of O. G. „)	= 9·7
4.	„ + „ + „ (of R. D. „)	= 9·6
5.	„ + „ + „ (of C. H. „)	= 9
6.	„ + „ + „ (of H. M., an anæmic female)	= 9·9
7.	„ + „ + „ (of S. M., male, facial acne)	= 9·0

Experiment 2.

Various human sera + cocci + one kind of leucocytes from a normal male individual.

			Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Serum of	W. B. + cocci + corpuscles of W. B.	= 21·3
2.	„	F. T. + „ + „ „	= 20·3
3.	„	O. G. + „ + „ „	= 21·1
4.	„	R. D. + „ + „ „	= 20
5.	„	C. H. + „ + „ „	= 19·8
6.	„	H. M. + „ + „ „	= 15·5
7.	„	S. M. + „ + „ „	= 14

The possible objection that the human leucocytes would be injured in contact with rabbit's serum is disposed of by an experiment in which the phagocytic power of one serum, either human or rabbit's, was determined with both human and rabbit's leucocytes. Even in this case the leucocyte is largely an indifferent factor.

			Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Rabbit's serum	+ staphylococci + rabbit's leucocytes	= 10·3
2.	„	+ „ + human „	= 13
3.	Human serum	+ „ + rabbit's „	= 19·5
4.	„	+ „ + human „	= 17·6

The preponderating effect exerted by the serum as distinguished from the polynuclear leucocytes is again brought out strikingly in the following experiment. In this case the serum mixed with corpuscles of a normal individual (W.B.) is compared with the sera and the corpuscles of three advanced cases of facial lupus, the first of these cases (No. 2 and No. 5) being a wretchedly under-nourished girl of ten with very extensive facial lupus and large ulcerated tubercular sores on the hands. The test material in this experiment was an emulsion of tubercle bacilli, and the number of T.B. in one hundred leucocytes was counted and the average struck as usual.

							T.B per leucocyte.
1.	Serum of normal individual	+	T. B. emulsion	+	leucocytes of normal individual	=	5·7
2.	„	„	+	„	+ leucocytes of a lupus patient		5·4
3.	„	„	+	„	+ „ „	=	5·2
4.	„	„	+	„	+ „ „	=	5·3
5.	Serum of a lupus patient	+	„		+ leucocytes of a normal individual ..	=	2·5
6.	„	„	+	„	+ „ „	=	2·4
7.	„	„	+	„	+ „ „	=	3·2

Expressing these relations as the opsonic index, we have—

No. 1 = 1·0 = (normal serum + normal leucocytes).
„ 2 = 0·94 = („ + leucocytes from lupus patient).
„ 3 = 0·90 = („ + „ „).
„ 4 = 0·93 = („ + „ „).
„ 5 = 0·43 = (lupus serum + normal leucocytes).
„ 6 = 0·43 = („ + „ „).
„ 7 = 0·56 = („ + „ „).

On the Constitution of the Opsonic Body in the Serum.

The bacterial bodies already known to exist in the serum are referable to one of three classes, viz., antitoxins, agglutinins, lysins. The last of these are the most complex, as the lytic action occurs only after the coalition of two distinct elements, the complement which for the most part is thermolabile, and the immune body, which is thermostable. The agglutinins are of simpler constitution, although here special conditions of the agglutinating substance (the serum) and the agglutinable substance (the bacteria) must exist before agglutination is manifest. Temperatures above 70° C. applied either to the serum or to the bacteria suffice to inhibit the agglutination, although the agglutinin is apparently not entirely destroyed. In comparison with the lysins and agglutinins the antitoxins are believed to be relatively simple bodies. We have asked ourselves the question, to which, if any, of these classes do the opsonins belong, and we have followed the usual methods of experimentation which have been utilized to determine the constitution of such antibodies. These experiments chiefly consist in determining the temperature at which the specific action is abolished, the temperatures at which the antibody enters into combination with the bacteria, and whether the action of heat is one of destruction or merely a conversion into some modification in which the specific action is no longer manifest.

Can the Opsonin act on Bacteria which have been subjected to High Temperatures?

Experiment 1.

Technique.—Emulsions of cultures of staphylococcus were placed

in sealed glass tubes and subjected to temperatures of 100 to 134° C. for varying periods, the opsonic action of serum on such heated cultures being compared with that upon unheated emulsions.

Results.—

				Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Normal human serum	+ unheated cocci	+ leucocytes	= 30
2.	„ „	+ cocci heated to 100° C. for 30′	+ „	= 20
3.	„ „	+ „ „ 100° C. for 60′	+ „	= 20
4.	„ „	+ „ „ 115° C. for 30′	+ „	= 15
5.	„ „	+ „ „ 120° C. for 30′	+ „	= 15

Experiment 2.

				Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Human serum	+ unheated cocci	+ corpuscles	= 27
2.	„	+ cocci heated to 100° C. for ½ hr.	+ „	= 17
3.	„	+ „ „ 1 „	+ „	= 15
4.	„	+ „ „ 1½ hrs.	+ „	= 12·9
5.	„	+ „ „ 2½ „	+ „	= 13
6.	„	+ „ 134° C. for 1½ „	+ „	= 12·6

From these experiments it is apparent that there is a certain falling-off of the opsonic action when the cultures are kept at high temperatures for long periods, but even at 134° C. for 1½ hours the diminution in phagocytic power is about 50 per cent. It is possible, too, that the readings are really higher, as it is often very difficult to count the bacteria which have been subjected to such high temperatures on account of defective penetration of the stains employed.

Effect of heating to 60° C. a mixture of serum and cocci which have already been digested at 37° C. for fifteen minutes.

We have already seen that a temperature of 60° C. applied to the serum suffices to abolish its opsonic effect. Wright and Douglas showed, however, that if the serum were first brought into contact with bacteria at 37° C. for fifteen minutes, and the mixture were then heated to 60° C. for fifteen minutes, the cocci were picked up by leucocytes without difficulty. It was upon this experiment that they based their conclusion that the opsonin really acts upon the bacteria and does not merely stimulate the leucocyte.

Can Prolonged Heating at 60° C. of Opsonised Cocci destroy the Opsonic Power so that these Cocci cannot be picked up subsequently by Leucocytes?

Experiment.

Technique.—Normal serum (three parts) mixed with staphylococcus emulsion (one part); mixture kept in water bath at 37° C. for fifteen minutes. This mixture, which is spoken of below as "opsonised cocci," was then distributed into a series of glass pipettes which were placed in

the water bath at 60° C. for periods of fifteen minutes up to five hours. On removal from the water bath, four volumes of the "opsonised cocci" were mixed with three volumes of corpuscles at 37° C. for fifteen minutes, and the phagocytic count made as usual. For comparison the phagocytic count of unheated serum + cocci, and of serum heated to 60° C. before being mixed with cocci, is added.

Results.—

						Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	Unheated serum (3 vols.)	+ cocci (1 vol.)	+	corpuscles (3 vols.)		= 28
2.	Serum heated to 60° C. for 15	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0·1
3.	"Opsonised cocci" at C. 60° for 15′ (4 vols.)		+	„	„	= 27
4.	„ „	30′ „	+	„	„	= 28
5.	„ „	45′ „	+	„	„	= 23
6.	„ „	60′ „	+	„	„	= 24·5
7.	„ „	1½ hrs. „	+	„	„	= 23
8.	„ „	2 „ „	+	„	„	= 23·5
9.	„ „	2½ „ „	+	„	„	= 22
10.	„ „	3 „ „	+	„	„	= 24
11.	„ „	5 „ „	+	„	„	= 23·5

The experiment shows that some change is produced in the bacteria during the fifteen minutes' exposure at 37° C., and the change is such that subsequent heating to 60° for even five hours is inoperative, this being very different to the effect of a preliminary heating of serum at 60° C. before admixture with bacterial emulsion.

Experiments on the Rate of Disappearance of Opsonin from Serum when the latter is brought into contact with Cocci at 37° C. and at 0° C.

Experiment.

Technique.—Normal serum mixed with an equal volume of staphylococcus emulsion and then filled into a series of capsules. The capsules were sealed and placed in the water bath at 37° C. or in a mixture of ice and salt. After varying periods the capsules were removed and carefully centrifugalized for one hour, the clear supernatant fluid from each capsule being tested upon a fresh suspension of staphylococcus to see whether the opsonin had disappeared. As a control the opsonic power of normal serum in proper dilution is also added, likewise the opsonic power of serum which has been heated to 60° C. for fifteen minutes.

						Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	(Control). Normal serum (3 parts)	+ cocci (1 part)	+	corpuscles (3 parts)		= 18·7
2.	(Control). Heated „ „	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0·1
3.	Supernatant fluid from capsule at 37 C. for 5′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
4.	„ „ „ 10′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
5.	„ „ „ 15′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
6.	„ „ „ 30′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
7.	„ „ „ 45′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
8.	„ „ at 0° C. for 10′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
9.	„ „ „ 20′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
10.	„ „ „ 30′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0
11.	„ „ „ 45′	+ „ „	+	„	„	= 0

The result is unequivocal; the opsonin had completely disappeared from the serum within ten minutes both at 37° C. and at 0° C.

Experiments to Determine the Nature of the Opsonic Body, and its Mode of Action.

We have seen above, that when heated to 60° C., serum ceases to exert an opsonic effect. We have also seen that opsonin disappears from the serum when the latter is digested with bacteria at 37° C., or at 0° C. Is this disappearance due to destruction, or does the opsonin pass into some modification, in which an opsonic effect is not visible? Is the opsonin a simple or a complex structure?

Experiment 1.

Technique.—(1) Normal serum was digested with an equal quantity of emulsion of cocci at 37° C. for fifteen minutes. After digestion, mixture was centrifugalized for ¾ hour. In this way a clear supernatant fluid (A) was separated from a deposit of cocci (A′).

(2) Normal serum was digested with an equal quantity of emulsion of cocci at 0° C. for fifteen minutes, centrifugalized as above, and separated into a supernatant fluid (B) and a deposit (B′).

As the serum was mixed with equal quantity of cocci, the controls made with normal serum and "normal" cocci are given in their appropriate dilutions, which were made with 0·85 per cent. saline. The term "normal" is applied to cocci which have not been treated in any way.

Results.—

						Cocci per leucocyte.
1.	(Control). Normal serum (2-fold dilution)	+	"normal" cocci	+	corpuscles	= 25
2.	„ „ (4-fold „)	+	„	+	„	= 17
3.	Fluid A	+	„	+	„	= 1
4.	„ B	+	„	+	„	= 2·5
5.	„ A	+	cocci B′	+	„	= 27
6.	„ A + B	+	"normal" cocci	+	„	= 3
7.	(Control). Normal serum (undiluted)	+	„	+	„	= 31
8.	„ „	+	cocci A′	+	„	= 28
9.	„ „	+	„ B′	+	„	= 26·5

This experiment again shows the disappearance of the opsonin from the serum at 37° and 0° C. It also shows (Nos. 8 and 9) that the opsonin has passed into the cocci (A′ and B′).

Experiment 2.

In this experiment an attempt was made to determine whether at 0° C. a complement-like body could be separated out, which, with heated serum, would exert an opsonic effect.

Technique.—1. Normal serum mixed with emulsion of cocci, in equal parts, at 0° C. for fifteen minutes. The mixture was then centrifugalized, and separated into a supernatant fluid (A) and a deposit (A′).

2. Serum *heated* to 60° C. for fifteen minutes, mixed with cocci (āā), and placed at 0° C. for fifteen minutes. It was then centrifugalized, and separated into a supernatant fluid (B), and a deposit (B′). Controls were supplied by normal serum (in appropriate dilutions), digested with "normal" cocci and corpuscles at 37° C., and heated serum under the same conditions.

					Cocci per leucocyte.
1. (Control). Normal serum (2-fold dilution)	+	"normal" cocci	+	corpuscles	= 25
2. „ „ (4-fold „)	+	„	+	„	= 18
3. „ Serum heated to 60° C. for 15′	+	„	+	„	= 2
4. Fluid A + heated serum (āā)	+	„	+	„	= 2
5. Fluid A	+	„	+	„	= 2
6.		cocci A′	+	„	= 22
7.		cocci B′		„	= 4

Remarks.—This experiment shows that the opsonin is very different in type from a lysin, as apparently no complement-like body remains in the supernatant fluid after the serum has been digested at 0° C. The low reading in the case of the deposit B′ would also lead to the supposition that the action of heat at 60° has been to destroy the opsonin altogether. This supposition in confirmed by the following experiment.

If Heated Serum is unable to exert an Opsonic Action on Staphylococci, are the latter, when digested with Heated Serum, capable of being Opsonised by Unheated Serum?

Experiment.

Technique.—Normal serum was heated to 60° C. for fifteen minutes, then mixed with an equal quantity of staphylococcus emulsion, and digested at 37° C. for fifteen minutes, the deposit of cocci (A) being then removed by the centrifuge.

The deposit (A) was then divided into two parts, one being reserved for the opsonic test, the other being mixed with *normal* serum. The mixture was digested for thirty minutes; the centrifuge was then applied, so as to separate a supernatant fluid (B) from a deposit of cocci (B′).

Results.—

					Cocci per leucocyte.
1. Control). Normal serum	+	normal cocci	+	corpuscles	= 18·6
2. „ „ (2-fold dilution)	+	„	+	„	= 16
3. „ Heated serum	+	„	+	„	= 0·5
4. Normal serum	+	cocci A	+	„	= 15·5
5. Fluid B	+	normal cocci	+	„	= 0·4
6.		cocci B′	+	„	= 15

This experiment bears out the suggestion above, that heat destroys the opsonin. The cocci (A) having been quite uninfluenced by the heated serum, were capable of being opsonized by normal serum, and they were further, as shown in No. 5, capable of abstracting all the opsonin

out of normal serum. After being acted on by the normal serum, the mere addition of corpuscles demonstrated that they had been acted upon by the opsonin (No. 6).

Results.—

1. Opsonin is present in the normal serum.

2. Opsonin is thermolabile.

3. It rapidly disappears from the serum when the latter is mixed with bacteria at 37° C. or at 0° C.

4. After the opsonin has united with the bacteria the mixture of serum and cocci can be heated to 60° C. for long periods without abolition of the opsonic effect.

5. The leucocyte is practically an indifferent factor when the phagocytic power of different bloods is compared.

6. The capacity of bacterial emulsions for extracting opsonin from the serum is only slightly diminished by subjecting these emulsions to very high temperatures over prolonged periods.

7. The action of heat is to destroy the opsonin, and not merely to convert it into a non-opsonizable modification.

8. The opsonin is not identical with any of the antibodies hitherto discovered in the serum.

9. The opsonin is of relatively simple constitution; where these experiments cover the same ground as those of Wright and Douglas, the observations of these authors are confirmed.

Inquiry into the Opsonic Content of the Blood Serum in Healthy Individuals and in Patients affected by Lupus.[1]

By W. Bulloch, M.D.

From the Laboratory of the Bacteriological Department, London Hospital.

Determination of the Opsonic Content of Normal Individuals—Determinations of the Opsonic Index of Individuals suffering from Lupus.

The following observations were made to determine upon a fairly large scale the opsonic content of the serum of individuals suffering from lupus in comparison with that which obtains in individuals presumably healthy, or, at any rate, not suffering from tuberculosis. Manifestly it is a matter of importance to determine, first of all, whether there are variations in the opsonic content of the serum in healthy individuals, as the test employed at the present time necessitates the use of serum from a normal individual as a control.

The discoveries of Wright and Douglas of the opsonic content of the serum have created wide interest in clinical circles and a desire to apply these methods in medical practice. Past experience shows that disappointment may follow the precipitate anxiety on the part of the clinician, and it becomes necessary to determine on as wide a basis as possible the fundamental data which underlie the phenomena discovered by Wright, and from a practical standpoint to determine on a large number of people, healthy and diseased, the variation which may occur in the opsonic index. It is only in this way that an opinion can be formed on the opsonic test as a diagnostic or prognostic aid. The following observations have been carried out with this aim, the number of individuals examined being 216, viz. 66 normal and 150 cases of skin tuberculosis, mostly in the form of lupus, obtained from the Skin Department of the London Hospital. These lupus cases constitute an important series, as they were all undergoing a system of treatment by Finsen light, and it has been possible to form some opinion of the relation of the opsonic test to the results obtained by the Finsen light. The statements made subsequently as to the cure of the particular lupus patients were in all

[1] Reprinted from the *Transactions of the Pathological Society of London*, vol. lvi, Part III, 1905.

cases supplied to me independently by those in charge of the Finsen Therapy Department *after* I had made the opsonic determinations.

In all cases the serum was tested within an hour or two after the blood had been withdrawn from the body, and the test material employed was an emulsion of tubercle bacilli. It cannot be sufficiently emphasized that the preparation of this emulsion is of fundamental importance, and a considerable amount of care has to be taken to get it of the right density, otherwise the subsequent counting may be different and even fallacious.

Technique.—The technique employed was that of Wright, and as described by him in various publications.[1] The blood was collected in a glass capsule with a recurved limb. When the blood coagulates the tube is hung in a centrifuge, which expedites the separation of the serum.

2. The leucocytes were in all cases obtained from myself by pricking the finger and allowing the blood to run into a capsule containing sodium citrate (1 per cent.) dissolved in ·85 per cent. sodium chloride. A blood-capsule with the recurved limb bent at right angles to the plane of the body of the capsule is very suitable for this purpose, as the citrate solution can be readily run into the capsule without any risk of contamination of the solution. When the blood has entered the citrate solution the straight end of the capsule is sealed in a flame, and, when cool, the capsule is hung in the centrifuge whereby the blood corpuscles, red and white, are carried to the bottom, sharply separated from the citrated plasma above. When the deposition of the corpuscles is complete, the capsule is cut across with a bone-pliers or file, the citrated plasma is removed by a small pipette with a teat, and the thick deposit of corpuscles is then transferred to a large 20 c.c. tube full of ·85 per cent. saline solution, in order to wash the corpuscles free of traces of plasma. The corpuscles are then brought down in the centrifuge, the supernatant liquid is pipetted off, and the corpuscles are ready for use.

3. An emulsion of tubercle bacilli is made by grinding in an agate mortar a small quantity of a bacillary mass with a solution of salt containing 1 : 1000 NaCl.

The preparation of this emulsion is a point of great importance, and great care is required in order to get it of the most suitable density. The bacilli used were those obtained on the filter-paper in the manufacture of Koch's tuberculin. After being sufficiently rubbed up in the mortar, the bacillary emulsion is put into a tube and centrifugalized, so as to carry down the unloosened masses of bacilli, leaving above a milky emulsion of individual bacilli. If the emulsion is too thick, considerable difficulty may be experienced in subsequently counting the bacilli.

The serum, corpuscles, and bacillary emulsion having been prepared, a series of capillary pipettes are taken in hand. A mark is made on the stem of the capillary about ½ inch from the free end, and, by means of a

[1] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1903, vol. lxii, p. 357 (pp. 76–78 *supra*).

teat, three volumes of serum, one volume of bacillary emulsion, and three volumes of blood-corpuscles are aspirated into the stem of the pipette. This mixture should then be blown out and aspirated in, by means of the teat, several times to ensure proper mixing. When this has taken place, the end of the capillary is sealed, the wide end marked with the name of the patient or the number, and the time noted. The pipette, with its contents, is then placed in the incubator at 37° C. and, after fifteen minutes, it is removed and the contents transferred to a slide on which the subsequent count is to be made. The slide is prepared by roughening its surface by fine emery-paper (Hubert, No. 00) as first suggested by Wright, this method invariably giving, with the cheapest slides, excellent films without any other preparation in the way of cleaning, boiling, etc.

When the mixture of bacilli, corpuscles and serum is placed on one end of the slide the actual film is made by spreading it out by means of a second slide. This is best done in such a way that the second slide is applied about three-quarters across the first, so that a free edge is obtained to the film. In this free edge can be obtained a large number of leucocytes and it is the only part of the film which it is necessary to examine. The film should not be made too thin.

The film is fixed with perchloride of mercury (sat. sol.), and is then stained. Perhaps the best results are obtained by staining, first of all, with Ehrlich's haematoxylin, washing in water, hot carbol fuchsin, 2 per cent. anilin chlorhydrate, alcohol, water. The film is then dried with blotting-paper, and is ready for the determination of the ingested bacilli.

Staining with hot carbol fuchsin, subsequent decolourization in 2 per cent, H_2SO_4, and counterstaining with Loeffler's blue, may also be used, but seems to be more uncertain in its results.

The free edge of the film is then placed under the microscope and in very polynuclear leucocyte encountered the number of bacilli is counted, noted on a sheet of paper, and, after some thirty-five to fifty leucocytes have been examined, the average number of bacilli is struck, and the results compared when different sera are tested.

Determination of the Opsonic Content of Normal Individuals.

To determine the question of a variation in the opsonic index of healthy people I have examined sixty-six normal sera. Thirty-four were obtained from robust medical students at ages of 18 to 30 years. The remaining thirty-two were from nurses at the London Hospital, all of whom were presumably healthy. Up to the present we have no means of constituting the necessary standard of normality except by taking the serum of an individual presumably normal, i.e. an individual of sound constitution, devoid of tubercular infection and without inherited disposition to the disease. The opsonic index, it will be remembered, is

obtained by dividing the number of tubercle bacilli taken up per leucocyte in the presence of any serum by the number of bacilli taken up per leucocyte in the presence of the serum of a normal individual, which latter is regarded as unity. Thus—

T. B. taken up per leucocyte in the presence of a given serum=4
" " " " " " normal=8

$$\frac{4 \text{ T. B.}}{8 \text{ T. B.}} = \text{opsonic index } \cdot 5.$$

The reason why the opsonic *index* is taken is that in different experiments as the emulsions of bacilli vary in density, it would be useless to give merely the *number* of bacilli engulfed. One and the same serum, tested on two different emulsions, will yield entirely different records.

Opsonic index of thirty-four medical students compared with the serum of the writer=1·0.

1	case	= 1·2
13	"	= 1·0
6	"	= 0·98
3	"	= 0·97
2	"	= 0·96
6	"	= 0·90
2	"	= 0·85
1	"	= 0·80
34	cases.	Average opsonic index = 0·965.

Opsonic index of thirty-two healthy hospital nurses :—

5	cases	= 1·1
13	"	= 1·0
1	"	= 0·98
2	"	= 0·97
1	"	= 0·95
6	"	= 0·90
1	"	= 0·85
3	"	= 0·80
32	cases.	Average opsonic index = ·969.

Taking the two series together, we get an average index of ·95 for the sixty-six people, the variations in health ranging from ·8 to 1·2.

This corresponds closely to the results obtained by R. H. Urwick in a thesis presented for the degree of M.D. Cambridge. This work, carried out at St. Mary's Hospital, showed—

8	cases	= 1
3	"	= ·94
3	"	= ·90
1	"	= ·8
2	"	= 1·1
3	"	= 1·2
20	cases.	Average opsonic index = 1·006.

Taking the two series together, we have eighty-six healthy people with an index of 0·97. It may be assumed, therefore, that the sera of normal individuals, males or females, are almost identical, an index below ·8 being rare or pathological.

Determinations of the Opsonic Index of Individuals Suffering from Lupus.

Turning to the question of the opsonic index of individuals suffering from lupus, I have examined, as stated above, 150 cases. In this series were cases of the mildest character up to the most severe forms, which had lasted and defied treatment for as long as forty years. Compared with the average opsonic index of ·97 obtained from normal people, the average for the 150 cases of lupus is ·75, the cases being distributed as follows :—

Opsonic Index.	Number of Cases.	Percentage.
Between ·2–·3	3	2 per cent.
,, ·3–·4	3	2 ,,
,, ·4–·5	21	14 ,,
,, ·5–·6	29	19·6 ,,
,, ·6–·7	33	22 ,,
,, ·7–·8	22	14·8 ,,
,, ·8–·9	18	12 ,,
,, ·9–·10	7	4·6 ,,
,, ·1–·14	14	9·3 ,,

75 per cent. of the cases are below the lowest range of normal limit, viz. ·8.

As was stated above, these patients suffering from lupus have attended the Skin Department of the London Hospital, and especially for the purpose of X-ray or Finsen light treatment. Data are available whereby we may compare the results obtained by these therapeutic measures with the determinations of the opsonic index. As many of the cases are still under treatment, I have tabulated only those in reference to whom an opinion may be formed. This opinion has been given by Dr. Sequeira, who has had, in connexion with the Finsen therapy, an unusually large experience of lupus. In the following tables the cases are divided into two series, viz., those with an opsonic index below ·7 and those with an index above ·9.

Cases of Lupus with an Opsonic Index below ·7.

Patient.	Opsonic Index.	Remarks.
R. Q.— (6) .	·44	Lupus vulgaris of nose ; treatment scraping, X rays ; result ?
J. B.— (20) .	·40	Lupus vulgaris ; father died of phthisis ; Finsen therapy 4 years ; slow but great improvement.

Patient.	Opsonic Index.	Remarks.
J. W.— (13).	·5	Lupus 4 years, spreading in spite of X-rays for 1 year.
W. K.— (14)	·3	Lupus 11 years ; Finsen therapy 3 years ; not much improved.
L. B.— (10).	·55	Lupus ; great tendency to relapse after Finsen treatment.
L. H.— (21).	·43	Lupus not severe ; healed January, 1905.
F. H.— (16).	·54	Lupus 14 years ; Finsen therapy 3 years ; "can just be kept under and prevented from spreading."
E. C.— (18).	·5	Mother and aunt died of phthisis ; lupus on right cheek 18 years ; scraped 3 times ; Finsen light 2 years ; seems healed (December 21, 1904).
W. P.— (16)	·46	Lupus of face ; cured with Finsen light.
E. A.— (22).	·55	No phthisis in family ; lupus for 6 years ; Finsen light for 1 year ; doing well.
E. N.— (35).	·47	No phthisis in family ; lupus 7 years ; Finsen light 1 year ; doing well.
S. J.—(27) .	·53	Phthisical family history ; lupus 10 years ; Finsen therapy ; result, cured ; relapse.
L. P.— (17) .	·25	Lupus 6 years ; doing well under light treatment.
W. S.— (22).	·45	Father and paternal uncles and 1 sister all died from phthisis ; lupus 22 years ; scraped 12 times ; elbow excised ; Finsen light 8 months ; doing well.
M. B.— (13).	·3	Lupus very extensive on face and nose ; X rays since 1900 ; Finsen light ; little improvement.
M. B.—(41) .	·48	Lupus 16 years ; scraped ; Koch's tuberculin ; apparently healed ; relapsed as bad as ever in 6 months ; Finsen light 1 year ; cure ; relapse in 2 months.
C. G.— (49).	·46	Two children died from phthisis ; lupus 11 years ; scraped ; X rays ; almost healed ; recurrence ; again under treatment.
J. M.— (37).	·55	Phthisical family history ; lupus for 14 years, very extensive ; scraped 16 times ; Finsen light not very successful.
B. R. . .	·60	No phthisis in family ; lupus 8 years, very extensive ; scraped several times ; Finsen therapy for 2 years ; nodules still remaining.
B. W.— (25)	·60	No phthisical history ; lupus both cheeks ; cured by Finsen light in 6 months ; recurrence.
A. R.— (17).	·65	Lupus 13 years ; Finsen light 3 years ; improvement very slow.
E. F.— (20).	·60	Father died of phthisis ; sister has phthisis ; lupus of face, mouth, larynx, right arm for thirteen years ; some improvement under X-rays and Finsen light.
M. B. . .	·68	Marked phthisical history ; lupus 34 years ; Finsen light for 3 years ; slow improvement.
W. C.— (26).	·62	Lupus 22 years ; Finsen therapy 2 years ; slow improvement.
M. S.— (16).	·66	Phthisical history ; lupus 15 years ; Finsen light on and off for 5 years ; some nodules still present (1905).
M. C.— (48).	·65	Sister had phthisis ; lupus 9 years on nose and face ; Finsen light for 4 years ; a few small spots of lupus still remain (1905).
K. W.— (19)	·6	No history of phthisis ; lupus 10 years on nose, palate, gums, cheeks ; treated with lactic and trichloracetic acids ; Finsen light since 1901 ; iodides ; much better.
A. B.— (33).	·6	No phthisis in family ; lupus 19 years ; scraped 19 times ; cauterised about 100 times ; 600 sittings Finsen light ; great improvement.

Cases with an Opsonic Index above 9.

Patient.	Opsonic Index.	Remarks.
M. S.—(19) .	·9	Phthisis on paternal side ; lupus 18 years ; Finsen light ; cured.
L. C.—(29) .	1·1	Lupus began in scar of ulcer from tubercular gland at age of 14 ; in 1905 very large lupus patch over jaw ; Finsen light 6 months ; nearly healed.
F. S.—(33) .	·9	Phthisis in family ; patient had hip disease at 9 ; lupus for 8 years ; nose severely affected ; Finsen light and X rays ; face excellent.
J. S.—(16) .	·9	No phthisis ; lupus 15 years ; Finsen light ; cured.
B. W.—(42).	·9	No phthisical history ; lupus 40 years ; marked improvement under Finsen light.
M. T. . .	·9	Lupus extensive on face ; Finsen light ; cured ; no recurrence.
M. B.—(28) .	1·1	Lupus 24 years ; left cheek entirely involved ; Finsen light for 2 years ; quite healed ; scar excellent.
S. M.—(19) .	·89	Lupus 12 years ; very severe case ; much improved under Finsen light.
A. S. . .	1·1	Lupus 13 years ; "much improvement."
T. S. . .	1·1	Lupus 11 years ; X rays ; great improvement.
T. A.—(27) .	1·4	Lupus 22 years ; very severe case ; almost cured.
R. S.—(25) .	·92	Lupus of face and stump of thigh ; "has done well."
A. J.—(12) .	1·4	Five uncles died of phthisis ; lupus 11 years ; scraped and cauterised several times ; Finsen light ; result almost cured.
M. H.—(16).	1·0	Father and two sisters died of phthisis ; very extensive lupus ; heals very slowly under Finsen therapy.
F. H.—(16) .	1·0	Lupus 10 years, nose, left foot, thigh ; not improving.
A. J.—(25) .	1·0	Lupus 17 years ; Finsen light 1 year ; great improvement.

An examination of these tables shows, with few exceptions, that where the opsonic index is well below the normal limit, the most approved methods of treatment by X rays or Finsen light have little power to stamp out the disease, whereas with indices in the normal limit or above it the clinical impression is that the cases do well. The method by which the exposure to light in Finsen's treatment leads to beneficial results has been the subject of much inquiry. The bactericidal action of light known since the researches of Downes and Blunt, Buchner, and others, has been assumed to be the explanation, but in the hands of Finsen's collaborators it has been found that this action, even *in vitro*, is a very superficial one. When the rays have to penetrate the skin into the living tissues the state of affairs is very different, as a large amount of the light is absorbed. As a result of experiments, both in man and in animals, Klingmüller and Halberstaedter have recently shown that the tubercle bacillus in the skin is not killed after seventy minutes' exposure to the light. Lesser and others have assumed that the healing properties of Finsen light are due to the reaction set up in the tissues by the rays. The results obtained above go to support the view that ultra-violet rays from a Finsen lamp do not exert a potent effect on the tubercle bacillus itself,

otherwise it would not matter what the opsonic content of the serum was, so long as the bacilli were killed at any given spot exposed to the light. It seems not at all improbable that, in addition to the tissue reaction, an important rôle in the cure of lupus by Finsen light is played by the blood "determination"—i.e. the congestion and exudation which occur after exposure. If the plasma is deficient in opsonin, the result upon the tubercle bacillus would manifestly be less than where a large quantity of opsonin was present. This would also suggest that considerable benefit might be acquired even in the intractable cases by raising the opsonic index and then exposing the infected areas to light.

On the Possibility of Determining the Presence or Absence of Tubercular Infection by the Examination of a Patient's Blood and Tissue Fluids.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N.

From the Laboratory of the Department for Therapeutic Inoculation, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

Classification of Tubercular Cases into strictly Localized Cases, and Cases which are associated with Constitutional Disturbance—Data with regard to the Tuberculo-opsonic Power in Cases of Strictly Localized Tuberculosis—Data with regard to the Tuberculo-opsonic Power of the Blood in Cases of Tuberculosis associated with Constitutional Disturbance—Suggested Interpretation of the Different Findings in these two Categories of Cases—Exploitation of the Data summarized above as an Aid in the Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection—Discrimination of Tubercular Blood from Normal Blood by the aid of the Phagocytic Test conducted with Serum which has been subjected to a Temperature of 60° C.—On two other Methods by which a Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection can be arrived at or excluded—Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection by the Aid of Measurements of the Opsonic Power carried out in Connexion with the Inoculation of Tuberculin for Diagnostic Purposes—Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection by the Comparison of the Opsonic Power of the Patient's Blood with the Tuberculo-opsonic Power of the Fluids Derived from the Focus of Infection.

In the present communication we propose (*a*) to set forth certain conclusions arrived at after the study of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood in a very considerable number of tubercular patients; (*b*) to show that we have in the measurement of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood and tissue fluids a method which may be exploited in the diagnosis of tubercular infection.

Technique Employed.—The technique employed by us in the measurement of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood was essentially that described by one of us in conjunction with Douglas.[2] In each case the white corpuscles required for the tests were derived from blood from the finger received into a solution of 0·5 per cent. citrate of soda in 0·85 NaCl, and rewashed after centrifugalization in a considerable volume of 0·85 NaCl, and then again centrifugalized. Of the "blood cream,"

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

[2] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxii. (pp. 76–78 *supra*).

obtained by skimming off the upper layer of the corpuscular sediment, one portion was in each case mixed in a capillary tube with one volume of serum and one volume of a suspension of tubercle bacilli which had been centrifugalized in such a manner as to free it from bacillary clumps. After incubation at 37° C. for fifteen to twenty minutes films were made on slides prepared with emery paper.[1] These films were, after fixture in saturated corrosive sublimate, stained with boiling carbol-fuchsin, decolourized with 2 per cent. sulphuric acid, and counter-stained with methylene blue after washing in 1 in 1000 sodium carbonate. The standard of comparison employed was obtained by mixing in each case the same "blood cream" and tubercle suspension with "pooled normal serum."[2] This "pooled serum" was obtained by mixing equal volumes of the sera of six to eight healthy students or laboratory workers. We have found that the opsonic power of such a "pooled serum" corresponds to the arithmetical mean of the opsonic indices of its component sera.

Classification of Tubercular Cases into Strictly Localized Cases, and Cases which are associated with Constitutional Disturbance.

Cases of tubercular infection distribute themselves in a natural manner under two headings. Into one category would fall the patients who are the subjects of a strictly localized infection unaccompanied by anything in the nature of constitutional disturbance. Cases where the infection is limited to one or more lymphatic glands; further, most cases of lupus, most cases of tubercular abscess in the subcutaneous tissue, tubercular affections of the joints, and, lastly, many stationary or only slowly progressing cases of tubercular phthisis, fall into this category.

Into another category would fall patients who are suffering from more generalized tubercular infections associated with constitutional disturbance. This group consists in large part of cases of pyrexial pulmonary tuberculosis. With these may be classed certain other cases of extensive or widely disseminated tuberculosis.

Data with regard to the Tuberculo-opsonic Power in Cases of Strictly Localized Tuberculosis.

The opsonic index is here low and uniformly low—in exceptional cases

[1] Wright, *Lancet*, July 9, 1904.

[2] While in this research pooled serum was employed, in order to provide against any chance variation of our bloods under the physical strain entailed by the work, it is to be noted that the observations of Urwick, conducted in this laboratory, *British Medical Journal*, July 22, 1905, and the more extensive series of investigations carried out by Bulloch at the London Hospital (*Medico-Chirurg. Soc. Proc.*, 1905), and Lawson and Stewart at the Banchory Sanatorium (loc. cit.), have conclusively shown—(*a*) That the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood does not in health range below 0·9 or above 1·1; and (*b*) that the bloods of A. E. W., S. R. D., and others which have hitherto in this laboratory furnished a standard of comparison are, from the point of view of their tuberculo-opsonic power, typically normal bloods.

as low as one-sixth of the normal. Our findings in a series of cases of stricty localized tubercular infection are appended in tabular form below.

TABLE I.—*Showing the Tuberculo-opsonic Index in a Series of Cases of strictly Localized Tuberculosis.*

Serial No.	Initials, or as the case may be, Initial of Patient.	Nature and Seat of the Infection.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
1	J. R.	Tubercle of testis	0·65
2	A.	Caries, lower end of femur	0·7
3	C. S.	Tubercular ulceration, dorsum of hand	0·86
4	A. B.	„ iritis	0·51
5	B. C.	„ glands	0·4
6	E. M.	„ ulceration of legs. 13 years' duration	0·17
7	H. W.	„ glands (neck)	0·82
8	D. W.	„ „ „	0·64
9	S.	„ ulceration of legs	0·49
10	L. B.	„ glands (abdominal)	0·13
11	B.	„ kidney	0·75
12	M. H.	„ cystitis	0·85
13	D. B.	„ glands. Extirpated and reappeared	0·85
14	M. O. E.	„ glands	0·6
15	W.	Psoas abscess	0·75
16	C. H.	„ „	0·65
17	W.	Tubercular glands (neck). 18 months' duration	0·47
18	C.	„ wrist	0·85
19	U. R.	„ glands (neck)	0·7
20	A. H.	„ glands. Extirpated and reappeared	0·54
21	P.	„ peritonitis	0·6
22	R.	„ abscesses and glands	0·6
23	E.	Lupus	0·6
24	R.	Tubercle of testes and bladder	0·72
25	P.	Tubercular peritonitis	0·7
26	H.	„ caries of fibula	0·6
27	C.	Tubercle of kidney	0·88
28	W.	Tubercular disease of knee	0·6
29	T.	„ glands (neck) recurrence	0·66
30	S.	„ ulcer of foot	0·49
31	C.	„ disease of knee	0·75

Data with regard to the Tuberculo-opsonic Power of the Blood in Cases of Tuberculosis associated with Constitutional Disturbance.

In the cases here in question the opsonic index of the blood is continually varying. The range of its fluctuation is from considerably under the normal to twice, or more, the normal height.

Striking examples of the variation of the opsonic index in connexion with acute tubercular phthisis are furnished in the paper of our fellow-worker, R. H. Urwick, already referred to.

[1] Loc cit.

The following are instances of similar variation occurring in the subjects of other forms of tubercular infection :—

Example 1.—*Child with Tubercular Caries of the Fibula, associated with Constitutional Disturbance.*

Dates of Blood Examinations.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
11.9.05	1·45
14.9.05	1·71
19.9.05	1·3
28.9.05	0·98
30.9.05	Operation, fibula scraped.
2.10.05	1·73[1]
3.10.05	1·13
10.10.05	1·3

Example 2.—*Adult Patient with Tubercular Caries of the Spine and Constitutional Disturbance.*

Date of Blood Examination.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Remarks.
19.5.05	0·65	Temperature disturbance and pain associated with development of abscess.
20.5.05	1·4	
22.5.05	1·3	
23.5.05	1·0	Temperature returns to normal in association with spontaneous discharge of abscess.
24.5.05	0·8	

Example 3.—*Adult Patient with extensive Psoas Abscess and Generalization of Tubercle. Case has since terminated fatally.*

Dates of Blood Examinations.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
8.2.05	2
9.2.05	2·4
11.2.05	0·6

Suggested Interpretation of the Different Findings in these two Categories of Cases.

The explanation of the difference in the condition of the blood in these two contrasted categories of cases is probably the following : The condition of low opsonic power which is associated with strictly localized tuberculosis is almost certainly a condition which has preceded and has furnished the opportunity for infection. The fact that the opsonic index continues persistently low after infection has supervened, while it can invariably be raised by appropriate inoculation,[2] indicates that

[1] A rise in the opsonic power similar to this here registered has been repeatedly observed by us in connexion with the stirring up by surgical interference of tubercular foci.

[2] Exactly the same statements hold true with regard to the staphylo-opsonic power in localized staphylococcus infections (furunculosis, sycosis, etc.).

the machinery of immunisation with which the organism is furnished is not, under the conditions which obtain in strictly localized tubercular infections, spontaneously called into play.

The constant fluctuation in the opsonic power of the blood in cases of active pulmonary tuberculosis and other active forms of tubercular infection furnishes—as we can hardly doubt—evidence of a periodic conveyance of tubercular elements into the blood; and of a response to such stimulation on the part of the machinery for immunisation. The low opsonic indices registered in connexion with active tuberculosis would, in other words, be "negative phases" such as supervene—as one of us has shown—upon the inoculation of all vaccines; the high opsonic indices would be "positive phases," such as normally succeed upon the negative phases just mentioned; and the normal opsonic indices would correspond to periods of transition between negative and positive phases, or, as the case may be, to periods in which the blood is returning after a positive phase to the condition *quo ante*.

The life of a patient with any really active form of tuberculosis would, in conformity with this view, be a life of alternating negative and positive phases: the favourable or unfavourable event of the infection being in each case determined by the adjustment or want of adjustment of the auto-inoculations (with respect to dosage and interspacing) with the particular patient's capacity for immunising response.

Having now to a certain extent cleared the ground, we may pass on to consider the question of the diagnosis of tubercular infection by means of the measurement of the opsonic power of the blood.

Exploitation of the Data summarized above as an Aid in the Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection.

Consideration will make clear that the data obtained by the measurement of the opsonic power in cases of doubtful diagnosis may, when adjudicated upon in the light of the data obtained in connexion with undoubted cases of tuberculosis as given above, furnish material for admitting or rejecting the diagnosis of tubercular infection. We may formulate in connexion with this matter the following propositions:—

(1) Conclusions which can be arrived at when we have at disposal the results of a series of measurements.

(a) *Where a series of measurements of the opsonic power of the blood reveals a persistently low opsonic power with respect to the tubercle bacillus, it may be inferred, in the case where there is evidence of a localized bacterial infection which suggests tuberculosis, that the infection in question is tubercular in character.*

(b) *Where repeated examination reveals a persistently normal opsonic power with respect to the tubercle bacillus, the diagnosis of tubercle may with probability be excluded.*

Illustrative case: A. B.—Case diagnosed as tubercular cystitis on the

evidence of pus in the urine, of the cystoscopic appearances and general disturbance of health. The measurement of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood yielded the following results :—

Date of Blood Examination.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
2.3.05	0·98
14.4.05	0·99
28.4.05	1
18.5.05	1
19.5.05	1·1
2.10.05	0·97

The inference that the cystitis and disturbance of health was not of tubercular origin was confirmed (*a*) by the fact that an extensive series of bacteriological examinations prolonged over many months revealed in every case the presence of proteus in large numbers, while the tubercle bacillus was never found, even when examined for by the inoscopic method of Jousset ; (*b*) by the fact that the patient's blood possessed, anterior to treatment with regard to the proteus, an agglutinating power which was three times higher than the normal ; and (*c*) by the fact that very striking amelioration of the cystitis, and a complete return to health has been obtained as the result of the inoculation of a proteus vaccine.

(c) *Where there is revealed by a series of blood examinations a constantly fluctuating opsonic index the presence of active tuberculosis may be inferred.*

C. D.—A case of severe chronic urticaria of unknown aetiology. The measurement of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the patient's blood yielded the following results :—

Date of Blood Examination.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
20.5.05	1·3
26.5.05	1·3
16.6.05	0·86
20.6.05	1·27

The inference drawn from these data that the patient was suffering from some active form of tuberculosis was confirmed (*a*) by the discovery by an independent observer of a lesion in the apex of one lung ; (*b*) by the subsequent development of an abscess of an obviously tubercular character ; and (*c*) by the marked improvement in health which has followed upon inoculation with tubercle vaccine.

(2) Conclusions which may be arrived at where we have at disposal the result of an isolated blood examination.

(a) *Where an isolated blood examination reveals that the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood is low, we may—according as we have evidence of a localized bacterial infection or of constitutional disturbance—infer with probability that we are dealing with tuberculosis—in the former case with a localized tubercular infection, in the latter with an active systemic infection.*

(b) *Where an isolated blood examination reveals that the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood is high, we may infer that we have to deal with a systemic tuberculous infection which is active, or has recently been active.*

(c) *Where the tuberculo-opsonic power is found normal, or nearly normal, while there are symptoms which suggest tuberculosis, we are not warranted, apart from the further test described below, in arriving at a positive or a negative diagnosis.*

Discrimination of Tubercular Blood from Normal Blood by the aid of the Phagocytic Test conducted with Serum which has been subjected to a Temperature of 60° C.

The further criterion to which reference was made in the preceding paragraph is the following :—

When a serum is found to retain in any considerable measure, after it has been heated to 60° for ten minutes, its power of inciting phagocytosis, we may conclude that "incitor elements" [1] *have been elaborated in the organism, either in response to auto-inoculations occurring spontaneously in the course of tubercular infection, or, as the case may be, under the artificial stimulus supplied by the inoculation of tubercle vaccine.*

A typical selection from the very extensive body of observations which furnishes the basis of the above statement is presented in Tables II and III.

TABLE II.—*Showing that the Normal Serum, after it has been exposed to a Temperature of* 60° C. for *ten Minutes no longer incites Phagocytosis.*[2]

Serial Number of the Observation.	Derivation of the Serum.	Unheated Serum.		Heated Serum.	
		Phagocytic count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Phagocytic Count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
1	Healthy man .	(104/40) = 2·6	Taken as 1	(13/40) = 0·32	0·125
2	„ „ .	(96/40) = 2·4	„ 1	(8/40) = 0·2	0·08
3	Pooled serum of six healthy men	(247/36) = 6·8	„ 1	(30/50) = 0·6	0·09
4	Healthy boy. .	(250/39) = 6·4	„ 1	(15/40) = 0·4	0·06
5	„ „ . .	(214/30) = 7·0	„ 1	(10/40) = 0·47	0·06
6	Pooled serum of eight normal men	(60/50) = 1·2	„ 1	(2/20) = 0·1	0·08
7	Healthy man .	(55/40) = 1·4	„ 1	(0/40) = 0·0	0·00
8	Pooled serum of six healthy men	(132/30) = 4·4	„ 1	(3/30) = 0·1	0·1

[1] The term "incitor elements" (Latin, *incito*, I urge forward, I hasten, I bring into rapid movement) is here employed in lieu of a more specific term, in order not to prejudge the mode of action of the element in the heated serum which promotes phagocytosis. The nature of the incitor element is considered in the next following communication (pp. *infra*).

[2] In order to avoid the fallacies associated with spontaneous phagocytosis (*vide* the next following communication) the observations which are recorded in this and in the subsequent table were in each case made by mixing the volume of the serum with one volume of corpuscles, washed in 0·85 per cent. NaCl solution and one volume of tubercle bacilli suspended in a 1·5 per cent. NaCl solution. In this manner a salt content of over 1 per cent. NaCl was achieved in the phagocytic mixture.

TABLE III.—*Showing that an element which incites Phagocytosis is contained in the Heated Serum of Patients who are the Subjects of an Active Systemic Tubercular Infection, or who have been subjected to Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine. The Sera, like those which are in question in Table* II, *were in each case heated to 60°C. for ten Minutes.*

Serial Number of Observation.	Nature of Infection.	Unheated Serum.		Heated Serum.	
		Phagocytic Count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Tuberculo-opsonic Index (determined by Comparison of Phagocytic Count with that obtained with Pooled Blood of Healthy Men.)	Phagocytic Count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Tuberculo-opsonic Index (determined by Comparison of Phagocytic Count with that obtained with Unheated Pooled Blood of Normal Men).
1	Tubercular caries of hip	—	1·5	—	0·4
2	Tubercul'r phthisis	(125/20)—6·2	1·4	(113/30)—3·7	0·8
3	„ „	(152/30)—5·0	1·2	(96/30)—3·2	0·72
4	„ „	(98/30)—3·2	1·0	(20/65)—0·3	0·1
5	Tubercular peritonitis	(144/30)—4·8	1·4	(103/30)—3·4	1·0
6	Tubercular peritonitis	(142/30)—4·7	1·4	(16/50)—0·3	0·09
7	Phthisis and tubercular glands	(113/40)—2·8	1·1	(79/50)—1·6	0·6
8	Tubercular caries of hip	(110/30)—3·6	1·0	(85/30)—2·8	0·8
9	Tubercular abscess of kidney	—	1·7	(26/30)—0·8	0·4
10	Lupus under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(34/10)—3·4	0·7	(49/30)—1·6	0·33
11	Tubercular ulcer of leg under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(249/40)—6·2	1·2	(149/40)—3·7	0·7
12	Tubercle of kidney under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(68/40)—1·7	1·5	(77/40)—1·9	1·7
13	Tubercular glands and abscess under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(59/40)—1·5	1·4	(36/40)—0·9	0·8
14	Tubercular cystitis under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(97/50)—2·0	—	(43/30)—1·4	—
15	Phthisis . . .	—	—	(26/30)—0·8	—
16	„ . . .	—	—	(9/5)—1·8	—

It will be seen from these tables that in practically every case where a reaction to tubercular infection may be assumed to have taken place, evidence of that reaction can be obtained by conducting the phagocytic test with serum which has been heated to 60° C. for ten minutes.

The observations numbered 15 and 16 respectively have it may be noted, been introduced into the table with the special design of showing the very simple nature of the investigation which is required for the diagnosis of tubercle in the case where that infection has called forth a reaction of immunisation.

The following observations, which we owe to our fellow-worker Dr. G. W. Ross, bring out in an instructive manner the trustworthiness of the phagocytic test with heated serum as applied in this its simplest form :—

Case 1.—*Girl, æt. Six Years, tentatively diagnosed Pulmonary Phthisis.*

Phagocytosis obtained with the serum, heated for ten minutes to 60° C. and employed in a phagocytic mixture containing over 1 per cent. NaCl.

The verdict of tubercular infection of the lung which was based on this was confirmed on *post-mortem* examination.

Case 2.—*Man, æt.* 41, *Tentative Diagnosis, Pleurisy due to Malignant Disease, or Tubercular Pleurisy.*

No phagocytosis obtained with the serum, heated for ten minutes to 60° C. and employed in a phagocytic mixture containing over 1 per cent. NaCl.

The verdict of pleurisy due to malignant disease, which was based on this, was confirmed on *post-mortem* examination.

Case 3.—*Case Tentatively Diagnosed Miliary Tuberculosis or Malignant Endocarditis.*

No phagocytosis obtained with the serum, heated for ten minutes to 60° C. and employed in a phagocytic mixture containing over 1 per cent. NaCl.

The verdict of malignant endocarditis which was based on this was confirmed on *post-mortem* examination.

Observation 4.—*Case Diagnosed Miliary Tuberculosis.*

No phagocytosis obtained with the serum, heated for ten minutes to 0° C. and employed in a phagocytic mixture containing over 1 per cent. of NaCl.

The *post-mortem* examination revealed a complete absence of tubercular lesions and a healing typhoid ulcer[1] in the ileum.

On two other Methods by which a Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection can be arrived at or excluded.

In addition to the methods which have been already considered, there are two further methods which can be exploited in connexion with the diagnosis of tubercular infection. The first of these is applicable where we desire to supplement the often ambiguous data furnished by the clinical symptoms in the case of inoculations of tuberculin undertaken for diagnostic purposes. The second is applicable where we can obtain, in addition to the patient's blood, also lymph, or, as the case may be, pus from the seat of infection.

Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection by the Aid of Measurements of the Opsonic Power carried out in Connexion with the Inoculation of Tuberculin for Diagnostic Purposes.

Already, three years ago,[2] in connexion with a paper on staphylococcus inoculations as applied to the treatment of acne, furunculosis, and sycosis, attention was directed by one of us to the close analogy between the tuberculin reaction of Koch and the local inflammation and general constitutional disturbance which may supervene when a patient whose tissues are extensively invaded by the staphylococcus is inoculated with the corresponding vaccine in such a manner as to develop a pronounced negative phase.

The association of a negative phase with a reaction similar to that conveniently spoken of as the *tuberculin reaction*, suggested to us the propriety of inquiring whether the true tuberculin reaction, as seen after the injection of Koch's old tuberculin into a tubercular patient, was also associated with a negative phase.

The opportunities for investigating the question which have presented themselves have not yet been sufficiently numerous to allow of our formulating a final answer to this question. The observations which are set forth below seem to us to suggest that the development of a negative phase, with a dose of tuberculin smaller than that which would produce this result in a healthy patient, may prove to be an index of tubercular infection. Such a conclusion would be in harmony with our experience in connexion with the therapeutic inoculation of tubercle vaccine (new tuberculin). We find in this connexion that the negative phase supervenes upon very much smaller doses and persists much longer in the case where the patient is the subject of extensive infection than in the contrary cases.

[1] A negative agglutination reaction had been obtained in this case.

[2] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902 (pp. *infra*).

Observation 1.—Case diagnosed, Tubercular choroiditis.

Date.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Clinical Data.
26.4.05	0.9	—
5 milligrammes old tuberculin inoculated.		
29.4.05	0·29	Some constitutional reaction, *t.* 100° F.
28.4.05	0·95	

Observation 2.—Case diagnosed, Lupus erythematosus.

Date.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Clinical Data.
12.1.05	0·73	—
Inoculation of 1 milligramme old tuberculin.		
13.1.05	0·85	No rise of temperature or constitutional or local reaction.
17.1.05	1·6	
26.1.05	0·5	

Observation 3.—Case diagnosed, Lupus erythematosus.

Date.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Clinical Data.
10.4.05	0·66	—
Inoculation of 5 milligrammes of old tuberculin.		
11.4.05	0·7	Quite insignificant constitutional disturbance.
12.4.05	1·2	
14.4.05	0·85	

Observation 4.—Case diagnosed as Lupus vulgaris.

Date.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Clinical Data.
10.4.05	0·55	—
Inoculation of 5 milligrammes of old tuberculin.		
11.4.05	1·1	Quite insignificant constitutional reaction.
12.4.05	1·0	
14.4.05	1·0	

Observation 5.—Lupus Patient had been treated for many months by Therapeutic Inoculations of Tubercle Vaccine.

Date.	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Clinical Data.
24.1.05	1·4	—
Inoculation of 30 milligrammes of old tuberculin.		
25.1.05	0·34	Severe constitutional and local reaction, *t.* of 103° F.
26.1.05	2·1	
27.1.05	1·7	

Diagnosis of Tubercular Infection by the Comparison of the Opsonic Power of the Patient's Blood with the Tuberculo-opsonic Power of the Fluids Derived from the Focus of Infection.

Attention has already been drawn by one of us, both in a research undertaken in conjunction with Lamb [1] and in a research undertaken in conjunction with Douglas,[2] to the fact that we have in the actual focus of infection a lowered "bacteriotropic pressure" which accounts for the cultivation of the pathogenetic microbe in the interior of an organism which has at disposal in the circulating blood a considerable reserve of anti-bacterial substances. We propose here, in conclusion, to furnish further illustration of the general law as enunciated above, culling our examples not alone from the observations we have made in connexion with tubercular infection, but also from observations made in connexion with other bacterial infections.

Observation 1.—Case of Abscess in the Neighbourhood of the Appendix. Blood from the patient's finger and pus obtained from the abscess at the operation were examined, with a view to determining the nature of the infection.

	Phagocytic Counts.	
	With a Suspension of Tubercle Bacilli.	With a Suspension of Staphylococci.
Serum	2·3	4·5
Fluid obtained from the pus by centrifugalization	0·1	1·9

The fact that the tuberculo-opsonic power of the patient's blood was here 23 times as great as that of the fluid obtained from the pus was taken as evidence that tuberculo-opsonic substances had been used up in the pus and that the patient was suffering from a tubercular infec-

[1] *Lancet*, December 23, 1899 (pp. 36–44 *supra*).
[2] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxiv, p. 157 (pp. 104–105 and 119–120 *supra*).

tion. It was inferred on similar grounds that he was also infected by staphylococcus.

Observation 2.—Case of Osteo-myelitis of the Femur. Blood from the patient's finger and pus obtained from the abscess at the operation were examined, with a view to determining the nature of the infection.

	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.	Staphylo-opsonic Index.
Serum	1·0	2·5
Fluid obtained from the pus by centrifugalization	1·1	0·9

The fact that the opsonic index of the patient's circulating blood was here normal to tubercle, while it was two and a half times greater than normal with respect to the staphylococcus, was taken as evidence that the patient was not infected with tubercle, and that he was infected by staphylococcus and had responded to that infection by a production of immunising substances.

The fact that the tuberculo-opsonic index of the fluids obtained from the pus was the same as that of the blood, while the staphylo-opsonic power was only two-fifths of that of the circulating blood, was taken as confirmatory evidence of the conclusion already arrived at. The fact that a copious culture of staphylococcus aureus was obtained from the pus, planted out with aseptic precautions at the operation, further confirmed the diagnosis.

Observation 3.—Case of Psoas Abscess. Blood from the patient's finger and pus from the abscess were examined.

	Phagocytic Counts.	
	With a Suspension of Tubercle Bacilli.	With a Suspension of Staphylococci.
Serum	2·4	5·0
Fluid obtained from the pus by centrifugalization	1·23	1·2

The fact that the fluid obtained from the pus was impoverished in both tuberculo- and staphylo-opsonic substances as compared with the blood was taken as evidence of a combined infection by tubercle bacilli and staphylococci. This inference was confirmed by the fact that the opsonic power of the blood with respect to both the micro-organisms here in question was undergoing perpetual fluctuations.[1] The inference so far as it related to the staphylococcus was further confirmed by the fact that cultures of the micro-organism were obtained from the pus.

[1] For the variations registered in connexion with the tuberculo-opsonic power, *vide supra*, p. 153, where Example 3 refers to the patient here in question.

Observation 4.—*Case of Ascites with Grave Constitutional Disturbance in a Man of* 30. Blood from the finger and ascitic fluid were examined on two occasions.

First Occasion.

	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
Serum	1·05
Ascitic fluid	0·99

We reported upon this that the patient was not suffering from tubercular peritonitis.

The clinical symptoms, the age of the patient, and the appearances as seen at the operation appearing in contradiction with this verdict, and the ascites having reappeared, a second operation was performed, and a further sample of ascitic fluid was obtained for examination. At the same time the clinical appearances were again observed, with the result that there was now some wavering as to whether the original diagnosis could be upheld. The result of the phagocytic examination of the ascitic fluid, and of a sample of blood from the fingers were now as under :—

	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
Serum	1
Ascitic fluid	1

In view of this result the verdict previously given was sustained.

A *post-mortem* examination, which followed in the course of a few weeks, again threw doubt on the verdict, the naked-eye appearances being entirely consistent with the theory of miliary tuberculosis affecting the peritoneum and serous covering of the intestines. Microscopic examination of the sections made through the miliary nodules revealed, however, a typical picture of miliary carcinoma. No primary carcinomatous focus had been discovered, though it was sought for, on *post-mortem* examination.

Observation 5.—*Case of Pleural Effusion.* Blood from the finger and fluid obtained by paracentesis of chest were examined :—

	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
Serum	0·92
Pleural fluid	1·0

This was taken as evidence of the absence of tubercular infection.

Observation 6.—*Case diagnosed as Tubercular Peritonitis complicated with Pleurisy.* Blood from the finger was examined on two occasions. On the second occasion, which was forty-eight hours after the first examination, the patient's peritoneal and pleural fluids were also examined.

The results obtained by the phagocytic examination undertaken on this second occasion were as follows :—

	Tuberculo-opsonic Index.
Serum	0·7
Peritoneal fluid	0·28
Pleural fluid	1

The results of the comparison of the peritoneal fluid with the serum obtained from the blood withdrawn from the finger were taken as evidence of tubercular infection of the peritoneum. Confirmatory evidence of tubercular infection was furnished further by the low tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood, and by the observed fluctuation in this index. When it was measured two days previously, this index had worked out as 1·4.

The fact that the opsonic power of the pleural fluid worked out as higher than the opsonic power of the serum was taken as evidence that the pleural effusion had occurred at a period when the opsonic power of the blood was 1 or above 1.

The diagnosis of tubercular infection of the peritoneum and pleura (and underlying lung) was confirmed at the *post-mortem* examination.

Observation 7.—*Case of long-continued Suppuration of the Antrum* associated with the presence in the pus of the pneumococcus and the *Bacillus fusiformis* and *Spirillum buccae* of Vincent. The patient had been treated by therapeutic inoculations of a pneumococcus vaccine. The patient's serum and the antral pus were examined with a view to determining whether the pneumococcus played any active part in connexion with the continuance of the suppuration :—

	Pneumo-opsonic Index.
Serum	4·3
Fluid obtained from pus by centrifugalization	0·3

The result was taken as evidence (*a*) that the pneumococcus played an active rôle in connexion with the suppuration, and (*b*) that the protective substances which had been generated in the blood under the influence of inoculation did not come satisfactorily into application upon the micro-organisms in the antrum.

Observation 8.—*Case of whitlow associated with the Formation of a Blister under the Nail.* Serum derived from the blood from a sound finger and blister fluid were examined.

	Staphylo-opsonic Index.
Serum	0·8
Blister fluid	0·3

The blister fluid yielded a pure culture of staphylococcus.

Observation 9.—*Rabbit in the Early Stages of Anthrax Infection.*—Blood obtained from the ear and lymph from the seat of inoculation were examined.

	Anthraco-opsonic Index.[1]
Serum	1·7
Lymph	0·62

[1] Tested with a suspension of anthrax spores and compared with the serum of a normal rabbit tested in the same manner.

It may be noted that all the difficulties and inaccuracies which are associated with the employment of ordinary anthrax cultures in phagocytic experiments can be satisfactorily evaded by the employment of suspensions of anthrax spores. These, when stained with carbol fuchsin and decolourized by 0·25 per cent. sulphuric acid, represent absolutely ideal elements for enumeration.

Appendix.

A further Series of Observations showing that Phagocytosis is obtained with the Heated Serum of Patients who are the Subjects of a Systemic as distinguished from a strictly Localized Tubercular Infection, or who, being the subject of a strictly Localized Tubercular Infection, have been subjected to Inoculations with Tubercle Vaccine. The Serum was in each case heated to 60° C. for ten minutes.

Table supplementary to Table II.—*Showing that the Normal Serum, after it has been exposed to a Temperature of 60° C. for ten minutes, no longer incites Phagocytosis.*

Serial Number of Observation.	Nature of Infection.	Unheated Serum.		Heated Serum.	
		Phagocytic Count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Opsonic Index. (Determined by Comparison of Phagocytic Count with that obtained with Pooled Blood of Healthy Men.)	Phagocytic Count. (Number of Bacteria ingested divided by Number of Leucocytes examined.)	Opsonic Index. (Determined by Comparison of Phagocytic Count with that obtained with Pooled Unheated Blood of Normal Men).
1	Fibroid phthisis, tubercle bacilli in sputum	(100/30) = 3·3	1·0	(142/37) = 4·0	1·2
2	Early phthisis, tubercle bacilli in sputum	(132/30) = 4·4	1·3	(122/47) = 2·6	0·77
3	Acute phthisis, tubercle bacilli in sputum	(130/30) = 4·3	1·3	(96/40) = 2·4	0·74
4	Acute phthisis .	(127/40) = 3·2	1·0	(45/34) = 1·3	0·4
5	Fibroid phthisis (?)	(182/30) = 6·0	1·8	(51/43) = 1·2	0·3
6	Phthisis, tubercle bacilli in sputum	(117/30) = 3·9	1·1	(65/30) = 2·2	0·62
7	Mitral stenosis .	(106/30) = 3·5	1·0	(19/31) = 0·6	0·17
8	Early phthisis .	(161/30) = 5·4	1·6	(54/27) = 2·0	0·6
9	Phthisis . . .	(257/40) = 6·4	1·3	(51/40) = 1·3	0·27
10	Lupus under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(131/36) = 3·3	1·6	(74/40) = 1·8	0·8
11	Lupus under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(73/30) = 2·4	1·2	(31/30) = 1·0	0·5
12	Tubercular ulcer of leg under treatment by inoculation of tubercle vaccine	(63/30) = 2·1	1·2	(60/30) = 2·0	1·1

The first eight of the observations here in question were made upon bloods collected for us in the Victoria Park Hospital by our fellow-worker, Dr. G. W. Ross. The clinical diagnosis which had been arrived at was not made known to us till afterwards, when the particulars set forth in Column 2 were filled in by Dr. Ross.

In contrast with the observations incorporated in Table II in the body of the paper, these observations were conducted in phagocytic mixtures containing 0·85 per cent. instead of 1·1 per cent. of NaCl. It is shown in the next following communication that the spontaneous phagocytosis is absolutely abolished only in the case when the salt content of the phagocytic mixture exceeds 1 per cent.

The source of fallacy to which attention is here called falls, no doubt or all practical purposes, entirely out of account.

On Spontaneous Phagocytosis, and on the Phagocytosis which is obtained with the Heated Serum of Patients who have responded to Tubercular Infection, or, as the case may be, to the Inoculation of a Tubercle Vaccine.[1]

By A. E. Wright and Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N.

From the Laboratory of the Department for Therapeutic Inoculation, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

Recital of Previous Observations on the same Subject—Views of the Observers above-mentioned on the Nature of the Incitor Element contained in the Heated Serum—Sources of Fallacy which must be eliminated before the Question as to the Nature of the Incitor Element in the Heated Serum can be properly investigated—Fallacy of Spontaneous Phagocytosis—Investigation of the Influence of the Salt Content of the Fluid Environment of the Leucocyte upon Spontaneous Phagocytosis—Fallacy which may be introduced by the Exposure of the Serum for a Different Period to Different Degrees of Temperature—Investigation of the Question as to whether the Incitor Substance which is found in the Heated Serum of Persons who have responded to Tubercular Infection, or as the Case may be to an Inoculation of Tubercle Vaccine, is a Leucocytotropic Element—to which the Appellation "Stimulin" would apply—or Bacteriotropic Element, to which the term "Opsonin" would apply—Question as to whether the Opsonin found in Heated Immune Serum is or is not Identical with that found in the Unheated Normal Serum—Conclusions with respect to the Nature of the Incitor Element which is found in Heated Immune Serum after it has been Exposed to Heat.

It has been indicated in the foregoing paper that an *incitor element*[2] is to be found in the blood of those who have made an immunizing response to tubercular infection, or, as the case may be, to an inoculation of a tubercle vaccine. This fact does not stand by itself.

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, B vol. lxxvii, 1906.

[2] The term "incitor-element" (Latin—*incito*: I hasten, I urge forward, I bring into rapid movement) is here employed to denote the element in the heated serum which promotes phagocytosis. By employing this term, pending the elucidation of the nature and mode of action of the element in question, we secure the advantage of leaving these issues unprejudged.

Recital of Previous Observations on the same Subject.

The observations of *Metchnikoff*, following in sequence upon the classical researches of R. Pfeiffer on the intraperitoneal destruction of bacteria by the aid of immune sera, first drew attention to the fact that very active phagocytosis comes under observation when bacterial cultures, or, as the case may be, spermatozoa, are introduced into the peritoneal cavity of normal animals in association with heated serum derived from immunised animals.

Savtschenko [1] obtained in experiments conducted *in vitro* with the heated sera of animals which had been subjected to injections of red blood corpuscles, phagocytosis of these formed elements.

Neufeld and *Rimpau*,[2] working with heated sera derived from animals which had been immunized against streptococcus and pneumococcus, and conducting their experiments *in vitro*, have described these immune sera as possessing a power of inciting phagocytosis. This power was, be it remarked, not numerically measured.

Leishman,[3] employing the numerical method for the measurement of phagocytosis which was devised by him with the modifications introduced by one of us in conjunction with Douglas, ascertained that the sera derived from Malta fever convalescents, or, as the case may be, from men who had undergone anti-typhoid inoculation, retain, after heating, elements which promote phagocytosis.

Dean, working with the same methods, without, however, conforming to the easily realized conditions [4] which are essential to the accuracy of the enumeration, has described incitor elements in the heated serum derived from animals which had been immunised against staphylococcus.

Lastly, *Douglas*, employing again the same methods, has obtained evidence of the presence of an incitor element in the heated serum derived from himself and others after inoculation with a sterilized culture of the plague bacillus.

Views of the Observers above mentioned on the Nature of the Incitor Element contained in the Heated Serum.

Influenced by the theoretical conception that the increased resistance

[1] *Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1902.

[2] Neufeld and Rimpau's paper was published in the *Deutsche Med. Wochenschrift* in September, 1904, twelve months after the first description of the opsonins in these *Proceedings*.

[3] *Path. Soc. Trans.*, 1905, vol. lvi.

[4] "I should not feel disposed," remarks this author (*Roy. Soc. Proc.*, Series B, vol. lxxvi, p. 511), "to place quite the same reliance as Wright and Douglas on the numerical accuracy of the results which can be derived from their method. Where the leucocytes are very full, i.e., where the counts are high—it is impossible to differentiate results by the method of enumeration." In spite of the perfectly self-evident experimental limitation of our method, which Dean here recognizes, this worker employs in practically all his published experiments bacterial suspensions which give him an *average* phagocytic count often of 50 and more bacteria in the leucocyte. Such a count is altogether incompatible with accurate quantitative work.

to bacterial invasion which is obtained by bacterial inoculation is in every case referable to a modification of the phagocytes,[1] Metchnikoff originally spoke of the incitor element as a *stimulin*.

This appellation may, we think, be characterized as unfortunate, *first*, because the mode of action of the incitor element was prejudged; *secondly*, because the appellation suggests (in contravention to everything which has come to light with respect to immunisation) that there are elaborated in the animal organism in response to inoculations, not *vaccinotropic* elements (elements which have a chemical affinity for the vaccine) but *leucocytotropic* elements (substances which have a chemical action on leucocytes).

At a later date the terms "sensitizer" and "fixing substance" (*la substance sensibilitrice* and *le fixateur*) were applied by Metchnikoff to the incitor element. This nomenclature is, it seems to us, almost equally infelicitous—infelicitous because it imposes upon the mind the following ideas:—(*a*) that the phenomena of phagocytosis are analogous to those of haemolysis; (*b*) that the incitor substance, like the "amboceptor" of Ehrlich, exerts its specific effect only in the case where it is reinforced by a complement; and (*c*) that the mechanical movements of the phagocyte in the ingestion of particulate matter are analogous to the chemical action of the complement in the case where red blood corpuscles are dissolved by a haemolytic serum.

With the exception of Leishman,[2] who, with a view to conforming to the original nomenclature of Metchnikoff, and also because his own experiments incline him to adopt the same point of view, speaks of the incitor substances as *stimulins*, all the other observers[3] take the view that the

[1] The correctness of the view that artificial immunity depends upon a modification of the leucocytes was first inquired into by Denys and Leclef (*La Cellule*, 1895, vol. xi), in connexion with their experiments conducted on rabbits with streptococcus. The doubt with regard to the correctness of Metchnikoff's view which found expression in the paper of these authors was further justified by the experiments of Mennes (*Zeitsch. f. Hygiene*, 1897, vol. xxv), conducted with the blood of animals immunised against the pneumococcus. Finally, the incorrectness of the view that immunisation depends on a modification of the leucocytes was for the first time unambiguously established by one of us working in conjunction with Douglas (*Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxii, p. 369, and vol. lxxiii, p. 129). Our results were afterwards confirmed by Bulloch (*Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxv.)

[2] Loc. cit. and *Journal of Hygiene*, 1895.

[3] It may be remarked in this connexion that Neufeld and Rimpau, while satisfied that the incitor substances in the serum exert an opsonic action on the bacteria, suggest that the term *opsonins* should be here rejected and that the substances here in question should be called *bacteriotropins*. Pending the discussion of the question of the mode of action of the incitor elements in the heated serum, and of their identity or non-identity with the opsonins found in normal blood, it will suffice here to remark with respect to the proposed nomenclature of Neufeld the following:—

(*a*) The term *bacteriotropins* (since it connotes nothing more than the property of entering into chemical combination with bacteria) is more appropriate as a generic term for the whole class of substances which combine chemically with bacteria than as a specific designation for the substances which prepare the bacteria for phagocytosis.

(*b*) All considerations of the comparative merits of Neufeld's terminology and

incitor element in the immune serum exerts an opsonic action upon the bacteria, preparing them for phagocytosis.

Sources of Fallacy which must be eliminated before the Question as to the Nature of the Incitor Element in the Heated Serum can be properly investigated.

Before an inquiry into the nature of the incitor constituent of heated "immune serum" can be properly taken in hand, the sources of fallacy which are incident to such an inquiry must be realized. A *first* source of fallacy is associated with the occurrence of *spontaneous phagocytosis*. A *second* source of fallacy arises, as we shall see in a subsequent section, in connexion with the fact that the incitor power of the heated immune serum is influenced in a remarkable and, for the present, quite inexplicable manner by the duration of the exposure to heat, and by the temperature employed.

Fallacy of Spontaneous Phagocytosis.

It will enforce itself upon the mind on considering the protocols of the original experiments published by one of us in conjunction with Douglas[1] that the phagocytosis is not completely abolished by the heating of even a normal serum. The residual phagocytosis registered in the protocols must, as reflection will show, be either *spontaneous phagocytosis*, meaning by this phagocytosis occurring apart from any

my terminology apart—there must, I apprehend, remain to me as the author of the term *bacteriotropic substances* (*Lancet*, December 23, 1899, p. 36 *supra*) as against Neufeld the right of assigning to this term its technical signification.

Dean likewise, while championing the view that the incitor element is an opsonin, and while dissatisfied with the ambiguity of the terms "fixateur" and "substance sensibilitrice," and while conceding that "it may be convenient to adopt the term *opsonin*," employs instead the periphrasis "*the substance which prepares the micro-organisms for phagocytosis*," denying himself the convenience of the term opsonins "in order to mark the danger that one might be led to regard the opsonin as actually a different substance, and not merely a property of immune serum." My fellow-worker, Douglas, and I have not claimed for ourselves anything more than this: that we have, by the aid of an accurate quantitative method, adapted from Leishman, placed in a clear light the rôle of the blood fluids in relation to phagocytosis, a rôle which was practically everywhere ignored or misconceived, and which had at best been "glimpsed" by one or two observers whose work, undertaken with very defective and fallacious technical methods, was, as Dean's own analysis shows, of a very unconvincing character. We submit that the clarification of the rôle of the blood fluids which was effected by us would have remained incomplete and ineffective if we had not alighted on the terms "opsonic power" and "opsonins," or some other apposite and equally convenient nomenclature to denote, as the case may be, the power or "*the substance in the serum which prepares the micro-organisms for phagocytosis.*"

We would also submit that the ultimate—and we hold for the present unapproachable question—as to whether the opsonic effect we have described is only one of a series of diverse effects exerted by a single *antitropic* substance, or whether it is the result of the specific activity of an independent chemical unit in the serum, is not prejudged by the employment of the term *opsonin*.

[1] *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vols. lxxii and lxxiii, (pp. 75–99 *supra*).

co-operation of the serum, or phagocytosis dependent upon the chemical activity of an element which has resisted the destructive action of heat.[1]

When face to face with the consideration that the elimination of all spontaneous phagocytosis must be a necessary preliminary to the proper investigation of every question which has reference to the presence of an incitor element in heated serum, a suggestion from our fellow-worker, Captain Stewart R. Douglas, I.M.S., led us to inquire whether the phagocytic activity of the leucocyte might not be affected in a conspicuous manner by the salt content of its fluid environment. Captain Douglas's suggestion was a happy one. For, as will appear in the next section, we found that in certain concentrations of salt the leucocytes display considerable spontaneous phagocytosis with respect to the tubercle bacillus, while again in other salt concentrations spontaneous phagocytosis with respect to the micro-organisms is entirely suppressed.

Investigation of the Influence of the Salt Content of the Fluid Environment of the Leucocyte upon Spontaneous Phagocytosis.

The general results of our experiments conducted with tubercle bacilli will be best submitted in the form of the subjoined graphic curves.

In *Chart* 1 we show the phagocytic counts obtained in an experiment conducted without any admixture of serum. In these experiments one volume of washed blood corpuscles, suspended in 0·85 per cent. NaCl solution, was mixed in each case with an equal volume of suspension of tubercle bacilli in distilled water, and with one volume of a graduated solution of salt. It will be observed that the spontaneous phagocytosis which is here in question is greatest where the phagocytic mixture contains 0·6 per cent. of NaCl, and that the count falls off in a gradual manner, and finally reaches a figure which does not differ sensibly from zero when a concentration of 1·2 per cent. NaCl is arrived at.

In *Chart* 2 we show the phagocytic counts obtained in films prepared from phagocytic mixtures containing a *double* volume of undiluted serum, a *double* volume of washed corpuscles suspended in 1 per cent. NaCl, and a *single* volume of a suspension of tubercle bacilli made in the same menstruum, supplemented in each case by a *single* volume of a solution of sodium chloride of progressively increasing strength.

Three different sera were here subjected to experiment—

a. The pooled unheated serum derived from eight normal men ;

b. The same serum after it had been exposed to a temperature of 60° C. for ten minutes ; and

[1] In favour of the former of these two alternative explanations of the residua phagocytosis is, *first*, the difficulty of conceiving in connexion with the experiments conducted with carmine and Indian ink particles, that these were chemically acted upon by the serum ; *secondly*, the difficulty of explaining, otherwise than as a result of individual differences in phagocytic activity as between leucocyte and leucocyte, the fact that in preparations made with heated normal serum and tubercle bacilli suspended in physiological salt solution, the phagocytosis is generally restricted to a very small percentage of the leucocytes instead of coming into evidence, as in the case of experiments conducted with unheated and active serum, in association with practically all the mature leucocytes.

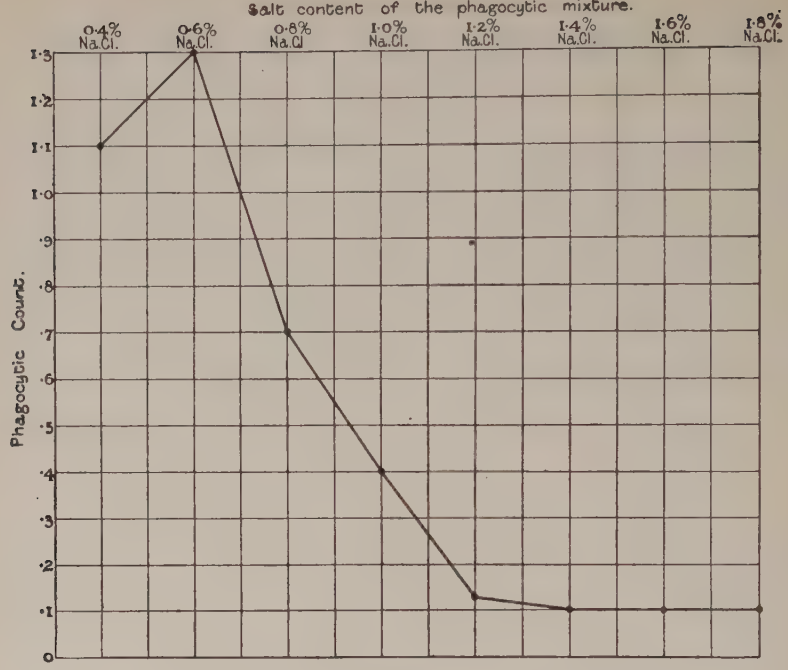


CHART 1.

c. Serum from a patient who had been subjected to therapeutic inoculations of tubercle vaccine. This serum, like the last, had been exposed to a temperature of 60° C. for ten minutes.

It will be seen that, as in *Chart* 1, where no serum was employed, the highest phagocytic counts were with each serum obtained where the concentration of the sodium chloride was least.

In the case of trace 3 (obtained with the heated normal serum) the

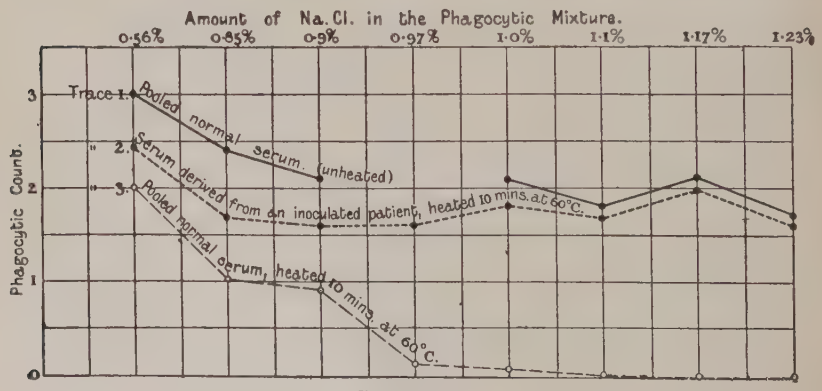


CHART 2.

phagocytosis must be interpreted throughout as purely spontaneous phagocytosis.

In trace 1 and trace 2 it must, in the case where low concentrations of NaCl are in question, be interpreted as spontaneous phagocytosis supplemented to an extent corresponding with the differences between the counts in these traces and those in trace 3—by phagocytosis dependent upon the chemical action of the serum. Lastly, in these two first traces the phagocytosis registered where high concentrations of NaCl were employed must be entirely dependent upon the chemical action of the serum.

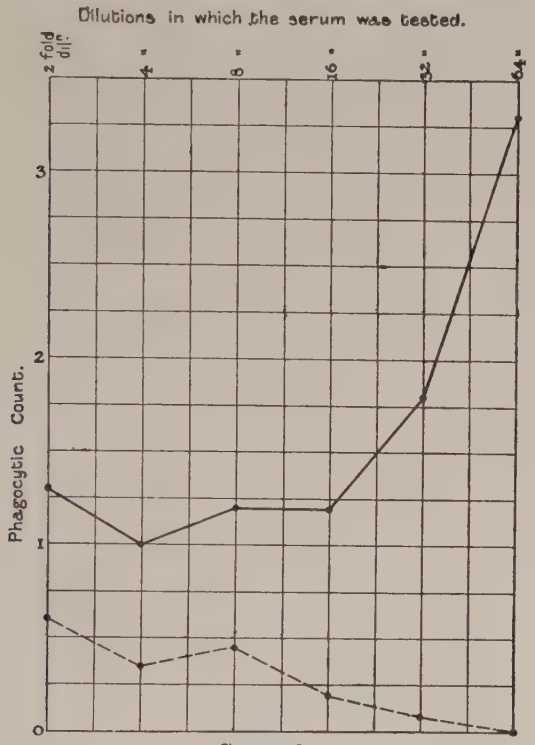


CHART 3.

In *Chart* 3 we show the effect of making progressive dilutions of one and the same normal unheated serum with, in the one case, a 0·6 per cent. NaCl solution, and in the other case a 1·3 per cent. NaCl solution, using, as in the experiments above, in each case one and the same suspension of tubercle bacilli, and one and the same washed blood cream.[1]

It will be seen that while in the lower trace the phagocytic count sank away in an almost regular manner to zero as the opsonins of the

[1] By this procedure there were obtained in the first case phagocytic mixtures whose salt content diminished in the successive dilutions from 0·8 to 0·7 NaCl, and in the second case phagocytic mixtures in which the salt content increased from 0·92 to 1 per cent.

serum were more and more diluted, in the upper trace the phagocytic count increased as the serum was diluted by a less concentrated salt solution.

We do not see room to doubt that in the case of the lower trace spontaneous phagocytosis was completely suppressed, and that such phagocytosis as was obtained was due exclusively to the action of the opsonins, and that in the case of the upper trace the phagocytosis obtained in the outset was due to spontaneous phagocytosis supplemented by the action of the opsonins, while the increased phagocytosis in the latter part of the trace was entirely due to spontaneous phagocytosis.

Fallacy which may be introduced by the Exposure of the Serum for a Different Period to Different Degrees of Temperature.

In view of the research of Dreyer,[1] which brought out the fact that the agglutinating power of a serum may, as progressively higher temperatures, or, as the case may be, progressively longer exposures are employed, be first lost and afterwards recovered, it suggested itself that an analogous effect might possibly be exerted upon the incitor element of an immune serum when exposed for different periods to different temperatures.

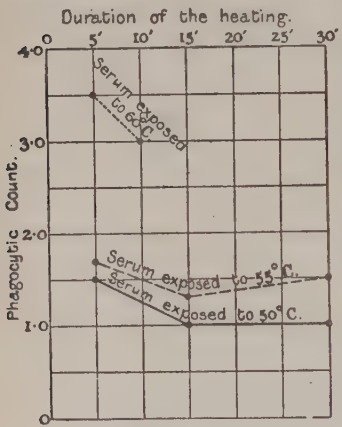


CHART 4.

The results of a typical experiment carried out with such a serum are embodied in the *Chart* 4.

It will be seen that, while the incitor power of the immune serum was in each case preserved, a very different phagocytic count was obtained according as the serum was exposed to temperatures of 50°, 55° and 60° for a shorter or longer time.

It will be manifest, in view of these results, that where experiments are conducted with heated sera care must be taken to see that in every case the same conditions are observed in the matter of the heating of the serum.

Investigation of the question as to whether the Incitor Substance which is found in the Heated Serum of Persons who have responded to Tubercular Infection, or, as the Case may be, to an Inoculation of Tubercle Vaccine, is a Leucocytotropic Element—to which the Appellation "Stimulin" would apply—or Bacteriotropic Element, to which the Term "Opsonin" would apply.

The absorption method of Ehrlich, which has already been employed by Neufeld and Rimpau in connexion with the investigation of the nature of the incitor element contained in the serum of animals immunised against streptococcus and pneumococcus, was obviously the method indicated for employment in connexion with the problem here before us. It was also

[1] *British Medical Journal*, September 10, 1904.

manifest, in view of the facts detailed in the previous section, that the comparative experiments instituted with heated immune serum before and after digestion with tubercle bacilli and subsequent centrifugalization would yield unfallacious results only on adhering rigidly to the same conditions in the matter of the heating of the serum, and on arranging the experimental conditions in such a manner as to achieve in the phagocytic mixtures employed in each case a salt content of over 1 per cent. NaCl.

A series of experiments conducted with these precautions showed in a uniform manner that the incitor element can be completely extracted from heated immune serum by digestion for half an hour at 37° C. with a suspension of tubercle bacilli.[1]

It is thus clear that the incitor element which is found in heated serum of persons who have responded to tubercular infection, or, as the case may be, to the inoculation of a tubercle vaccine, is an opsonin. We may, pending the discussion in the next section of its identity and non-identity with the opsonin of the unheated normal serum, speak of this opsonin in a provisional manner as the *opsonin found in the heated immune serum.*

Question as to whether the Opsonin found in Heated Immune Serum is or is not Identical with that found in the Unheated Normal Serum.

Leishman, who has spoken of the incitor element in the heated immune serum as a *stimulin*, in common with Neufeld, working in conjunction with Rimpau and Dean, who have shown that this incitor element functions as an *opsonin*, have laid emphasis on the thermostability of the incitor element. Both Leishman and Neufeld urge that the character thermostability differentiates the incitor elements they have in view from the thermolabile opsonins described by one of us in conjunction with Douglas. Neufeld goes further, and contends that the particular opsonins which have been described by him as thermostable alone possess any significance in connexion with the protection of the organism against bacterial disease. In support of this contention Neufeld adverts to the fact that man, although he is, according to experiments recorded by one of us in conjunction with Douglas, the possessor of thermolabile opsonins against the plague bacillus, is none the less not protected against this micro-organism.

Before investigating the question of fact as to the identity or non-identity of the opsonins of the normal and immune organism, which are discriminated from each other by Neufeld, we may be allowed to comment on the standpoint which he takes up. We submit that he proceeds upon an entirely erroneous conception when he assumes that the non-immunised human organism does not offer a resistance to such bacterial infections as plague. We submit, further, that it is erroneous to conceive of the normal organism as differing from the immunised organism in a qualitative manner. Rather, does not the theory of Ehrlich brilliantly teach that in immunisation we are never building upwards from a level of absolute

[1] This result is in conformity with the results obtained by Neufeld and Rimpau in connexion with streptococcal and pneumococcal immune serum, and by Dean in connexion with staphylococcal immune serum.

non-resistance, but always building upon a foundation which is already laid—calling into existence in increased quantity and conveying into the blood only such chemical agents as exist already preformed in the body ?

Reverting from this digression, we may address ourselves to the investigation of the facts, and may inquire whether they plead against or in favour of the identity of the opsonins which are found in the unheated normal blood with the opsonins which are found in the heated immune blood.

In the investigation of the facts we have built upon the following postulates :—

(*a*) If the so-called thermostable opsonins are in reality thermostable, it will make no difference to the result whether the serum is heated in a diluted or in an undiluted condition. If, on the other hand, the thermostable opsonins represent nothing other than a residuum of thermolabile opsonins which has escaped destruction by heat, it may quite well happen that the serum will be completely inactivated if, before the heat is applied, the serum is adequately diluted.

(*b*) Again, if the serum as derived from an immunised organism contains in its native condition a mixture of opsonins, which are respectively thermolabile and thermostable, we may, in conformity with the all-round greater chemical stability of thermostable substances, expect that the thermolabile opsonins will be destroyed when exposed to sunlight, and that the thermostable opsonins will remain unaffected.

(*c*) Lastly, if the reputedly thermostable opsonins constitute an altogether new and distinct category of opsonins produced in the course of immunisation, we may expect, at any rate in cases where the immunisation has been carried very far, to find the thermostable opsonins greatly in excess of the thermolabile opsonins. In such a case it would be reasonable to expect the heated serum to bear almost as much dilution as the unheated serum before the point is in each case reached where the opsonic power is lost. On the contrary, if the so-called thermostable opsonins represent only an undestroyed residuum of the ordinary thermolabile opsonins, we may expect the heated serum to forfeit its opsonic power by dilution sooner than the unheated serum.

The graphic curves which are subjoined will serve to bring before the eye the results of, in each case, a typical experiment instituted with a view to the resolution of the questions suggested above.

Chart 5 furnishes an answer to the questions suggested in (*a*) and (*c*) ; *Chart* 6 an answer to the question suggested in (*b*).

Explanation of Chart 5.—The experiment, whose results are here graphically set forth, had a double object in view. Its first object was to determine whether the tuberculo-opsonic power of the serum derived from an inoculated patient would be only partially abolished in the case where heat is applied to the undiluted serum, and would be completely

abolished when heat is applied to the diluted serum. Its secondary object was to determine how far one and the same serum could be diluted before and after heating before its tuberculo-opsonic power was extinguished.

The serum which was employed for the purposes of this experiment was obtained from a patient whose opsonic index had been raised from 0·17 to 1·8 by repeated inoculations of new tuberculin, and who had, under the influence of these inoculations, completely recovered from tuberculous

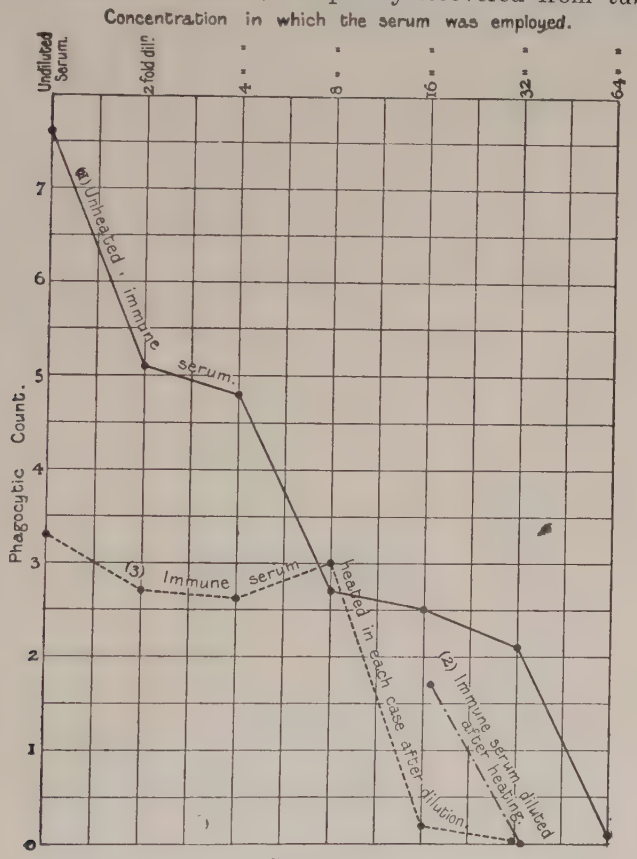


CHART 5.

ulcers of the leg, which had laid bare the tendons, and which had for a period of thirteen years previously to the commencement of the inoculation treatment defied all treatment.

So far as the quantity of serum which was available allowed of this being done, these questions were investigated, the precautions explained above being in each case rigidly observed.

It will be seen on reference to the chart, and on comparison of the phagocytic counts registered in the case of the 16-fold dilutions, that while the serum which had been first heated and then diluted (Trace

2) gave a phagocytic count of 1·7, the serum which had been first diluted and then heated (Trace 3) gave a phagocytic count of practically zero. It will further appear on referring to the three traces that, while the opsonic power of the unheated serum was maintained till a 64-fold dilution was arrived at, the opsonic power of two samples of serum which were heated respectively before and after dilution was extinguished when in the former case a 32-fold, and in the latter case a 16-fold dilution was arrived at.

Comment.—The experiment shows that the opsonin found in heated serum is destroyed by heat when the serum is sufficiently diluted.[1]

Explanation of Chart No. 6.—In the experiment here in question we employed a serum derived from a patient with tubercular peritonitis, who had responded to infection in a characteristic manner.

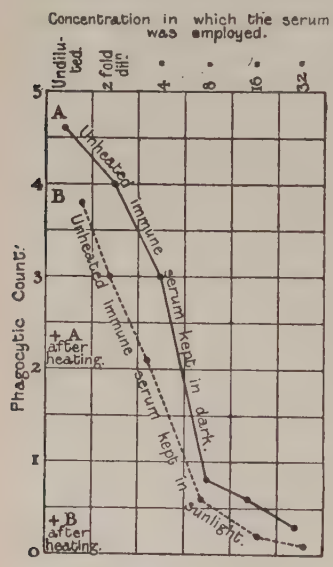


CHART 6.

Dividing it into two portions, we exposed one portion to direct sunlight for a period of six to eight hours, keeping the other portion in the dark in an incubator at 22° C. for the same time.

We now measured the opsonic power of each portion of serum both in the unheated condition and after exposure to 60° C. for ten minutes. In the case of the unheated samples we tested in each case not only the undiluted serum but also in each case a series of progressive dilutions. In the case of the samples which were heated we tested only the undiluted sera.

It will be seen on comparing the phagocytic counts obtained with the insolated and non-insolated sera respectively, that while in the case of the unheated samples the serum which had been exposed to sunlight gave throughout almost as high a phagocytic count as the serum which had been kept in the dark, in the case of the heated samples the serum which had been exposed to sunlight gave a zero result, while the specimen which had been kept in the dark gave a count of 2·3 bacilli to each leucocyte.

Comment.—The experiment shows that the reputedly thermostable opsonin is—in contradiction with what is known to hold of other thermostable elements—eminently heliolabile.

Conclusions with respect to the Nature of the Incitor element which is found in Heated Immune Serum after it has been Exposed to Heat.

Manifestly the plain teaching of our experiments is, that the opsonin which is found in the heated immune serum of a patient who has responded

[1] Further experiments bearing on this question will be found in the Appendix to the paper.

to tubercular infection, or, as the case may be, to the inoculation of a tubercle vaccine, does not differ with respect to its resistance to heat and sunlight from the opsonin which is found in the unheated normal serum.

A precisely similar conclusion with respect to the identity of the opsonins found respectively in unheated normal and heated immune sera was, we may note, arrived at by Dean in connexion with his experiments on the sera of animals which had been immunised against staphylococcus.

We have only to remark in conclusion that if we prefer to speak of the opsonin as a thermolabile element, and Dean prefers to speak of it as a thermostable element, there is nothing at issue between us except the question as to whether it is in harmony with usage, and with the genius of the English language as employed in scientific discourse, to characterise as "thermostabile" an element of which at best residual traces remain in the case of the normal serum where this has been heated to 60° C., and in the case of the immune serum where this has, after adequate dilution, been heated to the same temperature.

Appendix.

It may be convenient to subjoin here, in tabular form, the results of three experiments, similar to that set forth in Curve 5 in which the opsonic power of a tuberculo-immune serum was measured in a series of dilutions made in the one case after the serum had been heated to 60° C. for ten minutes, and in the other case before the serum was so heated.

Serial Number of the Experiment.	Source from which the Serum was derived.	Phagocytic Count obtained in the Case of the Heated Undiluted Serum.	Dilution in which the Opsonic Power was measured.	Phagocytic Count in the case where the Serum was heated before it was diluted.	Phagocytic Count in the case where the Serum was diluted before it was heated.
Expt. 1 .	Pooled serum of six patients who had been inoculated with tubercle vaccine	2·4	2-fold dilution	1·9	3·3
			4-fold	2·7	1·7
			8- „	1·1	0·6
			16- „	1·0	0·45
			32- „	0·97	0·2
			64- „	0·75	0·08
Expt. 2 .	Serum of a patient (E. M.) who had been inoculated with tubercle vaccine	—	4-fold	1·5	2·7
			8- „	1·4	1·9
			16- „	1·6	1·2
			32- „	1·5	0·3
				0·9	0·05
Expt. 3 .	Serum of a patient (J. B.) who had been inoculated with tubercle vaccine	1·4	2-fold	—	1·5
			4- „	0·85	1·5
			8- „	0·7	1·6
			16- „	0·7	0·2
			32- „	0·25	0·0
			64- „	0·0	—

The Specificity of the Opsonic Substances in the Blood Serum.[1]

By William Bulloch, M.D., and G. T. Western, M.A., M.B.
From the Bacteriological Laboratory of the London Hospital, London, E.

A relatively high degree of specificity has been demonstrated for most of the anti-bodies which exist in immune sera, e.g., in the case of agglutinins, lysins, praecipitins, antitoxins. With normal sera the proof of specificity is often difficult on account of the fact that the antibodies are present in the majority of cases only in small quantities.

The following experiments are concerned with the specificity of the opsonic substances of normal and immune sera. As is well known, these opsonic substances, discovered by Wright and Douglas, act on bacteria in such a way that the latter become an easy prey to the phagocytic leucocytes.

If a given serum be tested it will be found to exert an opsonic action on more than one kind of bacterium, and the question we have sought to answer is whether there is one or more than one opsonic substance; in other words, whether the opsonins are specific for the different bacteria on which they exert their opsonic action.

In a previous communication[2] one of us (B) has shown that when a microbe, e.g., staphylococcus, is digested with normal serum at 37° C. for fifteen minutes, and the cocci are then brought down by the aid of a centrifuge, the supernatant liquid is found to be devoid of opsonic action for staphylococci. Where the contact of the microbe with serum has been sufficiently long, and the centrifugalization has been complete, the opsonin for the particular microbe is totally removed.

We have attempted to determine whether the opsonins are specific by experiments of two kinds:—

1. The first method consisted in estimating the opsonic content of a given serum towards two different bacteria. A suspension of one of these bacteria was digested with the serum, and the mixture was thereafter centrifugalized, the resulting supernatant liquid being tested on both kinds of bacteria. To a quantity of the supernatant liquid the second

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.
[2] *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, vol. lxxiv (p. 138 *supra*).

bacterial suspension was added, and after the lapse of a certain time the centrifuge was again applied, and the resulting liquid was again tested.

2. The second method consisted in estimating from day to day the opsonic content of the serum of human beings suffering from lupus. At certain periods tubercle or staphylococcus vaccines were inoculated, and the effect on the two opsonic curves was determined.

1. *Experiment on the opsonic action of normal human serum towards Staphylococcus aureus and Bacterium pyocyaneum respectively.*

Normal human serum was mixed with an equal volume of a suspension of *Staphylococcus aureus*, and the mixture was placed in the incubator for one hour at 37° C. At the end of this time the mixture was centrifugalized, the supernatant liquid "A" being removed from the deposit of cocci by means of a pipette. The supernatant liquid was in part retained, the remainder being digested for one hour at 37° C. with a suspension of *Bacterium pyocyaneum*, the latter being finally brought down as a deposit in the centrifuge, leaving a supernatant liquid "B," which was pipetted off.

			Result.				
1.	Normal serum (1 in 2 dilution)	+ staphylococci	+ leucocytes	=	22·9	Bacteria per Leucocyte.
2.	„ „ (1 in 2 „)	+ *B. pyocyaneum*	+ „	=	4·7	
3.	„ „ (1 in 4 „)	+ „	+ „	=	3·0	
4.	Fluid "A"	+ staphylococcus	+ „	=	0·5	
5.	„ "A"	+ *B. pyocyaneum*	+ „	=	4·0	
6.	„ "B"	+ „	+ „	=	0·4	

The contact of the serum with staphylococcus leaves the opsonic action of the serum for *Bacterium pyocyaneum* practically unchanged, the pyocyanie opsonin being finally removed by contact of the serum with this microbe.

A similar result was obtained when the serum was brought to act on staphylococcus and tubercle bacillus, as can be seen in the following experiment.

(1) Normal human serum was mixed with an equal quantity of an emulsion of tubercle bacilli in 0·85 per cent. NaCl solution. The mixture was digested for thirty minutes at 37° C. and then centrifuged. In this way a deposit and a supernatant liquid "A" was obtained.

(2) Normal human serum was mixed with an equal quantity of an emulsion of *Staphylococcus aureus* in 0·85 per cent. NaCl solution. The mixture was digested for thirty minutes at 37° C. and then centrifuged, a supernatant liquid "B" being obtained.

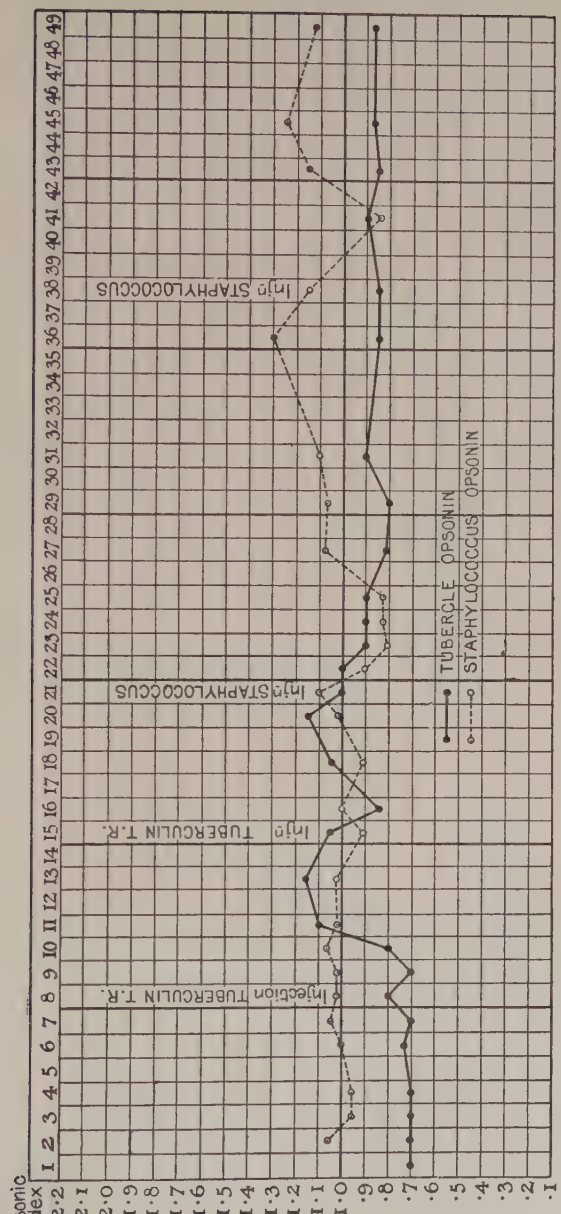
(3) The fluid "A" was mixed with an equal quantity of an emulsion of *Staphylococcus aureus*. The mixture was digested for thirty minutes at 37° C., and a deposit separated from a fluid "C" by the centrifuge.

4. The fluid "B" was mixed with an equal quantity of an emulsion of tubercle bacilli. The mixture was digested for thirty minutes at 37° C., and a deposit separated from a fluid "D" by the centrifuge.

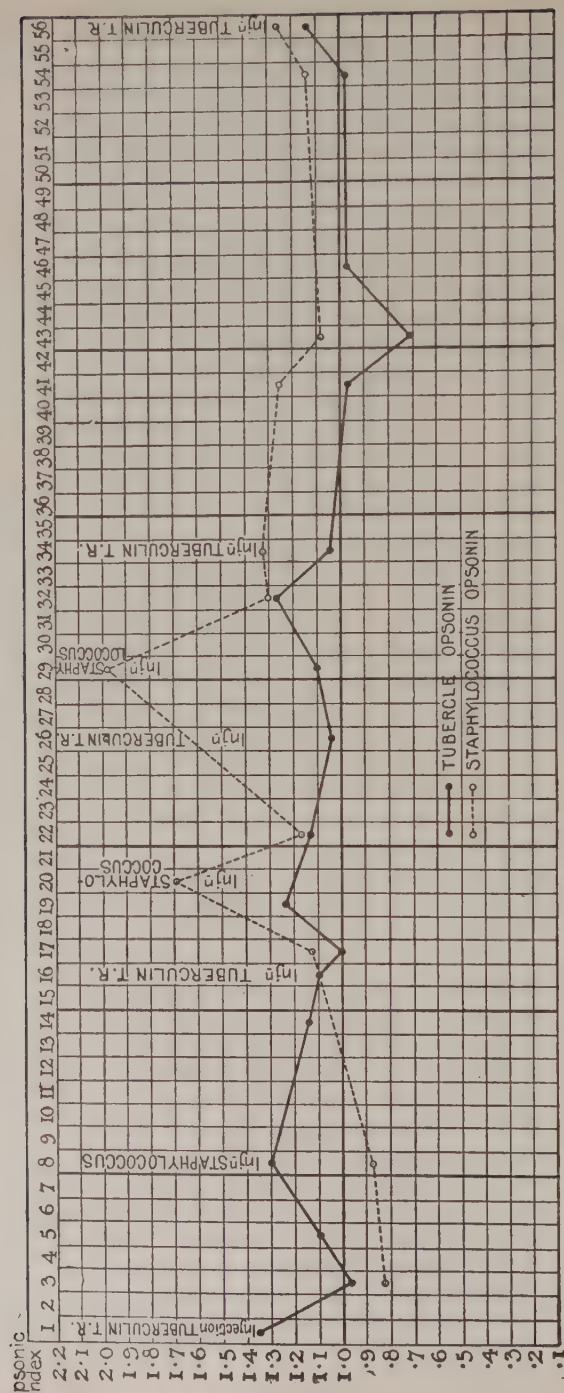
The opsonic content of the serum and of the fluids "A," "B," "C,"

Number of Microbes per Leucocyte.

	Expt. 1.			Expt. 2.
	Observer B.	Observer W.	Mean.	Observer W.
1. Normal serum + saline *a.a.* (3 parts) + T.B. (1 part) + leucocytes (3 parts)	3·03	3·0	3·015	1·61
2. Normal serum + saline *a.a.* („) + staphylococcus („) + „ („)	12·6	12·3	12·45	7·00
3. Normal serum 1 + saline 3 („) + T.B. („) + „ („)	1·4	1·4	1·4	1·40
4. Normal serum 1 + saline 3 („) + staphylococcus („) + „ („)	11·0	11·4	11·2	5·20
5. Fluid "A." („) + T.B. („) + „ („)	0·4	0·5	0·45	0·13
6. „ "A" („) + staphylococcus („) + „ („)	9·0	10·23	9·96	5·00
7. „ "B" („) + T.B. („) + „ („)	2·7	—	2·7	1·20
8. „ "B" („) + staphylococcus („) + „ („)	0·43	0·26	0·34	0·80
9. „ "C" („) + „ („) + „ („)	0·13	0·26	0·19	0·40
10. „ "D" („) + T.B. („) + „ („)	0·16	0·76	0·51	0·32
11. „ "A" (3 parts) + saline (1 part) + leucocytes (3 parts) (stained for T.B.) . .	0·09	0·0	0·09	0·10
12. „ "B" („) + „ („) + „ („) („ for staphylococcus)	0·0	0·0	0·0	0·00
13. „ "C" („) + „ („) + „ („) („ „)	0·0	0·0	0·0	0·00
14. „ "D" („) + „ („) + „ („) („ for T.B.) . .	0·05	0·0	0·05	0·00
15. Saline, 0·85 per cent. (3 parts) + T.B. (1 part) + leucocytes (3 parts) .	0·0	0·08	0·08	0·06
16. „ 0·85 „ („) + staphylococcus („) + „ („) .	0·13	—	0·13	0·68


Opsonic Index
Injection TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n STAPHYLOCOCCUS
Inj^n STAPHYLOCOCCUS
TUBERCLE OPSONIN
STAPHYLOCOCCUS OPSONIN

CURVE 1.


Opsonic Index
Injection TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n STAPHYLOCOCCUS
Inj^n TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n STAPHYLO-COCCUS
Inj^n TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n STAPHYLOCOCCUS
Inj^n TUBERCULIN T.R.
Inj^n TUBERCULIN T.R.
TUBERCLE OPSONIN
STAPHYLOCOCCUS OPSONIN

CURVE 2.

and " D," was then determined both for *Staphylococcus aureus* and tubercle bacillus in the usual way, the necessary controls being added. In the first experiments the determinations made by each of us separately in a series of different films are given under the designation B. and W., and the mean of these determinations. In the second experiment the result was obtained by one of us (W.) alone.

It will be seen that a considerable degree of specificity exists in so far that staphylococci remove almost the whole of the opsonin for this microbe, while the opsonic substance for tubercle bacilli is in large part left unaltered. In almost all cases we have observed a slight diminution in the quantity of the opsonin left behind. Thus, while the contact of a serum with tubercle bacilli lowered the opsonic content for this bacillus from 3·03 to 0·4, it also produced a slight lowering of the staphylococcus opsonin from 11·2 to 9·96. Similarly contact of a staphylococcus with serum reduced the staphylococcus opsonin from 12·45 to 0·34, and at the same time it lowered the tubercular opsonin from 3·0 to 2·7.

2. *Experiment.*

The opsonic content of the serum of a patient suffering from lupus was repeatedly determined on tubercle and staphylococcus suspensions. Two inoculations of tuberculin and two of staphylococcic vaccine were injected, and the influence of the inoculations is set forth in the following opsonic curve, which shows that there is no correspondence in the quantities of tuberculo-opsonins and staphylococcus opsonins when one or other of the corresponding vaccines is inoculated (Case I).

In a second experiment (Case II) opsonic determinations were made in a similar case, with the exception that the patient was not only suffering from lupus, but septic infection of the tuberculous lesions at the same time (Curve 2).

Conclusions.

1. When staphylococci are brought into contact with normal human serum and are subsequently removed by centrifugalization, the serum loses its opsonic power for staphylococcus, although the opsonic power of *Bacterium pyocyaneum* is preserved.

2. Contact of normal human serum with tubercle bacilli leaves the opsonic power of that serum for staphylococcus almost intact, while the opsonic power for tubercle bacillus is completely removed.

3. Contact of normal human serum with staphylococcus leaves the opsonic power of that serum for tubercle bacillus almost intact, while the opsonic power for staphylococcus is completely removed.

4. Inoculation of a human being with tuberculin causes quantitative increase in the tuberculo-opsonin, whereas the quantity of staphylococcus opsonin is unaltered.

5. Inoculation of a human being with staphylococcus vaccine causes a quantitative increase in the staphylococcus opsonin, whereas the quantity of tuberculo-opsonin is unaltered.

On the Relationship between Haemolysis and the Phagocytosis of Red Blood Cells.[1]

By R. D. Keith, M.A., M.D.

From the Bacteriological Laboratory of the London Hospital, London, E.

Production of the Immune Serum which induces Haemolysis and Phagocytosis—Experiment to show that heating the Serum to 55° C. to 60° C. causes a Diminution of Phagocytosis—Behaviour of the Haemolytic Amboceptor towards Heat—Conclusions.

The nature of the substance or property in normal as well as in immune serum which induces phagocytosis has been of late a matter of considerable discussion, and the chief point of controversy has been whether phagocytosis is caused by some well-known immune substance, or whether it is brought about by something which until recently had not been completely recognized as a product of immunisation processes, e.g., the "opsonin" of Wright and Douglas.

Whatever the nature of this subtance may be, it seems established beyond doubt that it acts on the bodies phagocytosed, the stimulin theory of Metchnikoff and his school having given way to the theory supported especially by Wright and other observers in this country, that the action is on the bodies phagocytosed and not on the phagocytes, notwithstanding the work of Löhlein (1), Leishman (2) and Besredka (3).

Wright and Douglas (4 and 5) in their well-known work on this subject, described this property of the serum as being due to a body which up to that time had not been properly recognized. To this they gave the name "opsonin," and by their ingenious experiments they rendered clear and concrete what had been before but nebulous and ill-defined.

They, as well as Bulloch and Atkin (6), and Hektoen and Ruediger (7), described this body as being thermolabile from the fact that it was to a large extent destroyed by heating the serum to 55° C. to 65° C. Dean (8) repeated this work, using a somewhat different technique, and having found that in normal, but especially in immune sera, a certain amount was not destroyed, decided to call it thermostable. As Wright (9) has since pointed out, this is merely a matter of terms; but from his as well as from Dean's experiments it is clear that a very large amount of destruction takes place at these temperatures.

[1] Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, series B, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

Dean at the same time put forward the view, shared chiefly by workers in the Pasteur Institute in Paris, that the substance or property in the serum described by Wright and Douglas was not new, but had been well known before, and Dean laid stress on the work of Savtchenko (10) on the phagocytosis of red blood cells, pointing out that this property had been attributed by Savtchenko to the "fixateur."

As there seems to have crept into this question some doubt as to the exact interpretation to be put on Savtchenko's work, and particularly as to the exact significance of the term "fixateur" as used by him, it is necessary to briefly consider his position, especially as Barratt (11) has put a different interpretation on it from Dean.

Savtchenko assumed that the laws regulating the action of cytotoxins were entirely analogous to those regulating the action of immunising substances on microbes, and considered that experiments on phagocytosis might be permissibly conducted with animal cells and adopted red blood cells, as being easy to work with.

This opinion would indicate that Savtchenko considered that the action of haemolysis was the analogue of that of immunising substances on microbes, since a cytotoxic action with reference to red blood cells would mean haemolysis. This is also indicated further on in his work when he says that, as has been pointed out by Bordet, when the red blood cells of an animal A are injected into an animal B, the serum of the latter becomes toxic for the red blood cells of the former, and that he himself has established a complete analogy between the action of the serum on the red blood cells and that of the immune specific serum on the microbe as well in the animal body as *in vitro*.

Further he says,[1] "Dans le sérum spécifique se trouve une substance ou fixateur (d'après la terminologie de Metchnikoff) qui se fixe sur les globules rouges correspondants—ou bien sur les microbes—et par son action prépare ces derniers à leur dissolution par les alexines (cytases) qu'on trouve dans chaque sérum. Le fixateur ne se détruit pas à 55° C. à 60° C. Ehrlich et Morgenroth ont montré que le fixateur a une affinité spécifique pour les globules rouges correspondants, et qu'une fois fixé sur eux, il ne s'en détache pas dans les lavages ultérieurs, ainsi que dans la centrifugation dans l'eau physiolgique. Si l'on soumet les globules rouges ainsi traités à l'action du sérum normal contenant des alexines, ils se dissolvent."

With regard to Metchnikoff's definition of the fixateur which Savtchenko accepts, one may state what Metchnikoff (12) himself has given in his latest work on the subject.

On p. 355 he says, "Um in diesen bedeutungsvollen Ergebnissen das sicher Festgestellte und das Hypothetische von einander zu halten, haben wir vorgeschlagen das Alexin oder Komplement unter dem Namen Cytase (d. h. zellenlösendes Enzym), die sensibilisierende Substanz dagegen unter dem Namen Fixator zu bezeichnen." He also states (p. 357) that Sav-

[1] Loc. cit., p. 111 (*vide references at end of paper*).

tchenko was the first to show that red blood cells which are laden with *the specific fixateur* are extraordinarily easily phagocytosed.

Savtchenko stated further that he took as the objects of experiment the phagocytes of the guinea-pig and its red blood corpuscles, and the serum of a rabbit immunised against the red blood cells of the guinea-pig, and heated the serum of the rabbit to 55° C. to destroy the alexines, leaving *the specific fixateur* intact. He also stated that he took the washed red cells of a guinea-pig and diluted them with normal saline solution and added a quantity of heated haemolytic immune serum in a dilution of 1 in 200. After this mixture had been six hours at 37° C. he centrifugalized and washed the corpuscles thrice with normal saline. "The red blood cells," he adds, "had attached to themselves *the fixateur*; since the addition of normal serum was sufficient to bring about the solution of the haemoglobin."

Again,[1] he states, "Il est possible qu'il existe dans le plasma un minimum de fixateur insuffisant pour être decélé par la réaction de dissolution, mais tout à fait suffisant pour provoquer la phagocytose après s'être fixé sur ces derniers."

Savtchenko's position is this: As the result of his experiments he came to the conclusion that in the serum of a rabbit immunised with guinea-pig's blood, there exists a substance which causes phagocytosis of the red blood cells of the guinea-pig, and this substance, which may act either on the phagocytes or on the bodies to be phagocytosed, is the specific fixateur, and possibly, according to the amount present in the serum, this substance causes haemolysis or phagocytosis.

From what has been given here of Savtchenko's work it appears to be beyond doubt that he considered that the specific fixateur which induces the phagocytosis of red blood cells is the same as the haemolytic amboceptor of Ehrlich and not a separate body inducing this action.

Barratt[2] has shown that even with *unheated* immune serum, phagocytosis of red blood cells may occur without the serum possessing either haemolytic or agglutinative properties, and concludes from this that the phagocytosis is not induced by the fixateur in the sense of the term as used by Savtchenko nor by the agglutinin, but by some other body acting on the red blood corpuscles and not on the leucocytes. This body he placed in the class of "opsonins."

Besredka (13), in summing up Barratt's paper, says, "Il y a, en effet, dans un sérum haemolytique plusieurs substances. Est-ce le fixateur (amboceptor) qui détermine la phagocytose ? est-ce l'agglutinine ? est-ce enfin une troisième substance qui aurait uniquement pour fonction de présider à la phagocytose ?" Besredka, it is clear, also assumes that the fixateur is identical with the amboceptor.

The main question at issue, then, is whether the amboceptor, and by this I mean that acting in haemolysis, is identical with the substance

[1] Loc. cit., p. 118. [2] Loc. cit.

inducing the phagocytosis of erythrocytes—the opsonin of Wright and Douglas.

As Savtchenko and Barratt did not use exact quantitative methods in their experiments, and as such are desirable, it has been necessary to use a somewhat different technical procedure from that employed by these researchers, but the type of experiment was essentially the same as theirs.

Production of the Immune Serum, etc.

The materials used were the red blood cells of the ox, the serum of a rabbit immunised against these, and normal human leucocytes as the phagocytic agents.

The rabbit received intra-peritoneally doses of 10 c.c. of washed ox corpuscles at intervals of a week, 30 c.c. in all being administered before experiments were commenced.

The last injection was made on November 13, 1905. On the 27th of the same month it was found, testing in the usual way, that 0·002 c.c of the serum produced, when fully complemented, total haemolysis of 2 c.c. of a 5 per cent. suspension in normal saline of washed ox corpuscles, after two hours at 37° C. and twelve hours at room temperature.

On the Effects of Heat on the Substances in the Serum which induces Haemolysis and Phagocytosis.

The first point to be studied was the influence of heat on the phagocytic action of the serum. With the *undiluted unheated* serum it was found to be a matter of considerable difficulty to perform phagocytic tests owing to haemolysis somewhat obscuring phagocytosis. With the *undiluted unheated serum* only blood shadows were to be seen in the phagocytes, but on diluting the serum sufficiently to suppress the effects of the complement, haemolysis was abolished and the red cells could be observed to be phagocytosed, apparently in their normal condition.

In order to find approximately at what degree of dilution haemolysis would cease to come into play, a series of haemolytic tests were performed in capillary pipettes. This method was employed in preference to that ordinarily adopted, because with Wright's method of performing phagocytic tests, to deal with absolute quantities is a matter of considerable difficulty.

Experiment.

Various dilutions of the *unheated* immune serum were made, and equal parts of these dilutions and of a 5 per cent. suspension of the washed red blood cells of the ox were mixed in a series of capillary pipettes, so that the ultimate proportion of serum in the mixtures varied from 1 in 2 to 1 in 100. These mixtures were placed at 37° C. for two hours. A parallel series was made with serum which had been heated to 55° C. for fifteen minutes. This was placed in the same conditions as the former series.

Dilutions of Serum in Mixtures.	Result.
1— 2	Complete haemolysis.
1— 6	Complete haemolysis.
1— 10	Marked haemolysis.
1— 20	Definite haemolysis.
1— 30	Trace of haemolysis.
1— 50	Trace of haemolysis.
1— 60	Haemolysis absent.
1— 70	Haemolysis absent.
1—100	Haemolysis absent.

This experiment shows that in the case of the *unheated* serum no haemolysis took place in dilutions above 1 in 50, owing to dilution of the native complement and to the fact that no fresh complement was added. With the *heated* serum there was no haemolysis, even with equal parts of serum and of the suspension of corpuscles, although in such a dilution the *unheated* serum produced complete haemolysis.

It was therefore decided to begin phagocytic tests with dilutions about 1 in 50 in the case of the unheated serum.

Experiment to show that heating the Serum to 55° C. to 60° C. causes a Diminution of Phagocytosis.

Unheated immune serum was diluted with normal saline solution in the proportions of 1 in 15, 1 in 20, 1 in 30. Of each of these dilutions one part was mixed in a capillary pipette with one part of a 5 per cent. suspension of washed ox corpuscles and one part of washed human leucocytes, the final dilution being approximately 1 in 45, 1 in 60, 1 in 90. The tubes were then placed for fifteen minutes at 37° C., films being then made and stained with Leishman's stain.

At the same time series were made with portions of the serum which had been heated to 55° C. and 59° C. respectively. The final dilutions in these were 1 in 3, 1 in 6, 1 in 12, 1 in 24, 1 in 45, 1 in 60. A control consisted of one part of 0·85 saline, one part of the suspension of washed ox corpuscles and one part of washed human leucocytes.

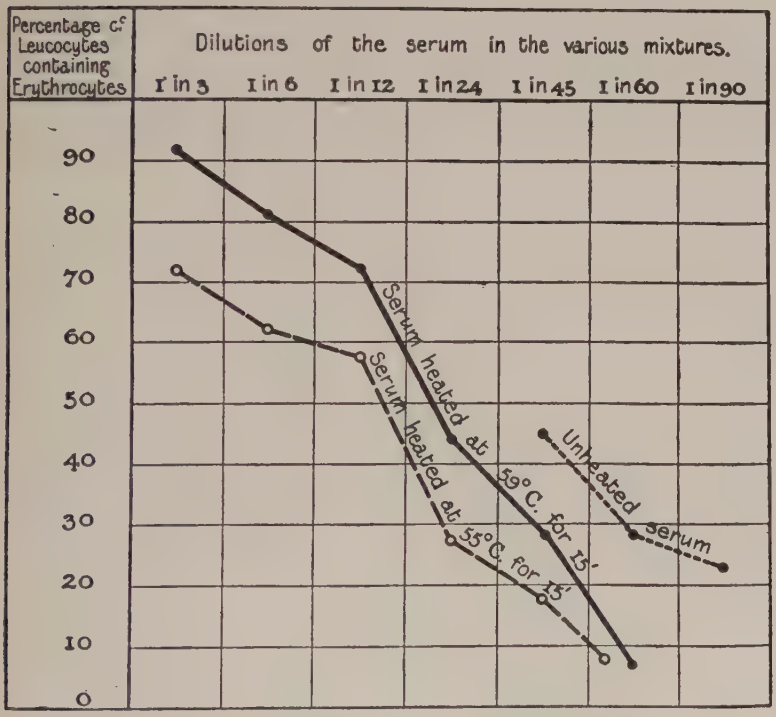
It was found in the first few dilutions that so many red blood cells were taken up by the polymorphonuclear leucocytes, that the individual erythrocytes could not be distinguished, and therefore the *percentage* of polymorphonuclear leucocytes containing red blood cells was taken as a criterion of the phagocytic action, 100 leucocytes being counted in each case. Some of the large mononuclear leucocytes contained occasionally one or two red cells, but these were so few as to be insignificant.

It was found that at corresponding dilutions the *unheated* serum produced a considerably greater amount of phagocytosis than did the *heated*, and further that it bore greater dilution before giving up this property.

Using the above-mentioned method of enumeration, the following results were obtained in the experiment.

Dilution.	Unheated Serum.	Heated at 55° C.	Heated at 59° C.
	Per cent.	Per cent.	Per cent.
1 in 3 . .	—	71	91
1 in 6 . .	—	61	81
1 in 12 . .	—	57	72
1 in 24 . .	—	27	43
1 in 45 . .	45	18	28
1 in 60 . .	28	8	7
1 in 90 . .	23	—	—

Saline control=7 per cent. (The percentages refer to the number of polymorphonuclear leucocytes containing red blood cells.)



These results, which were confirmed by those of subsequent experiments, show that in an immune haemolytic serum the substance inducing phagocytosis of the appropriate red blood cells is partially destroyed by heating the serum at 55° C. to 60° C. At the time of the experiment 0·002 c.c. of the serum when fully complemented produced complete haemolysis of 2 c.c. of a 5 per cent. suspension of washed ox corpuscles after two hours at 37° C. and twelve hours at room temperature.

Behaviour of the Haemolytic Amboceptor towards Heat.

The next point for investigation was the influence of temperatures similar to those employed in the phagocytic tests, on the haemolytic amboceptor.

Experiment.

Of the immune rabbit's serum two portions were taken, one being left unheated, the other being heated at 55° C. for fifteen minutes. Into two series of test tubes quantities of the serum ranging from 0·01 to 0·0001 c.c. were measured. One series then consisted of heated, the other of unheated serum. All the tubes were equalized in bulk by the addition of 0·85-per-cent. saline solution. To each tube 2 c.c. of a 5 per cent. suspension of washed ox corpuscles were added, with 0·2 c.c. of fresh normal guinea-pig's serum. One control consisted of 2 c.c. of the suspension of red cells with 0·2 c.c. of guinea-pig serum, and another of 2 c.c. of the suspension alone. The tubes were placed at 37° C. for two hours, and were subsequently allowed to remain twenty-four hours at 0° C. The corresponding dilutions in the heated and unheated series showed the same degree of haemolysis.

Result.

Unheated Serum.—Total haemolysis with all quantities down to 0·005 c.c. Partial haemolysis with all quantities down to 0·0001 c.c.

Heated Serum.—Total haemolysis with all quantities down to 0·005 c.c. Partial haemolysis with all quantities down to 0·0001 c.c.

In order to demonstrate conclusively whether there was any appreciable difference between the two series, von Fleischl's haemometer was employed, the last three corresponding tubes in each series being compared with each other and with the guinea-pig serum control. The tubes were thoroughly shaken up and centrifugalized. The supernatant fluid was then pipetted off, and, if necessary, diluted sufficiently to give a reading between 20 and 60 on the scale before being placed in the chamber of the instrument. The reading found was then multiplied by the amount of the dilution.

The following are the results :—

	Colour Index.
Guinea-pig serum control . . .	64
Unheated serum—	
0·001 c.c.	440
0·0005 ,, ...	155
0·0001 ,, ...	120
Serum heated at 55° C. for 15 mins.—	
0·001 c.c	450
0·0005 ,, ...	220
0·0001 ,, ...	115

It is evident from these numbers that there is practically no difference between the colour indices of the two series ; which permits the conclusion to be drawn that the haemolytic amboceptor is *not* quantitatively diminished when the serum is heated at 55° C. for fifteen minutes.

Repeated experiments gave exactly similar results, and it was found to be a matter of indifference whether the serum was heated *en masse* or in dilution, even in separate small quantities.

This fact is illustrated by the following experiment, which was performed to illustrate at the same time another point, namely, that there may be a large amount of haemolytic amboceptor present in a *diluted* serum without the co-existence of the body inducing phagocytosis.

Experiment.

Four series of tests, A, B, C, D, each consisting of four tubes, were performed. Into successive tubes of each series 0·01, 0·005, 0·003, 0·002 c.c. of the immune serum was placed. The amounts were equalized by 0·85 saline solution. Series A and C were unheated. Series B and D were heated at 55° C. for fifteen minutes. To each tube was then added 2 c.c. of a 5 per cent. suspension of washed ox corpuscles, and to each tube of series A and B 0·2 c.c. of fresh guinea-pig serum (i.e., one unheated, and one heated series was complemented). All the tubes were placed at 37° C. for two hours. It was then found that series A and B showed exactly corresponding degrees of haemolysis.

Cubic Centimetres.	A. Unheated and Complemented.	B. Heated and Complemented.
0·001	Almost complete	Almost complete
0·005	Marked	Marked
0·003	Slight	Slight
0·002	Slight	Slight

This first part of the experiment corroborates the result of the experiment mentioned immediately above.

In series C and D (the proportions of the serum in the mixtures corresponding to 1 in 220, 1 in 450, 1 in 730 and 1 in 1,100 approximately), one series being heated and the other unheated, and both being uncomplemented, it was found that there was no sign of haemolysis when these were compared with the controls, which were the same as in the previous experiment. The tubes of these two series were thoroughly shaken and centrifugalized. The supernatant fluid was pipetted off and the deposits washed thrice with 0·85 saline solution. To each deposit an equal quantity of normal saline was added. They were then well shaken and drawn up and down rapidly in capillary pipettes in order to produce a uniform suspension. Equal parts of each deposit and washed human leucocytes were mixed in capillary pipettes and placed fifteen minutes at 37° C., films being then made and stained in the usual manner.

Result.—In no case was any phagocytosis observed, although in dilutions of 1 in 10 similarly treated, 93 per cent. of the polymorphonuclear leucocytes contained erythrocytes, which shows that such deposits can be phagocytosed, provided that the substance which induces phagocytosis is present in sufficient amount. Although in series C and D no phagocytosis

occurred, yet in dilutions of 1 in 220 haemolysis was almost complete in the complemented series, which shows that there must have been a large amount of haemolytic amboceptor present, and that notwithstanding this large amount of amboceptor and an exposure during two hours of the red blood cells to it, no phagocytosis was observed.

This second part of the experiment then shows that in an immune *diluted* haemolytic serum a considerable amount of haemolytic amboceptor may be present without rendering the red cells capable of being phagocytosed.

This is supported by observations on non-immune haemolytic sera. In the case of a guinea-pig's serum which was found in dilution of 1 in 6 to produce slight haemolysis of 2 c.c. of a 5 per cent, suspension of the washed blood corpuscles of a rabbit, it was observed that in phagocytic tests performed with the unheated serum, the human leucocytes used as the phagocytic agents contained in many cases blood shadows. These were found in 40 to 50 per cent. of the leucocytes in tests performed in the manner described in the former part of this paper. When, however, heated serum is employed no blood shadows are to be seen in the leucocytes nor is there any sign of phagocytosis.

In this case of the serum of an eel it was found that 0·01 c.c. produced after two hours at 37° C. marked haemolysis of 2 c.c. of a 10 per cent. suspension of washed guinea-pig red cells. When heated at 55° C., however, such a serum failed to induce phagocytosis of the red cells after 15 minutes at 37° C., equal parts of the serum, of the suspension of red cells and of washed human leucocytes being employed.

All these facts, then, tend to show that the haemolytic amboceptor may be present in a very considerable amount in a serum without giving to the latter the power of inducing phagocytosis of the appropriate red blood cells.

Conclusions.

The conclusion naturally come to is that the phagocytosis of red blood cells does not depend on the presence of the haemolytic amboceptor, since :—

1. The substance which induces phagocytosis is partially destroyed by heat, while the haemolytic amboceptor is entirely thermostable.

2. The haemolytic amboceptor may be present in considerable amount in a haemolytic serum without inducing phagocytosis, notwithstanding prolonged contact of the amboceptor with the red blood cells. This is contrary to the opinion of Savtchenko.[1]

Dean [2] has suggested that phagocytosis may be caused by a complement acting through an amboceptor, and that the partial destruction of the property in the serum inducing phagocytosis by heat may be due to the destruction of the complement, while the amboceptor, even in the absence of the complement, may still be capable of inducing phagocytosis.

[1] Loc. cit., p. 118. [2] Loc. cit.

This theory, while it is difficult to disprove directly owing to the complement being destroyed at the same temperature as the thermolabile part of the substance inducing phagocytosis, seems to be an improbable one, for the following reasons :—

(1) That it is not an action analogous to that of other amboceptors, e.g., that concerned in haemolysis. If one destroy the complement of a haemolytic serum by heat, no haemolysis takes place, notwithstanding the presence of the amboceptor in large amount.

(2) As has been shown above, the haemolytic amboceptor may be present in large amount in a diluted serum, without that serum having the power of inducing phagocytosis, even when Dean's method of testing is employed.

(3) In the dilution experiments recorded above it was shown that one may dilute the complement to such an extent as to abolish haemolysis, and yet such a serum has a greater "opsonic" power in these dilutions than has the same serum when heated and employed in corresponding dilutions.

If the amboceptor act in the way Dean suggests, it must be supposed to possess, in addition to its complementophilic group, another group which possesses the special function of inducing phagocytosis, i.e., the amboceptor would combine the functions of the second and third receptor types of Ehrlich.

The experiments given in this paper, along with those of Barratt,[1] tend to show that, contrary to the opinion of Dean, Savtchenko was not correct in his conclusion that the specific fixateur, i.e., the haemolytic amboceptor, induced the phagocytosis of red blood cells, but that, on the other hand, it is much more probable that this phenomenon is caused by some special body belonging to the class of opsonins.

I have to thank Dr. F. W. Twort for performing the experiments on animals. I have also to express my thanks to Mr. J. A. Craw for suggestions, and to Dr. W. Bulloch, of the London Hospital, for his kind advice and assistance during the course of my work.

REFERENCES.

1. Löhlein, "Sur la phagocytose *in vitro* de microbes pathogènes," *Annales de l'Inst. Pasteur*, 1905, vol. xix, p. 647.
2. Leishman, "Some experiments with 'stimulins,'" *Trans. of Pathological Soc.*, 1905, vol. lxvi, p. 344.
3. Besredka, "Le sérum antistreptococcique et son mode d'action," *Annales de l'Inst. Pasteur*, 1904, vol. xviii, p. 363.
4. Wright and Douglas, "An experimental investigation of the rôle of the blood fluids in connexion with phagocytosis," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1903, vol. lxxii (pp. 75 *et seq. supra*).
5. Wright and Douglas, "Further observations on the rôle of the blood fluids in connexion with phagocytosis," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1904, vol. lxxiii (pp. 88 *et seq. supra*).
6. Bulloch and Atkin, "Experiments on the nature of the opsonic action of the blood serum," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1905, vol. lxxiv, p. 379 (pp. 137 *et seq. supra*).
7. Hektoen and Ruediger, "Studies in phagocytosis," *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 1905, vol. ii, p. 128.

[1] Loc. cit.

8. Dean, "An experimental inquiry into the nature of the substance in serum which influences phagocytosis," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1905, vol. lxxvi, Series B, p. 506.
9. Wright and Reid, "On spontaneous phagocytosis," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1905 (pp. 167 *et seq. supra*).
10. Savtchenko, "Du rôle des immunisines (fixateurs)," *Annales de l'Inst. Pasteur*, 1902, vol. xvi, p. 106.
11. Barratt, "The phagocytosis of red blood corpuscles," *Roy. Soc. Proc.*, 1905, vol. lxxvi, Series B, p. 524.
12. Metchnikoff, in *Kolle-Wassermann. Handbuch der pathogenen Mikro-Organismen*, 1904, vol. iv, p. 332.
13. Besredka, *Bulletin de l'Inst. Pasteur*, 1905, vol. iii, p. 1037.

Part II

ON THERAPEUTIC IMMUNISATION

Notes on the Treatment of Furunculosis, Sycosis, and Acne by the Inoculation of a Staphylococcus Vaccine;

And generally on the Treatment of Localized Bacterial Invasions by Therapeutic Inoculation of the corresponding Bacterial Vaccines.[1]

By A. E. Wright.

From the Pathological Laboratory of the Army Medical School, Netley.

Introductory—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 1: Data of the Bacteriological Examination of the Contents of the Boils—Data of the Blood Examinations instituted before Inoculation—Estimation of the Inhibitory Power exerted by the Serum on the Growth of the Staphylococcus—Investigation of the Agglutinating Power exerted by the Serum upon the Staphylococcus—Preparation of the Staphylococcus Vaccine which was employed in the Treatment of the Patient—Details of the Inoculations carried out upon the Patient, and Clinical Effects—Data of Blood Examinations instituted in the Period supervening upon Inoculation—Clinical History of the Patient subsequently to Inoculation—Data of Blood Examinations instituted more than a year after the Date of the Original Inoculation—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 2: Data of the Blood Examinations undertaken before Inoculation—Particulars with regard to the Subsequent Inoculations and resulting Clinical Symptoms—Data of Blood Examinations undertaken a Week after the Third Inoculation—Particulars with regard to the Patient's Condition after Inoculation, and Estimations of the Phagocytic Power of the Blood—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 3: Data of Blood Examinations instituted before Inoculation—Particulars of the Inoculations which were carried out, and Clinical Symptoms resulting from these—Particulars with regard to the Effects produced upon the Blood and the localized Staphylococcus Invasion—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 4: Particulars of the Inoculations undertaken, of the resulting Symptoms and Blood Changes, and of the Effect produced on the localized Staphylococcus Invasion—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 5: Data of the Microscopical and Bacteriological Examinations which were instituted—Details of the Inoculations undertaken and of the Effects of these upon the Blood and the localized Staphylococcus Invasion—Clinical and Bacteriological Data relating to Case 6: Considerations in Connexion with the possible Prophylactic and Therapeutic Applications of Anti-Staphylococcus Vaccine—Concluding Remarks.

[1] Reprinted from the *Lancet*, March 29, 1902.

Introductory

The circumstance that inoculation against pyogenic bacteria has not up to the present, been resorted to would seem to be due to the fact that our range of thought is in this, as in every other direction, limited by pre-suppositions. The following are among the pre-suppositions which are current in connexion with inoculation.

(1) Since methods of inoculation find their special sphere of application in connexion with septicaemic diseases there would be little prospect of a useful application of such methods in connexion with any local invasion of the tissues by pyogenic bacteria.

(2) Since pyogenic micro-organisms can always be held off from operation wounds by a rigid observance of aseptic precautions, there would be no prospect of a useful application of inoculations such as we have here in view in connexion with operative procedures.

(3) Since bacterial invasions of the skin and mucous membranes can be dealt with by the application of chemical antiseptics a resort to inoculations directed against the invading bacteria would here also be out of place.

(4) Inoculations with vaccines can be of avail only when they forestall infection.

(5) Where a vaccine containing toxic bacterial products is introduced into the organism of a patient who is already infected this must inevitably be followed by an aggravation of that patient's condition.

Let us take the above assumptions in order and see how far each of them is justified.

The first assumption can be disposed of in a few words. It is, in point of fact, merely the expression of the belief of a period when inoculation—using the term in its widest sense—had as yet been applied only in connexion with the prophylaxis of small-pox. Since the period in question methods of inoculation have, as reflection will show, been successfully applied in connexion with almost every form of bacterial invasion.

In connexion with the second assumption it will suffice to remark that, even assuming that inoculations against pyogenic bacteria would fail to find any useful application in connexion with operative procedures, such inoculations might conceivably render service in connexion with bacterial invasions of the skin and mucous membranes.

The next assumption—to wit the assumption that bacterial invasions of the skin and mucous membranes can be dealt with by the application of chemical antiseptics—altogether ignores the defects and limitations of this method of treatment. These defects and limitations—already fully realized in connexion with the treatment of operation wounds—are (*a*) the injury to the tissues inflicted by the antiseptic; (*b*) the difficulty of destroying bacteria which have penetrated below the surface; (*c*) the difficulty of applying the antiseptic over the whole affected area in such a manner as

to make an end once for all of the invading bacteria; and (*d*) the difficulty of preventing the re-invasion of the disinfected from the neighbouring still infected areas.

Let us note that, assuming that it were found possible to inoculate in such a manner as to call into action the defensive powers of the organism, all these difficulties would have been effectually overcome.

We next pass on to consider how far we can uphold the assumption that inoculations with bacterial vaccines must be unavailing unless where they forestall infection, and the further assumption that inoculations of sterilized bacterial cultures—i.e., inoculations which involve the introduction of toxic bacterial substances into the organism—are necessarily associated with risk when undertaken upon patients who are already the subjects of the corresponding bacterial infections.

Consideration shows that these assumptions express the results of experience derived from an observation of the effect of inoculations undertaken in the case of animals and men when already affected with septicaemic diseases. Confining ourselves to the case of man and to the case of inoculations undertaken with sterilized bacterial cultures, there would, indeed, seem grounds for believing that an aggravation of the patient's condition has in some instances followed in the case where the patient has been inoculated with anti-typhoid [1] and anti-plague [2] vaccine respectively while in the incubation stage of these diseases.

But we cannot generalize from such instances.

For I have in a previous communication,[3] dealing with the changes effected in the blood by anti-typhoid inoculation, pointed out that there is an all-important difference between the effects produced respectively by large and small doses of vaccine. It was shown in the paper just referred to (*a*) that where the dose of bacterial vaccine employed was sufficient to produce marked constitutional symptoms, inoculation was followed, first, by a negative phase of diminished bactericidal power —corresponding, it may be presumed, to a phase of diminished resistance —and, then, after an interval of a few days, by a positive phase of increased bactericidal power—corresponding, it may be presumed, to a phase of increased resistance; (*b*) that where the dose of vaccine was such as to produce only very slight constitutional disturbance the negative phase was suppressed, the positive phase being already distinctly marked within twenty-four hours after inoculation; and (*c*) that where the dose of vaccine was such as to produce very considerable constitutional disturbance the negative phase was exaggerated and prolonged, while the positive phase was considerably, possibly indefinitely, postponed.

Since an essentially similar succession of a negative and a positive

[1] Wright, *The Lancet*, September 14, 1901, p. 715, and *Brit. Med. Journal*, Oct. 26, 1901.

[2] Report of the Indian Plague Commission, chapter iv, p. 195.

[3] *The Lancet*, September 14, 1901, p. 715.

phase manifests itself after the inoculation of the toxins of both tetanus and diphtheria, and, as we shall see below, also in connexion with the inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine, and since the extent and duration of the phase of diminished resistance are in each case a simple function of the dose administered, it would seem clear that the doctrine of the necessary inefficacy and invariable risk of inoculations undertaken upon patients already infected must be abandoned.

Manifestly, inoculation will be associated with risk only where the dose of vaccine employed is such as seriously to diminish the patient's power.

It may be noted here that Mr. Haffkine has from the outset ascribed to his anti-plague vaccine a power of aborting and diminishing the severity of an attack of plague in the case of any patient who may have been inoculated in the incubation stage of the disease. Mr. Haffkine is entitled to the fullest recognition of the fact that in certain of the cases recently recorded by Miss Corthorn,[1] and, it may be presumed, in other cases included in the statistical table published by Major W. B. Bannerman, I.M.S.,[2] the event would appear to have been quite in accordance with Mr. Haffkine's anticipations.

Leaving out of consideration all incidental issues, such as that of the expediency of inoculating in the incubation stage of any septicaemic disease unless with duly reduced doses of a standardized vaccine, let us here concentrate our attention upon the fact that it would seem possible —given the employment of the appropriate dose of a vaccine and given also certain other conditions presently to be considered—to obtain benefit from bacterial inoculations even in the case where the patient is already the subject of bacterial infection.

If it holds true that inoculations with bacterial vaccines may upon occasion have a therapeutic value in the incipient stages of bacterial invasions, which may afterwards assume a septicaemic form, it must *a fortiori* hold true that inoculations conducted with appropriate doses of bacterial vaccines may render useful services in the case of bacterial invasions which manifest themselves from first to last only in the form of localized inflammatory processes.

For—and this is clearly brought out by a comparative study of bacterial disease in animals, as well as by the study of any series of cases of one and the same bacterial infection in man—the localization and restriction of a bacterial invasion may always be taken as an indication of a relatively high grade of resistance on the part of the infected organism.

If we consider the matter rightly, we shall see that the process of bacterial inoculation as applied to a patient who is the subject of a bacterial invasion is, in reality, a process of temporarily taking away from a patient's power of resistance with a view to his receiving back that power with usury.

It is, in short, a process of trading upon the patient's balance of

[1] *British Medical Journal*, January 25, 1902. [2] Ibid., September, 14, 1901.

resistance. When exploiting the method it will, then, be wise to inform ourselves beforehand, concerning the resisting power of the patient. It will be wise, also, before adventuring, to learn what we can about the demands which will be made upon the patient's resisting power by the inoculation of that definite quantum of the bacterial vaccine which we propose to employ.

Having now, so far as I can, made clear the situation, I pass on to set forth the results of some preliminary work recently undertaken in connexion with the therapeutic application of anti-staphylococcus inoculation in the treatment of localized staphylococcus invasions. The vaccines employed consisted in each case of staphylococcus cultures which had been sterilized by heating. The cases, six in number, which are reported below, include all that I have treated by this method.

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE I.

The patient, a man 40 years of age, consulted me in September, 1900, with a view to seeing whether anything could be done for him. He had suffered from furunculosis, complicated by sycosis and eczema of the face, since 1893. In that year, while engaged in clearing out a tracheotomy tube which had been removed from a patient who had been operated upon for acute laryngitis, he accidentally inoculated himself in the forefinger with some of the septic material. In spite of three deep incisions made successively into the finger and the palm of the hand, infection spread upwards to the axilla (giving origin there to a bubo) and thence onwards into the blood-stream, setting up high fever and septic peritonitis. Since that time the patient, who had not previously suffered in this way, had been afflicted with the disorders referred to above. During the seven years which had elapsed since the onset the patient declared that he had never been free from boils for more than three months consecutively. Change of climate, every form of medicinal treatment, and local applications of the most varied description had all failed to afford any permanent relief. The patient was now suffering from an exacerbation of his symptoms. Recently he had hardly ever been quite free from styes on the eye, and boils. These last apparently occurred in two varieties—small superficial boils taking their origin in the skin on the neck and face, and larger deep-seated boils occurring in the subcutaneous tissue in any and every region of the body. The condition of sycosis was associated with weeping eczema, and was best marked on the region of the chin. The infiltration of the deeper layers of the skin was even there relatively inconsiderable. The hair follicles of the eyelashes and eyebrows were affected by an inflammatory process similar to that which was affecting the hair follicles of the beard.

Data of the bacteriological examination of the contents of the boils.—A cultivation, made on September 16, 1900, from a small superficial boil on the face yielded a pure cultivation of the staphylococcus albus.

A cultivation made on September 19 from a larger and more deep-seated boil on the forehead yielded a pure cultivation of the staphylococcus aureus. A cultivation made on the 24th from a large boil on the forearm yielded a pure cultivation of the staphylococcus aureus.

Data of the blood examinations instituted before inoculation.—A count of the different varieties of white corpuscles showed these to be present in the blood in normal proportions. A measurement [1] of the alkalinity of the serum showed a normal degree of alkalinity : $\frac{N}{35}$.

Estimation of the inhibitory power exerted by the serum on the growth of the staphylococcus.—Comparative counts [2] were made of the number of staphylococcus colonies which developed in a series of measured volumes of gelatine culture mixed (*a*) with sterile broth, (*b*) with serum derived from normal men, and (*c*) with serum derived from the patient. In a somewhat extensive series of observations—carried out on three samples of the patient's blood and upon 13 control samples of normal blood drawn off from six normal persons—only inconstant and very inconsiderable differences were found between the number of colonies developing in the tubes filled in with three different admixtures particularized above. We are thus entitled to conclude that neither the serum of the patient nor any of the control sera exerted any inhibitory effect upon the growth of the staphylococcus.

Investigation of the agglutinating power exerted by the serum upon the staphylococcus.—This was undertaken by mixing together in capillary tubes equal volumes of a suspension of an agar culture of staphylococcus and serum in various dilutions. The observations were undertaken on three different samples of the patient's blood. On one occasion only was a sedimentation obtained, and this was obtained only in the two-fold dilution of the serum. The sera of four normal men were at the same time examined by the same method. Two of these showed an agglutination reaction in all dilutions up to a 16-fold dilution. The two others showed the reaction only in the two, four, and eight-fold dilutions.

Preparation of the staphylococcus vaccine which was employed in the treatment of the patient.—Nutrient broth was inoculated with a staphylococcus aureus which had been subcultured from one of the original cultures obtained from the patient. After cultivation for three weeks at a temperature of 37° C. the culture was sterilized by exposure for 20 minutes to a temperature of 65° C. An addition of 0·5 per cent. lysol was made to the sterilized culture. The toxicity of the vaccine was then tested on guinea-pigs. It was found that when the quantum of the vaccine inoculated corresponded to 2 per cent, of their body-weight a moderate amount of oedema and a certain amount of constitutional disturbance were produced.

[1] The technique employed was that described by me in *The Lancet* of September 18, 1897, p. 719.

[2] The technique employed was that described by me in *The Lancet* of December 1, 1900, p. 1556.

Details of the inoculations carried out upon the patient, and resulting clinical symptoms.—On October 25, 1900, the patient was inoculated subcutaneously in the flank with one cubic centimetre of the above vaccine. Twelve hours afterwards there was considerable headache, the patient's temperature stood at 100·6° F., and considerable redness and tenderness had developed at the site of inoculation. The symptoms had entirely passed off after the expiration of 36 hours. On November 1 1·5 cubic centimetres of the same vaccine were inoculated. The inoculation was followed by similiar but somewhat less severe local and constitutional symptoms. On the 13th 1·5 cubic centimetres of the same vaccine were inoculated. Both the local reaction and the general reaction were very slight, the temperature not rising above 99·4° F.

Data of Blood Examinations instituted in the Period supervening upon Inoculation.—*Investigation of the agglutinating power exerted by the serum upon the staphylococcus.*—A determination of the agglutinating power instituted subsequently to the second inoculation showed that the serum now agglutinated the staphylococcus in all dilutions up to a 16–fold dilution.

Investigation of the growth-inhibiting power exerted upon the staphylococcus.—An estimation carried out in the interval between the first and second inoculations showed that the serum had not acquired any power of inhibiting the growth of the staphylococcus.

The results of two successive estimations of the growth-inhibiting power instituted soon after the dates of the third inoculation are subjoined in tabular form (Table I).

TABLE I.—*Estimation of the Growth-inhibiting Power exerted upon the Staphylococcus Aureus by the Blood of Patient* 1 *soon after his Third Inoculation.*

Date on which the Blood was examined.	Number of colonies of Staphylococcus which developed in the Capillary Tubes filled in each case with 5 cmm. of a Gelatin Culture of Staphylococcus (previously diluted 100,000-fold and 1,000,000-fold respectively with nutrient gelatin) and				Number of Colonies of Staphylococcus which developed in Control Tubes filled in each case with 5 cmm. of same Dilution of gelatin culture and 5 cmm. of sterile broth.		
	5 cmm. of Patient's Serum.	5 cmm. of a 2-fold Dilution of Patient's Serum.	5 cmm. of a 4-fold Dilution of Patient's Serum.	5 cmm. of an 8-fold dilution of patient's serum.	Tube 1.	Tube 2.	Tube 3.
Nov. 14, 1900 .	0	2	5	10	57	22	50
„ 19, „ .	8	7	7	10	29	36	23
Average . .	4	4·5	6	10	36·1		

The results of the estimations set forth below would seem to indicate that the blood of a patient in the period immediately subsequent to inoculation constituted a somewhat unfavourable medium for the development

of the staphylococcus. The question as to whether any actual bactericidal action was exerted was unfortunately not determined.

Clinical history of the patient subsequently to inoculation.—From the date of the first inoculation in October, 1900, the patient's condition began to improve. With the exception of two small superficial boils which developed between the dates of the second and third inoculations and two further similar small boils which developed in the earlier part of 1901, the patient has been absolutely free from furunculosis. The sycosis, eczema, and the affection of the eyelids also began to mend from the date of the first inoculation ; the two former had practically disappeared within a month from the beginning of the treatment. The ophthalmia tarsi lasted a little longer. His face is now, and has for a period of over 12 months been, absolutely clean and free from eruption.

Data of blood examinations instituted more than a year after the date of the original inoculation.—Recently the patient's blood has been examined by the method devised by my colleague, Major W. B. Leishman,[1] for measuring the phagocytic power of the blood *in vitro*. The results of these estimations are subjoined in tabular form (Table II).

TABLE II.—*Results of the Estimations of the Phagocytic Power of the Blood of Patient* 1 *instituted more than* 12 *months after the Date of Inoculation.*

Date on which the Blood was tested.	Source and Variety of Staphylococcus employed.	Average Number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the *Normal blood.*	Average number of staphylococci ingested by each polynuclear white blood corpuscle of the *Patient's* blood.	Phagocytic Index, i.e., the Proportion in which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscles of the *Control* blood stood to the Number ingested by Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscles of the *Patient's blood.*
1901.				
December 2 .	Staphylococcus aureus subcultured from Patient 1	9·3	21·7	1 : 2·3
„ 15 .	Ditto	6·5	9·5	1 : 1·45
„ „ .	Staphylococcus albus subcultured from Patient 3	12·2	12·9	1 : 1·07
1902.				
January 23 .	Ditto	32·8	35·7	1 : 1·07

The control blood employed in the three first-recorded estimations was derived from W. B. L. : in the last estimation it was derived from A. E. W.

It will be manifest that the capacity of the patient's white blood corpuscles for ingesting staphylococci—and more particularly for ingesting

[1] *British Medical Journal*, January 11, 1902.

the variety of staphylococcus with which he had been inoculated—was in each case found to be greater than that of the white blood corpuscles of the normal blood used as a control. These observations—more especially when taken in association with the observations made in connexion with the cases recorded below—lend probability to the assumption that the patient's continued freedom from staphylococcus invasion is the result of the inoculations undertaken.

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE 2.

The patient, an elderly maiden lady, presented herself for treatment on September 28, 1901. She stated that she had undergone a somewhat serious operation some 21 months previously. Since the date of that operation she had suffered from a succession of very painful deep-seated boils (a reference to her diary showed that the exact number of these had been 25). In addition she had constantly suffered from superficial boils and pimples which had made sitting uncomfortable. She complained also of a pustular discharge occurring intermittently from her nose and ears. The patient was for the moment free from deep-seated boils. A sample of blood was withdrawn for examination and the patient was inoculated with 0·75 cubic centimetre of staphylococcus vaccine.[1]

Data of the Blood Examinations undertaken before Inoculation.—*Estimation of the inhibitory power exerted by the serum on the growth of staphylococcus.*—For the purposes of this estimation a 24-hour old broth cultivation of the staphylococcus aureus was diluted [2] with liquefied nutrient gelatin until a dilution of 1 in 1,000,000 had been arrived at. To a five-cubic-millimetre volume of this dilution was then added in each case an equal volume of (*a*) the patient's serum, (*b*) the patient's serum after this had been heated for ten minutes to 60° C., (*c*) serum from a normal person, and (*d*) sterile nutrient broth. After these admixtures had been made the diluted culture was in each case drawn up into a capillary tube. Three such tubes were being filled in with each variety of admixture. Table III shows the numbers of colonies [3] which developed.

Here manifestly the same results are obtained as in the case of the estimations undertaken before inoculation in connexion with Patient 1 (*vide supra*). In other words, no indication was obtained of anything in the nature of an inhibitory effect being exerted upon the staphylococcus by either the control blood or the patient's blood. We shall see in connexion with the next cases that the difference between the blood of

[1] This vaccine was a suspension in normal salt solution of a 24-hour old culture of the staphylococcus aureus subcultured from Patient 1. The suspension was sterilized at 65° C. The quantum injected corresponded to the quantum of culture which was obtained from 0·75 square centimetre of agar surface.

[2] The dilutions were made with the diluting pipette figured by me in *The Lancet* of June 1, 1901, p. 1532.

[3] The colonies were counted under the microscope by the technique described in *The Lancet* of December 1, 1900, p. 1556.

patients suffering from staphylococcus invasions and the blood of normal persons is to be sought elsewhere.

TABLE III.—*Showing the Number of Staphylococcus Colonies which Developed in Capillary Tubes filled in with Five Cubic Millimetres of the Diluted Gelatin Culture of Staphylococcus mixed with five Cubic Millimetres of Serum or Broth, as Particularized in Column* 1 *below.*

Admixtures which were made to the 1,000,000-fold dilution of Staphylococcus Culture.	Number of Staphylococcus Colonies which developed in each capillary tube.			
	Tube 1.	Tube 2.	Tube 3.	Average of three tubes.
Patient's serum	10	15	10	11·6
Patient's serum previously heated to 60° C. for 10 minutes . . .	9	6	20	11·6
Normal serum	11	13	11	11·6
Sterile broth	18	9	16	14·3

Particulars with regard to the subsequent inoculations and resulting clinical symptoms.—The first inoculation was followed by very little in the way of either local or constitutional symptoms. Two further inoculations, in each case with one cubic centimetre of the same vaccine, were undertaken within the next three weeks. As in the case of the first inoculation the symptoms were very slight.

Data of Blood Examinations undertaken a Week after the Third Inoculation. *Estimation of the agglutination power exerted by the blood upon the staphylococcus.*—The patient's blood now gives a complete sedimentation in an eight-fold dilution. The results obtained with the control blood are, however, indefinite.

Estimation of the bactericidal power.—A 1,000,000-fold dilution of a 24-hour old broth culture of the staphylococcus having been made, six measured volumes of this were transferred to the surface of agar. In the first of the six agar tubes (inoculated with 25 cubic millimetres of the diluted culture) nine colonies of staphylococcus made their appearance. In the second and third tubes (inoculated in each case with 15 cubic millimetres) the number of colonies which developed were in each case six. In the fourth tube (inoculated with 10 cubic millimetres) two colonies made their appearance. The fifth and sixth tubes (inoculated in each case with five cubic millimetres) remained sterile. This gives an average of 3·07 colonies to each 10 cubic millimetres of the 1 in 1,000,000 dilution employed. Figuring this out we arrive at 307,000,000 as the number of staphylococci contained in a cubic centimetre of the undiluted culture.

The procedures connected with the enumeration of the culture having been completed, graduated dilutions of the original staphylococcus culture were made and were mixed in capillary tubes with the patient's serum and a normal serum respectively. In each case about five cubic millimetres of serum and diluted culture were employed. After an interval of 24

hours, during which the tubes were digested at 37° C., the capillary tubes were filled in [1] with sterile broth with a view of determining whether any bactericidal effect had been exerted. The results are subjoined (Table IV).

It will be manifest from these results set forth above that neither the normal serum nor the patient's serum exerted any bactericidal action upon the growth of the staphylococcus. Comparison with the result of the enumeration shows that five cubic millimetres of either serum failed to kill 1·5 staphylococci.

TABLE IV.—*Showing the Absence of a Bactericidal Power in the Patient's Blood after these Inoculations.*

Dilutions of the Staphylococcus Culture which were digested with the Serum.	Results obtained on incubating the Tubes after filling in with Sterile Broth.	
	Tubes containing the Patient's Serum.	Tubes containing Normal Serum.
100-fold dilution .	Growth of Staphylococcus	Growth of Staphylococcus
1,000-fold " .	" "	" "
10,000-fold " .	" "	" "
100,000-fold " .	" "	" "
1,000,000-fold " .	" "	" "
10,000,000-fold " .	Tube remains sterile	Tube accidentally contaminated

Particulars with regard to the patient's condition after inoculation and estimations of the phagocytic power of the blood.—The patient recorded that she felt herself better within 24 hours after the first inoculation. For the first time for months she could sit with ease. There was also a complete cessation of the purulent discharge from the nose and the ear. The general health also is said to have markedly improved and the patient was able to go about and to enjoy life. Two months from the date of the first inoculation the patient presented herself for examination. She had not had any recurrence of the boils, but had been troubled by a few irritable pimples on the hands. A sample of blood having been withdrawn from the finger an estimation of the phagocytic power of the blood was undertaken. The results of the estimation are subjoined (Table V).

In view of the result of this estimation the patient was warned that a recurrence of the boils must probably be anticipated. After a free interval of three and a half months the patient, early in January, 1902, developed a deep-seated boil. This last ran a similar course and was attended by as much pain as the deep-seated boils which had occurred before the date of inoculation. The patient was seen again on January 28, 1902. Her condition was then quite satisfactory, but she still suffered from occasional irritable pimples. An estimation of the phagocy-

[1] The technique that was employed was that described by me in *The Lancet* of June 1, 1901, p. 1532.

tic power of the blood carried out at room temperature gave the following results: average number of staphylococci ingested by a white blood corpuscle of a normal blood,[1] 4·6; average number ingested by a white blood corpuscle of the patient's blood, 3·5. The proportion of staphylococci ingested by normal blood to staphylococci ingested by patient's blood was thus 1 : 0·75.

On March 17 the patient reported that she had no recurrence of the boils and that she was no longer troubled with pimples.

TABLE V.—*Showing the Phagocytic Power of Patient Two Months after Inoculation.*

Variety of Staphylococcus which was employed.	Average Number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the *Control* blood.	Average number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the *Patient's* Blood.	Phagocytic Index—i.e., the Proportion in which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by *each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the Control* blood stands to the Number of Staphylococci ingested by the Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscles of the *Patient's* Blood.
Staphylococcus aureus subcultured from Patient 1	25·7	10·6	1 : 0·41
Staphylococcus albus subcultured from Patient 3	39·3	21·6	1 : 0·55

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE 3.

The patient, a medical man, about 30 years of ago, presented himself for treatment on December 6, 1901. He had suffered continuously for the previous 12 months from small but very irritable pustular pimples and superficial boils on the back of the neck. He was still suffering in this way. A cultivation made from one of his boils yielded a pure cultivation of staphylococcus albus.

Data of Blood Examinations instituted before Inoculation.—A count of the different varieties of white blood corpuscles showed that the relative numbers were as follows: Eosinophil, 1 per cent.; polynuclear, 53 per cent.; basophile, 1 per cent.; and large mononuclear and lymphocytes, 45 per cent. In an estimation of the phagocytic power of the blood the results shown in Table VI were obtained.

It will be seen that the phagocytic power of the patient's white blood corpuscles was between two and three times less than the phagocytic power of the white blood corpuscles of a normal blood.

Particulars of the inoculations which were carried out and the clinical symptoms resulting from these.—On November 11, 1901, the patient was

[1] This blood was derived from A. E. W.

inoculated with one cubic centimetre of the same staphylococcus vaccine which was employed in Case 2 (*supra*). The symptoms at the site of inoculation were comparatively trifling; the patient, however, felt a little out of sorts for two days. On December 1 the patient was inoculated with 0·75 cubic centimetre of a staphylococcus vaccine prepared from agar cultures of the staphylococcus albus subcultured from himself. This quantum of vaccine represented the quantum of culture which developed on 1·5 square centimetres of agar surface. Marked local reaction was produced at the site of inoculation. The constitutional reaction was only very slight.

TABLE VI.—*Estimation of the Phagocytic Power of the Blood of the Patient in Case 3 anterior to Inoculation.*

—	Average Number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the *Normal* Blood.	Average number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear White Blood Corpuscle of the *Patient's* Blood.	Phagocytic Index—i.e., the Proportion in which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by each White Blood Corpuscle of *Normal* Blood stood to the Number of Staphylococci ingested by each White Blood Corpuscle of the *Patient's* Blood.
First estimation .	16·6	6·5	1 : 0·39
Second estimation.	21·0	8·0	1 : 0·38

Particulars with regard to the effects produced upon the blood and upon the localized staphylococcus invasion.—The effects exerted upon the condition of the neck and the concurrent changes in the blood are set forth below with some detail in parallel columns (Table VII). The results of the blood examination are also presented in a synoptical manner in the form of a graphic curve (*Chart* 1).

Three important points are clearly brought out by the observations made upon the patient. (1) The first of these points is that changes in the phagocytic power of the blood in the form of a negative phase of diminished phagocytic power, succeeded by a positive phase of increased phagocytic power follow upon a staphylococcus inoculation. The negative and positive phases here obtained are plainly precisely analogous to the negative and positive phases of bactericidal power which I have shown to supervene upon an anti-typhoid inoculation. They are analogous also to the negative and positive phases which Ehrlich and Madsen have shown to supervene upon the inoculation of tetanus and diphtheria toxin respectively. (2) The second and equally important point which is brought out by the comparison of the clinical record with the results of the blood examination is that the negative and positive phases of phagocytic power stand in the very closest relation to the resisting power of the organism. So close and intimate does that association appear to be that it was, in this and the subsequent cases, always easy from the consideration

TABLE VII.—*Setting forth in connexion with Case 3* (a) *the Phagocytic Power of the Patient's Blood;* (b) *the Details of the Treatment adopted; and* (c) *Particulars with regard to the Patient's Clinical Condition.*

Date.	Variety of Staphylococcus employed in Testing the Blood.	Phagocytic Index—i.e. the proportion in which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by each Polynuclear Leucocyte of the *Normal* Blood stood to the Number of Staphylococci ingested by each of the *Patient's* Polynuclear Leucocytes.	Brief Notes regarding the Localized Staphylococcus Invasion and the General Condition of the Patient.
1901. Nov. 9	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 1	1* : 0·39	For description of clinical condition *vide* text (*supra*).
	Inoculated in the flank with 1 c.c. of staphylococcus vaccine prepared with staphylococcus aureus subcultured from the patient in Case 1.		
Nov. 10	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 1	1† : 0·92	Very slight local or constitutional disturbance. Condition of the neck unaltered.
„ 11	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 0·3	Marked improvement in the pustular pimples on the neck.
„ 14	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 0·6	The boils practically gone. The patient felt better.
„ 15	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 1·35	No return of the boils.
„ 16	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 1·95	„ „ „
„ 17	„ „ „ „ „	1‡ : 1·25	„ „ „
„ 18	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 1·45	„ „ „
„ 20	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 0·88	A fresh development of small boils on the neck.
„ 21	„ „ „ „ „	1 : 0·85	The boils are drying up.
„ 22	„ „ „ „ „	1 : 2·5	
	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1 : 1·35	One small fresh boil; the others improving.
„ 23	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·6	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 0·9	No new boils, all the old ones have dried up.
„ 25	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·1	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 0·52	No return of the boils.
„ 26	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·3	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 1·6	No new boils, but some irritation round one of the old ones.
„ 27	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·05	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 1	No fresh boils.
„ 30	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·5	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 1	No fresh boils, but there is still some infiltration of the neck.
Dec. 1	Staphylococcus aureus „ „ „ 1	1 : 1·5	
	Staphylococcus albus „ „ „ 3	1 : 0·97	A small boil has developed on the right side of the neck.

Inoculated in the flank with 0·75 cubic centimetre of a vaccine prepared from his own staphylococcus albus. The quantity inoculated represents the quantum of culture obtained from 1·5 square centimetres of agar surface.

Dec. 2	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 1	1 : 0·67	Marked local reaction at the site of inoculation. Slight constitutional disturbance.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 0·75	
" 3	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 0·94	Local reaction at site of inoculation subsiding.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 0·66	
" 4	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 0·53	Still some pain at site of inoculation. A painful boil has developed on the neck. This is the first painful boil since the patient came under treatment.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 0·47	
" 6	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 1·65	The boil which developed on Dec. 4 is much better.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1·1	
" 8	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 1·52	Two or three small but somewhat pustular pimples have developed.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1	
" 9	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 1·1	A few fresh small pimples on the neck.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1·15	
" 15	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 1·05	The patient has been free from boils for some days past. Infiltration of the neck has been steadily diminishing.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1·05	
" 18	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 1	1 : 0·54	Some fresh pimples have developed.
	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1·1	
" 27	Staphylococcus aureus " " " 4	1§ : 3·9	All infiltration has disappeared. Except for the presence of slight congestion the skin is absolutely normal.
1902.			
Jan. 3	Staphylococcus albus " " " 3	1 : 1·2	The patient has been free from boils for some little time. His neck is perfectly smooth and clean. The patient is now proceeding to South Africa.

* In this and all subsequent estimation, unless where otherwise specified, the control blood employed was derived from W.B.L.

† The control blood used in this estimation was derived from F. N. W.

‡ Three normal bloods, those of W. B. L., F. N. W., and X. A., were here employed as controls. The results obtained in the case of these bloods were in the closest agreement.

§ The blood here employed was derived from A. E. W. It is a blood which possesses a low phagocytic power.

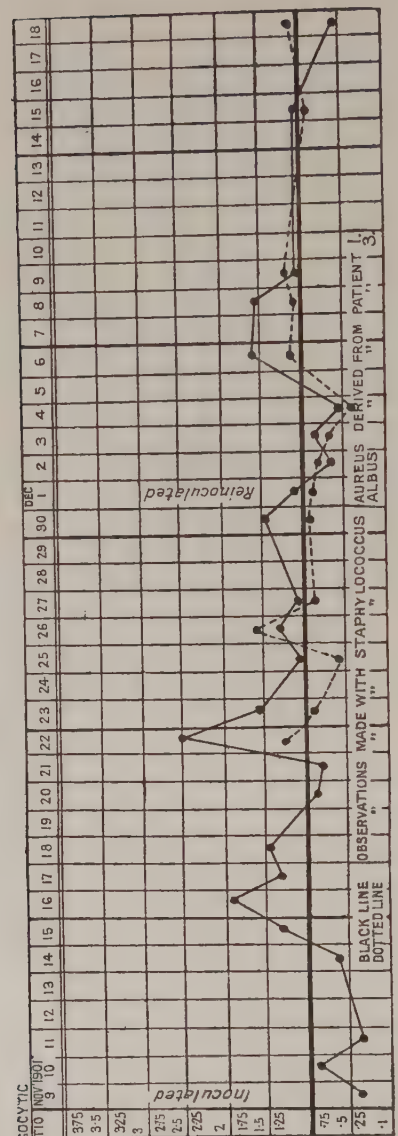

PHAGOCYTIC RATIO
NOV 1901
DEC
Inoculated
Reinoculated
BLACK LINE OBSERVATIONS MADE WITH STAPHYLOCOCCUS AUREUS DERIVED FROM PATIENT 1.
DOTTED LINE " " " ALBUS " " " 3.

CHART 1 (relating to Patient 3).

The curves express the phagocytic indices of the patient's blood (as estimated by Leishman's method), the phagocytic power of the control blood being everywhere taken as 1.

TABLE VIII.—*Setting forth in Connexion with case* 4 (a) *the Phagocytic Power of the Patient's Blood;* (b) *the Details of the Treatment adopted; and* (c) *Particulars with regard to the Clinical Condition of the Patient.*

Date.	Variety of Staphylococcus employed in the Test.	Phagocytic Index—i.e. the Proportion which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by White Blood corpuscles of *Normal* Blood bore to Number of Staphylococci ingested by *Patient's* Blood.	Brief Notes regarding the Conditions of the Localized Staphylococcus Invasion and the General Condition of the Patient.
1901. Dec. 20	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1* : 0·78	Condition as described in the text (*supra*).
	Inoculated with 0·3 cubic centimetre of a staphylococcus vaccine prepared from agar cultures of staphylococcus albus subcultured from the patient in Case 3. The quantum inoculated corresponds to the quantum of culture which developed on 0·6 square centimetre of agar surface.		
Dec. 21	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3 Staphylococcus aureus derived from the patient himself	1 : 2 1 : 3·8	There has been very little local reaction at the site of inoculation and only slight constitutional disturbance. Considerable swelling has, however, developed in the neck. Signs of improvement in the fact that the superficial boils have lost their angry look. There is considerable polynuclear leucocytosis.
„ 24	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient himself	1† : 6·48	The patient reports that there has been very considerable inflammatory swelling of the neck and of the lymphatic glands. The swelling has now almost subsided. The boils have entirely disappeared and the leucocytosis has passed off.
	Inoculated with 0·5 cubic centimetre of a vaccine prepared from agar culture of the patient's own staphylococcus aureus. The quantum inoculated corresponds to the quantum of culture which developed in 0·5 square centimetre of agar surface.		
Dec. 27	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient himself	1 : 2	No constitutional reaction. Congestion and tenderness for 48 hours at the seat of inoculation. No further swelling of the glands or inflammatory reaction in the neck. The patient is quite free from boils and acne. There is some leucocytosis.
1902. Jan. 3	„ „ „ „	1 : 1	One small inflamed pimple has developed on the neck. The patient otherwise is quite well, and there is no leucocytosis.
„ 16			
„ 17	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3 —	1‡ : 0·95 —	The neck is perfectly well. No trace remains of boils, acne, or swollen glands. The patient, who is leaving the neighbourhood, reports himself as being perfectly well. A similar report was received on March 15, 1902.

* The control blood employed in this and the five following estimations was derived from A. E. W.

† This result may conceivably have been due to some error of technique or to some incidental lowering of the phagocytic power of the control blood. *Vide* in this connexion the remarks appended to Table IX and Curve 2.

‡ The control blood here employed was derived from W. B. L. The phacocytic power of this blood has invariably been found to be higher than that of A. E. W.'s blood.

TABLE IX.—*Setting forth in connexion with Case* 5 (a) *the Phagocytic Power of the Blood ;* (b) *Details with regard to the Treatment adopted ; and* (c) *Particulars with regard to the Clinical Condition.*

Date.	Variety of Staphylococcus employed in testing the Blood.	Phagocytic Index—i.e., Proportion which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by the white blood Corpuscles of the *Normal* blood bore to the number of Staphylococci ingested by the White Corpuscles of the *Patient's* Blood.	Brief Notes regarding the Condition of the Localized Staphylococcus Invasion and the General Condition of the Patient.
1901. Dec. 24	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 4	1* : 3·3	For description of condition see text (*supra*).
	Inoculated in the flank with 0·5 cubic centimetre of vaccine prepared from agar cultivations of staphylococcus aureus subcultured from the patient in Case 4. The culture inoculated corresponded to the amount of culture which developed in 0·5 square centimetre of agar surface.		
Dec. 25	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 4	1* : 0·16	Great swelling and inflammatory congestion over the whole affected area of the face, the neck, and the scalp. Considerable leucocytosis.
„ 26	„ „ „ „ „	1* : 0·34	Still some swelling. A sensible decrease in the pustular points and on the cheeks and the chin.
„ 27	„ „ „ „ „	1* : 2·7	The inflammatory reaction has subsided. All the pustular points have disappeared. Polynuclears 50 per cent.
„ 28	„ „ „ „ „	1* : 1·3	The face is much better. The eyelids are no longer red. No further development of the pustular points.
	Inoculated in the flank with 0·5 cubic centimetre of the same staphylococcus vaccine.		
„ 29	Staphylococcus aureus from the patient in Case 4	1* : 0·88	Renewed swelling and congestion of the face. A few pustular points on the chin. Marked improvement everywhere.
„ 30	„ „ „ „ „	1* : 1·94	Congestion less. Four or five pustular points on the chin.
1902. Jan. 2	„ „ „ „ „	1* : 0·94	Complaints of more soreness and swelling. The face more congested, and a new crop of pustular points and more serous weeping.
„ 3	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1* : 1·0	No change noted except a slight diminution in the swelling.
„ 6	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 0·55	The chin is very angry looking ; more pustular points and weeping.
„ 7	„ „ „ „ „	1† : 0·61	The face is less angry.

Inoculated with 0·5 cubic centimetre of vaccine prepared from agar cultivations of the patient's staphylococcus aureus.

,, 8	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1† : 1·66	Considerable inflammatory congestion of the chin, subparotid region, eyelids and temples. The general appearance is almost erysipelatous.
,, 9	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1* : 2·0	Swelling and infiltration much diminished. The bony contours of the chin and the angle of the jaw have become clearly visible.
,, 10	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 0·86	The face and the chin are rather more inflamed. Had a bad night. Swelling round the glands below the angle of the chin.
,, 11	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·74	Marked improvement everywhere. The swathings and moist boric dressings are now discarded, and the face is powdered with chalk.
,, 12	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·46	Infiltration everywhere much diminished.
,, 14	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·55	No change. The crusts which still cover the chin are removed by steeping in normal salt solution.
,, 16	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 0·8	Increased congestion with weeping and scabbing. No pustulation.

Inoculated with one cubic centimetre of the same staphylococcus vaccine.

,, 17	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1† : 1·35	A red blush has appeared over the whole of the affected area. There is no noticeable swelling. The chin is thickly encrusted with scabs.
,, 18	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·73	No change. The crusts were removed by steeping in normal salt solution.
,, 19	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·18	Great improvement; appearance of healthy cicatrization over the area of the chin.
,, 20	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·6	The cheeks are better, but there is an increased serous discharge on the skin.

Inoculated with two cubic centimetres of the same staphylococcus vaccine.

,, 21	Staphylococcus albus from the patient in Case 3	1† : 0·6	Inflammatory reaction, swelling, and increased serous exudation. These symptoms are confined to the region of the chin.
,, 22	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·3	The face and the chin are very much better. Infiltration has largely disappeared, and the skin looks delicate and soft. It is of a pink colour over the whole of the previously affected area. A single small gland can be felt under the angle of the left jaw. There is still a little weeping over the surface of the chin, and there are some crusts in the scalp above and behind the ear.
,, 23	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	**1† : 1·3**	The improvement is maintained.
,, 24	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 1·3	The surface of the chin is becoming normal.
,, 25	A mixture of staphylococcus aureus and albus	1† : 1·85	The patient is improving rapidly, the skin is everywhere soft and pliable and is less flushed.
,, 30	,, ,, ,, ,, ,,	1† : 0·61	About ten new superficial pustular points have appeared on the chin; the pustular eruption over the temporal area is drying off.

Inoculated with three cubic centimetres of staphylococcus vaccine.

* The control blood employed in these estimations was derived from A. E. W.
† The control blood employed in these estimations was derived from W. B. L. It is a blood which possesses a high phagocytic power.
Vide in connexion with results of phagocytic estimation on December 24, 1901, note † appended to Table VIII.

TABLE X.—*Setting forth in Connexion with Case* 6 (a) *the Phagocytic Power of the Patient's Blood ;* (b) *the Details of the Treatment adopted ; and* (c) *Particulars with regard to the Patient's Clinical Condition.*

Date.	Variety of Staphylococcus employed in testing the blood.	Phagocytic Index—i.e. the Proportion which the Number of Staphylococci ingested by the Leucocytes of the *Control* Blood bore to the Number of Staphylococci ingested by Leucocytes of the *Patient's* Blood.	Brief Notes regarding the Conditions of the Localized Staphylococcus Invasion and the General Condition of the Patient.
1902.			
Feb. 18	Staphylococcus albus subcultured from the patient in Case 3	1* : 0·74	Condition as described in the text (*supra*).
„ 19	Staphylococcus albus subcultured from the patient in Case 3	1* : 0·7	Condition unchanged.
	Inoculated in the flank with one cubic centimetre of a mixed staphylococcus vaccine. The quantum inoculated corresponds to the quantum of albus and aureus culture which developed on one square centimetre of agar surface.		
Feb. 20	Staphylococcus albus as above	1* : 1·24	The patient had a mild general and local reaction. The condition of the chin and the cheeks is greatly improved, there being much less congestion and a small amount of discharge.
„ 21	—	—	The condition of the chin, the face, and the scalp is very considerably improved.
„ 22	Staphylococcus albus as above.	1† : 0·87	Further marked improvement, the back of the head and of the chin having become practically clear. Small moist patches still to be seen in front of the ear and at the angle of the mouth.
	Re-inoculated with one cubic centimetre of the same vaccine.		
„ 23	Staphylococcus albus as before	1† : 0·36	The moist patch in front of the ear has dried up. The patient is quite well with the exception of a small patch at the angle of the mouth.
„ 24	„ „ „	1† : 0·36	Practically well.
„ 25	„ „ „	1* : 0·7	Discharged.

* The control blood employed was that of W. B. L.
† The control blood employed was that of W. G. L.

of the local appearances to anticipate the results of the phagocytic estimation. (3) The general result of the blood examinations is in entire accordance with the theory of immunity put forward by Metchnikoff.

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE 4.

The patient, aged 21 years, a medical student, presented himself for treatment on December 20, 1901. For the previous two months he had been suffering from boils, chiefly on the nape of the neck, but also on the shoulder and forearm. Immediately anterior to the commencement of the boils the patient had suffered from an attack of influenza. The nape of the neck was seen to be the seat of a localized inflammatory process, the surface being occupied by three or four angry pimply boils, while the deeper tissues were considerably infiltrated and tumefied. The glands on both sides of the neck were somewhat swollen. On the cheek, in the neighbourhood of the nose, there were a certain number of very prominent spots of pustular acne. A cultivation made from one of the pustular pimples on the back of the neck yielded a pure cultivation of the staphylococcus aureus.

Particulars of the inoculations undertaken, of the resulting symptoms and blood changes, and of the effect produced on the localized staphylococcus invasion.—The course of treatment pursued and the effects which resulted from that treatment will perhaps be best gathered from a consideration of the subjoined tabular statement (Table VIII).

The general deductions which can be drawn from a consideration of this case are precisely the same as those drawn from a consideration of Case 3. The absence of a negative phase in this particular case is no doubt to be imputed to the fact that very small doses of staphylococcus vaccine were employed. Interesting as bearing on the association between the changes in the phagocytic power of the blood and the changes in the condition of the patient are (1) the rapidity with which the therapeutic result was achieved taken in connexion with the rapid increase in the phagocytic power of the blood, and (2) the coincidence of the development of the pustular pimple on January 3 with the result of the blood examination instituted on that day. A further and very interesting feature which arrests attention in connexion with this case is the fact that the first inoculation was followed by considerable inflammatory swelling at the seat of infection. This phenomenon, which, as we shall see, made its appearance again in a very marked manner in connexion with Case 5, is a phenomenon which would seem to be precisely analogous to the local inflammatory reaction which is obtained after the injection of tubercle vaccine (Koch's tuberculin). It will be noticed in this connexion that no inflammatory reaction supervened upon the second inoculation, and generally that nothing of this kind has come under notice in connexion with inoculations, undertaken upon patients whose tissues were pre-

sumably at the date of inoculation free, or comparatively free, from staphylococcus.

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE 5.

The patient, a private soldier, invalided home from Rawal Pindi for intractable sycosis, was first seen on December 24, 1901. He gave the following history. In 1893 a little sore developed on the scalp and this was followed by a general eruption all over the scalp and face. He was admitted to, and remained under treatment in, the Camberwell Infirmary for six weeks and was then discharged "cured." When he enlisted in 1897 he had, however, still a minute patch of eruption in front of his left ear. After serving for six months he was admitted to hospital for a deep-seated boil in the left parotid region which developed in connexion with the uncured patch of eruption just spoken of. He remained under treatment for about a fortnight. In the same year he proceeded to India and remained well for a time. In 1899 he attended hospital for three months for sycosis and eczema of the face. He relapsed again in 1900 and spent nine weeks in hospital, afterwards attending as an outpatient. He was readmitted in 1901, and was invalided home after spending six or seven months in hospital under energetic treatment. The patient, whose face and head were entirely swathed in dressings, was suffering from a very aggravated form of sycosis complicated by eczema. The whole area of the chin, the cheeks, and the under surface of the jaw was extensively infiltrated and was thickly covered in places with moist scabs. A number of pustular points were interspersed between the prominences corresponding to the inflamed hair follicles. The bony contours of the jaw were almost obliterated by dense masses of infiltrated tissue. The scalp and in particular that portion of it overlying the squamous portion of the left temporal bone was the seat of a scabby sero-pustular affection corresponding to that described under the name of acne varioliformis. The eyebrows and the margins of the eyelids were the seat of a chronic pustular inflammation.

Data of the microscopical and bacteriological examinations which were instituted.—A careful examination of the hairs of the beard showed that these were not invaded by any parasitic mycelium. Cultivations made from the pustular points on the face yielded pure cultivations of the staphylococcus aureus.

Details of the inoculations undertaken and of the effects of these upon the blood and the localized staphylococcus invasion.—The particulars of the inoculations undertaken and of the effects produced on the blood and on the area invaded by the staphylococcus are subjoined with some detail in tabular form (Table IX). The results of the blood examinations are given also in the form of a curve (*Chart* 2).

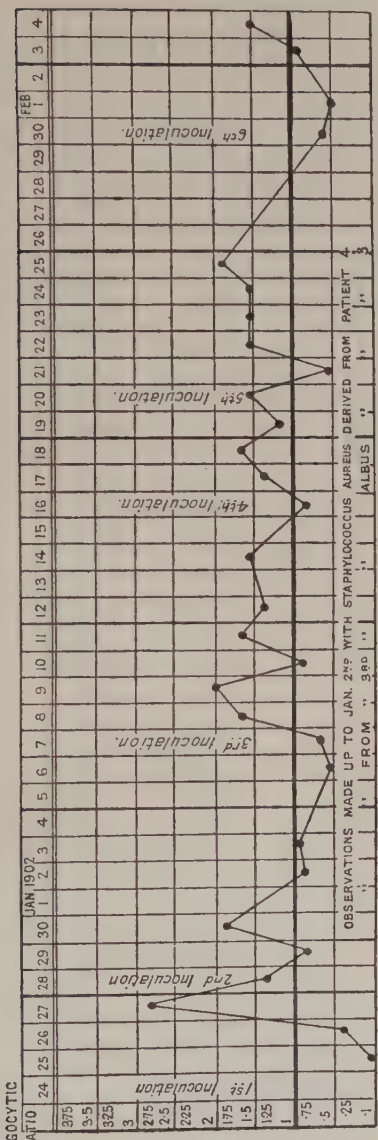


CHART 2 (relating to Patient 5).

The curve expresses the phagocytic index of the patient's blood, the phagocytic power of the control blood being everywhere taken as 1.

Attention may be drawn to the following points in connexion with the table and the curve. (1) The high expression obtained for the phago-

cytic power of the patient's blood in the case of the first estimation recorded in the table would seem to have been due either to an under estimation of the phagocytic power of the control blood due to an error in the technique or to some incidental lowering of the phagocytic power of that blood. There are thus in this case no trustworthy data relating to the phagocytic power of the patient's blood before inoculation. (2) It will be observed that, as in the cases already considered, an increase of phagocytic power was registered after each inoculation. (3) In the case of the first and second and again in the case of the fifth and sixth inoculations undertaken respectively with a double and a treble dose of the vaccine, the positive phase was preceded by a negative phase of diminished phagocytic power. (4) The clinical record shows that a condition of diminished phagocytic power, whether produced by inoculation or occurring spontaneously, was in each case associated with aggravation of the local affection. (5) The clinical record further shows that a condition of increased phagocytic power was invariably associated with an inflammatory (phagocytic) reaction in the area invaded by the staphylococcus and with a subsequent improvement in the form of a restriction of the invaded area. (6) It would appear from the consideration of the present case, taken in association with the cases already considered, that where the scale is turned against the invading staphylococci, it is turned not by a change produced in the blood-fluids, but by a succession of immunising impulses, each such impulse expressing itself in an inflammatory (phagocytic) reaction localized in the invaded tissues.

The results of the continuation of the treatment up to March 15 have confirmed the premonitions of a proneness to relapse which may be gathered from the previous history as well as from the results of the blood examinations and clinical data incorporated in the table and curve. In each case, after an improvement extending over three or four days subsequently to inoculation, symptoms of a certain amount of relapse have manifested themselves both in the condition of the local infection and in the results of the blood examinations. At present, after ten further staphylococcus inoculations which have been timed, and varied with respect to dose, in accordance with the results of the daily blood examinations, the patient's conditions is still that of a chronic staphylococcus invasion associated in places with a certain amount of scabbing and infiltration. There would thus appear to be a very definite limit to the defensive reaction of the organism, a limit which comes into consideration also in the case of other inoculations.

CLINICAL AND BACTERIOLOGICAL DATA RELATING TO CASE 6.

The patient, a man about 40 years of age, was first seen on February 18, 1902. A fortnight previously he began to suffer from an acute inflammation of the hair follicles, associated with a considerable

amount of serous discharge and itching. The inflammatory process now occupies the whole area of the beard and hairy portion of the cheeks, and it has spread backwards and has affected the nape of the neck and the lower portion of the back of the scalp. The whole of the affected area is thickly occupied by discrete, for the most part dry, scabs conforming to the type of acne varioliformis. Associated with these there is in places a certain amount of serous discharge. The scalp generally is extremely scurfy. Cultivations made from the surfaces exposed by removal of the scabs yielded a pure cultivation of staphylococcusaureus. The particulars of the treatment and details as to the result obtained are subjoined in Table X.

It will be noted on study of the above table that there was a marked increase in the phagocytic power of the patient's blood on the day succeeding the inoculation. On this and the next two days the clinical condition improved in an astonishing manner. The phenomena which supervened upon reinoculation are of less conspicuous interest. It will be seen that after the second inoculation, which was resorted to with a view to checking the falling away of the phagocytic power which manifested itself on the third day after the first inoculation, a pronounced negative phase of diminished phagocytic power came under observation. This negative phase, presumably owing to the fact that the invading bacteria had already been disposed of, was unaccompanied by anything in the nature of an aggravation of the patient's symptoms. At the date of the patient's discharge the negative phase was apparently giving place to a positive phase of increased phagocytic power.

Considerations in Connexion with the Possible Prophylactic and Therapeutic Applications of Anti-Staphylococcus Vaccine.

Having in the foregoing considered the results obtained by the inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine into patients affected with furunculosis, sycosis, and acne, we may naturally be led on to inquire whether there are any other forms of staphylococcus invasion in connexion with which these inoculations might perhaps find a useful application.

Possible prophylactic applications.—Dealing first with the question of a possible application of these vaccines in connexion with the prophylaxis of septic invasion, it would seem that advantage might possibly be derived from their application in connexion with compound fractures, and further in connexion with operative procedures, such as those associated with the upper jaw and air passages, where it is impossible to secure the asepticity of the wound. It is, perhaps, venturesome to suggest that there might also be other cases where the surgeon might be willing in his operative procedures to avail himself of the increased resistance to staphylococcus invasion which would, it can hardly be doubted, be obtained by a prophylactic inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine. I would urge in defence of this suggestion that the adoption of measures designed to increase the

resistance of the organism to septic invasion would seem to be only a legitimate development of the accepted practice of relying upon the protective agencies of the organism instead of upon the application of antiseptics for the destruction of such septic bacteria as may upon occasion in spite of aseptic precautions obtain access to wounds.

Apart from actual surgical procedures it would seem possible that prophylactic inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine might find a scientifically interesting and conceivably a practically useful application in connexion with anti-small-pox vaccination. In view of the apparently septic character of the inflammation which is frequently associated with vaccination wounds, and the fact that staphylococci are constantly present in vaccine lymph, even in glycerinized lymph, I take it that it would be desirable to determine how far the staphylococcus is responsible for the symptoms which have done so much to discredit vaccination in the popular mind. The information which is required could probably be obtained by noting the effects produced by the inoculation of one and the same variety of vaccine lymph into persons or animals immunised against the staphylococcus and into persons or animals not so protected.

Comparatively little remains to be added to what has already come under consideration in connexion with the therapeutic employment of staphylococcus vaccine. It is possible that the vaccine might find a useful application, not only in connexion with the treatment of furunculosis, acne, and sycosis, but also in connexion with the treatment of Veldt sores, old ulcers, sinuses, and septic vaccination wounds.

Concluding Remarks.

Possibility of a still wider extension of the treatment of localized inflammatory conditions by inoculation.—We may inquire, in conclusion, into the prospects of successfully exploiting bacterial vaccines in the treatment of localized inflammatory processes produced by pathogenic microorganisms other than the staphylococcus. Much that is of value can be learned upon this subject by a careful consideration of Koch's tuberculin inoculations and by a comparison of these with the inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine with which we have been dealing above. In each case a bacterial vaccine is, for therapeutic purposes, inoculated into patients already the subject of a corresponding infection. In each case, as the result of the inoculation, an acute inflammatory reaction is set up at the seat of infection. In each case, again, as a result of the inflammatory reaction in question, the nidus in which the bacteria are lodged is broken up.

At this point an all-important difference emerges. In the case where the localized inflammation process is due to a staphylococcus infection,

the breaking up of the nidus has involved, so far as has hitherto appeared, a destruction of the bacteria which have been fluttered. In the case of a tubercle infection the destruction of the nidus has, on the other hand, been shown to be compatible with the continued survival of the tubercle bacilli. Judging by the event recorded in connexion with many tuberculin inoculations, the tubercle bacilli when set free by the inflammatory reaction would appear to have been merely carried away by the white blood corpuscles or the lymph current to give origin to new localized foci of infection, or, in exceptional cases, to a generalized form of tuberculosis.

When we consider what may be the reason of this difference in the event which has followed the inoculation of these two different bacterial vaccines, we realize that it must be attributed primarily to the fact that the tubercle bacillus possesses, as compared with the staphylococcus, an infinitely greater capacity for maintaining its vitality in the interior of the organism.

A further reason for the difference in event we may perhaps find in the fact that while it was possible in the case of the staphylococcus inoculations described above to graduate the doses and time the injections in accordance with the data supplied by the measurement of the patient's resistance (as judged by his phagocytic reaction and by the condition of the invaded tissues) it was impracticable to do this—although it was infinitely more important to do so—in the case of Koch's inoculations of tubercle vaccine. We are thus by a comparison of the inoculations undertaken with staphylococcus vaccine with those undertaken with Koch's tuberculin, again led back to the cardinal principle that we must, in connexion with every therapeutic application of a bacterial vaccine, consider, on the one hand, the capacity of resistance with which the particular species of invading micro-organism is endowed, and, on the other hand, the capacity of resistance possessed by the particular patient at the time of inoculation.

The ideal to be kept in view must everywhere be so to graduate the doses of the bacterial vaccine and so to time the injections as to leave to the infected patient in any negative phase which may supervene after inoculation a sufficient margin of resistance to safeguard him against any generalization of his infection.

In connexion with the possibility of a wider extension of the principle of therapeutic inoculation we may with advantage keep in view (1) the consideration that patients who have been suffering from long-continued localized inflammation processes would seem, so far as can be judged from clinical experience, to have acquired a defensive power such as suffices to ward off the more generalized forms of their particular infections, and (2) the consideration that where bacterial invasions manifest themselves only under the form of "surface-invasions" the conditions in the interior of the organism must be assumed to be *ab initio* hostile to the growth of the invading micro-organisms.

These considerations would seem to point to the desirability of testing the effect of therapeutic inoculations of sterilized streptococcus cultures in the case of patients who are the subject of indolent and relapsing forms of erysipelas. In applying an inoculation treatment to the forms of erysipelas referred to it would, of course, be necessary to keep in view the fact that the streptococcus possesses, as compared with the staphylococcus, a much greater capacity for generalizing itself in the organism.

The above considerations would also seem to point to the desirability of determining whether any therapeutic advantage could be derived from the inoculation of the appropriate bacterial vaccines into patients suffering from chronic "surface-invasions." There would be opportunity of applying such inoculations in connexion with the treatment of bronchitis, ozaena, gleet, leucorrhoea, and those forms of the bacteruria[1] which depend upon a bacterial invasion of the mucous membranes of the genito-urinary tract. It would, of course, be necessary in each case, after determining the particular species of invading micro-organism which was giving rise to trouble, to consider (1) the question of technique in connexion with the preparation of the vaccines; (2) the question as to whether the particular invading micro-organism possessed any power of generalizing itself in the system; and (3) the question of the resisting and reacting power of the particular patient. In connexion with the estimation of these last, the methods of estimating the bactericidal power of the blood which have been described by myself[2] and the method of estimating the phagocytic power of the blood which has been described by Major Leishman[3] are, I think, capable of rendering services.

In bringing this communication to a close I desire to express my acknowledgments to Captain G. McIver C. Smith, I.M.S., for helpful collaboration in connexion with the study of Case 1. To my colleague, Major Leishman, R.A.M.C., I am indebted for manifold and unwearying assistance and valuable criticism through the whole course of this investigation.

[1] Experiments in connexion with the application of inoculation in connexion with the last of these disorders are now in progress.

[2] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxi, 1902.

[3] *Brit. Med. Journ.*, Jan. 11, 1902.

A Lecture on Therapeutic Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines

And their Practical Exploitation in the Treatment of Disease.[1]

Delivered at the Medical Graduates' College and Polyclinic.

By A. E. Wright.

Sequence of Events after the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine—Practical Importance of the Law of the Negative and Positive Phase in Connexion with Prophylactic Inoculations undertaken with Living or Sterilized Vaccines—Practical Importance of the Appreciation of the Law of the Negative and Positive Phase in connexion with the Therapeutic Inoculation of Sera derived from Animals vicariously Inoculated with Bacterial Vaccines—Therapeutic Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines undertaken upon Patients already the Subjects of Bacterial Invasion—Treatment of Furunculosis, Sycosis, Acne, and localized Staphylococcus Infections generally by the Inoculation of a Staphylococcus Vaccine—Treatment of Cholelithiasis, Appendicitis, Colitis (also of Cystitis, Pyelitis and Endometritis, where these are produced by the Colon Bacillus) by the Therapeutic Inoculation of a Coli Vaccine—Cystitis and Localized Bacterial Infections of the Genito-Urinary Tract—Treatment of Tuberculosis by Therapeutic Inoculations of Tubercle Vaccine—Treatment of Bacterial Infections of Meninges of the Mucous Membranes of the Respiratory Tract, of the Middle Ear, of the Uterus, and of Joints by Therapeutic Inoculations of the Appropriate Vaccines—Summary.

The therapeutic method which I propose to consider with you to-day is a method as yet almost unexploited. None the less it is a method which is, if I am not mistaken, destined to revolutionize our ordinary practice in dealing with localized bacterial invasions. In dealing with these our treatment has in the past consisted in making repeated applications of antiseptics, or, in the case where this is impracticable, extirpating the seat of infection.

The time will come when, before embarking on either of these methods of treatment, and above all before acquiescing in a policy of leaving the bacterial invasion unchecked, an endeavour will be made in every case to arrest the invasion and to prevent its recurrence by calling into action the forces of resistance which lie latent in the organism. *The physician of the future will, I foresee, take upon himself the rôle of an immunisator.*

Before developing my ideas in a more concrete form, and pointing

[1] Reprinted from the *Brit. Med. Journ*, May 9, 1903.

out where the opportunities already lie for the exploitation of methods of immunisation, it will be essential for us to obtain a clear conception of the immunising reaction which is initiated by the inoculation of a vaccine. And we may group together under the appellation of vaccines attenuated living cultures of micro-organisms, sterilized cultures, and derivatives of such cultures.

It will be convenient, at the outset, to discriminate from the more complicated processes associated with actual disease the simpler reactions evoked by such vaccines. Let us note that in actual disease we have to deal with a reaction of immunity hampered and often frustrated by processes of necrosis and cell degeneration induced by the action of the bacterial toxins. In the case of properly-conducted vaccination procedures, we have to deal with processes of immunisation uncomplicated and unfrustrated. It is with these immunising reactions—with these, if I may so denote them, physiological reactions—that we have here to concern ourselves. In dealing with them I shall not even attempt to call up before you a mental picture of the hidden machinery in the protoplasm which elaborates the products of immunisation which are found in the blood. You will already have been much wearied with such attempts. I shall content myself with setting forth to you the sequence of events which supervenes when the machinery of the immunisation is set in motion by the inoculation of a vaccine.

Sequence of Events after the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine.

The sequence of events after the inoculation of a bacterial poison was first clearly exhibited by Ehrlich [1] in connexion with a series of

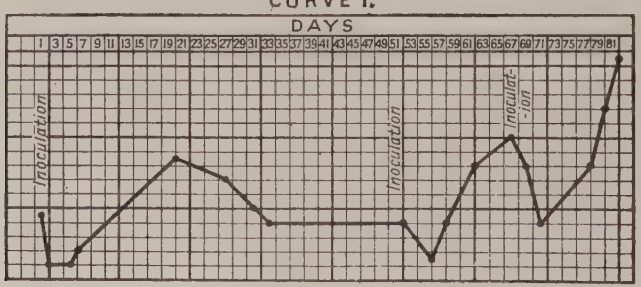


FIG. 1.—Curve of the immunisation reaction as obtained by measuring the contents in tetanus antitoxin in the milk subsequent to three inoculations of tetanus toxin.

inoculations of tetanus toxin undertaken upon a milch goat already previously immunised. The curve of immunity (Fig. 1) here reproduced from Ehrlich and Brieger's paper, discloses the content of the milk in

[1] *Zeit. f. Hyg.*, vol. xiii.

tetanus antitoxin at different intervals after the inoculation. The following are the points to be noted :—

1. Immediately subsequent to the inoculation of tetanus toxin we have what we may conveniently speak of as a "negative phase" of the curve of immunity.

2. This negative phase is succeeded after an interval by a "positive phase." In the case of the first inoculation here in question the climax of the positive phase was marked by a duplication of the previous antitoxic power of the milk.

3. After a further interval the curve comes back to the higher base line which represents the quasi-permanent achievement of the immunisation process.

The same succession of a negative and a positive phase is reproduced after the second, and, so far as the curve was traced, after the third inoculation.

The reaction of immunity was next studied by Salomonsen and Madsen [1] in connexion with inoculations of diphtheria toxin undertaken upon a previously immunised milch mare. A reference to the curves in Fig. 2 (page 230) which represent the anti-toxin content in the milk and blood respectively, will show that we have here again to deal with a negative and positive phase.

Similar curves have been obtained in connexion with other immunisation processes, in particular by Bulloch [2] in connexion with the inoculation of ox-blood into rabbits, and by Morgenroth in connexion with the inoculation of rennet.

I myself have, in a series of observations [3] made on men, obtained evidence [4] of a negative and a positive phase of the bactericidal power of the blood after typhoid inoculation. Two curves showing a negative and positive phase of bactericidal power after typhoid inoculation are presented in Fig. 3 (page 231). In later experiments undertaken by the same method I have obtained evidence of the maintenance of a higher base line two years after inoculation.

In a further research, dealing with the effects of anti-staphylococcus inoculations [5] upon a series of men, evidence was obtained by me of the supervention of a negative and a positive phase of phagocytic power [6] upon the inoculation of staphylococcus vaccines. I showed that in association with the decline and rise of the phagocytic power, an aggravation and improvement manifested itself in the clinical symptoms. A typical curve is set forth in Fig. 4 (page 232).

[1] *Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur*, 1887.
[2] *Trans. Path. Soc.*, 1902.
[3] *Lancet*, September 14, 1901.
[4] The method employed was that described by me in the *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxi.
[5] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902 (pp. 199–226 *supra*).
[6] The method employed was that described by Leishman, *British Medical Journal*, January 11, 1902.

I think it may be taken as definitely established by the above that we have to deal in connexion with every immunisation process with a succession of a negative and positive phase. So far we have concerned ourselves only with a typical form of curve. We should, however, lapse into fallacy if, carrying away in the mind's eye the features and general proportions of such typical curves as are shown in the figures above, we were to assume that these features and proportions must be reproduced in the case of every inoculation process. And similarly we should fall into error if we were to assume that a series of successive inoculations would in every case, as in Fig. 1, lead to the achievement of a high base line of immunity.

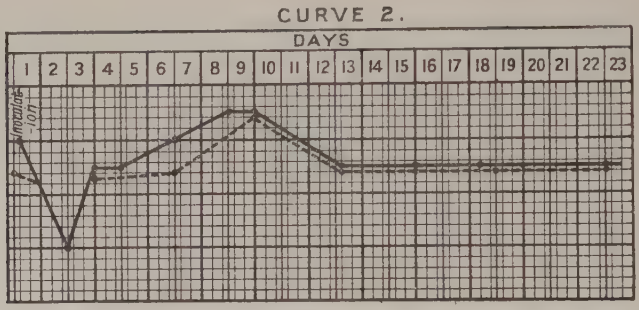


Fig. 2.—Curve of the immunisation reaction obtained by measuring the content of the blood and milk of a mare in diphtheria anti-toxin after the inoculation of diphtheria toxin. Unbroken line (——), antitoxin of milk ; dotted line (.....), anti-toxin of blood.

We shall best guard ourselves against errors such as those first referred to if we consider the curves relating to the effect of anti-typhoid inoculation set forth in Curves 5 and 6 (page 233). In Curve 5 the negative phase is suppressed, or speaking more strictly, the positive phase is found fully developed twenty-four hours after inoculation. In Curve 6 the nadir of the negative phase is not reached till the ninth day after the inoculations, the first evidence of a return in the direction of a positive phase being obtained on the fifteenth day.

Let it be noted here that the differences in the duration of the negative phase set forth in these traces are due either to comparatively small differences in the dose of vaccine administered, or to idiosyncrasies on the part of the patients. If I may judge from experience of the results of the self-inoculation of a much larger dose of typhoid vaccine, and from the results of blood examinations undertaken upon patients convalescent after very severe attacks of typhoid fever, it would seem to me that the incorporation or, as the case may be, generation in the system of excessive quantities of typhoid poisons may be followed by a negative phase of very many months' duration.

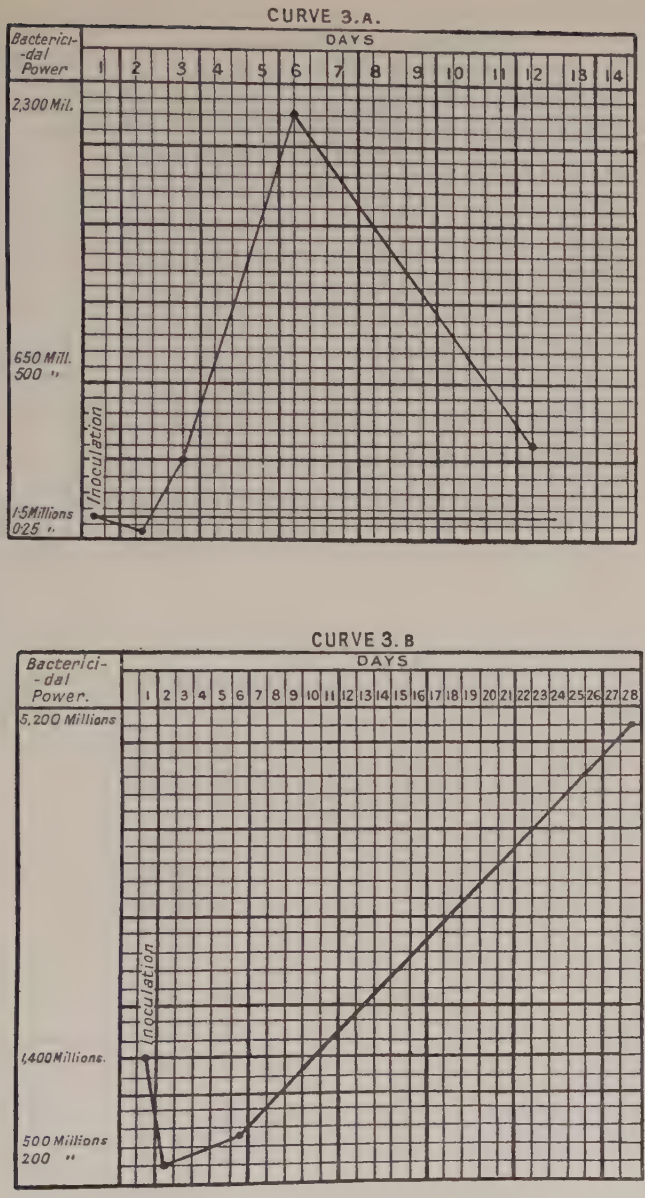


FIG. 3.—Curves (A and B) of the immunisation reaction obtained by measuring the bactericidal power of blood obtained from the finger before and after the inoculation of anti-typhoid vaccine. In Curve A all the measurements on the upper (positive) side of the base line have for convenience of exhibition been represented on a hundred-fold reduced scale.

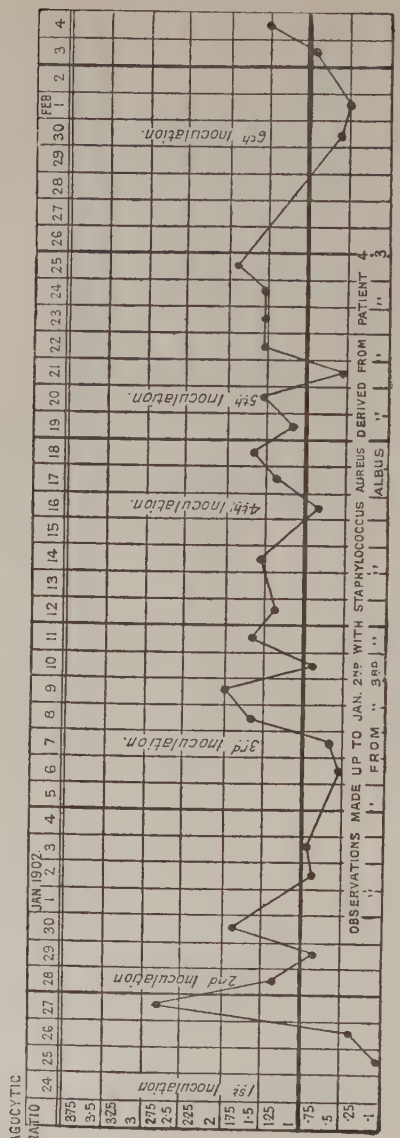


FIG. 4.—Curve of the immunisation reaction produced by a series of successive inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine; the curve represents the phagocytic index of the patient's blood, the phagocytic power of the control blood being everywhere taken as 1.

What applies in the case of single inoculations applies with even greater force to the case where a series of successive inoculations is undertaken. It is of fundamental importance to recognize that the effect of every such series of inoculations is a cumulative one. It is

cumulative in the sense of the negative phase and the poisoning of the organism when the doses of vaccine are excessive, and when they fall upon the negative phases of the foregoing inoculations. And only in the case where the doses are properly adjusted and where each succeeding inoculation starts from a higher level attained by the previous inoculation, will the effect of a series of inoculations be cumulative in the direction of the positive phase [1] and in the direction of raising the organism to a higher level of immunity.

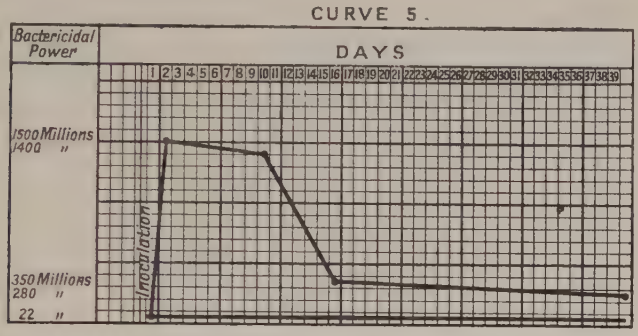


FIG. 5.—Curve of the immunisation reaction obtained by the inoculation of antityphoid vaccine, suppression of the negative phase.

You have now before you in outline what is known with regard to the sequence of events following upon the introduction of a vaccine into the organism, and with regard to what I may call the *law of the negative and positive phase and of the attainment of the higher base line.* I desire to insist upon the fundamental practical importance of this law in connexion with every immunisation procedure. Let me, with a view to illustrate its practical importance, deal, before I take up the subject matter proper of my discourse, very briefly with the negative and positive phase in connexion with the prophylactic inoculations of bacterial cultures, and in connexion with serum-therapy.

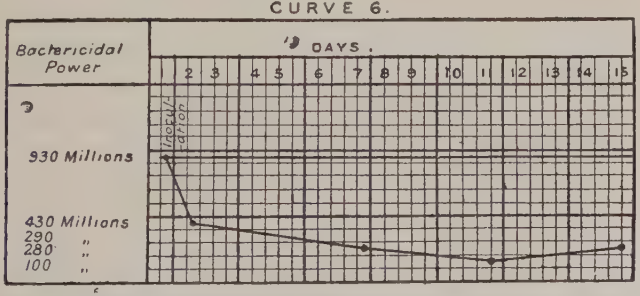


FIG. 6.—Curve of the immunisation reaction obtained by the inoculation of antityphoid vaccine, postponement of positive phase.

[1] *But vide p. 273 infra.*

Practical Importance of the Law of the Negative and Positive Phase in Connexion with Prophylactic Inoculations undertaken with Living or Sterilized Vaccines.

In considering, in the light of individual results obtained in certain series of antityphoid inoculations undertaken in actually infected surroundings, the significance of the negative phase of bactericidal power after antityphoid inoculation, I have called attention to the fact that the success of these prophylactic inoculations is imperilled where excessive doses of vaccine are administered to patients in actually infected surroundings, or immediately before transference to such surroundings. Basing myself upon information collected in India by the Indian Plague Commission,[1] in connexion with Mr. Haffkine's antiplague vaccination, I made a similar suggestion in connexion with this prophylactic inoculation. And I have recently learned that the idea of a risk attaching to the inoculation of large doses of vaccine in infected surroundings suggested itself also to several observers in South Africa who had occasion to watch the effect of the antiplague inoculations there undertaken. If the suggestions made by me in connexion with antityphoid and antiplague inoculation are justified, we may not unreasonably expect to find indications of an increased susceptibility to small-pox in the period supervening immediately upon the development of vaccinia pocks. It seems to me that such evidence can be found. In this connexion attention may be drawn to the fact that a vaccine lymph which has altogether failed to develop may, in the case where a more potent vaccine lymph is afterwards successfully inoculated, take on a typical development. We can hardly explain this fact otherwise than by assuming that the resisting power of the patient which sufficed to hold in check the earlier applied and weaker vaccine is diminished or abolished under the influence of the toxins elaborated in the course of the development of the subsequently inoculated and more active vaccine.

Evidence of similar import, but from the nature of the case less conclusive evidence, is supplied by certain of the records of small-pox attacks, and in particular by records of fatal small-pox attacks affecting those who had been vaccinated immediately before. I would point out that it is traditional in these cases to ascribe the small-pox attacks in question to infection contracted previous to vaccination. It is also traditional to vindicate this ascription by reference to the longer incubation of small-pox, overlooking the possibility that the incubation period may be shortened where the resistance of the organism is reduced.

A final word on this question will be appropriate. If the risks incidental to the production of a negative phase attach, as I believe they do, to prophylactic inoculations in the case of all septicaemic diseases alike, it is obviously incumbent upon us neither to ignore nor to magnify these dangers, and, above all, to recognize that these risks can be mini-

[1] Report, Indian Plague Commission.

mized. Let it be observed that the risk of a negative phase comes seriously into consideration only when excessive doses of vaccine are employed, and when the prophylactic inoculations are undertaken in the actual presence of infection. The remedy lies at hand. It lies in the case where a sterilized bacterial culture is employed in the reduction of the dose. It lies in the case of anti-small-pox vaccination in the reduction of the number of insertions ; in other words, in limiting the elaboration of the toxins by diminishing the area of skin surface employed for the culture of the organism of vaccinia.

Practical Importance of the Appreciation of the Law of the Negative and Positive Phase in Connexion with the Therapeutic Inoculation of Sera derived from Animals vicariously inoculated with Bacterial Vaccines.

The principle of serum-therapy—that is, the idea of transferring to patients already the subjects of bacterial infection immunising substances withdrawn from animals vicariously inoculated—appeals in a very forcible way to the medical mind by the fact that it promises a rational treatment of all bacterial diseases, and by the fact that it has fulfilled that promise in the case of diphtheria.

The prestige which it has derived from this signal success has led to the exploitation of the method of serum-therapy in connexion with almost every bacterial disease, and the time would appear to have arrived for a general survey of the results. We can hardly fail to recognize that the new method of treatment has almost everywhere (I except, of course, the case of diphtheria) failed to do appreciable good. I would also have you note that positive harm may upon occasion result from the resort to a serum. I may enforce this last statement by practical examples.

(1) There was submitted to the Indian Plague Commission a particular "antiplague serum" intended for therapeutic administration. This serum, which was tested by me as a member of the Commission, precipitated the death of every plague-infected animal to which it was administered, the acceleration of the fatal issue being in each case directly proportional to the dose of serum administered.[2] (2) In examining at Netley a number of "antityphoid" sera with a view to selecting for employment in South Africa any one that might seem calculated to be therapeutically useful, I found a particular "antityphoid serum" which completely abolished the bactericidal power which normal human serum exerts upon the bacillus typhosus. (3) I have myself administered with therapeutic intent to two Malta fever patients (personal friends) an "anti-Malta-fever serum," which produced unmistakeably toxic effects. The serum in question was a serum of my own preparation. (4) My friend Dr. Bulloch has had occasion to test on guinea-pigs the

[1] Report, Indian Plague Commission, chap. v.

effect of an "antistaphylococcus serum." The serum in question was found to exert a lethal effect in doses of 1 ccm. and over. (5) The same has been observed by Marmorek in connexion with certain antistreptococcus sera, and instances are, I think, not infrequent—they have certainly occurred within my experience—in which the administration of "antistreptococcus serum" has seemed to produce toxic effects. (6) A number of different scientific workers have, in endeavouring to prepare an "antituberculous serum" by the inoculation of tuberculin into horses, obtained a serum which produced on inoculation into man and animals an unmistakable tuberculin reaction. (7) Lastly, Dunbar [1] records the development of toxic effects in the case of a patient inoculated with an "anti-hay fever" serum.

These facts constitute, I think, striking confutation of the idea commonly entertained in our profession that all that is required for the production of an effective therapeutic serum is the incorporation into an animal of progressively increasing doses of a bacterial culture, and the withdrawal of the serum ten days after the last injection. In other words, the facts above enumerated enable us to realize that in default of an active production of immunising substances on the part of the animal vicariously inoculated, the sera which are drawn off will inevitably possess the toxic properties of vaccines originally inoculated. Our awakening to this fact must be signalized by a re-examination of the whole question of serum therapeutics. That examination must be undertaken in the light of the facts which have been adduced above with regard to the negative and positive phase.

Viewed from this point of view, the interpretation of the untoward results which followed the administration of the "antiplague serum" referred to above presents no difficulty. In point of fact, an inspection of the horses from which the serum in question had been derived showed that the horses were still suffering from the fever and local disturbance caused by the inoculation of the plague toxins. The serum had, in other words, been drawn off during the negative phase.[2]

Let it, however, be carefully noted that the passing off of the local and constitutional symptoms does not in itself afford any guarantee that the negative phase has given place to a positive phase. Personal experience in connexion with the inoculation of typhoid and Malta fever cultures into horses, the similar experience of others in connexion with the inoculation of other poisons into animals; and, lastly, experience of the effect exerted on human blood by antityphoid inoculation and by typhoid fever itself, make it certain that the persistence of the negative phase does not always betray itself by physical symptoms.

There is warranty for going further: there is, in fact, warranty for asserting that the persistence of the negative phase would in many cases be undetected by our present methods of testing sera.

[1] Dunbar, *Ursache u. specifische Heilung des Heufiebers*, 1903.
[2] Report, Indian Plague Commission, loc. cit.

Thus, for instance, the verification of the presence of agglutinins in the serum which has been withdrawn does not in any way guarantee the neutralization of the toxic substances which have been inoculated into the animal. Let it be observed in this connexion that the toxic "antityphoid" and "anti-Malta fever" sera referred to above possessed high—in the former, indeed, exceptionally high—agglutinating powers.

Again, experiments undertaken upon laboratory animals afford no security for the absence of toxins from the sera under examination, unless the animals are equally sensible with man to the particular toxins which are in question.

These points with regard to the difficulty of eliminating from use negative phase sera are, it will be seen, of altogether general application. If they have been overlooked, this has no doubt been owing to the fact that it has been possible, in the case of the serum therapeutics of diphtheria, owing to the sensibility of the guinea-pig to diphtheria toxin, to eliminate all toxic (negative phase) sera from use, and thus everything has in this respect here gone well.

The elimination of sera drawn off in the negative phase is, as consideration will show, only one of the pre-conditions of a successful serum-therapy. A further pre-condition of the successful exploitation of an antitoxic serum is that there shall be transferred to the patient in the few cubic centimetres of foreign blood which it is possible to administer a sufficiency of antitoxin to neutralize at least a sensible fraction of all the toxin which is being elaborated in the patient's system. In other words, it is essential that the animal which is selected for vicarious inoculation shall possess an altogether phenomenal power of reaction with respect to the particular bacterial poison employed. This condition, though it is satisfied in the case where horses are vicariously inoculated with diphtheria and tetanus toxins, is not, so far as is at present known, satisfied in the case where animals are inoculated with any other poison.

Superadded to the difficulties already adverted to are other and greater difficulties which have reference to the therapeutic exploitation of anti-bacterial sera. I refer to the difficulties created, on the one hand, by the circumstance that bactericidal elements disappear from the serum very soon after the blood has been withdrawn, and on the other hand by the circumstance that these bactericidal elements may be incapable of developing their effect when transferred from the vicariously inoculated animal to the human patient.

Let me finally, before taking up the subject matter proper of my discourse, try to sum up for you the situation.

The path of the immunisator who desires to proceed by the method of serum-therapy is bestrewn with all manner of formidable difficulties.

He must, in the first place, find methods which shall enable him to exclude from use sera drawn off during the negative phase.

He must, in the second place, achieve the hyper-immunisation of the animal vicariously inoculated.

Lastly, in the case of anti-bacterial sera, he must find means of preserving the products of immunisation unaltered after withdrawal, and of securing that they shall be operative within the system of his patient.

Therapeutic Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines undertaken upon Patients already the Subjects of Bacterial Invasion.

If the situation as regards serum-therapy is as I have set it forth to you it manifestly behoves us to cast about and see whether there may not be a more excellent way. I venture to submit to your consideration —and here I arrive at last at the subject matter proper of this discourse— the suggestion that that more excellent way may, perhaps, in many cases be found in the therapeutic inoculation of the patient with a bacterial vaccine. Let me anticipate two *à priori* objections.

Let me make it plain, in the first place, that I am very far from suggesting the incorporation of additional bacterial toxins into a patient already the subject of a septicaemic disease or a serious bacterial intoxication.

Such an inoculation could, I take it, serve no good purpose, inasmuch as the bacterial elements similar to those that constitute the vaccine would in such a case already be circulating in the blood stream. Furthermore, as you will immediately appreciate, the superaddition of additional bacterial toxins would inevitably prolong or reproduce the negative phase, if indeed it did not definitely turn the scale against the patient.[1]

The suggestion I make is that bacterial vaccines should be employed in the case where we have to deal with localized bacterial invasions associated with inflammation at the site of inoculation. The situation is here entirely different from that which has to be confronted in septicaemic diseases. On the one hand, the conditions are here already unfavourable to the invasion of the blood stream by micro-organisms ; and there is, on the other hand, a considerable uncalled-on reserve of resistance on the part of the organism. We have to deal, in fact, with a situation not altogether unlike that which obtains in the case of already partially immunised animals, such as those employed by Ehrlich and Salomonsen in the experiments which we considered at the outset of this lecture. Holding as we do in such a case a considerable balance in hand, we are in a position to confront without alarm the prospect of a possible temporary diminution of that balance. We are, in fact, in a position to adventure something for the sake of achieving afterwards a positive phase of increased resistance.

A further *à priori* objection which must be reckoned with is the following : I may throw it into the form of a question. If it was legitimately argued above that an inoculation of a bacterial vaccine would serve no good purpose in a case where the bacterial elements which call forth

[1] *But vide infra, pp.* 352–353.

the immunising reaction are already circulating in the blood, does not this argument apply also to the case where bacterial toxins are absorbed into the system from a localized seat of infection? In point of fact it seems not to apply. The explanation which suggests itself is that in such cases only the products of the metabolism of the bacteria, as distinguished from the substances in the bacterial protoplasm which evoke a production of antibacterial substances, are absorbed into the blood stream.

What I picture to myself as the situation will perhaps appear to you in a clearer light if I place before you the following series of facts:

The blood of the guinea-pig—and for our purposes we have to consider only the male cavy—contains no spermatoxin; in other words, it exerts no poisonous effect upon the cavian spermatozoa. This is in conformity with the circumstance that, while conceivably certain other metabolic products are absorbed into the blood from the testicle, the spermatozoa themselves and their constituent elements are normally not so absorbed. The conditions are here presumably analogous to those which obtain in the case where bacteria are cultivating themselves locally in the organism.

If we now, after extirpating one of the guinea-pig's testicles, inoculate him subcutaneously with a suspension of spermatozoa obtained by making an extract of the extirpated testicle, we find that his blood develops spermatoxic properties, and that when brought into contact with actively moving spermatozoa it immediately arrests their movements. Without pressing home the analogy, we might on a similar principle expect to induce an elaboration of antibacterial substances by inoculating a bacterial culture into a patient already the subject of a localized infection.

Having, so far as I can, disposed of the *à priori* objections which might suggest themselves in connexion with the proposed method of therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines, and having given you, I hope, a certain insight into the principles of the proposed method, I will now ask you to consider where the opportunities lie for the application of the method. I may appropriately begin by discussing those therapeutic inoculations of which I have already had some experience.

Treatment of Furunculosis, Sycosis, Acne, and Localized Staphylococcus Infections generally by the Inoculation of a Staphylococcus Vaccine.

There can, I think, be no doubt that in acne vulgaris, furunculosis, and most cases of sycosis we have nearly always to deal with an invasion of the skin follicles, or, as the case may be, of the subcutaneous tissue by the staphylococcus pyogenes. In almost every case the suppurating areas yield the staphylococcus in pure culture. This, however, is only one of the factors in the causation of these disorders.

Another factor is revealed by an investigation of the phagocytic power of the blood. This examination has, in all the cases I have

as yet dealt with, revealed a defective power of phagocytosis with respect to the staphylococcus. We have, it seems to me in the above, taken in connexion with the extreme chronicity, tendency to relapse, and comparative non-infectivity which characterizes these disorders, clear indications of the line of treatment that ought to be adopted. We ought to aim primarily at the immunisation of the patient against the staphylococcus.

I have elsewhere [1] given an account of six consecutive cases which were treated by the inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine, and have set forth the details of the blood examinations, and in association with them the clinical result. In two of these cases marked, but only temporary, improvement was achieved; in the four others a complete and very rapid cure was effected. The cases in which the improvement was only partial and temporary were—a case of boils and irritable pimples occurring in an elderly lady as a sequel of a severe operation, and a case of extensive sycosis and eczema barbae dating back eight years to almost the period of puberty. In both of these cases there appears to have been a deficient power of response to the inoculations.

Among the cases cured, the most conclusive from the point of the previous chronicity of the morbid process, the severity of the symptoms, and the subsequent following up of the case, was that of an officer who, subsequent to a septic infection which eventuated in peritonitis, had for a period of seven years been a victim to sycosis, eczema barbae and tarsi, styes in the eye, and deep and superficial furuncles. All these troubles disappeared after three successive inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine. His face had remained absolutely free from eruption when the patient, eighteen months after the date of his original first inoculation, presented himself for reinoculation on account of the development of two incipient boils, these being the first which had developed since undergoing the treatment. The reinoculation was effectual in checking any further relapse.

It may be added that, owing to the relatively small toxicity of staphylococcus cultures, the therapeutic treatment by staphylococcus vaccine involves comparatively little discomfort. The discomfort is, at any rate, absolutely trivial in comparison with the mental suffering associated with disfigurement due to acne or sycosis, and the physical evils associated with the reiterated application of antiseptics, epilation, and the fomentation and lancing of furuncles.

If staphylococcus vaccine should continue to approve itself useful in the treatment of localized cutaneous invasions of the skin, this would manifestly pave the way for further therapeutical applications in connexion with staphylococcus invasions of wounds, and open ulcers and granulating surfaces generally.

[1] *Lancet*, March 26, 1902 (pp. 203–223 *supra*).

Treatment of Cholelithiasis, Appendicitis, Colitis (also of Cystitis, Pyelitis, and Endometritis where these are produced by the Colon Bacillus) by the Therapeutic Inoculation of a Coli Vaccine.

The colon bacillus, even if we consider it quite apart from its near congeners, the dysentery bacillus, the Gaertner bacillus, and the typhoid bacillus, all of which, like the colon bacillus, affect by predilection the lower portion of the ileum and upper end of the large intestine, is responsible for an altogether astonishing amount of human ills. The rôle which the colon bacillus plays in connexion with internal surfaces is, in fact, not less predominant than that played by the staphylococcus in connexion with external surfaces and wounds. And the gravity of the local inflammatory processes which result from the inroads of the colon bacillus is infinitely greater. These derive their gravity, first, from the importance of the organs which are involved; secondly, from the anatomical relations of these organs with the peritoneum; thirdly, from the practical impossibility of effectively applying antiseptics; and, fourthly, from the very serious surgical procedures which are required in the case where the localized invasion culminates in the production of pus and shows a tendency to generalize itself. All these are considerations which plead in favour of dealing with colon infections by the method of immunisation.

Time will not permit of my referring to more than one or two of the many problems which open out before us when we take into consideration the possibility of dealing with colon bacillus infections or by the method just suggested. And you will understand that even if time did permit, the limitations of my knowledge in this imperfectly explored field would very soon impose a restraint upon me. It may, however, not be altogether unprofitable to suggest to you in connexion with this question certain lines of thought.

Cholelithiasis.—Evidence amounting now almost to demonstrative proof has been accumulating showing that the formation of gall stones is dependent upon bacterial invasion of the gall bladder, just in the same way as the formation of the ordinary phosphatic calculus in the bladder is dependent upon a bacterial invasion. It has further been established that the colon bacillus is the particular micro-organism which is responsible for the formation of gall stones. Not only is this micro-organism found in pure culture in the gall bladder in most cases of cholelithiasis, but it is found also in the interior of practically all recent biliary concretions. Furthermore, it has been shown that gall stones can be experimentally produced by a direct inoculation of the colon bacillus into the gall bladder. And, lastly, it is interesting and important to note that Professor Vaughan Harley has recently found that ordinary gall stones are spontaneously dissolved when they are introduced into the gall bladders of dogs, while no such solution occurs when they are introduced in association with pus derived from the inflamed gall bladder of man.

It would seem, in view of the above, that the treatment of cholelithiasis ought to be directed to the immunisation of the patient against the colon bacillus. We can see that it is within the bounds of possibility that the colon bacillus infection might in this way be checked, and that the gall stones might be dissolved. Even if these ends were not achieved the immunisation would at least prepare the way for surgical procedures by diminishing the attendant risks. Let us note with regard to the efficacy of these surgical procedures that the removal of the gall stones would not by itself make an end to the evil.

Appendicitis.—More important by far than the pathology of gall stones is the pathology of appendicitis. Without for a moment contending that the colon bacillus is the only micro-organism involved in the etiology of appendicitis, it appears to me to be beyond doubt the essentially important agent. I find, for instance, on looking up my records of bacteriological examinations undertaken in the surgical theatre or, as the case may be, the *post mortem* room at St. Mary's, that the colon bacillus was in eight successive cases obtained in pure cultivation from the pus, and that it was obtained in pure culture from the contents of the caecum or appendix in five out of the six cases in which cultures were made from the contents of the intestinal canal.

Here again it would seem to me that treatment ought to be directed to the immunisation of the patient against the colon bacillus. Immunisation procedures might, it seems to me, appropriately be undertaken on the one hand with the design of preventing a recurrence and avoiding operation, and on the other hand with the design of preparing the patient for operation in those cases where surgical procedures are postponed until after the subsidence of the symptoms of inflammation. The risks of inducing peritonitis which are incident to the necessary breaking down of adhesions and opening up of old foci of infection might conceivably be appreciably diminished by these means. The results which have been obtained in man by anticholera and antityphoid inoculations, and animals by anticoli inoculations, would seem to show the possibility of effective immunisation against bacterial infections proceeding from the intestinal canal.

Cystitis and Localized Bacterial Infections of the Genito-urinary Tract.

It is hardly necessary to do more than advert to the frequent association of cystitis and pyelitis with an invasion of the urinary tract by the colon bacillus. It is perhaps less well known that certain cases of endometritis are associated with an invasion of the uterus by the same micro-organism. It would seem possible that patients, the subjects of these infections, might be advantageously treated by inoculations of coli vaccine. In two cases in which I have already carried out such inoculations, the patients have claimed that they derived benefit from them. I was, however, unable to detect any objective evidence of improvement

by bacteriological examination of the urine. It is obvious, however, that the number of coli bacilli in the urine is not necessarily a correct index of the condition of the local inflammation process in the wall of the urinary tract.

Treatment by Tuberculosis of Therapeutic Inoculations of Tubercle Vaccine.

A few words by way of introduction to the discussion of this question may perhaps serve to place matters clearly before you. The treatment of tuberculosis by tuberculin as originally introduced by Koch was in intention a method of *toxi-therapeutics*. The tuberculous toxins which were inoculated were intended to compass the expulsion and destruction of the invading tubercle bacilli by effecting necrotic and degenerative changes in the foci of infection. It is now universally recognized that this therapeutic principle was fundamentally erroneous. It is unnecessary to say more, except that the results were untoward and that the necrotic, degenerative, and inflammatory changes which were effected in the foci of infection contributed, in some cases, to the dissemination of the tubercle bacilli in the infected system.

Of recent years modifications have been made by Koch in the preparation of the tuberculin, which have as their result the elimination of the more soluble toxins and the incorporation into the menstruum of the less soluble elements of the bacterial protoplasm. In short, modifications have been made which bring tuberculin (the so-called new tuberculin or T. O. and T. R. tuberculins) more into line with our ordinary bacterial vaccines.

Following upon these changes a complete change of policy has been tacitly inaugurated. The tuberculin inoculations have been definitely divested of the character of toxi-therapeutic inoculations, and have been definitely invested with the character of therapeutic inoculations of a tubercle vaccine designed to call forth an antibacterial reaction in the organism.

As soon as we consider the antitubercle inoculations from this standpoint, everything that has occurred in connexion with them becomes immediately intelligible. We appreciate, in the first place, that the untoward results which so often supervened upon the inoculation of Koch's original tuberculin were, in so far as they were not the result of the degenerative and inflammatory changes above referred to, imputable to the inappropriate character of the vaccine, and often, no doubt, to the induction of a cumulative negative phase under the influence of successive inoculations uncontrolled by intermediate blood examinations. We appreciate further that the outlook for a useful exploitation of therapeutic inoculations for tubercle is more hopeful now that we have at disposal a vaccine which contains in it elements derived from the bacterial protoplasm ; and now that we have at disposal in the tuberculous serum-sedimentation reaction a method by which we can obtain some

information of the progress of the reaction of immunisation in the patient's system. I would submit to you that since we now need no longer work entirely in the dark, we ought cautiously to exploit in the treatment of localized tuberculous affections the tubercle vaccine which we owe to the ever fertile labours of Koch.

Treatment of Bacterial Infections of the Meninges, of the Mucous Membranes of the Respiratory Tract, of the Middle Ear, of the Uterus, and of Joints by Therapeutic Inoculations of the Appropriate Vaccines.

Before proceeding to summarize the general results we have arrived at, I may perhaps take an opportunity of explaining that the therapeutic method which is here in question is capable of an even more extended application than that sketched out above. I foresee that if the principle of the therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines establishes itself, as I do not doubt that it will in the future, as an approved method for the treatment of chronic and recurrent inflammation processes, it will be exploited also in connexion with chronic and recurrent meningeal disease (I have in view here in particular certain cases of infantile paralysis), middle-ear disease, chronic bronchial and uterine catarrh, and chronic joint affections. Every such case would, of course, be submitted to bacteriological examination with a view to the determination of the determining cause of the infection, and the employment of the appropriate bacterial vaccine. In considering such a treatment in connexion with a meningeal infection there may be borne in mind the fact that we have, in the case of the anti-rabies inoculations, a demonstration of the possibility of checking, by the means of subcutaneous therapeutic inoculation of a vaccine, the spread of infective micro-organisms in the cerebro-spinal system. Similarly, in considering a possible application of bacterial vaccine in connexion with inflammation processes affecting the mucous membranes of the respiratory system, we may derive encouragement from the results obtained by Professor Dunbar in connexion with inoculation against hay fever. For an elaboration of an antitoxin against the pollen toxin in the organism of animals has been achieved by him, and he has obtained indications of a similar production of antitoxin in the organism of a susceptible human patient.

Summary.

Let me, finally, recapitulate to you the conclusions we have arrived at in the course of our study.

1. We have seen that we have in connexion with every immunisation process a sequence of *negative* and *positive phase* followed in the case where the inoculation is successful by the maintenance of a *higher base line* of immunity.

2. We have seen that the inoculation of an excessive dose may involve a risk, in particular the risk of an undue prolongation of the *negative phase*.

3. We have seen that the inoculation of a series of doses of a vaccine will, in the case where the inoculations are uncontrolled by intermediate blood examinations, involve the possibility of the production of a *cumulative negative phase.*

4. We have seen that the *cumulative positive phase* which is a desideratum either in itself or as leading to the maintenance of a high base line of resistance, is achieved only when the successive doses are properly adjusted and when the inoculations are appropriately interspaced.

5. We have seen that the success of a prophylactic inoculation process may be imperilled where sequence of negative and positive phase, and the cumulative effect of successive inoculations, is not taken into consideration.

6. We have seen that the success of serum-therapy in diphtheria and its comparative failure in the case of other diseases is explained by the fact that in the first case we are able to secure the elimination of all negative phase blood, and we are able to induce in the vicariously inoculated animals a cumulative positive phase of absolutely phenomenal dimensions. In the case of other diseases we have been unable to secure these prerequisites of a successful serum-therapy.

7. We have seen that in the case of patients who, though suffering from localized bacterial invasions, are possessed of a considerable balance of resisting power, it is possible without risk to undertake therapeutic inoculations of bacterial vaccines, provided always that the results of these inoculations are controlled by subsequent blood examinations.

Let us realize, in conclusion, that when all has been done that can be done in the way of guarding a patient against the risks attaching to the negative phase, the success of a therapeutic inoculation cannot be guaranteed. The success must in each case depend upon the power of response which is possessed by the individual. In the case of a particular patient that power of response may fail us. It may fail us also in connexion with particular bacterial infections. But it may be predicted that success will in some cases be achieved. It seems to me, for instance, that it will certainly be achieved in the case of simple staphylococcus infections occurring in the young and otherwise robust. It seems to me very probable that it will be achieved also in the case of certain coli infections.

On the Treatment of Acne, Furunculosis, and Sycosis by Therapeutic Inoculations of Staphylococcus Vaccine.[1]

By A. E. Wright.

C'a été une chose curieuse que la faillite des antiseptiques dans le traitement des maladies dermatologiques parasitaires. On fondait sur eux des espérances colossales, ils n'ont presque rien donné.—Sabouraud.—*Bulletin de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1904, p. 286.

Three and a half years ago I was confronted with the following situation: I was consulted by a patient, forty years of age, who was a prey to chronic staphylococcus invasions, and had for seven years suffered from severe and constantly-recurring furunculosis, complicated by sycosis, eczema barbae, styes in the eyes, and eczema tarsi. The boils, which occurred all over the body, occurred in two varieties—small superficial boils seated generally in the skin of the neck and face, and larger deep-seated boils occurring in the subcutaneous tissue of every region of the body, more particularly about the nates and thighs. His history was as follows.

Seven years previously, when engaged in clearing out a tracheotomy tube which had been removed from a patient who had been operated upon for acute laryngitis, he accidentally inoculated himself in the forefinger with some of the septic material, and in spite of three deep incisions made successively into the finger and palm of the hand, the infection spread upwards to the axilla, giving origin there to a bubo, and thence onwards into the blood stream, setting up high fever and septic peritonitis. The susceptibility to staphylococcus invasion had manifested itself immediately after the septic attack.

Immediately before the date at which the patient consulted me I had been engaged in following out the changes which are produced in the blood after the inoculation of antityphoid vaccine.[2] I had ascertained in the course of that inquiry that the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine is followed, first, by a negative phase of diminished bactericidal

[1] Reprinted from the *Brit. Med. Jour.*, May 7, 1904.

[2] On the Changes effected by Antityphoid Inoculation in the Bactericidal Power of the Blood, with Remarks on the Significance of these Changes, *Lancet*, September 14, 1901.

power, corresponding, no doubt, to the period of application of the vaccinal stimulus; secondly, by a positive phase of greatly increased bactericidal power, that is, a period of active response; and lastly, after the remission of the stimulus, by a comparatively durable period of increased resistance. I had further determined that the negative phase effect is directly dependent with respect to duration and intensity upon the dose of the vaccine, such negative phase being of only short duration when the dose of the vaccine inoculated is small, and where the constitutional symptoms produced are slight. Reflecting upon these facts, it occurred to me to break through conventional restrictions, and to exploit bacterial inoculations, not alone for the purpose of prophylaxis but also therapeutically, in the case of patients suffering from localized bacterial invasions. Giving effect to these considerations, I proceeded in a tentative manner —testing in each case the effect produced upon the blood by each separate inoculation—to experiment on the possibilities of applying inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine in the treatment of furunculosis, sycosis, and acne. I published my first results obtained on a series of six cases in the *Lancet* for March 29, 1902. I set forth in the paper in question in detail the method employed for the preparation of the vaccine, and the course of the reaction of immunity as indicated by the phagocytic reaction of the blood before and after inoculation. It emerged very clearly that we have, in the case of the inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine, to deal with a precisely similar sequence of negative and a positive phase as in the case of antityphoid inoculation; and further, that, as in the case of antityphoid inoculation, the duration of the negative phase varies with the quantum of the vaccine inoculated; lastly, that the attainment of the desired clinical result depends on the cumulation of the effects of a series of properly interspaced inoculations. The clinical results achieved in the six cases here in question were very full of promise. The cases that were treated were, first, the case of severe and multiform staphylococcus invasion just described; secondly, a case of very severe sycosis, which had lasted for a period of years, and which had been intractable to all treatment; thirdly, a case of furunculosis in an old lady which had followed upon a surgical operation: fourthly, a case of acute furunculosis in a medical student; fifthly, a case of mild sycosis; and, lastly, a case of irritable furuncular pimples on the back of the neck.

I have since the date of the publication of the paper in question treated by the method of inoculation a further series of cases of staphylococcus invasion. These cases include: One case of severe generalized staphylococcus invasion characterized by boils, paronynchia, and severe acne; three cases of severe and long-continued sycosis barbae, which had proved intractable to treatment by antiseptics; a further case of sycosis barbae, which had been treated by epilation for many years, six cases of moderate furunculosis; and seven cases of severe and very chronic acne. In nearly all these cases I have plotted out

in the form of a curve the changes produced by inoculation in the phagocytic power of the blood.

The following are brief particulars of some of the cases.

Case 7.—The patient is a medical man, the curator of a pathological museum. He suffered more or less continuously for years from boils in all parts of the body, from severe facial acne, and from paronynchia. We have here evidence of a susceptibility to every form of staphylococcus invasion. In April, 1903, after removal of four finger-nails for paronynchia, he applied to me with a view to subjecting himself to staphylococcus inoculations. At the time the patient was suffering also from "a large crop of boils upon his neck." He writes, "after the first inoculation, these quickly aborted, and I remained in very good health until August, when a large furuncle formed in my right buttock." This furuncle aborted after undertaking a second inoculation. The patient reports (January, 1904) "that the facial acne has been considerably better since the inoculation, but I am," adds he, "by no means cured, as I had another furuncle in the loin a few days ago, but I must say that I have had great benefit from the inoculations." Owing to the fact that the patient was treated in the provinces, no data are here available with regard to the condition of the blood before and after inoculation.

Case 8.—Patient, a labourer, forty years of age, the subject of sycosis, gives the following history: He suffered as a child from severe pustular eczema and from deep-seated suppuration behind the ear, which continued for years and has left very deep scars. He has also suffered from time to time from boils and from a discharge from the ears. We have here probable evidence of a lifelong susceptibility to staphylococcus invasions.

Five months ago his head became very scurfy, and the inflammatory affection passed down from the head to the parotid region, and finally to the beard and to the whole hairy surface of the face and chin. The patient now presented himself for treatment as an out-patient in the Skin Department of St. Mary's Hospital, and was treated by the X rays and by antiseptics for two months without any improvement. It was now determined to try the effect of staphylococcus inoculations.

Condition of the Patient when the First Inoculation was undertaken.—November 2, 1903. The patient was suffering from very aggravated pustular sycosis, each hair of the beard being surrounded by pus, while there was considerable induration and furuncular inflammation below the angle of the jaw and over the whole anterior surface of the neck. The patient's phagocytic index, taking unity as representing the phagocytic index of the normal blood, was 0·48. The patient was inoculated with a quantum of sterilized staphylococcus culture which contained 2,500 million staphylococci.

November 9. Sycosis is astonishingly improved. The general health of the patient is also much better, and the pain has entirely disappeared. The phagocytic estimation miscarried. The patient was inoculated with a quantum of sterilized staphylococcus culture containing 5,000 millions of staphylococci. Cultures obtained from the remaining pustules yielded pure cultivations of the staphylococcus aureus.

November 16. Improvement has been continuous, there being now very few pustules. Acute weeping eczema, has, however, supervened over the whole region of the head. The patient was treated for this condition by Dr. Graham Little by an application of carbolic oil. Phagocytic index, 1·21.

November 19. Improvement still continuous, so far as the pustulation of the beard is concerned. The patient still suffers from weeping eczema over the whole region of the scalp. Lotio plumbi was substituted for the carbolic oil. Phagocytic index, 1·13. The patient was reinoculated with a quantum of sterilized culture which was derived from his own staphylococcus,—the quantum inoculated corresponding to 5,000 millions staphylococci.

November 26. Pustules on the face, head and arms, had now completely disappeared, and the eczematous condition is nearly well, but a good deal of redness persists about the skin and cheeks, and the epidermis is everywhere scaling off. Phagocytic index, 2·1.

November 30. A few trifling pustules are still to be seen on the face, but much less general congestion. Phagocytic index, 1·92.

December 8. The patient is now almost quite well, with the exception of a few superficial pustules. Phagocytic index, 2·7. The patient was inoculated with a quantum of vaccine made from his own staphylococcus containing 7,500 millions of staphylococci.

December 14. The patient is practically well. Phagocytic index, 0·92.

December 17. The patient is about to resume work. Phagocytic index, 1·85.

Subsequent History.—The patient, who was all but completely cured in December, relapsed as a consequence of alcoholic excesses at Christmas. He is now, after a further series of inoculations, again well.

Case 9.—The following case was inoculated and examined by my friend, Captain Stewart R. Douglas, I.M.S., in the Royal Victoria Hospital, Netley. The patient, Private C., was affected with sycosis of the beard. Two years ago, when on active service in South Africa, a crop of small pimples developed on his chin and spread over the whole surface of his face and jaw. The patient has been in hospital under treatment for seventeen months, but his condition has undergone only temporary improvement.

May 15, 1903. Phagocytic index, 0·8.

May 23. Phagocytic index, 0·7. Inoculated with a sterilized

staphylococcus culture derived from his beard. The quantum inoculated corresponded to 2,500 millions staphylococci.

May 25. Phagocytic index, 1·1.

May 28. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

May 28. Phagocytic index, 1·2. Reinoculated with a quantum of the same vaccine containing 5,000 millions of staphylococci.

May 29. Phagocytic index, 0·64.

June 2. Phagocytic index, 2·6.

June 3. Phagocytic index, 1·9.

June 4. Phagocytic index, 1·45.

June 6. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

June 7. Phagocytic index, 1·5.

June 9. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

After the first inoculation, and contemporaneously with the rise in the phagocytic curve, the number of the pustules was considerably diminished. After the second inoculation the patient was practically well. Captain Douglas's further observations were broken off by his departure from Netley.

Case 10.—The patient, a medical student from a Northern university, had been for years the victim of severe sycosis complicated by abscesses in the parotid region. He had been treated in a very systematic manner by epilation, and there was no longer any active sycosis in progress. There remained, however, considerable congestion and induration in portions of the previously affected area.

Phagocytic index, 0·73.

The patient was inoculated with a quantum of staphylococcus vaccine containing 2,500 millions staphylococci.

June 3, 1903. The symptoms after inoculation have been very slight. Phagocytic index, 2·25.

June 4. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

June 5. The patient was reinoculated with a quantum of vaccine corresponding to 5,000 millions staphylococci.

June 6. Patient has considerable reaction and local pain.

Phagocytic index, 0·57.

June 12. Phagocytic index, 0·79.

June 15. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

June 17. Phagocytic index, 1·1.

Reinoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

June 20. Phagocytic index, 0·8.

June 30. Patient expresses himself as convinced that his condition is much improved.

Phagocytic index, 1·06.

July 3. Reinoculated with 5,000 millions of staphylococci derived from the culture which was obtained before the first inoculation.

July 6. Patient is still suffering from considerable constitutional disturbance.

Phagocytic index, 0·34.

July 8. The constitutional disturbance has passed off. Phagocytic index, 1·75. Treatment suspended, the congestion and induration having practically disappeared.

January 4, 1904. Patient presented himself, with a history of some recurrence of his facial trouble, from which he had been free for five months. After two further inoculations with a vaccine prepared from the staphylococcus isolated from his beard six months ago the inflammatory trouble again completely subsided.

Case 11.—June 12, 1903. The patient, a medical man, presented himself for treatment with the following history. He suffered from the first attack of boils in June, 1897, after exhausting outdoor work in connexion with midwifery. His attack lasted for about six weeks, and a series of about a dozen boils developed. During the next eighteen months he suffered from several attacks of boils, but the details of these attacks had faded from his memory. At the end of 1900 and spring of 1901 he suffered from a number of recurrent attacks of furunculosis, several of these lasting well over a month.

In 1902, in February, he suffered from a very aggravated boil, and in 1903 from two or three bad attacks. Between June 2 and 12, the day on which the patient presented himself for treatment, nine boils had appeared in succession on his neck.

June 12. Phagocytic index, 0·87.

The patient was inoculated with a quantum of sterilized culture containing 500 millions staphylococci.

June 13. Phagocytic index, 0·73.

June 15. Phagocytic index, 0·9.

June 18. Patient after wearing a collar for the first time on June 17 developed two further boils. One of these aborted.

June 20. Phagocytic index, 1·02.

The patient was reinoculated with 750 millions staphylococci.

June 24. Succeeded in wearing a collar for a few hours in the evening.

June 25. Developed a small boil, which cleared up on the 28th.

June 27. Phagocytic index, 1·2.

June 28. A spot on the right eyebrow, which did not suppurate.

July 3. Phagocytic index, 1·1.

Patient was reinoculated with a vaccine made from a staphylococcus obtained from his boil. The constitutional reaction which resulted was somewhat more severe than on previous occasions.

July 8. Phagocytic index, 1·3.

Subsequent History.—Patient remained perfectly free from boils for over two months.

In October, after three weeks of sleeplessness, patient developed a small boil behind angle of jaw and stye in the eye.

In January, 1904, a small pustule appeared on the neck; with these

exceptions patient has had no recurrence of his trouble. He expresses himself as convinced that his period of insomnia would, except for the inoculation, have been followed by an aggravated attack of boils.

Case 12.—The patient, a medical man, aged fifty-five, applied for treatment, having suffered from boils on the back of the neck at frequent intervals for three or four years. He has always been more or less subject to this trouble.

December 4. Phagocytic index, 0·79. Patient was inoculated with a quantum of staphylococcus vaccine corresponding to 2,500 millions staphylococci.

December 10. Patient was reinoculated with 1 ccm. staphylococcus vaccine.

December 12. A boil has begun to develop in the neck.

December 17. The boil under the ear, which would in ordinary circumstances have suppurated and sloughed, is now aborting. Phagocytic index, 1·56.

Subsequent History.—Patient has had no recurrence of boils.

Case 13.—July 14, 1903. Patient, a healthy man, aged twenty-four, who was in training for a boat race, developed a boil on his gluteal region three weeks ago, and is now suffering from a crop of boils on the neck. Phagocytic index, 0·84. Patient was inoculated with a quantum of vaccine corresponding to 2,500 millions staphylococci.

July 17. Boils have improved. Phagocytic index, 0·88. Patient was reinoculated with 2,000 millions staphylococci.

July 20. Boils are nearly well. Phagocytic index, 1·3.

July 25. Phagocytic index, 1·9.

July 31. Phagocytic index, 1·95. Patient soon afterwards relapsed and did not come up for further treatment.

Case 14.—Patient, a professional man, aged thirty-two, presented himself for treatment on November 25, 1903, having suffered almost without interruption since last May with painful boils on the nates, which in each case suppurated. The patient gives a history of sycosis ten years ago.

November 25. Phagocytic index, 0·87. Inoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

December 4. Patient has developed another small boil in the gluteal region. Phagocytic index, 0·91. Patient reinoculated with 5,000 millions staphylococci.

December 17. The boil referred to above has aborted without suppuration. Phagocytic index, 0·94.

Subsequent History.—Patient remained free from his trouble for three and a half months. He then developed a boil in the neck, and was reinoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

Case 15.—Patient, a professional man who has been invalided home from the East for general debility and boils, presented himself for treatment with a boil in each axilla.

October 8, 1903. Phagocytic index, 0·49. The patient was inoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

October 15. Patient is much improved in health. The boils in the axilla have aborted without suppuration. He was reinoculated with 5,000 millions staphylococci.

November 1. Phagocytic index, 0·95.

Subsequent History.—Patient is in good health, and has had no further boils.

Case 16.—Patient, a medical student, aged twenty-four, with a long history of acne and boils. Boils have occurred in every region of the body, they are at present quiescent. The face is a mass of scars from old acne. There is at present in comparison with what there has been, a trifling amount of active mischief.

December 1, 1903. Phagocytic index, 0·82. Inoculated with a quantum of vaccine corresponding to 1,000 millions staphylococci.

December 8. Patient reports himself much better. Phagocytic index, 1·7. Reinoculated with 5,000 millions staphylococci.

December 18. Patient's appearance has improved in a wonderful manner, every trace of pustulation having disappeared.

April 25. Patient has, as a result of working for an examination, begun to relapse. He was reinoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

Case 18.—Patient, twenty-five years of age, is engaged in the City. Has been the victim of pimply acne for many years. At present there are very few indications of suppuration. Phagocytic index, 0·54. Inoculated with 2,500 millions staphylococci.

December 2, 1903. Patient's condition seems to be a little ameliorated, patient himself being uncertain whether this is to be attributed to the inoculation or to an ordinary remission of his trouble. Phagocytic index, 1·0. Reinoculated with 5,000 millions staphylococci.

December 11. No great change. Face appears somewhat clearer. Phagocytic index, 2·1.

Subsequent History.—Patient presented himself two months after with an almost perfectly clear complexion. He expressed himself as satisfied of the efficacy of the inoculations.

Cases 17, 18, 19, and 20.—These were all cases of aggravated and very chronic acne, affecting respectively a young medical man, a young labourer, a spinster lady of forty-five, and a married lady of thirty-five. The first two cases were characterized by marked pustulation and extensive scarring over the face, the upper part of the chest, and the upper half of the back. In the third case the chief feature of the condition was the reddening and development of indolent pimples over the region of

the nose and chin. The fourth case was characterized by the development of marked induration round the papules, in particular upon the chin. The pimples had for years been kept under restraint only by eliminating all saccharine elements, and fruit from the diet. In each of these cases very great improvement, amounting in three cases to a practical cure, was effected by a series of three injections of the staphylococcus vaccine.

It may be noted that in none of the above cases was any antiseptic treatment combined with the inoculations. Further, in no case were any restrictions imposed in the matter of diet.

Conclusions.

It is, I think, satisfactorily established by the foregoing cases that chronic staphylococcus invasions, and in particular furunculosis, sycosis, and acne, can be treated in a very effective manner by inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine. I have elsewhere[1] called attention to the broad principles of the therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines—the method which is here in question—and to its wide sphere of application. It will therefore here suffice to call to mind that we do not in the case of these inoculations supply to the patient protective substances produced in the organism of an animal vicariously inoculated, but we induce the chemical machinery of the patient to elaborate by its own efforts the protective secretion which is required for the destruction of the invading bacteria. The elaboration of this protective secretion proceeds in accordance with the general law that a vaccine introduced into the organism will, given that it is introduced in appropriate doses and at proper intervals, call forth a production of the specific bacteriotropic substances which are required for the destruction of the bacteria against which protection is desired. To comply with the conditions just specified we must employ, as was done in the cases above reported, a vaccine of standardized strength. We must, further, for the achievement of the best results, measure, before we proceed to reinoculation, the effect produced in each case upon the patient's blood by the previous inoculation. Lastly, it is advisable in obstinate cases to resort to a vaccine made with the particular strain of micro-organism which has acclimatized itself to grow in the patient's organism. The scientific deductions which emerge from these observations are reserved for detailed discussion in another place. The reader will, however, note on reading over the cases, that clinical improvement invariably went hand in hand with improvement in the phagocytic power, and that the negative phase which everywhere supervenes upon inoculation revealed itself to blood examinations in the form of diminution of the phagocytic power and in some cases to clinical observation in the development of fresh pimples

[1] On Therapeutic Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines, *British Medical Journal*, May 9, 1903 (pp. 226–245 *supra*).

and boils. This transient and, from the clinical point of view, insignificant aggravation of the symptoms is full of instruction, inasmuch as it is indicative of the possibility of aggravating the patient's condition by the employment of excessive and too frequently repeated doses of vaccine.

The Inoculation Treatment of Tuberculosis.[1]

By A. E. Wright.

A Lecture delivered at St. Mary's Hospital to the party of French Physicians and Surgeons visiting the London Hospitals.

Method of Immunisation copies Nature's Method of Combating Bacterial Infections—Definition of the Technical Terms employed in Connexion with Immunisation—Considerations of the Effects which are Exerted upon the Blood by the Inoculation of Vaccines—Negative and Positive Phase and Cumulation Effects—Regulation of Dosage of Vaccines—Antitubercle Vaccines—Koch's Method of Measuring the Tubercle Agglutinins with a View to the Control of Tuberculin Inoculations—Discovery of the Opsonins and Exploitation of these for the Regulation of the Inoculations—Examples of Desperate Cases of Tubercular Infection treated by Inoculations of T.R. Tuberculin controlled by the Opsonic Index—Concluding Remarks.

Gentlemen,—There are only two methods by which we may attempt to kill off bacteria in the interior of the organism. We may attempt to kill them off by introducing antiseptics into the organism; or we may try to kill them off by the agency of protective substances produced by the organism. The former method has had its day. It has been tried upon the most extensive scale and has failed. It has in particular failed in tuberculosis. I propose to consider with you the alternative method of treating bacterial infection—the method of immunisation.

I will ask you to note on the very threshold that the method of immunisation is Nature's method. No one recovers from an acute or chronic bacterial disease unless it be by the production of protective substances in his organism; no one acquires protection against a disease except, again, by the production of protective substances; and finally, no one lives in the presence of infection and repels that infection except by the aid of the protective substances of his blood.

It is of the utmost importance that it should come home to you that we are dealing here, not with mere speculation, but with a generalization which rests upon a large body of verifiable fact. By the aid of a comparatively simple technique—technique which I have from time to time described in the scientific journals—it is now possible, not only to demonstrate in a drop of blood drawn from the finger the

[1] Reprinted from the *Clinical Journal*, Nov. 9, 1904.

protective substances which come into consideration in connexion with all our ordinary bacterial diseases, but also to measure the content of the blood in these substances in an accurate manner. By the help of these methods every laboratory worker will, I think, be able to satisfy himself (*a*) that the blood of those who become the subjects of a bacterial invasion is deficient in protective substances ; and (*b*) that by an injection of corresponding bacterial vaccines the content of the blood in protective substances can in practically all cases be increased. I propose to point out to you that this can be done in the case of those who are already the subjects of tubercular infection.

Let me at the outset define for you the technical terms which I propose to employ, and them briefly rehearse the first principles of the physiology of immunisation.

Protective substances may be defined as substances which enter into destructive chemical combination with bacteria, or, as the case may be, with other foreign elements introduced into the organism, either directly into the blood-stream, or by hypodermic injection. Such protective elements are never absent from the blood. We can, for instance, in the case of every sample of human blood, demonstrate the presence in it of protective substances which enter into chemical combination with the tubercle bacillus. We may signify the fact that these protective substances turn towards and enter into chemical combination with the tubercle bacillus by denoting them, in conformity with the convenient system of nomenclature devised by Ehrlich, as *tuberculo-tropic* substances.

A *vaccine* is any chemical substance which when introduced into the organism causes there an elaboration of protective substances. I can put it more precisely if you will let me put it into technical language. *A vaccine is a substance which induces in the organism an elaboration of bacterio-tropic elements ; a tubercle vaccine a substance which induces in the organism an elaboration of tuberculo-tropic elements.*

We may now take a further step and inquire in what manner the introduction of a vaccine into the system is interrelated with a new formation of protective substances in the organism.

The interrelation appears to be this. The bacterial substance inoculated—and the bacterial vaccine is always a derivative of the bacterial protoplasm—enters into combination with the bacterio-tropic elements already present in the organism, and thus withdraws from the organism a certain quantum of protective substances. Under the stimulus of this deprivation the cells of the organism are stimulated to activity, with the result that the bacterio-tropic substances which have been withdrawn are replaced with usury.

This theoretical conception, whatever may be its value, will serve at any rate to impress upon your minds the sequence of events that can be actually observed to occur. Immediately after the injection

of the vaccine there supervenes, as I showed first, in connexion with anti-typhoid inoculation, and afterwards in connexion with anti-staphylococcus and anti-tubercular inoculation, a *negative phase*—that is to say, a phase in which there is a diminished content of protective substances in the blood. That negative phase is succeeded by a *positive phase* characterized by an increased content of protective substances in the blood. This inflowing wave of protective substances rapidly flows out again, but leaves behind in the blood a more or less permanently increased content of protective substances. I have spoken of this whole sequence of events as the "*law of the ebb and flow and reflow and maintained high tide of immunity.*"

All this has reference to the effects of a single inoculation undertaken with a dose of vaccine which is sufficient to produce a certain constitutional disturbance. When only a small dose of vaccine is inoculated the negative phase may be so fugitive as hardly to appear on the record, but the positive phase will be correspondingly diminished. When an unduly large dose of vaccine is inoculated the negative phase is prolonged and much accentuated. The positive phase may in such a case even make default.

We have here earnest reason for considering the question of dose. It will be obvious that if we, in the case of a patient who is already the subject of a bacterial invasion, produce by the injection of an excessive dose of a vaccine a prolonged and well-marked negative phase, we may, instead of benefiting the patient, bring about conditions which will enable the bacteria to run riot in his system.

If attention to dose is essential in the case of a single inoculation of a bacterial vaccine, much more is it essential where we undertake a series of successive inoculations. We are in such a case superposing the effect of one inoculation upon the other. Now, consideration will show that we may obtain, according as we choose our time and our dose wisely or unwisely, either a cumulative effect in the direction of a positive phase or a cumulative effect in the direction of a negative phase. We may, in other words, by the agency of two or more successive inoculations, raise the patient by successive steps to a higher level of immunity, or, as the case may be, bring him down by successive steps to a lower level. We can select the appropriate time and dose with certainty only by examining the blood and measuring its content in protective substances in each case before re-inoculating.

If we omit such measurement and work in the dark, our sequent inoculations may quite well fall upon a negative phase period when the content of the blood in protective substances is still below par. In such a case, negative phase would be superinduced upon negative phase, and cumulation would take place in the direction of diminishing the patient's resistance. The dangers which might be associated with such a cumulation in the direction of the negative phase are, I think, more than sufficiently exemplified in the fatal results which have in some cases

supervened upon the inoculation of progressively increasing doses of Koch's old tuberculin.

You will, perhaps, think that the chances of cumulation in the direction of a negative phase are very remote if during the course of inoculations the clinical symptons are watched. No doubt when you have produced a serious negative phase effect the fact will be intimated to you by clinical symptoms. My point is that that warning will be conveyed to you too late. It is conveyed to you only after you have lost the advantage gained by the foregoing inoculations and undone all the good you have done. The results obtained by Madsen and Jörgensen by a daily repeated inoculation upon animals of quite small daily doses of a bacterial vaccine exhibit very clearly the risks associated with any mechanical scheme of inoculation. In each case the initiation of a series of inoculations was followed by a progressive rise in the protective substances of the blood. But sooner or later a day arrived in each case when the machinery of immunisation had made its maximum response. When that point was arrived at the further inoculations served only to bring the content of the blood in protective substances down with a run. If I plot out to you in a graphic manner what was obtained in Madsen and Jörgensen's experiments, you will see that small daily inoculations gave first a gradually ascending curve which passed up into a steep peak, and succeeding immediately upon this rise an equally steep fall, terminating in a more gradual slope. You may conveniently think of this as a roof-tree curve. Your human patient, who has been raised to a higher level of immunity by successive small inoculations, will, in like manner sooner or later, if too much is required of him, cease to respond to your inoculations, and simply slide down the slope of a "roof-tree" curve. If you have not been measuring the content of his blood in protective substances, your patient may probably have arrived at a lower level of resistance than that from which he originally started before symptoms of intoxication draw your attention to the fact.

These fundamental principles of the art of immunisation having been made clear, I will pass on and consider with you the question of the tubercle vaccine.

You will remember that I defined a bacterial vaccine as a substance which was capable of inducing an elaboration of anti-bacterial substances in the organism, and a tubercle vaccine as a substance which was capable of inducing an elaboration of anti-tubercular, or, as I prefer to call them, tuberculo-tropic substances. I indicated to you also that every bacterial vaccine is derived from the corresponding bacterial culture. Such vaccines need not, as was assumed by Pasteur, consist of living cultures. It has been adequately established in connexion with many bacterial vaccines that their vaccinating efficacy is not impaired by sterilization by the action of moderate heat (60° C.). I would lay stress on the fact that this holds true also in connexion with tubercle vaccine.

We pass to consider in what form a tubercle vaccine is accessible. It is accessible in the form of Koch's T.R. tuberculin. This consists, I may remind you, of a fine tubercle powder (obtained by comminuting tubercle bacilli by the action of machinery) which has been brought into suspension in definite quantity (10 mgr. to 1 c.c.)[1] in dilute glycerine.

You can, as already indicated, provide for the efficient sterilization of this vaccine without impairing its efficacy by heating the preparation to 60° C. for one hour. Most of the inoculations I have undertaken have been with a vaccine thus treated. I, however, propose hereafter to experiment with a vaccine which I have recently made on exactly the same lines as the staphylococcus and typhoid vaccine—to wit, a simple sterilized suspension of tubercle bacilli standardized by the procedure for enumeration under the microscope which has been described by me elsewhere.[2]

I pass from the question of the vaccine to the question of the dosage, and in particular to the question of the scheme of operations. In order to arrive at the scheme of operations to be adopted in the therapeutic application of the vaccine to those who are the subjects of tubercular infection, we have to consider the conditions with which we are confronted. The tubercular patient has probably at the onset, as compared with the normal man, possessed a deficient power of resistance. Again, he has in most cases not responded to infection by any increased elaboration of protective substances. This was, at any rate, the condition of affairs in the seventeen cases[3] of localized tubercular infection which I have tabulated in the *Royal Society's Proceedings*, vol. lxxiv, October, 1904.[4]

In dealing with these cases the following will appear to be our proper line of policy. We have by increasing the content of the blood in protective substances to try to forestall any dissemination of the tubercular bacilli by the channel of the blood stream. Further, we have to try to inhibit the growth, and if possible to bring about the destruction of the tubercle bacilli in the local nidus of infection by leading through that nidus in a continuous stream a lymph rich in protective substances.

I may point out in this last connexion that protective substances are continuously withdrawn from the lymph as it comes in contact within the infected tissues with the invading bacilli. Captain Douglas and I have shown in the papers already referred to that the stagnant lymph in an ordinary abscess contains hardly a trace of antibacterial

[1] But *vide supra*, p. 123, *note* 2. [2] *Lancet*, July 5, 1902.

[3] There is, it is to be noted, also another class of cases where the phenomena are apparently complicated by processes of self-immunisation comparable to those found in connexion with general infections. This class of cases, which numbers among it many of the subjects of chronic phthisis, is here provisionally left out of consideration.

[4] Pp. 118 *supra*.

substances, and that the evacuation of the contents of an abscess and the application of fomentations effect a douching of infected tissues by a lymph whose content in protective substances is not less than that of the circulating blood. Further, it has been shown by us in a case of tubercular peritonitis that the fluid contained in the peritoneum was five times poorer in protective substances than the patient's blood. In connexion with this, we put forward the suggestion that the evacuation of the old and stagnant lymph and the transudation of new and potent lymph from the blood vessels furnished the probable explanation of the advantage which is so often obtained in tubercular peritonitis from the evacuation of the ascitic fluid.

In the scheme of operations sketched out above we must count *as time lost* to the patient any period during which the protective substances stand in his blood at the low level at which those substances are wont to stand in the untreated patient.

We must count as *a period of retrogression* for the patient any period during which his protective substances sink below the ordinary low level of his untreated state.

We must count as *a period of progress* for the patient every day during which the content of his blood in protective substances stands at a higher level than that of his untreated state.

Lastly, we must *deduct from the period of progress* every hour, when, by reason of the stagnation of the lymph circulation in the seat of infection, the protective substances of the blood cease to come into application upon the tubercle bacilli in the foci of infection.

Only those who will meditate upon these points will appreciate to the full the difficulties which confront the immunisator.

I hope to be able to convince you that, these multiform difficulties notwithstanding, it has been possible in nearly every case to gain some advantage from the injection of the tubercle vaccine, and in some seemingly desperate cases to achieve what will, I think, appeal to you as complete success. I think the cases I propose to show you warrant us in hoping for even better results in the future, when the programme which I have sketched out shall have been more closely adhered to than it was possible to do in connexion with these first tentative efforts.

Before I deal with the cases I would turn aside for a moment and consider with you what has emerged with respect to the protective substances of the blood.

When I addressed myself, two years ago, to the study of the protective substances which come into consideration in connexion with the tubercle bacillus, nothing was known about these beyond the fact that it was possible by the aid of the so-called homogeneous tubercle cultures of Arloing, and also by the aid of homogeneous suspensions of a tubercle powder (made by Koch by the trituration of tubercle bacilli) to obtain in certain instances—in particular, as Koch showed, in the case of patients who had been treated with his T.R. tuberculin—an agglutination reac-

tion comparable to that obtained in connexion with typhoid fever and antityphoid inoculation.

A fallacy in the form of spontaneous agglutination was associated with the technique prescribed by Koch. It, however, emerged in the course of my work that this fallacy could be avoided by employing, in lieu of the physiological salt solution used by Koch for the suspension of his powder, a salt solution ten times weaker. I may, perhaps, claim that by attention to this point, and by the adoption of the system of technique described by me in the *Lancet* of July 25, 1903, the difficulties associated with the measurement of the tubercle agglutinins in the blood have been overcome.

Until some months ago the measurement of the content of the blood in these tubercle agglutinins constituted the only means of obtaining information from the patient's blood with regard to the success or ill-success of the attempted immunisation. The investigation of the blood by that method gave all too dim a light.

Of late, working on the problem as to how the organism protects itself against those numerous species of pathogenetic micro-organisms which offer absolute resistance to the bactericidal action of the serum, and in particular on the problem as to how the human organism protects itself against tubercle and staphylococcus infections, and as to how it reacts to the inoculation of tubercle vaccine and staphylococcus vaccine, I have found, in conjunction with Captain Stewart Douglas, that there exists in the normal serum, and there exists in larger quantity in the serum of the successfully inoculated patient, an element which enters into chemical combination with the staphylococcus, the tubercle bacillus, or other micro-organism, in such a manner as to prepare it for phagocytosis. We have called that protective element an *opsōnin* (Latin, *opsōno*—I cook for table, I prepare pabulum for). We have demonstrated that phagocytosis cannot take place apart from the action exerted by the specific opsonin upon the micro-organism, and we have shown that opsonic action is destroyed by heating the serum to 60° C. In this opsonin we have, it would seem, an essentially important protective substance. It is, further, a substance which lends itself to very accurate measurement.

That measurement is effected by a modification of Leishman's method, i.e., by mixing together in a capillary tube in each case one volume of the patient's serum, one volume of a suspension of the tubercle bacillus, and one volume of washed corpuscles obtained from the citrated blood of a normal man. The capillary tube is now placed in an incubator for any convenient period, generally for fifteen to twenty minutes. After that period microscopic films are prepared. After appropriate staining the first thirty to forty white corpuscles which come into view are examined, the number of bacilli ingested by each white corpuscle being noted down. The "phagocytic count" is then arrived at by adding together the number of ingested bacteria and dividing by the number

of leucocytes examined. This "phagocytic count" is compared with the "phagocytic count" obtained in films made with the contents of a capillary tube similar in all respects, except in the respect that there has been employed in it, instead of the patient's serum, the serum of a normal person. The ratio in which the phagocytic count of the patient's blood stands to the phagocytic count of the normal blood (taken in each case as unity) is conveniently spoken of as the "opsonic index." By the aid of this method the patient's progress or regress can be very accurately followed.

I have left myself only too little time to go into the history of the patients whom I have here for your inspection, and to supplement what I can show you here by reference to other cases.

Case 1.—The woman you see before you has, as you see, the aspect of robust health. Her history is as follows: Early in January, 1903, her age being then thirty-three—she was admitted to Mr. Silcock's ward for abdominal pain and distension associated with fever and loss of weight. These symptoms had been first noticed in the previous September. Mr. Silcock operated on January 22, the abdomen being opened by an incision five inches in length. The typical appearances of tubercular peritonitis were brought into view and the surface of the intestine was seen to be in places studded with miliary tubercles. After the evacuation of a very considerable quantity of fluid the peritoneum was washed out and the wound was closed, a drainage-tube being left in position.

After the operation the fever still continued. It reached 102° F. every evening during the first week; it reached 101° F. every evening for the next fortnight; and it still ranged up to 100° F. every evening two months after the operation. All this time the wound was continuing to discharge, and the patient was becoming very weak and emaciated—being quite unable to turn unassisted in bed.

Treatment by tuberculin inoculation was begun on March 17th. Within a few days the evening temperature had sunk away to 99°, and it came down to the normal on April 28, and remained normal (except when slightly disturbed by certain of the tuberculin inoculations) for the three months which the patient still spent in hospital. From the beginning of the tuberculin treatment onwards the patient improved in strength and put on flesh. In June she was able to sit up in the afternoons. Her body weight was now 105 lb. In July she was discharged from hospital, the abdominal wound having now completely healed except for a narrow sinus. The tuberculin treatment was continued, the patient being treated first at home and afterwards as an out-patient.

Six months afterwards the sinus had completely closed and the patient's weight had by March, 1904, increased to 132 lb. She had, in other words, increased 27 lb in weight in six months, and had passed within a year from a seemingly desperate condition to a condition of, I think, perfect health, such as you now see her in.

Case 2.—The patient whom I now present to you is, as you see, a very well nourished woman, aged forty-three years, who, perhaps, looks a little pale. She was admitted to the hospital under the care of Dr. Lees in the middle of March, 1903, complaining of very frequent micturition associated with severe local pain on micturition and dragging pain in the loins, in particular on the left side. The urine contained pus, epithelial casts, and tubercle bacilli in such numbers that they could be demonstrated in large clumps in every field of a microscope in preparations prepared from the urinary sediment. Examination of the bladder revealed the existence of a large open ulcer. The kidneys were enlarged and tender, the left one in particular was affected, and suspicious signs were detected in the apex of one lung. Tuberculin treatment was begun in the middle of April. The effect exerted upon the body weight during the period the patient was in hospital is exhibited in the column of figures which I have placed on the board :—

	lb.		lb.
April 20	91	June 15	103½
„ 28	96	„ 22	105
May 11	92½	„ 29	107
„ 19	93	July 6	109¾
June 1	96	„ 13	107¼
„ 8	101		

To one incidental feature in that record I should like to draw your attention. The drop of body weight which is recorded on May 11 coincided on the one hand with the development of increased local pain and symptoms of giddiness and flushing, and on the other hand with a rapid fall in the agglutinating power of the blood, which is displayed on the agglutination chart [1] I have placed on the table. These were all, I take it, symptoms of the supervention of a negative phase dependent upon a too hasty inoculation of progressively increasing doses of vaccine.

After leaving the hospital in July, much alleviated in the matter of pain and frequency, the patient attended as an out-patient, and under the treatment her weight in September, 1903, reached 119 lb. The tuberculin inoculations have been continued up to recently. All this while the tubercle bacilli, which have been examined for almost every ten days, have become gradually less numerous. Since May last they have completely disappeared from the urine. The patient, none the less, still suffers from serious bladder trouble—due, as appeared recently on examination, to cicatrization and great thickening of the bladder walls, and possibly to some super-added ulceration referable to septic invasion by the bacillus coli and by a Gram-staining diplococcus—micro-organisms which have been throughout present in millions in her urine.

You will see from her good general condition and from the history of the facts I have given to you that the tubercular infection has in all probability been overcome.

[1] *This chart is reproduced on p. 271 infra.*

Case 3.—The patient I now present to you is, as you see, a man of about thirty years of age. His history is as follows: In the autumn of 1902 the patient developed tubercular glands on the left side of the neck and a tubercular abscess on the point of the left shoulder of the same side. He was admitted to this hospital, and was operated upon for the first time in January, 1903. The wound becoming invaded with tubercle and refusing to heal. further operative procedures were undertaken. In all six successive scraping, extirpating and skin-grafting operations were undertaken during the course of the year, the wound becoming in each case re-infected, and the area of ulceration being increased. In December, 1903, when the patient came up for treatment by inoculation, the whole area from the point of the shoulder to the base of the ear formed a single deep eroded ulcer. The pinna of the ear was half eaten away (you can still judge of that), and immediately underneath it there was a deep crateriform ulcer which looked as if it was going to break into the pharynx. The left side of the face was distorted by swelling, giving the patient the appearance which would go along with a one-sided attack of mumps. The axilla was occupied by a gland which was as large as a pigeon's egg, and the patient was haggard and very emaciated. As you see for yourselves, he is now, if somewhat sallow, yet a not unhealthy-looking man. You will see, as he strips, that the whole of the area I have described to you as previously occupied by the tuberculous ulcer, with the exception of an area about the size of a threepenny piece, which is still covered by a scab, has cicatrized and skinned over. You see how soft and elastic that skin is. It differs from the rest of his skin only in being a little pinker. The glands in the axilla can now no longer be felt.

I may mention that, in addition to inoculating this patient with tuberculin, I gave him one or two inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine with a view to purging the ulcer from the staphylococcus which had invaded its surface. Further, I would point out that I have during the last six weeks or two months succeeded in hurrying up the final processes of repair by painting upon the wound a 20 per cent. solution of gelatine, to which I added 2 per cent. of formalin. This sets into firm, insoluble antiseptic skin.

In connexion with this case, I may perhaps refer to two further cases of tubercular glands to which I have applied the inoculation treatment.

In the first of these cases the patient was a young married woman who had undergone at the hands of two distinguished London surgeons three successive operations for the extirpation of glands. When she presented herself for treatment in January last three or four glands could be felt in the neck, the largest one being about the size of a small walnut. After the diagnosis of tubercle had been confirmed by a test inoculation undertaken with Koch's old tuberculin, the vaccinal treatment with the T.R. tuberculin was inaugurated. After six inoculations

conducted with doses which were gradually increased from $\frac{1}{500}$ mgr. to a maximum of $\frac{1}{50}$ mgr.,[1] the glands could no longer be felt and the dragging pains in the neck had entirely disappeared. A period of three months was occupied by these inoculations. Since the date of the disappearance of the glands a few more reinforcing inoculations have been given with a view to preventing any return of the symptoms. Up to the presence there has been no recurrence.

The second of the cases of tuberculous glands above referred to was the case of the wife of a medical man. She had suffered from childhood from swollen glands in the neck on one side of the neck. These had become the source of constant dragging pains, and the largest gland situated under the angle of the jaw, was large enough to produce some disfigurement. In this case also the glands have been very considerably reduced in size, while the dragging pains have completely disappeared and the whole physical condition has improved in a remarkable manner.

I ought, perhaps, here to point out that if I include in my category of tubercular glands treated two cases of Hodgkin's disease, which were both in a very grave condition when they were taken in hand, I have in addition to the three cases already recounted also two failures to record. In both these cases the diagnosis of tubercular infection was confirmed by a test inoculation of Koch's old tuberculin. In both cases very small doses of T.R. tuberculin (doses of $\frac{1}{500}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ mgr.[1]) were employed. In each case very severe constitutional symptoms followed upon every inoculation, and again in each case only a small and transient production of protective substances (only the tubercle agglutinins were measured) was achieved.

Case 4.—The next case I present to you is a woman with lupus. She has, as you see, lost her left arm, and you can see that the stump of that arm, the sternum, the right hand, and the face and neck on both sides are extensively affected with the disease.

Her history is as follows : She developed a tubercular infection of the glands of the neck at the age of fourteen. Then suppuration supervened and the abscesses were opened, the wounds became infected and other glands also became involved. Later tubercular disease developed in the little finger of the right hand. The two terminal joints of that finger were removed fifteen years ago, when the patient was sixteen. About this time lupus broke out on her face and on her left arm and hand. At the age of nineteen the patient underwent treatment with Koch's original tuberculin. She received three to four inoculations a day (the total of her inoculations amounting to 150). This treatment resulted in violent inflammatory reaction in the patches of lupus, a piece of bone sloughed out of her left arm, and she remained in hospital seriously ill, for thirteen weeks. She attributes—and no doubt rightly—the aggravation of symptoms and ultimate loss of her arm to these inoculations.

We can see that there must have been produced a cumulative negative phase.

[1] *Vide p.* 113, *note* 2.

After a respite vigorous treatment was resumed in another hospital. The lupus patches were then frequently scraped and many glands were extirpated from the neck.

In 1900 the Finsen light treatment was resorted to and was persevered in for eighteen months. This effected superficial improvement in the condition of the face and neck, but the disease continued to spread in the deeper structures, and in particular in the bones of the left arm. Finally it became necessary to amputate this limb.

The disease now re-invaded the stump and broke out in the point of the shoulder and in the front of the chest.

Röntgen rays were now tried, unavailingly. Finally, in December, 1903, the patient, who was then in a very reduced physical condition, was referred to me by Dr. Graham Little for treatment by tuberculin inoculations. You see now that the patient is in a tolerably satisfactory condition in the matter of her general health. Her body weight has gone up and has reached 141½ lb., as much as 5 lb. having on one occasion been gained in the interval between two successive inoculations. The discharge from the sinus over the sternum has practically ceased. The same holds true of the sinus in the stump of the left arm. The open sore on the point of the shoulder has healed up, and the patches of lupus on the face seem to me to be becoming quiescent.

Case 5.—The patient I now present to you is, as you see, another case of lupus. She has the appearance of a child, but is, she tells me, in her twentieth year. When referred to me for treatment by Dr. Graham Little she was extremely emaciated, and no doubt under-fed, her bones protruded through the skin of her back somewhat after the fashion of the bones in fish that has been split and dried. The point of her nose, which you now see presents the appearance of healing, was covered with a thick mass of scabs superposed upon a very angry-looking patch of lupus. The angle of the jaw and the front of the neck were occupied by patches of lupus in a similar condition. These are, as you see, now represented by somewhat swollen cicatrices. Both her feet and her hands were affected with lupus. Her hands in particular constituted a mass of ulceration, the bones of the hand being also affected in many places. The condition of these is somewhat ameliorated.

I have under treatment, or have had under treatment, also other cases of lupus for different periods. I think I can say that every one of them has improved, with the exception of one of the first cases I treated. Here, owing, I think, to the too rapid increase of doses of vaccine, the protective substances (agglutinins) which had developed under the stimulus of the first inoculations were subsequently lost.

And now just a few words in conclusion. I have endeavoured to place before you the principles which ought, I think, to guide us in the therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines. I have dealt more particularly with the results of the application of that method to the treatment of tuberculosis. But I would point out to you that the method

is one which has a perfectly general application in connexion with localized bacterial infections.

I have here, for instance, an example of the application of the method to the treatment of a chronic staphylococcus infection. The patient I here show you, one of our medical students, is one out of a series of fifty or more patients which I have treated (almost all with complete success) by inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine for different forms of staphylococcus infection. You have here, as you see, to deal with a very severe case of acne. Before inoculation each acne spot became, as it usually does, the seat of a staphylococcus infection and was converted into a pustule. The inoculations, which were undertaken about a year after, have accomplished their purpose. The patient is, as you see, free from every trace of pustulation. Time does not allow even of my outlining the many other practical applications which can be made of the method of therapeutic inoculation with sterilized bacterial cultures. It may, however, interest you to hear that the method has already been successfully applied by me to widely different cases. I may particularize : (1) a case of acute coli infection of the biliary passages, where after removal by operation of an impacting biliary calculus, the fever and jaundice continued, and the bile was flowing away through the external wound by reason, as it seemed, of the plugging of the bile-duct by inspissated mucus ; (2) a case of coli cystitis which had continued for sixteen years : (3) a case of a localized infection by the micrococcus Melitensis supervening upon an attack of Malta fever ; and lastly (4) a case of pneumococcus infection of the salivary glands which was associated with very burdensome salivation. In this last case, in contrast to the others, amelioration only has been achieved.

On the General Principles of the Therapeutic Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines as applied to the Treatment of Tuberculous Infection.[1]

By A. E. Wright.

From the Department for Therapeutic Inoculation, St. Mary's Hospital, W.

Preliminary Matter—Train of Events which follows upon the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine—Train of Events which follows upon the Inoculation of a Series of Doses of a Bacterial Vaccine—Consideration of the Principles which ought to Regulate the Dose of Vaccine—Manner in which the Organism conducts itself when it becomes the Subject of Bacterial Invasion; and Discrimination of Bacterial Infections into (*a*) Bacterial Infections where the Machinery of Immunisation is Inactive, and (*b*) Bacterial Infections where the Machinery of Immunisation is called into Action—Conditions under which Pathogenetic Micro-Organisms cultivate themselves in the Interior of an Infected Organism—Treatment of Strictly Localized Tubercular Infections by the Aid of Therapeutic Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine—Discussion of the Means which are available for sending a Stream of Antibacterial Lymph through the Focus of Infection—Digression on the Results of Ordinary Surgical Methods as Applied to the Treatment of strictly Localized Tuberculosis—On the Results which have been obtained by the Treatment of Localized Tubercular Infections by the Aid of Therapeutic Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine (Koch's New Tuberculin) controlled by Determinations of the Opsonic Index—Treatment of Systemic Tubercular Infections by the Therapeutic Inoculation of a Tubercle Vaccine—Conditions which we have to take into Account in Connexion with Ordinary Continued Fevers—Special Conditions which we have to take into Account in Connexion with Pyrexial Phthisis and other Localized Tubercular Infections which are associated with Pyrexia—Possibility in Connexion with Pyrexial Phthisis and other Localized Tubercular Infections which are Associated with Pyrexia of quieting the Circulation and Staunching the Lymph Stream in such a way as to arrest the Auto-Inoculations, converting the Systemic Infection in this manner into a purely Localized Infection—Consideration of the Question as to how far the Patient has been brought in the Direction of a Cure when his Pyrexia has been abolished and his Auto-Inoculations have been arrested by Confinement to Bed—Programme of Treatment which would appear to be Indicated in the Case of Pyrexial Phthisis, or other Localized Tubercular Infection which may be associated with Pyrexia.

1 Reprinted from the *Transactions of the Medico-Chirurgical Society*, vol. lxxxix, 1906.

PART I.

PRELIMINARY MATTER.

WHAT I have to say to-night on the subject of the treatment of tuberculous infection by the therapeutic inoculation of tubercle vaccine may conveniently be prefaced (*a*) by a recital of the train of events which supervene in the blood upon the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine,[1] or, as the case may be, upon a succession of such inoculations; (*b*) by a consideration of the principles which may properly guide us in determining in the case of each successive inoculation the dose of vaccine to be administered; (*c*) by a brief account of the manner in which the organism conducts itself when it becomes the victim of a bacterial invasion; and (*d*) by an exposition of the conditions—so far as these are known to us—under which pathogenetic bacteria cultivate themselves in the infected organism.

Train of Events which follows upon the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine.

The changes in the antibacterial power of the blood which supervene upon the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine were for the first time investigated by the aid of quantitative methods and upon man in connexion with my work on antityphoid inoculation. That work has been followed up by similar researches conducted by myself and my pupils and fellow-workers in connexion with the inoculation of Malta fever vaccine, tubercle vaccine, plague vaccine, pneumococcus vaccine, staphylococcus vaccine, streptococcus vaccine, gonococcus vaccine, proteus vaccine, and a series of vaccines made from different strains of the *Bacillus coli*. All of these vaccines, with the exception only of the plague vaccine, have come into application in connexion with the treatment of the corresponding bacterial infections.

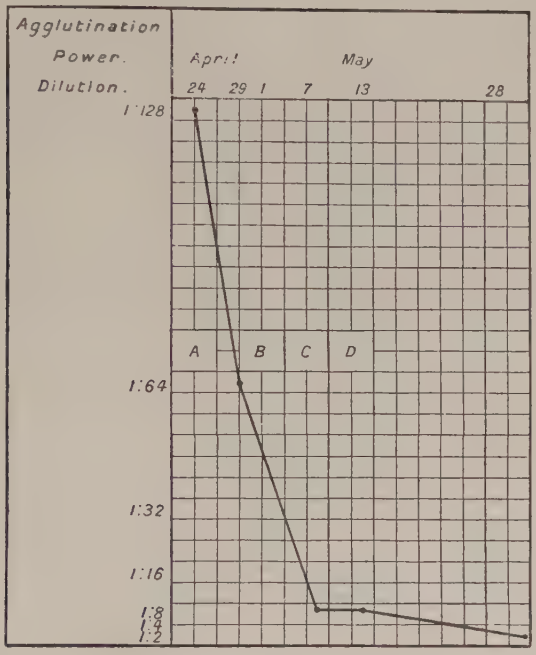
Upon the inoculation of each of these vaccines without exception there has followed one and the same train of events. That train of events is as follows: (1) Upon the inoculation of the vaccine there supervenes a period of intoxication which is characterized by a decline in the antibacterial[2] power of the blood. This "negative phase" is more or less accentuated and prolonged, according as a larger or smaller dose of the vaccine is inoculated. In the former case the negative phase may disclose itself to clinical observation by a temperature reaction and con-

[1] The term "vaccine" is here and throughout this paper employed to denote a sterilized and standardized suspension of micro-organisms.

[2] The particular antibacterial element which was measured was in the large majority of cases the *opsonin*.

stitutional disturbance. In the latter case the negative phase may be quite unaccompanied by clinical symptoms. (2) Upon the negative phase there follows a "positive phase." This phase, whose characteristic feature is an increase in the antibacterial power of the blood, corresponds to a period of increased resistance. The curve whose trace

CHART 1 (by Author).



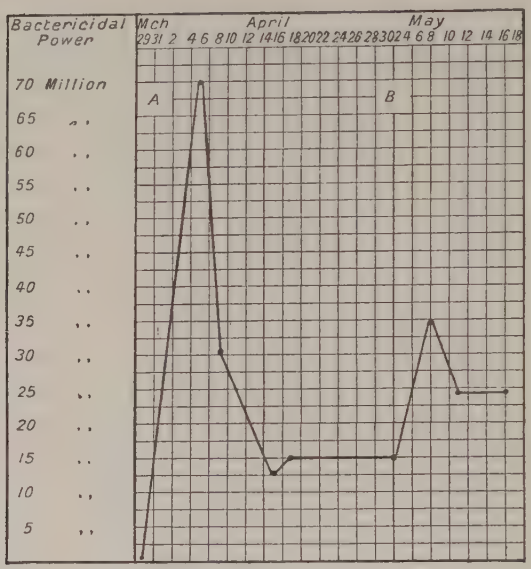
Relating to E. S——, a case of tubercular cystitis, treated by inoculations of new tuberculin (Case 4, p. 292 *infra*), showing that a cumulation in the direction of the negative phase is produced by the inoculation of a series of inappropriately adjusted and inappropriately interspaced doses of a bacterial vaccine. A. Inoculation of 0·01[1] milligramme of the new tuberculin. B. Inoculation of 0·025 milligramme of the new tuberculin. C. Inoculation of 0·05 milligramme of the new tuberculin. D. Inoculation of 0·2 milligramme of the new tuberculin. The method employed for testing the blood was that described by the author, *Lancet*, July 23, 1903.

sets forth the changes in the anti-bacterial power of the blood runs up in many cases into a sharp peak and sinks away, first comparatively rapidly and afterwards more slowly. There is associated in many cases with the climax of the positive phase a sense of increased physical vigour and a very pronounced feeling of well being. (3) After the negative and positive phase, which train of events I have ventured to speak as of "the ebb and

[1] See p. 123, *note* 2.

flow and reflow of the tide of immunity," the blood may be maintained for a variable period (after tubercle inoculations, when *the infection has been satisfactorily got under*, occasionally for as long as a month) at a somewhat higher level of antibacterial power than before inoculation. Or—and this in connexion with inoculations with tubercle vaccine is a

CHART 2 (by Author in conjunction with Captain W. Glen Liston, I.M.S.).



Relating to a rabbit which was being immunised against the typhoid bacillus, showing that a cumulation in the direction of the positive phase may be obtained by the inoculation of appropriately adjusted and interspaced doses of a bacterial vaccine. A. First inoculation; 5 cubic centimetres broth culture of the typhoid bacillus. B. Second inoculation; 5 cubic centimetres broth culture of the typhoid bacillus. The bactericidal power which is charted represents the bactericidal power of, in each case, 1 c.c. of freshly drawn serum. The method employed for measuring the bactericidal power of the blood was that described by the author, *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxi, 1902.

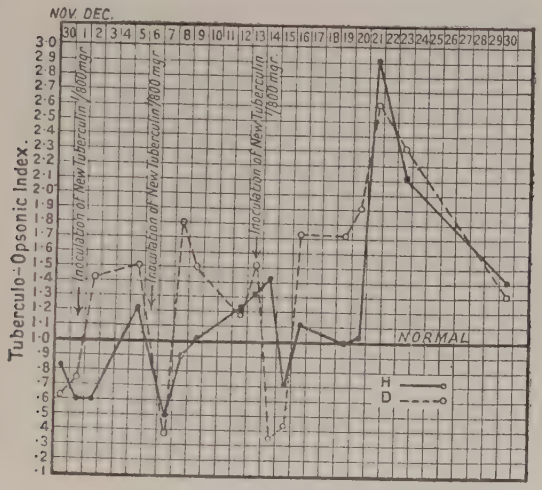
more usual event—the antibacterial power of the blood may over and over again fall back after ten days or a fortnight to the level at which it stood anterior to inoculation.

Train of Events which follows upon the Inoculation of a Series of Doses of a Bacterial Vaccine.

I originally pictured to myself that a cumulative effect in the direction of the negative phase such as is exhibited in the curve here shown (Chart

1) would occur in a regular manner where re-inoculation is undertaken in the negative phase of a preceding inoculation, and that vice versâ a cumulative effect in the direction of the positive phase such as is exhibited in the companion diagram here shown (Chart 2) would be achieved in a regular manner by reinoculating in the positive phase of a previous

Chart 3 (by Author).


NOV. DEC.
30 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30
Tuberculo-Opsonic Index.
3·0 2·9 2·8 2·7 2·6 2·5 2·4 2·3 2·2 2·1 2·0 1·9 1·8 1·7 1·6 1·5 1·4 1·3 1·2 1·1 1·0 ·9 ·8 ·7 ·6 ·5 ·4 ·3 ·2 ·1
Inoculation of New Tuberculin 1/800 mgr.
Inoculation of New Tuberculin 1/800 mgr.
Inoculation of New Tuberculin 1/800 mgr.
NORMAL
H
D

Relating to H and D, two children with tuberculous glands, who were treated with therapeutic inoculations of new tuberculin. The curve shows the condition of the blood in each case before inoculation, and the changes in the tuberculo-opsonic power which supervened upon the three first inoculations.

inoculation. Further experience has shown me that, while cumulation in the direction of the negative phase is a phenomenon which must everywhere be reckoned with, it is in connexion with inoculations undertaken with tubercle vaccine difficult, if not impossible, to achieve cumulation in the direction of the positive phase. This is clearly brought out in connexion with the two traces in Chart 3, which show the result of an endeavour to achieve in connexion with the inoculation of tubercle vaccine a cumulative effect in the direction of the positive phase. In view of this, and a number of similarly unsuccessful endeavours, I have, in connexion with the inoculation of tubercle vaccine, put out of my thoughts all idea of cumulating positive phase on positive phase. I am now content to treat each inoculation as an independent event, regulating my dose as described.

Consideration of the Principles which ought to Regulate the Dose of Vaccine.

There appears to be everywhere a fixed idea that to secure the greatest yield of protective substances we ought in each case to begin with a dose which produces a certain amount of constitutional disturbance, and that we ought in subsequent inoculations to employ doses which increase by geometrical progression. This fixed idea rests as a matter of fact upon the preconception that immunisation cannot be either initiated or followed up apart from constitutional disturbance, and on the further preconceptions that the capacity of the organism for immunising response is practically unlimited, and that the yield of antibacterial substances will increase *pari passu* with the dose. This is not so. I obtain almost every day maximal immunising responses from the inoculation of doses of tuberculin which have not produced any constitutional disturbance. Further, I have for periods extending over a year continued to inoculate with doses of new tuberculin corresponding to from $\frac{1}{1000}$ to $\frac{1}{600}$ milligramme of tubercle powder[1] without registering any falling off in the immunising response. Again, I have in some of these cases repeatedly registered worse and not better results whenever larger doses than these were employed. Lastly, I have before my mind the fact that the horses which are, in connexion with the manufacture of diphtheria antitoxin, inoculated with large doses of diphtheria toxin, all sooner or later lose their power of responding to the stimulus of inoculation, and recover that power of response only after a long period of rest.

In view of these facts I would submit that the whole question of dosage requires to be reconsidered. For myself, I am day by day more impressed with the fact that the machinery of immunisation can be brought into action by very small stimuli, and that it can very easily be overtaxed. In accordance with these facts I regard it as a matter of great moment, especially in connexion with immunisation against tubercle, to employ in every case the smallest doses which will elicit a satisfactory response; to repeat the dose only when the effect of the preceding inoculation is passing off; and to increase the dose only when it becomes clear that the dose previously employed is ceasing to evoke a sufficient immunising response. Acting in accordance with this principle, I now begin with a quantum of tuberculin corresponding to not more than $\frac{1}{1000}$ milligramme of the tubercle powder, and now never advance to doses larger than $\frac{1}{600}$ milligramme.[1]

I may before passing on just refer to two further points with regard to the dosage of tubercle vaccine.

Where on observing the results of a series of inoculations I find that the negative phase phenomena are becoming with each inocu-

[1] The doses in this paper have reference in each case to the weight of tubercle powder stated to be held in suspension in the new tuberculin as issued. (*But vide p.* 123, *note* 2.

lation more pronounced, I know that I am exceeding my proper dose. Where, on the contrary, the negative phase phenomena are becoming after each inoculation less well marked I know that I am employing the proper dose and am making good progress.

The last point to which I would call attention is this : Where a dose has been administered prematurely, or where too large a dose has been administered, there may result from this, in the case where the positive phase of the previous inoculation has not yet exhausted itself, only the cutting short of that phase, or, as the case may be, the production of a negative phase which is unduly accentuated and which is followed up somewhat tardily by a positive phase. But the case will also occur where, after the administration of an excessive dose or premature reinoculation, the positive phase makes default. Where the positive phase is long delayed I take it that the proper policy is not to wait indefinitely for its arrival but to reinoculate again with a smaller dose as soon as ever the blood disturbance has come to rest.

Manner in which the Organism conducts itself when it becomes the Subject of Bacterial Invasion ; and Discrimination of Bacterial Infections into (*a*) Bacterial Infections where the Machinery of Immunisation is Inactive, and (*b*) Bacterial Infections where the Machinery of Immunisation is called into Action.

Consideration will make it clear that a knowledge of the effects exerted upon the blood by inoculations of bacterial vaccines will not, taken by itself, constitute a sufficient equipment for the physician who desires to come actively to the aid of the organism when invaded by pathogenetic bacteria. It will manifestly be quite out of question for us to assist in an intelligent manner by inoculation until we have ascertained what action, if any, the infected organism is taking with respect to the invading microbes.

While we are only upon the very threshold of knowledge with respect to these subject matters, certain of the broad general principles have already emerged ; and these, inasmuch as they seem to be of absolutely fundamental importance in connexion with the treatment of bacterial disease, I will venture to lay before you. It emerges in a very clear manner from the already very many thousands of quantitative estimations of the opsonic power of the blood which I and my fellow-workers have conducted in connexion with many forms of bacterial disease, that bacterial infections distribute themselves naturally into two categories. In one class of infections the opsonic power with respect to the infecting micro-organisms hardly varies from day to day, remaining always inferior to that of the normal blood. In another class of infections the opsonic power is continually fluctuating—the range of variation being from far below the normal to far above the normal. These two categories of infections correspond respectively to *strictly localized* and *systemic infections*.

An explanation of the different findings in these two classes of cases readily suggests itself. We are, I think, warranted in conceiving of the low opsonic power which is found in association with strictly localized infections as a condition which dates back to a period anterior to infection. Further, we are, I think, warranted in attributing the circumstance that the opsonic power of the blood remains, in the case of strictly localized bacterial infections, persistently low, to the default of those immunising stimuli which are supplied by the entrance of bacterial elements into the blood. And again we are, I think, warranted in conceiving of the fluctuation of the opsonic power between high and low, which is found in association with systemic infections, as the expression of a periodic activation and inhibition of the machinery of immunisation, brought about by the conveyance of bacterial elements into the blood, in appropriately or, as the case may be, inappropriately adjusted and interspaced doses.

Our strictly localized, and our systemic bacterial infections would in this manner resolve themselves into a category of infections where the stimuli which call forth an increased elaboration of protective substances make default; and into a category of infections where we have to reckon with the delivery of, oftentimes ill-adjusted and oftentimes inappropriately interspaced, auto-inoculations.

In association with this difference between infections which evoke immunising responses and infections which evoke no such responses there emergies a distinction which is of absolutely fundamental importance.

Systemic infections—provided always that the machinery of immunisation is not overtaxed—are infections which terminate ordinarily in death, or in a cure—that cure when it occurs being never indefinitely delayed.

Strictly localized infections do not tend to get well. They are characterized by an altogether indefinite duration.

I need not remind you that, while an acute specific fever will ordinarily run its course within a limit of one, two, or three weeks, a strictly localized infection, such as lupus, may commence in earliest infancy and run on through sixty or even more years, terminating only with the life of the patient.

Conditions under which Pathogenetic Micro-Organisms cultivate themselves in the Interior of an Infected Organism.

With the discovery of the bactericidal properties of the blood of susceptible animals the problem presented itself as to how bacteria could maintain their existence in an organism which was furnished with these bactericidal elements. With the discovery of the agglutinating power of the blood, the parallel problem as to how the infecting micro-organisms can remain unagglutinated in the interior of the organism; and with the discovery of the opsonic power of the blood, the similar problem

as to how the infecting micro-organisms can escape phagocytosis in the organism in the presence of leucocytes, presented themselves for solution.

The general problem as to how bacteria can maintain themselves in an organism which is provided with antibacterial substances has been dealt with by Metchnikoff by a procedure similar to that which was adopted by Alexander the Great in the case of the Gordian knot. Metchnikoff's method of dealing with the problem is to contend that bactericidal, agglutinating, and antibacterial elements generally make their appearance in the blood only after this has been withdrawn from the blood vessels or phagocytes have dissolved in the blood fluids. This contention—which is so congenial to every one who desires to leave out of his reckonings in dealing with bacterial diseases everything that relates to the antibacterial power of the blood—seems to me to be in conflict with the whole of the experience which is won by a systematic comparison of the clinical condition of the patient with the result of quantitative measurements of the antibacterial power of his blood.

I will ask you, therefore, to consider with me whether we have not a very simple solution of the problem before us in the consideration that the infecting micro-organisms cultivate themselves in the organism in every case in regions of *lowered bacteriotropic pressure*—i.e. in regions where antibacterial substances are absent from the tissue fluids or where these contain antibacterial substances in diminished quantity as compared with the circulating blood.

This theory, which was first enunciated by me in a paper written in conjunction with Lamb on "The Distribution of the Agglutinins in the Organism in the Case of Typhoid and Malta Fever," [1] was shown by us to furnish a key to the explanation of our findings in connexion with those infections. Later this theory was shown by Lamb [2] to furnish the key to his findings in connexion with the bacteriolysins in spirillum fever. Lastly, in conjunction with Douglas,[3] and afterwards with Reid,[4] I have been able to show that this theory furnishes the key to the distribution of opsonins in the infected organism, in the case of tuberculosis and a large number of other bacterial infections.

Let me try to put the situation before you as I conceive of it in connexion with micro-organisms cultivating themselves in the tissues. I conceive that these are cultivating themselves under conditions which do not even remotely resemble those which they would have to confront in the circulating blood. In the case of bacteria in the actual bloodstream all the anti-bacterial elements of the organism would come into application upon them. In the case of bacteria cultivating themselves in the tissues, only those antibacterial elements would come into appli-

[1] *Lancet*, December 23, 1899. (pp. 36–44 *supra*).
[2] *Scientific Memoirs by Officers of the Medical and Sanitary Department of the Government of India*, vol. xii, pp. 96 *et seq.*
[3] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxiv, 1904, pp. 151 *et seq.* (pp. 103–105 *supra*).
[4] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, B, vol. lxxvii, 1906 (pp. 161–164 *supra*).

cation which had passed out from the blood in the lymph in the region of infection. Further, inasmuch as lymph, coming in contact in succession with a number of bacteria, or, as the case may be, with their products, would part with its antibacterial elements to those first encountered, retaining after percolating through a first bacterial nidus to a second, or through the outer portion of such a nidus to its interior, only a residuum of its original antibacterial power; there would come into existence, in particular in the case when the lymph-flow stagnated in the tissues, conditions far more congenial to the cultivation of bacteria than those which obtain in the blood.

Premising that I shall, as I proceed, ever and anon have to recur to the general principles enunciated in this first section of my paper, I may pass on now to consider the application of therapeutic inoculations of tubercle vaccine in connexion with the treatment of tuberculosis. It will be convenient to take up first the consideration of the treatment of strictly localized tubercular infections. Examples of such strictly localized tubercular infections are furnished by most cases of lupus, further by the large majority of tubercular invasions of the subcutaneous tissue, lymphatic glands, serous cavities, bone, testes, kidney, bladder, and other internal organs, lastly by many apyrexial cases of phthisis.

PART II.

TREATMENT OF STRICTLY LOCALIZED TUBERCULAR INFECTIONS BY THE AID OF THERAPEUTIC INOCULATIONS OF A TUBERCLE VACCINE.

In connexion with the treatment of cases of strictly localized tubercular infection we have to take into account the following facts: (1) The tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood in these cases appears to be uniformly inferior to that of the normal blood. (2) The immunising stimuli which are required for raising the opsonic power and for maintaining it at a high level here make default. (3) The tubercle bacilli are cultivating themselves in the focus of infection under conditions which are much more favourable to their growth than those which obtain in the case of the circulating blood. (4) An increase of the opsonic power of the blood can be achieved and maintained by the inoculation of a series of appropriately adjusted and interspaced doses of tubercle vaccine. (5) We have at disposal methods by which we may increase the lymph-flow through the focus or foci of infection in such a manner as to bring the antibacterial elements of the blood into application upon the invading bacteria.

It would be impossible within the limits of space within which I have here to confine myself to bring before you the evidence in support of all the above propositions. So far as it relates to the first four of the above propositions, that evidence has been set forth in detail in a communication

to the Royal Society made in conjunction with Douglas [1] and in a further communication made to the same Society in conjunction with Staff-Surgeon S. T. Reid, R.N.[2] I may, therefore, here limit myself to the consideration of the proposition that we have at our disposal methods for sending through the focus of infection a stream of antibacterial lymph.

Discussion of the Means which are available for sending a Stream of Antibacterial Lymph through the Focus of Infection.

The activation of the lymph stream in the focus of infection supplies the *rationale* of a number of procedures which have been empirically practised. Our grandmothers were wont to activate the lymph stream in boils—they spoke of it as "drawing the boil"—by the application of hot poultices followed by sugar-and-soap plasters.[3] The surgeon of these latter days practises the method when he applies hot boric fomentations in connexion with the treatment of septic infection associated with lymphangitis. Professor Bier in Germany practises the method when he obstructs the circulation in a limb or, as the case may be, in the head and neck, with a view to achieving an effusion of lymph. The physician, I take it, practises it in connexion with the application of his rubefacients and preparations of iodine, and possibly also when he administers expectorants—deeming that he is only "loosening the expectoration." The X ray, the radium, and the radiant heat therapists practise it in connexion with the exercise of their particular professions. Lastly, as I think emerges very clearly from the facts which Dr. Bulloch proposes to lay before you, the work of the Finsen light therapist resolves itself into an application of this method.

It seems to me all that is further needed in connexion with these methods is that they shall be employed purposefully as means to an end and not blindly as empirical methods. For I conceive that if this were done it would immediately be recognized (*a*) that the douching of a bacterial nidus with a rapidly flowing stream of lymph might in the case where that lymph possesses only very inferior antibacterial properties be associated with risk; (*b*) that the irrigation would always be more effective in the case where the antibacterial power of the blood had previously been raised either by auto-inoculation or artificial inoculation; (*c*) that an ampler lymph-stream could in every case be obtained by administering decalcifying agents (such as citric acid) in such quantities as might suffice to reduce the coagulability and at the same time the viscidity of the blood; (*d*) that in the case where the focus of infection is positioned in a lymphatic gland the blood stream might with advantage

[1] Wright and Douglas (Loc. cit.).
[2] Wright and Reid (Loc. cit.).
[3] Let us reflect in this connexion that the hot poultices determined the blood stream to the focus of infection, that the sugar by its osmotic power drew the lymph through the open boil, and that the soap by decalcifying the lymph prevented it coagulating and forming a scab and so blocking the outlet.

be determined not only to the lymphatic gland involved but also to the whole territory which sends its lymph to that gland; (*e*) that in cases where the focus of infection is positioned in the skin, and where the blood supply to the skin is inefficient, advantage might be taken of any medicinal agent, such as thyroid extract, which increases the cutaneous blood-supply; (*f*) that inoculation of old tuberculin may possibly find a useful incidental application in certain cases of superficial lupus by producing an outflow of lymph through the affected skin; (*g*) that the injection into discharging sinuses of a decalcifying agent dissolved in a concentrated salt or sugar solution may possibly be found useful in causing an irrigation of such sinuses by lymph; and, lastly, (*h*) that if the therapeutic effect of the Finsen rays should resolve itself merely into a question of determining lymph to the site of infection, it would be well in every case to preface it by inoculation procedures or, perhaps, even to use in association with these last some cheaper and less laborious therapeutic device. I would throw out merely as a suggestion that we have in the application of bags filled with hot sterilized sand [1] a very inexpensive and convenient method of determining a blood stream to any region on the surface of the body.

Digression on the Results of Ordinary Surgical Methods as applied to the Treatment of strictly Localized Tuberculosis.

Before saying what I have to say on the subject of the results obtained by treating strictly localized tubercular infections by the aid of therapeutic inoculations of a tubercle vaccine I will, if I may, say a preliminary word on the results as obtained by methods which are believed to be purely surgical, leaving the discussion of the results obtained by the Finsen light treatment to be dealt with later in this discussion by Dr. Bulloch.[2]

It is the belief of the surgeon—one, I take it, of his cherished beliefs—that it is possible to extirpate completely and effectively by the knife, in a large proportion of the cases which he undertakes, the invading micro-organisms. I, for my part, find it very difficult indeed to believe that this result can often be achieved even by the most radical operations. While I have great difficulty in believing that these means can be as effectual as they are claimed to be, I do not—though this may first fall upon your ears as a paradox—find any difficulty in believing that the good results which the surgeon claims are often achieved. But success is, as I gather, obtained in some cases where the operation leaves something to be desired from the point of view of completeness; and again, at other times, the efforts of the surgeon come to nought, in spite of the fact that the operation has been conducted with scrupulous care.

[1] For the sterilization of the sand I am accustomed to give the following instructions:

Place the sand in a saucepan over the fire, having previously stirred in a number of small pieces of white paper. Continue the stirring until, with the attainment of a temperature of 200° C., the pieces of paper have all turned brown.

[2] *Vide also pp.* 142–149 *supra.*

Even if we leave altogether out of account the possibility that the patients successfully operated upon may have been patients whose tuberculo-opsonic indices were previously to inoculation on the average higher

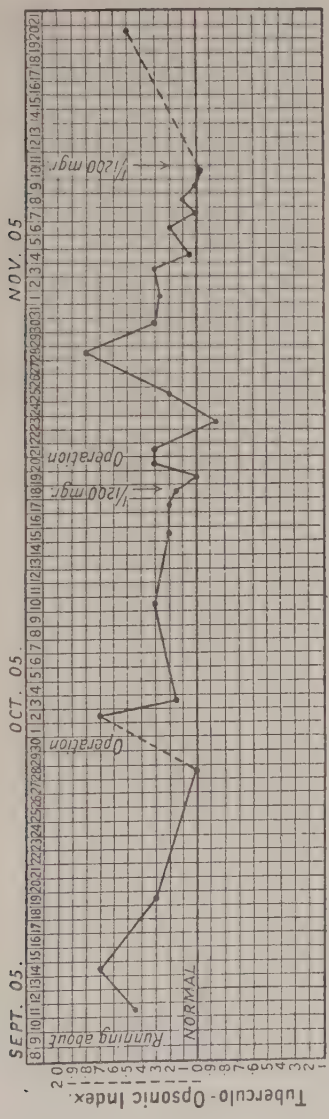


Chart 4 (by Dr. J. Freeman).

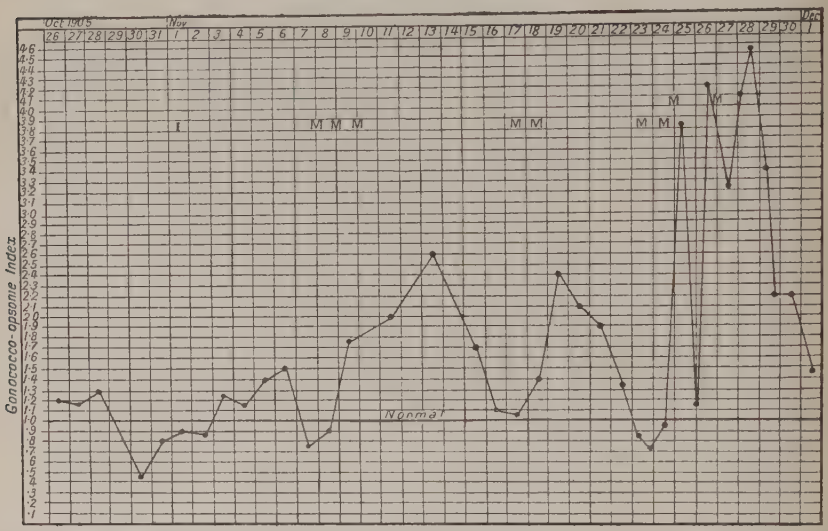
Shows, in the case of a child suffering from tubercular caries of the fibula, that the tuberculo-opsonic power may be raised by active exercise and surgical procedures as well as by the incorporation of tubercular elements in the form of therapeutic inoculations of new tuberculin.

than those of the patients unsuccessfully operated upon, the observations of my fellow-worker, Dr. J. Freeman, clearly show that there are other factors which may influence the result. There is, in the first place, the

possibility that surgical interference with a tubercular focus may, as in the two scraping operations [1] which are in question in Chart 4 be followed by the whole train of events which we have learned to associate with the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine. Again, as in the initial rise of the tuberculo-opsonic power which is set forth in the same curve, physical exercise may be an active agent in connexion with the production of immunity. Finally, as shown in Chart 5, massage of the focus of infection may produce effects similar to those of inoculation.

When we come to reflect upon the matter there is nothing in any of this to surprise us. A conveyance of bacterial elements into the blood

CHART 5 (by Dr. J. Freeman).



Shows the effect of massage upon the gonococco-opsonic power in the case of a man suffering from gonococcal arthritis. I, inoculation of gonococcus vaccine (50,000,000 gonococci). M, massage.

is precisely what might be expected from surgical procedures which open up the lymph spaces, or as the case may be from the activation of the lymph stream by kneading operations or ordinary muscular movements. In view (*a*) of the observations of Meakin and Wheeler (to be referred to below, p. 296) on the effect of physical exercise upon the tuberculo-opsonic index in phthisis ; (*b*) of the observations of Freeman, made in my laboratory, on the effect of massage on the opsonic power in the case of a variety of bacterial infections ; and (*c*) of the observations of Clarence Wright

[1] The same sequence of events has already been met with in connexion with three other cases. One here referred to was a scraping operation undertaken upon tubercular glands, the other two were extirpating operations also undertaken in connexion with tubercular glands. It would seem probable that similar results would be obtained also in connexion with curetting operations undertaken upon the uterus in connexion with bacterial infections.

"Archives of the Röntgen Ray," December, 1905) on the effect of X-ray treatment on the tuberculo-opsonic power in the case of lupus patients, it suggests itself that it may prove possible to determine the nature of any localized bacterial infection by measuring the opsonic power of the blood with regard to the suspected micro-organism before and after massage, physical exercise, the application of X rays, or any other method which activates the local lymph stream.

On the Results which have been obtained by the Treatment of Localized Tubercular Infections by the Aid of Therapeutic Inoculations of a Tubercle Vaccine (Koch's New Tuberculin) controlled by Determinations of the Opsonic Index.

Returning from the above digression to take up again the main theme of this discourse, and coming to the question of the results which have been achieved by the therapeutic inoculation of Koch's new tuberculin, safeguarded by systematic determinations of the opsonic index, I find myself face to face with the impossibility of conveying to you an adequate idea of the results which it is possible to achieve in the matter of the cure of localized tuberculosis. To convey to you such an adequate idea I should have to bring you face to face with the patients and to reproduce for you, in the case of those who were suffering from external lesions, their past by the aid of photographic records. In view of my having been prevented by external circumstances from securing photographs of the cases when they first presented themselves, and in view of the circumstance that the presence of the patients to-night would have broken in in an unwarrantable manner upon this discussion, I must do what I can by the bald method of narrative, inviting you hereafter to inspect the patients either at St. Mary's Hospital, or, if it shall be signified that this is the wish of the Society,[1] here in this room when we resume this discussion.

Before entering into a recital of the cases, I would point out that in each case a measurement of the tuberculo-opsonic power of the blood has (with only rare and isolated exceptions) been made in connexion with each inoculation of tubercle vaccine. The burden of the very many thousands of hours of work which this has involved has been shared with me in the most devoted and self-sacrificing manner by my friends and fellow-workers, Captain Stewart R. Douglas, I.M.S., and Dr. J. Freeman. I would therefore have it borne in mind that the work which I shall here summarize is in very large part their work.

For the purpose of the summary I may classify the cases of localized tuberculosis, which we have dealt with under the headings of *lupus*, *tubercular ulceration of the subcutaneous tissues and bone*, *tubercular glands*,

[1] In conformity with the wish of the Society a number of the cases whose histories are chronicled below were exhibited at the meeting of the Society held on December 12, 1905. The cases thus exhibited are in the records below distinguished by an asterisk (*).

tubercular disease of the genito-urinary system, tubercular disease of joints, tubercular peritonitis, and *apyrexial phthisis.*

While we have treated, or have under treatment at present at St. Mary's Hospital, examples of each and all of these classes of cases, we have, keeping in view the importance of testing the method of inoculation in the most rigorous manner, devoted our attention in particular to cases where definite objective evidence could be obtained of any alteration in the clinical condition, and by preference to cases where ordinary surgical methods had already been unsuccessfully exploited. In conformity with this I shall, in the summary below, consider in particular the results obtained in the treatment of the four first-mentioned categories of tubercular infection, and will pass over in silence the less convincing though equally satisfactory results which have been achieved by inoculation in the cases of tubercular peritonitis and joint disease which we have had under treatment. I shall omit from consideration also the satisfactory results achieved in three out of the five cases of phthisis which we have treated by tuberculin inoculation. It is to be borne in mind in connexion with this very small number of cases of phthisis treated that we have, except under very special circumstances, excluded this affection from treatment, because of the difficulty of eliminating in an Out-Patient Department that class of phthisical patients who, being already the subject of auto-inoculations, cannot, it seems to be, except under very special precautions, safely be treated by the method of inoculation.

Lupus.

If we except one of our very earliest cases—where the results of a few weeks' treatment were, probably owing to the administration of too large doses of the vaccine, such as to discourage the patient,[1] and to lead him to abandon the treatment—we may say that the inoculation treatment has, in all the cases of lupus we have dealt with, ameliorated, but so far only in one case [2] cured, the disease. Not infrequently we have seen certain of the patches completely cured, while the disease in other regions has remained refractory. These only partially successful results, which contrast in a very unfavourable manner with those obtained in connexion with tubercular ulceration affecting the deeper tissues, depend it seems to me, not so much upon a defective power of response to inoculations on the part of the lupus patient as upon the inadequate manner in which the antibacterial substances come into application upon the tubercle bacilli in the case where these are disposed in a skin which is but poorly supplied with blood. I do not doubt that if it were possible to superadd to the treatment by inoculation another form of treatment which achieves, as the Finsen light appears to do, a sufficient transudation of lymph into the skin, the efficiency of the

[1] *Vide* Graham Little, *British Journal of Dermatology*, September, 1904.
[2] This case was shown to the Society on December 12, 1905.

inoculation treatment as applied to lupus would be much greater than it has been in our hands.

Tubercular Ulceration of the Subcutaneous Tissues.

The clearest and most unfallacious evidence of the advantage which can be derived from the therapeutic inoculation of tubercle vaccine can be furnished in connexion with tubercular ulceration of the subcutaneous tissues. It is not a question here of the achievement of success in a certain percentage of cases where ordinary surgical methods have failed. Up to the present, at any rate, it has been a question of *uniform* success. The following series of cases, all of which, except the last, are available for inspection, furnish evidence of what can be achieved by inoculation in cases which had defied all ordinary methods of treatment, and which might quite well have been reckoned desperate.

Case 1.*[1]—The patient, whose case I have already reported upon,[2] is a man of about thirty years of age. His history is as follows: In the autumn of 1902 he developed tubercular glands on the left side of the neck and a tubercular abscess on the point of the left shoulder of the same side. He was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital and was operated upon for the first time in January, 1903. The wound becoming invaded with tubercle and refusing to heal, further operative procedures were embarked upon. In all six successive scraping, extirpating, and skin-grafting operations were undertaken during the course of the year, the wound becoming in each case reinfected, and the area of ulceration being extended. In December, 1903, when the patient came up for treatment by inoculation, the whole area from the point of the left shoulder to the base of the ear formed a single deep eroded ulcer. The lobule of the ear was half eaten away, and immediately underneath it a deep ulcerated crater had developed, which looked as if it was going to break into the pharynx. The adjacent side of the face was distorted by swelling, giving the patient the appearance which would go along with a one-sided attack of mumps. The axilla was occupied by a gland which was as large as a pigeon's egg, and the patient was haggard and very emaciated. After eight months' inoculation with new tuberculin, supplemented on several occasions by inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine, and the local application of formalin gelatine,[3] I was able to report that steady improvement had been made under the treatment, that the swelling of the face had almost entirely disappeared, that the crater under the angle of the jaw had healed up from the bottom, that the gland in the axilla could no longer be felt, that the ulcerated wound had almost entirely closed over, and that the patient might now almost

[1] The patients who are distinguished with an asterisk (*) were exhibited to the Society on December 12, 1905.

[2] *Proceedings of the Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, July, 1904, and *Clinical Journal*, November 9, 1904 (*supra*, p. 126, and pp. 265–266).

[3] *Vide* author's paper, *Lancet*, July 9, 1904.

pass muster as a healthy man. After a further three months I reported that the wound was entirely closed and that there remained only an area of the size of a threepenny-piece, which was still covered by scab. I also pointed out that the previous site of the ulcer was covered in, not by scar tissue, but by a quite soft and elastic skin. Carrying on the history of the patient for another year, I have to report that after having got completely well, and after treatment had been discontinued for about six months, he presented himself again for treatment at the hospital. He had now, after exhausting work as a barman, developed a very large soft gland in the previously sound side of the neck, and another in the groin of the same side. His opsonic index was found to be very low. The glands in question rapidly broke down, leaving crateriform openings, which presented all the typical clinical appearances of syphilitic gummata. No improvement having manifested itself under a very thorough antisyphilitic treatment carried out in the hospital, and the patient's tuberculo-opsonic index ranging always about 0·4, the tuberculin inoculations were recommenced, with the result that he is now making a marvellously rapid recovery.[1]

Case 2.*—The patient, a woman, aged thirty-one, has, like the last, been previously reported on.[2] Her history is as follows: She developed a tubercular infection of the glands of the neck at the age of fourteen years. Then suppuration supervened and the abscesses were opened, the wounds became infected, and other glands also became involved. Later, tubercular disease developed in the little finger of the right hand. The two terminal joints of that finger were removed fifteen years ago, when the patient was sixteen years old. About this time lupus broke out on her face and on her left arm and hand. At the age of nineteen years she underwent treatment with Koch's original tuberculin. She received from three to four inoculations a day (the total of her inoculations amounting to 150). This treatment resulted in violent inflammatory reaction in the patches of lupus, a piece of bone sloughed out of her left arm, and she remained in hospital seriously ill for thirteen weeks. She attributes, and no doubt rightly, the aggravation of symptoms and ultimate loss of her arm to these inoculations. We can now discern that there must have been produced a cumulative negative phase. After a respite vigorous treatment was resumed in another hospital. The lupus patches were then frequently scraped and many glands were extirpated from the neck. In 1900 the Finsen light treatment was resorted to and was persevered in for eighteen months. This effected superficial improvement in the condition of the face and neck, but the disease continued to spread in the deeper structures and in particular in the bones of the left arm. Finally, it became necessary to amputate this limb. The disease now re-invaded the stump and broke out in the point of the shoulder and in the front

[1] *This patient is now perfectly well and has since* (1907) *been actively engaged as one of our laboratory assistants.*

[2] Loc. cit. (*supra*, pp. 127–128, and pp. 266–267).

of the chest. Röntgen rays were now tried unavailingly. Finally, in December, 1903, the patient, who was then in a very reduced physical condition, was referred to me by Dr. E. G. Graham Little for treatment by tuberculin inoculations. I was able to report in November, 1904, that the patient had arrived at a tolerably satisfactory condition in the matter of her general health. Her body weight had gone up and had reached 141½ lb., as much as 5 lb. having on one occasion been gained in the interval between two successive inoculations. The discharge from the sinus over the sternum and from the sinus in the stump of the left arm had practically ceased. I am to-day able to state that the patient is in robust health, that the discharge from the sinuses has entirely ceased, and that she has been able for months to make use of an artificial limb. Except for some superficial patches of lupus on the face, she may be said to be perfectly well.

Case 3.*—The patient, a female, aged twenty, has also been previously reported on.[1] When she presented herself for treatment in December, 1903, she had the appearance of a child. Her bones protruded through the skin of her back somewhat after the fashion in which bones protrude in dried fish. The point of her nose was covered with a thick mass of scabs superposed upon a very angry-looking patch of lupus. The angle of the jaw and the front of the neck were occupied by patches of lupus in a similar condition. Both her feet and her hands were affected with lupus. Her hands in particular were a mere mass of ulceration, the bones of the hand being also affected in many places. The patient has made slow but steady progress under the inoculation treatment. The ulcers on her right hand are nearly healed, and those on her left hand considerably amended, and her general physique has improved. The patches of lupus on the front of her neck and under the angle of the jaw are now represented by perfectly sound cicatrices, and the patch of lupus on the nose is improving.

Case 4.*—The history of this patient, who has been under the care of Mr. H. Stansfield Collier, is as follows: In 1900, at the age of thirty, the right testicle and a gland in the groin were removed on account of tubercular disease. Early in 1903 an abscess was opened some distance above the ankle on the outer side of the right leg. The wound did not heal. In December another abscess had formed over the external malleolus, and a considerable portion of the lower end of the fibula was gouged away. In July, 1904, another abscess developed in the lower third of the leg and was opened. Just before the patient was taken over for treatment by inoculation in January, 1905, the amputation of the foot was regarded as almost inevitable. The condition was as follows: A sinus wide enough to take a large drainage-tube led through the leg behind the ankle-joint. A deep ulcerated trench occupied the region of the extirpated fibula, and extended under the inner malleolus for a considerable distance. A gland the size of a bantam's egg occupied the right

[1] P. 128 and 267.

groin. Rapid improvement set in almost immediately after the inauguration of the inoculation treatment, the wound healing rapidly and the gland in the groin disappearing. The patient left hospital on the high road to recovery toward the end of June. With the continuation of the treatment the ulcer entirely healed, the whole affected area being occupied, as it is now, by very soft elastic skin which does not in any way interfere with the movements of the foot. Towards the end of September, 1905, a small swelling developed in connexion with what had been the upper border of the ulcer. This was opened and scraped, and the patient is now practically well, except for the fact that the scar of the last incision is still covered with a very delicate scab.

Case 5.*—The patient, a woman, aged twenty-eight, presented herself for treatment in October, 1904, with tubercular ulcers on her legs, which dated back to her fourteenth year. These had been treated by antiseptics of various kinds for thirteen years, and had been scraped and skin-grafted. On the right leg the ulcerated surface corresponded in its dimensions with a five shilling piece. Around this was an extensive area of thin glossy skin. The ulcer on the left side occupied an area which extended from a little below the level of the ankle to nearly the middle of the leg. In this area the tendo-Achillis and the peronei tendons were laid bare, and the point of the foot was drawn down so that the toes alone came in contact with the ground. All round the ulcerated area the skin of the leg was thin and glossy. The patient's tuberculo-opsonic index worked out as 0·17. After admission to hospital the patient was treated with therapeutic inoculations of tuberculin, supplemented by occasional staphylococcus inoculations and the local application of formalin gelatine. After six months' treatment the ulcer on the right leg had completely healed, and that on the left leg had been reduced to comparatively small dimensions. The inoculation treatment, which had raised the tuberculo-opsonic index of the blood to 1·8, and which had maintained it generally well above 1, was now supplemented by skin-grafting, and the patient left hospital with the ulcers completely healed, and looking a picture of health. This continued until some six weeks ago, when, in association with a sinking away of the tuberculo-opsonic index to 0·8, a small vesicle developed on the inner side of the leg at the border of the healed ulcer. This broke down into a superficial ulcer corresponding in dimensions to a lentil. In association with an improvement in the tuberculo-opsonic power obtained by minute attention to dosage and proper interspacing of the inoculations, extension of this small ulcer has been arrested.

Case 6.*—The patient is a man aged thirty-five. When he presented himself for treatment in July, 1904, he had been for two years the subject of an inflammatory knobby tumefaction of the subcutaneous tissue in the region of the jaw and over a considerable area of the throat. The case had been diagnosed as actinomycosis and had been treated without result by scraping and iodide of potassium. The patient's opsonic index with respect to the tubercle bacillus was 0·67. With respect to the staphy-

lococcus it was 1. The patient is now, after fifteen months' inoculation with very small doses of tuberculin, nearly well. Throughout the course of the treatment it has been brought out very clearly (*a*) that the clinical condition corresponds in a very accurate manner with the tuberculo-opsonic index, and (*b*) that the patient's opsonic index can be maintained at a much higher level when doses in the neighbourhood of $\frac{1}{80000}$ c.c. of T.R. are inoculated than when larger doses are employed.

Case 7.*—The patient is a man, aged about thirty-five, a furrier. When he presented himself last June for treatment the dorsum of his hand was occupied by a deep ulcer corresponding in dimensions with a full-sized watch and surrounded by a raised edge. The ulcer had been treated by scraping. The patient's tuberculo-opsonic index stood at 0·85. Rapid improvement both in the opsonic index and in the clinical condition followed upon the inoculation of tuberculin, supplemented, when this appeared desirable, by the inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine. The ulcer has now entirely healed, and the site of the ulcer is covered in with soft and elastic skin, which does not in any way impede the movements of the fingers.

Tubercular Invasion of the Lymphatic Glands.

Next, perhaps, to tubercular ulceration of the subcutaneous tissue, tubercular affections of the lymphatic glands furnish the clearest evidence of the efficacy of therapeutic inoculation of tubercle vaccine. This result, as reflection will show, is in accordance with what might have been expected *à priori* in view of the fact that the tubercle bacilli are here disposed right in the path of the lymph stream, which is passing back through the gland to the blood. I do not myself doubt from what I have seen of the effect of inoculation on tuberculous glands that the extirpation of these by surgical methods, as well as the purely climatic treatment of this affection, are destined to give place to the therapeutic exploitation of tuberculin inoculations, controlled by the determination of the opsonic index, and combined with hot sand poultices and rubefacients, or other measures which, like these, will produce an ampler lymph flow in the whole territory—or may I call it "watershed" or "collecting basin"—whose lymph passes into the blood through the conduit of the infected gland.

Case 1.—The patient was a young married woman who had undergone at the hands of two distinguished London surgeons three successive operations for the extirpation of glands. When she presented herself for treatment in January, 1904, three or four glands could be felt in the neck, the largest one being of about the size of a small walnut. After the diagnosis of tubercle had been confirmed by a test inoculation, undertaken with Koch's old tuberculin, the vaccinal treatment with the T.R. tuberculin was inaugurated. Three months later, after six inoculations, conducted with doses which were gradually increased from $\frac{1}{50000}$ c.c.

to a maximum of $\frac{1}{5000}$ c.c. the glands could no longer be felt and the dragging pains in the neck had entirely disappeared. After the disappearance of the glands a few more reinforcing inoculations were given. In January, 1905, the patient presented herself again, with swelling in the glands that had been previously affected. This swelling was, as before, associated with dragging pains, and the patient was thinking of having recourse again to operative procedure. In lieu of this the tuberculin inoculations were resumed, with the result that after three inoculations, undertaken in the course of a month, the glands again completely disappeared. They have, so far as I can learn, given no further trouble.

Case 2.—The patient was the wife of a medical man. She had suffered from childhood from swollen glands on one side of the neck. These had become the source of constant dragging pains, and the largest gland, situated under the angle of the jaw, was large enough to produce considerable disfigurement. After three months of the inoculation treatment the glands had much diminished in size, and no longer gave rise to any disfigurement or discomfort.

Case 3.—The patient, who had been a nurse and who had already undergone two operations at the hands of a distinguished surgeon, was referred by him for treatment in April, 1904, with a recurrence of tubercular glands in the neck. After three months' inoculations the swelling in the glands had entirely subsided. In association with this there was a very marked improvement in the general health. By the desire of the patient the inoculations are still being continued as a precaution against further recurrence.

Case 4.—The patient, a girl, aged four, came under treatment in connexion with a recurrence of glands very shortly after operation. Her tuberculo-opsonic index stood at 0·7. After a series of six or seven inoculations the swelling in the glands had entirely disappeared.

Case 5.—The patient, aged four, came under treatment at the end of June, 1905, in connexion with a recurrence of tubercular glands after operation and continued discharge from a deep gaping wound in the submaxillary region. By the end of September, after a course of tuberculin inoculations, supplemented on one or two occasions by an inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine, the wound had completely healed over and the glands were notably diminished in size. By the end of October treatment was discontinued, the swelling in the region of the wound and in the glands having entirely disappeared, the child being in absolutely robust health.

Tubercular Disease of the Genito-Urinary System.

From some points of view more convincing, in others only less convincing, than the results obtained in connexion with lesions which are

directly accessible to sight and touch, are the results obtained in connexion with tubercular disease of the genito-urinary system, in particular in the cases where this involves the bladder. We have, in the fact that these cases are associated with distressing pain and frequency of micturition, and in the fact that the presence or absence of tubercle bacilli in the urine can here be determined by microscopic observation, the means of measuring success and failure.

Case 1.—The patient, a man aged twenty, when first seen twelve months ago was suffering from extreme frequency, and looked worn with pain. He was only with difficulty able to draw himself upright, and could only with some distress climb upstairs. There were considerable swelling and tenderness in the prostate and back of the bladder, and the urine contained some blood and a large quantity of pus. Microscopical examinations revealed tubercle bacilli in considerable numbers in the urine. Cultures showed that there was no other bacterial invasion. The patient had been previously treated with inoculations of T R., the doses having been increased by geometrical progression up to $\frac{1}{2500}$ c.c. After the inoculation of the larger doses the pain and frequency of micturition were greatly aggravated. After waiting till the immediate effects of the last inoculation had passed off, inoculation was recommenced with $\frac{1}{10000}$ c.c. of T.R. The tuberculo-opsonic index of the blood now stood at 0·62. After repeating the inoculation within $\frac{1}{10000}$ c.c. at intervals of ten days, and then tentatively advancing to a dose of $\frac{1}{5000}$ c.c. without achieving any sensible improvement in the opsonic index or clinical symptoms, the dose was reduced to $\frac{1}{80000}$ c.c. The inoculation of this dose at ten-day intervals was followed by steady and sustained improvement, both in the opsonic power and clinical symptoms. There was also a marked diminution in the prostatic tumefaction. After the dose had been for a time increased to $\frac{1}{60000}$ c.c. it was again reduced to $\frac{1}{70000}$ c.c. While the frequency of micturition and the prostatic swelling have been much abated, and while the patient is practically free from pain, his urine still contains tubercle bacilli. His condition is, however, now such that he is able to hold his urine for two hours at a time, and capable of undertaking without fatigue a long day's shooting.

Case 2.—The patient is a young woman of very good physique. She came under treatment first in January, 1905, with a history of tubercular cystitis and tubercular disease of the kidney dating back two years. One of her kidneys had been removed and there was evidence of the involvement of the other kidney. The urine contained pus in considerable amount, and in association with this many tubercle bacilli and several varieties of contaminating bacteria, among others *proteus*, The patient's tuberculo-opsonic index was tested on two occasions before the inoculation treatment was initiated. On the first occasion it stood at 0·75, on the second occasion at 0·35. An improvement in the patient's symptoms set in practically immediately after the first inoculation, undertaken with

$\frac{1}{80000}$ c.c. The tuberculo-opsonic power rose on the day after inoculation to 1·7, and continued at this height or near this point for the next six days. An inoculation undertaken on this day with $\frac{1}{40000}$ c.c. brought down the opsonic power of the blood. In association with this the patient complained of more pain. After the inoculations had been continued for about six months, when the tubercle bacilli had disappeared from the urine, and when, as a result of the inoculation of a proteus saccine, the *proteus* also had disappeared, the patient felt so well that hhe mooted the question of engagement and marriage. Since then she vas suffered a relapse, developing an acute cystitis. This attack, which was apparently associated with a reappearance of the *proteus* in the urine, is now subsiding.

Case 3.—The patient, like the last, is a young woman of good physique, who, after suffering from pleural effusion and severe cramps in the loins, suddenly in December, 1904, developed severe cystitis and haematuria. Tubercle bacilli were now found in the urine. When she came under observation in September last she was suffering from great frequency of micturition (up to twenty-five times in the night) and pain. Tubercle bacilli were sparingly present in the urine, while a form of pneumococcus was abundant. Her tuberculo-opsonic index stood on the first examination at 0·85 and on two subsequent occasions at 0·9 and 0·93 respectively. Inoculation was begun with a dose of $\frac{1}{80000}$ c.c. of T.R. but this dose appears to have been excessive, inasmuch as the patient spent after inoculation a week of misery, the frequency of micturition rising on one occasion to thirty-two times in the night. The dose employed in the next inoculation was $\frac{1}{240000}$ c.c. and this dose has been employed since with very satisfactory results, pain being greatly diminished and frequency of micturition now averaging five times in the night, while an opsonic index of 1·6 has been achieved.

Case 4.—This case has already been reported on by me twelve months ago as follows [1]: The patient, a married woman, aged forty-three, was admitted to hospital under the care of Dr. D. B. Lees in the middle of March, 1903, complaining of frequency associated with severe local pain on micturition and dragging pains in the loins, in particular on the left side. The urine contained pus, epithelial casts, and tubercle bacilli in such numbers that they could be demonstrated in large clumps in every field of a microscope in preparations prepared from the urinary sediment. Examination of the bladder revealed the existence of a large ulcer. The kidneys were enlarged and tender; the left one in particular was affected and suspicious signs were detected in the apex of one lung. Tuberculin treatment was begun in the middle of April, 1903. The effect exerted upon the body weight during the period the patient was in hospital is exhibited in the figures below:

[1] *Clinical Journal*, November 9, 1904, p. 264 *supra*.

	Pounds.		Pounds
April 20	91	June 15	103½
„ 28	96	„ 22	105
May 11	92½	„ 29	107
„ 19	93	July 6	109¾
June 1	96	„ 13	107¼
„ 8	101		

The drop of body weight which is recorded on May 11 coincided on the one hand with the development of increased local pain and symptoms of giddiness and flushing, and, on the other hand, with a rapid fall in the agglutinating power of the blood, which is displayed in Curve 1 (*supra*, p. 271). These were all, I take it, symptoms of the supervention of a cumulative negative phase dependent upon a too hasty inoculation of progressively increasing doses of vaccine. After leaving the hospital in July, much alleviated, in the matter of pain and frequency of micturition, the patient attended as an out-patient, and under the treatment her weight in September, 1903, reached 119 lb. The tuberculin inoculations were continued up to July, 1904. All this while the tubercle bacilli, which were examined for almost every ten days, became gradually less numerous. By May they had completely disappeared from the urine. The patient none the less still suffered from serious bladder trouble—due, as appeared on examination, to cicatrization and great thickening of the bladder walls, and possibly to some superadded ulceration referable to septic invasion by the *bacillus coli* and by a Gram-staining diplococcus—micro-organisms which have been throughout present in millions in her urine. Taking up her history from this point, I may add that shortly after the publication of the above report the patient came back with symptoms of a relapse, and tubercle bacilli were once more found in her urine. Under the influence of further inoculations of tuberculin these again disappeared from the urine, and she continues to be free from pain and is in very good health. She suffers, however, from incontinence.

Case 5.—The patient is a man of some forty-five years. His history is as follows: In 1904 the right testicle became swollen and an abscess formed which left behind a sinus in the posterior aspect of the scrotum. In July, 1905, when the patient came into hospital, the right testicle was found to be typically tuberculous, and there was discovered also a small nodule in the left epididymis. The patient was unable to hold his urine for more than half an hour at a time night and day, and in association with this tubercle bacilli were found in the urine. He was now treated by inoculations of tuberculin and left hospital in September much improved. Since leaving hospital he has put on 14 lb. in weight, and the frequency of micturition has been reduced, averaging now only four times in the night.

Summary of the Results obtained by Therapeutic Inoculation in Cases of Localised Tuberculosis.

In view of the very favourable and, what is almost more important,

uniformly successful results which can, as will have appeared, be obtained even in the most intractable cases of localized tubercular infection by the therapeutic inoculation of tuberculin carried out under the safeguards explained above, and in view of the fact that not less favourable results can be obtained by the aid of the corresponding bacterial vaccines in the treatment of localized infections by other micro-organisms, I do not hesitate to contend that we have, in the power of raising the anti-bacterial power of the blood with respect to any invading microbe, out of all comparison the most valuable asset in medicine.

I would, in view of this new asset in medicine, fain induce the surgeon to abate something from his conviction that extirpation and the application of antiseptics offer in connexion with bacterial infection the only possible means of cure; I would have the surgeon resort to extirpation only when the physician tells him that all other means have been exhausted; and I would have the physician assume everywhere the rôle of an immunisator; and I would have him defer handing over his patients to the surgeon before he has tried in every case of localized bacterial infection which is unassociated with immediate risk to life the therapeutic inoculation of the appropriate bacterial vaccine.

PART III

TREATMENT OF SYSTEMIC TUBERCULAR INFECTIONS BY THE THERAPEUTIC INOCULATION OF A TUBERCLE VACCINE

In connexion with pyrexial phthisis and other forms of pyrexial tuberculosis we are face to face with a problem which confronts us also in connexion with every other systemic infection—i.e., the problem as to whether in view of the fact that the machinery of immunisation is already spontaneously called into action, any advantage can be looked for from the inoculation of bacterial vaccines. Before an answer can be given to the question, we must try to form to ourselves (*a*) some conceptions of the conditions with which we have to deal in ordinary systemic infections such as are represented by continued fevers, and again (*b*) some conception of the special conditions which we have to deal with in pyrexial phthisis and similar tubercular affections.

Conditions which we have to take into Account in connexion with Ordinary Continued Fevers.

In the case of continued fevers, such as typhoid fever and Malta fever in man and anthrax in animals, bacterial elements are passing more or less continuously into the blood from regions like the spleen, where the micro-organisms are cultivating themselves in close relation with the blood vessels. These bacterial elements, the nature of which we need not pause to discuss, exert upon the organism not only toxic effects, but call forth also immunising responses in all respects similar to those which are called forth by the inoculation of bacterial vaccines.

Where the influx of the bacterial elements which here come into consideration does not exceed a certain maximum, there can be registered, no doubt often after the intervention of a negative phase, a definite increase in the antibacterial substances in the blood. Such an increase is registered, for instance, in connexion with typhoid fever and Malta fever when, after the fever has persisted for some days, an agglutinative reaction greater than that which is obtainable with the normal blood is obtained. By the aid of the antibacterial elements (of which the agglutinins furnish only the most easily demonstrated and therefore the most familiar examples) the invasion of the blood stream is checked. If now by the continued elaboration of the antibacterial elements the bacteriotropic pressure of the blood is brought up to, and is sustained at, a sufficiently high level, the antibacterial effect makes itself felt, not only in the actual blood stream, but in the backwaters of the circulatory system, where the blood flows comparatively slowly, and in the end also in the tissues. The invading micro-organisms will be finally disposed of when a lymph, rich in antibacterial elements, floods through all the foci of lowered bacteriotropic pressure in which the bacteria are ensconced.

Alongside of the cases which run their course to this favourable conclusion there are other cases where the influx of bacterial elements into the blood is immoderate and uninterrupted. Here we may fear that, owing to a paralysis of the machinery of immunisation, the antibacterial power of the blood will not be sustained, and that the invading bacteria will establish themselves in the circulating blood. The possibility that, by the incorporation of a bacterial vaccine into the body of a patient who is already staggering under a severe bacterial intoxication, such a further quantum of poison might be added as would just suffice to overtax his power of resistance is a risk which has to be considered in connexion with all therapeutic inoculations of bacterial vaccines, undertaken in connexion with systemic infections. That risk may, according to circumstances, be very grave or insignificantly small. Let me take the extreme cases. When, as in a case of fulminating typhoid fever, the system is profoundly intoxicated, and when the absence of the agglutination reaction and the diminishing content of the blood in other antibacterial substances show that the patient's power of immunising response is probably already overtaxed, I presume that no one would like to take the responsibility of incorporating a further quantum of bacterial poison. In the contrary case of a comparatively light attack of Malta fever, where the fever is likely to run on for months without any serious intoxication of the system, and where the imperfect development of the agglutination reaction seems to indicate that the immunising impulses are making default, I have gladly taken upon myself, and have counselled others to take upon themselves, the responsibility of applying further immunising stimuli in the form of a carefully safeguarded series of inoculations. In each such case the event has justified the procedure.

The cases last considered have a direct application in connexion

with the question of undertaking inoculations of a tubercle vaccine in connexion with pyrexial phthisis. I would point out in this connexion that there is, as between inoculations of bacterial made into the subcutaneous tissue and the introduction of bacterial poisons directly into the blood stream, a very important difference, which must be kept in view. If the vaccines were to be incorporated directly into the blood stream, we should thereby contribute directly to the intoxication of the central nervous system and the heart, and we should, as the very disappointing results which are achieved in the immunisation of horses by the intravenous injection of diphtheria toxins clearly show, be advancing but little in the direction of immunisation. On the contrary, when bacterial vaccines are incorporated into the subcutaneous tissues, and when they therefore come into application in a concentrated form upon these, and are held fast by these, we may quite well be effecting a great deal in the way of immunisation without contributing in any appreciable manner to the intoxication of the central nervous system and heart.

Special Conditions which we have to take into Account in connexion with Pyrexial Phthisis and other Localized Tubercular Infections which are associated with Pyrexia.

In the case of localized tubercular infections which are associated with pyrexia, the conditions are different from those in the continued fevers which have been under discussion, (*a*) in the respect that the influx of the bacterial elements into the blood takes place from regions which do not stand in immediate relation to the blood stream, and (*b*) in the further respect that this influx is discontinuous and stands in definite relation (to an extent which does not hold good in the case of other continued fevers), with causes which are to a quite appreciable degree under control. The causes which come into consideration here are, in particular, physical exertion, and mental effort, or excitement. Under the influence of these causes there can be registered, not only a rise of temperature, but also a variation of the opsonic power similar to that which is encountered in connexion with the inoculation of tubercle vaccine. I may give as instances of such variations the cases of two phthisical patients, who took part in a dance, with the result that they both became ill, and that their opsonic indices, which had never previously been found lower than 1, declined to 0·12 and 0·33 respectively; further the case of another phthisical patient whose opsonic index fell in connexion with overwork to 0·2 from a level of over 1. I may refer you also in this connexion to a paper [1] by my friends Dr. H. Meakin and Dr. C. Wheeler, which records similar effects produced in the case of phthisical patients in connexion with walking.

We have a very simple explanation of these facts if we suppose that, under the influence of the limb and chest movements, and the circulatory

[1] *British Medical Journal*, November 25, 1905.

disturbance and increased lymph flow which are associated with excitement, physical exercise, or mental overwork, tuberculous poisons from the infected tissues are conveyed into the blood. Especially may an influx of lymph, loaded with tuberculous poison, be expected in the case where the patient who is the subject of a tubercular infection of the leg undertakes walking. We have already in Chart 4, *supra*, p. 281, seen in connexion with a case of tuberculous disease of the leg a rise in the tuberculo-opsonic index which was to all appearances the result of running about. I have also quite recently seen another case of a similar association in the case of a boy with tuberculous hip disease who, after lying on his back for years with a normal temperature, developed pyrexia on beginning to walk. No doubt this boy conveyed into his blood as he walked a stream of lymph which had passed through his old tubercular focus. In connexion with, and probably as a sequela to this, I registered a tuberculo-opsonic index of 1·4.

Possibility in connexion with Pyrexial Phthisis and other Localized Tubercular Infections which are associated with Pyrexia of quieting the Circulation and staunching the Lymph Stream in such a way as to arrest the Auto-Inoculations, converting the Systemic Infection in this manner into a purely Localized Infection.

The fact that in pyrexial phthisis and other localized tubercular infections which are associated with pyrexia the bacterial poisons are not generated in direct relation with the circulatory system is, as reflection will show, a fact which is pregnant with all-important consequences in connexion with the therapeutics of the systemic infections we have here in view. While it may be possible in the cases of continued fevers like typhoid fever to effect something in the direction of reducing the severity of the intoxication and the dosage of the auto-inoculations by keeping the patient perfectly quiet, the abolition of the intoxication and the arrest of the auto-inoculations constitute in the case of phthisis not a remote ideal but an ideal which is every day realized. The complete rest in bed, which gradually reduces the temperature in the large majority of cases of tuberculous phthisis, as well as in other localized forms of tubercular infection, is, I take it, to be regarded as a therapeutic measure for making an end to those auto-inoculations which follow upon every over-exertion, and which make the life of the phthisical patient, when abandoned to his own devices, what my fellow-worker, Dr. R. H. Urwick, has shown it to be,[1] to wit, a succession of negative and positive phases. I take it that the rest in bed might, with a view to further staunching the lymph flow, with advantage be supplemented in every case by the administration of therapeutic agents which will increase the coagulability and viscidity of the blood. I have no doubt that this object is already in many cases

[1] *British Medical Journal*, July 22, 1905.

undesignedly and unwittingly attained by placing the patient on a dietary of milk.[1]

Consideration of the Question as to how far the Patient has been brought in the Direction of a Cure when his Pyrexia has been abolished, and his Auto-Inoculations have been arrested by Confinement to Bed.

We may usefully ask ourselves exactly how much will have been achieved in the case of a tubercular infection if, when the influx of tuberculous poison into the blood has been arrested and the pyrexia has been abolished, we stop at this point. The question is an all-important one in view of the years and years of complete inaction to which many patients are condemned on the theory that they are, while they continue to rest and wait, every day making progress in the direction of a cure. To any one who has surveyed the tuberculous patients laid out on spinal chairs in our seaside health resorts—waiting; or the patients who are lying in bed or upon deck chairs in our open-air sanatoria—waiting; it is plain as demonstration can make it that there is gained for the patient, by the arrest of the influx of tuberculous poison into his blood, a power of assimilating his food and an appearance of vigorous health. If only to the appreciation of this fact there could be added the belief that the cure of bacterial infections depends neither upon the storage of fat, nor upon the bronzing of the skin, nor yet upon the breathing of fresh air (sea-coast air, country air, pine-wood air, mountain air, or warm southern air), but only upon the destruction of the invading bacteria by the antibacterial substances of the blood (with or without the co-operation with the leucocytes), we should, I think, have come close to the truth.

It is, at any rate, my belief that with the cutting off of the auto-inoculations progress in the direction of immunisation is arrested, and that with that arrest the blood reverts in every case to the inferior level of antibacterial power at which the blood of the subject of strictly localized tubercular infection normally stands. If this is so—and I infer from what I have gathered that this is the condition of affairs in phthisis when it has by rest in bed been brought back into the condition of a strictly localized infection—it is eminently comprehensible that the patient is liable to relapse when on return to work he over-exerts himself in such a way as to convey into his blood—as happened in the case of the tuberculous disease of the hip before adverted to—tuberculous elements from foci in his tissues in which the tubercle bacillus has survived.

Programme of Treatment which would appear to be indicated in the case of Pyrexial Phthisis, or other Localized Tubercular Infection which may be associated with Pyrexia.

If the views which I have developed above are in harmony with the facts, the following programme would seem to be marked out for us in

[1] *Vide* author's paper on "Milk as a Medicinal Agent." *Lancet*, October 14, 1905.

connexion with every case of pyrexial phthisis: (1) Our first efforts ought to be directed to bringing back the infection to the condition of a purely localized infection. Rest in bed and the adoption of measures for increasing the coagulability of the blood would be the appropriate methods for the achievement of this end. (2) As soon as this first object has been achieved it should be our aim to substitute for the inappropriately adjusted and inappropriately interspaced auto-inoculations which wore down the patient without achieving effective immunisation a system of appropriately adjusted and appropriately interspaced inoculations of a tubercle vaccine. (3) Finally, as soon as by the means just indicated a satisfactory antibacterial pressure has been achieved in the blood, it should be an object of endeavour, by the regulation of the patient's exercises and by attention to his blood pressure and by taking steps where necessary to diminish the coagulability of his blood, to irrigate in a methodical manner all the foci of infection with a lymph rich in anti-bacterial substances.

A Criticism of the Foundations of Serum Therapy.[1]

Being a Contribution made to a Debate held under the Auspices of the Chelsea Clinical Society.

By A. E. Wright.

Preliminary Remarks—Incidental Disadvantages of Serum-therapy—Production of the "Serum disease"—Treatment of the Serous Hæmorrhages (Urticaria and Articular Pains) which are associated with the serum-disease by Administration of Calcium Salts—Theoretical Basis upon which Serum-therapy is founded—Physician relies on the Bacteriologist who produces the Serum—He in his turn proceeds upon the unjustified assumption that the Animal which is vicariously inoculated will make unlimited response to Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines—Real Course of Events after the Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines—Possibility that the Sera as sent out may contain Bacterial Toxins—Question of responsibility for this—Question as to how presence of Toxins in Serum can be discovered—Laboratory experiments, Clinical results—Suggestion that a Therapeutic Serum may be a Vaccine in Disguise, and question as to whether the assumption that a Vaccine might be of service in Septicæmic Infections is a tenable hypothesis—Conclusion that this is a tenable hypothesis, and that it may explain the occasional Clinical benefit obtained in Septicæmic Infection by the Inoculation of certain Sera—Suggestion that Professor Chantemesse's successful Serum-therapy in Typhoid may be explained in this manner—Summary of Conclusions.

We are met this evening to discuss together the interesting question of serum therapeutics. Professor Hewlett has already, in his opening address, taken you over the ground, and you will have noted that he has said little in praise of the serum therapeutics as a general principle of treatment. Not only had he little to say in the way of commendation for serum-therapy as a method of combating bacterial disease other than diphtheria, but you will have noticed that much that he has said has been of the nature of extenuation and explanation of failure, coupled with suggestions for the modification of the various sera with a view to rendering them efficacious. I have as I listened felt myself in general agreement with Professor Hewlett on the question of what has been actually achieved by serum therapeutics On the other hand, I cannot feel that

[1] Reprinted from the *Clinical Journal*, May 16, 1906.

Professor Hewlett's explanations of the failure of serum therapeutics in connexion with the treatment of bacterial invasion go to the root of the matter. I have, for instance, no confidence whatever either in the practicability or in the utility of the suggestion that anthropoid apes, and generally speaking animals other than those now used, should be employed to furnish the therapeutic sera, and I am not satisfied that there is a basis of experimental fact for the theory which assumes that sera which are at present impotent would be rendered potent for good if they were exhibited in combination with them—that "complement" which is so often on the lips of bacteriologists.

I do not believe that serum therapeutics as applied to the destruction of bacteria in the body can be bolstered up by any of the devices that have been referred to. The whole system of serum-therapy, except where it is a question of the neutralization of a poison like diphtheria toxin by the aid of an antitoxic serum, appears to me to rest upon very insecure foundations.

Before attempting to make good this proposition I would like to take the opportunity of saying a word on the question of certain altogether incidental disadvantages which attach to serum-therapy in all its forms, even where, as in the case of the antitoxic serum which is employed in the treatment of diphtheria, the serum accomplishes all that it is designed to accomplish.

You will immediately appreciate that I have in view those pathological phenomena, such as urticaria and articular pains, which, since they may occur after the incorporation of any foreign serum without distinction, are by the Germans very conveniently grouped together under the name of the *serum disease*.

The pathology of the "serum disease" is full of interest both from the theoretical and the practical standpoint. Viewed from the theoretical standpoint, the disease is interesting by reason of the fact that the phenomena of the disease are, as is brought out clearly in the recent work of Pirquet and Schick,[1] to be interpreted as events in a process of immunisation by which the organism purges itself from the foreign serum. The serum disease is interesting also from the practical standpoint, first because there is some reason to think that the process of purgation just referred to may be associated with fundamental alterations in the antibacterial power of the blood; and, secondly, because the urticaria and articular pains, which are to the patient sources of the most serious discomfort, are largely avoidable incidents.

In connexion with this I showed some ten years ago that these incidents are associated with a diminution in the coagulability of the blood, pointing out as I did so that this condition of diminished coagulability and viscidity stands in causal relation to "serous haemorrhages" generally, and

[1] *Die Serumkrankheit*, Franz Deuticke, Leipzig und Wien, 1905.

drawing attention to the fact that it is possible to restrain such serous haemorrhages by the administration of calcium salts.[1]

My suggestion that it would be possible by the exhibition of calcium salts to forestall the urticaria and articular troubles of the serum disease, and to cure these rapidly when they have supervened, has recently been completely justified by the work of Netter.

Netter has shown in a very conclusive manner, by systematic observations conducted with controls on some hundreds of cases, that the percentage of urticarias in patients treated with diphtheria antitoxin can be very strikingly reduced—it was reduced, I think, in Dr. Netter's series of cases by four-fifths—by the exhibition of calcium chloride.

I would, therefore, again commend this procedure as a routine measure after serum injections, in particular in connexion with prophylactic inoculations of diphtheria antitoxin.

It would probably suffice in the case of an adult to administer 30 grains of calcium chloride or lactate daily from the sixth to the tenth day after the injection of serum.

Having disposed of this incidental and relatively speaking unimportant issue in connexion with serum therapeutics, let me now turn to the main theme of my discourse. In serum-therapy the physician proposes to administer to the patient protective substances elaborated in the organism of an animal which has been vicariously inoculated with the appropriate bacterial vaccine. The method is commended to the physician among others by the following considerations. He believes that, incidental troubles such as urticaria apart, he cannot by serum-therapy do any harm even if he fails to do any good. He believes that every serum which bears the label of a reputable laboratory, stating that it is an "antiserum" for a particular microbic infection is, as it professes to be, a serum which contains protective substances and a serum which contains these in sufficient quantity to reinforce to a sensible extent the antibacterial substances in his patient's blood. Further, he believes that in choosing his dose he may guide himself entirely by the clinical condition of his patient, employing more of the serum when the patient's condition is very serious, less when his symptoms are less urgent. And above all, the physician believes that he has behind him in the capacity of a scientific guardian a bacteriologist who, as a preliminary to issuing the serum, has arrived at an adequate knowledge of its composition.

The whole of this body of beliefs rests, I am convinced, upon a foundation of sand. Let me for the moment deal only with the last and most

[1] "On the treatment of the hæmorrhages and urticarias which are associated with deficient blood-coagulability."—*Lancet*, Jan. 18, 1896.

Notes on two cases of urticarias treated by calcium chloride.—*Brit. Journal of Dermatology*, vol. viii, No. 89, 1896.

On the association of serous hæmorrhages with conditions of defective blood-coagulability.—*Lancet*, Sept. 19, 1896.

In each of these papers cases of serum disease treated by calcium chloride are reported.

important belief, with the belief of the practitioner that the bacteriologist who furnishes the serum has arrived at a competent knowledge of its composition. The bacteriologist will emphatically repudiate any such knowledge in connexion with many of the sera which he furnishes. He will, no doubt, in the case of his antidiphtheria serum, and in the case of his antitetanus serum, tell you the antitoxic value of the serum; for he will have measured it. But he will admit to you—if you press home your inquiries—that in the case of antibacterial sera, where he has not at disposal any adequate methods of examination, his sera are often sent out without any searching examination. His only warranty for labelling his sera in such a case as "antisera" is derived from the fact that he assumes that horses may be trusted to furnish potent antisera when injected with progressively increasing doses of any bacterial vaccine.

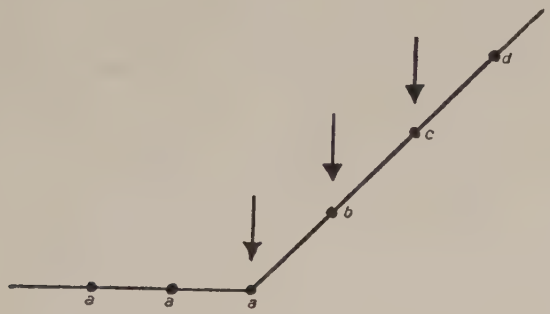


FIG. 1.

It is for you to consider whether this assumption of the serum manufacturer is an assumption which he is entitled to make, and an assumption upon which you are justified in reposing confidence.

Let us try to make clear to ourselves the working theory of the bacteriologist who manufactures sera. He would probably formulate his working theory in some such form of words as the following: "If I, in a diagrammatic manner, represent the amount of protective substances in the blood of a horse anterior to inoculation by a series of dots positioned as at *a*, *a*, *a* (Fig. 1), the amount of protective substances in that horse's blood after recovery from a first inoculation of any bacterial vaccine may be represented by a dot positioned as at *b*. After second and third inoculations, conducted in each case with doses increasing by geometrical progression, the amount of antibacterial substances may be represented by dots positioned at *c* and *d*. Progressing in this manner, I shall arrive at a condition when there will be contained in the horse's blood very large amounts of protective substances."

When we come to inquire into the basis upon which this comfortable theory is built up, we find that results such as those just postulated are

obtained in connexion with the inoculation of diphtheria and tetanus toxins into horses. But let it be noted that results such as these are, even in connexion with the inoculation of diphtheria and tetanus toxins into horses, not always obtained. In a certain percentage of cases no satisfactory amount of antitoxin is ever achieved. Again, a certain number of horses succumb in the course of the treatment. Lastly, a condition may be arrived at in which injections of toxin are no longer responded to by an elaboration of antitoxin.

It will be recognized, in view of the above, that the generalization upon which the serum manufacturer relies is not a true generalization from the whole of his experience in connexion with diphtheria and tetanus antitoxins. It is a generalization from his experience in connexion with his successful cases.

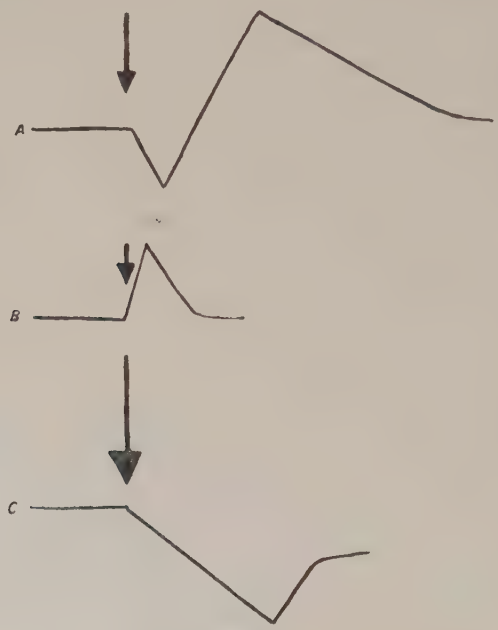


FIG. 2.

The serum manufacturer has thus not even the justification of an argument from analogy for assuming, as he does, that the serum which he obtains by the inoculation of bacterial cultures into horses must contain protective substances. And he has even less justification in assuming, apart from actual verification, that his sera contain protective substances in sufficient concentration to be therapeutically useful. In so fundamental a matter as this the proper course for the bacteriologist is, as you will recognize, to verify everything, to measure everything,

and to declare in each case the results of his measurements. In particular ought the alterations in the anti-bacterial powers of the blood which supervene upon the incorporation of bacterial vaccines into the horses which serve for the production of his sera in each case to be investigated. I take it as assured that those alterations would correspond in all respects to those which I found to occur in man in connexion with antityphoid inoculation, and afterwards in connexion with the inoculation of very many different varieties of bacterial vaccines. I may perhaps recall to your minds the sequence of events which occurs in each case, and which I have spoken of as " the law of the negative and positive phase," or as " the law of the ebb and flow and reflow of the wave of immunity." Let me trace for you here a typical curve representing the changes in the antibacterial power of the blood which occur after an ordinary inoculation (Fig. 2, A).

This form of the curve may be modified. Here, for instance (Fig. 2, B), where only a small dose of vaccine is administered, the negative phase is elided, and duration of the positive phase is shortened. Again, where a large dose is inoculated the negative phase is accentuated, until finally the positive phase is abolished, the blood remaining for a considerable period below the level at which it originally stood (Fig. 2, C).

The significance of these curves in connexion with serum therapeutics will immediately come home to you. It will be appreciated that according as a larger or smaller dose of bacterial vaccine has been incorporated into the particular horse, and according as an earlier or later date may have been chosen for the bleeding of that horse, his blood will contain, in the one case, unneutralized bacterial poisons and less protective substances than the normal blood, and in the other case protective substances in excess of those found in the normal blood.

In the curves I have drawn (Fig. 2) I have set forth, as you will have observed, only the events which supervene upon a single inoculation. Let me now, seeing that we have in serum-therapy to deal with sera which are obtained after a whole series of inoculations, pass on to consider with you the results which may be achieved by a series of inoculations.

Here one of three things may happen. (1) Each inoculation may operate as an independent event, as indicated in Fig. 3, A ; (2) the inoculations may produce a cumulative effect in the direction of the negative phase, as indicated in Fig. 3, B ; (3) the inoculations may, as in Fig. 3, C, produce a cumulative effect in the direction of the positive phase.

The first result is, I believe, the ordinary result of inoculation of a bacterial vaccine when the animals are allowed to recover completely between the successive inoculations.

The second result is, I suspect, very frequently achieved when the inoculations are pushed.

The last effect would, if I may argue from a very large experience of the effects of inoculation on man, appear to be only exceptionally realized. Moreover, even where the very best results are achieved in con-

nexion with the elaboration of anti-bacterial substances in the organism, that miracle of successful immunisation which accomplishes itself in connexion with the inoculation of diphtheria toxin and tetanus toxin into horses—a miracle which gives us, often within the compass of a very few cubic centimetres of serum, a quantum of antitoxin which suffices to alter the whole course of the patient's disease, is, so far as we know elsewhere, never even distantly approached.

You will recognize how different all this is from the dream which you share with the serum manufacturer. The serum manufacturer makes his serum, and you administer it, thinking that beyond doubt you are adminis-

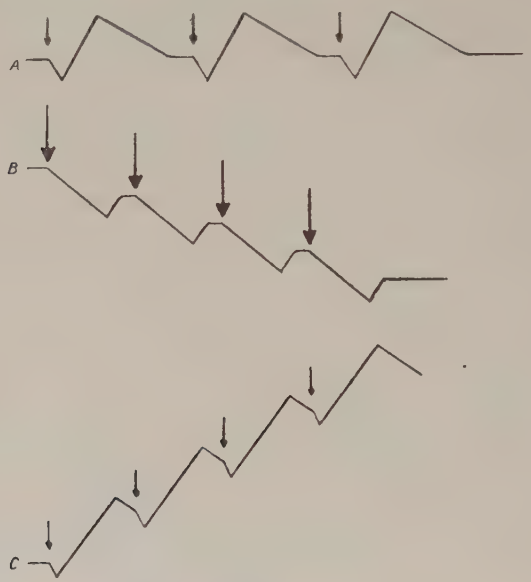


Fig. 3.

tering a quantum of antibacterial substances which will count in your patient's conflict with his bacterial invasion. And all the while the product which the serum manufacturer is sending out, and which you are administering, may not contain any appreciable quantity of protective substances.

That serum may, on the contrary, contain, practically unaltered, the identical bacterial poisons which were originally incorporated into the horse. And by the agency of these it may so happen that you may, as by the incorporation of a dose—here an unmeasured dose—of a bacterial vaccine, be lowering, temporarily at least, your patient's powers of resistance with respect to the micro-organisms with which he has to deal.

In connexion with this last possibility, two questions immediately

press for solution. The *first* is the question as to where the responsibility rests if a serum which contains a toxic bacterial element is administered as a serum which contains protective substances. The *second* is the question as to whether there are any stigmata by which the bacteriologist, or failing him, the clinician, would be capable of discriminating between a serum which contains protective substances and a serum which contains toxic bacterial elements.

In particular, the issue as to where the responsibility rests in the case of the administration of a serum which is something quite other from what it is assumed to be is an issue which must come home to us all. We may take it that the physician will contend that the responsibility lies on the shoulders of the bacteriologist, and will point to the fact that the serum is labelled as an "antiserum" as a fact which places the bacteriologist clearly in the wrong if the serum does not contain protective substances in appreciable quantity, and above all, if it contains toxic bacterial elements.

The bacteriologist, for his part, will, no doubt, contend that when he has incorporated into the horse his bacterial vaccines, and when he has waited after the last inoculation until the horse is "restored to health," he has fully discharged his responsibility, and that the clinician must be answerable for any results which may follow from the exhibition of the serum.

It may be debatable as between physician and the bacteriologist as to who is to take the blame, but it is for us to look at the matter from the patient's point of view. From the point of view of the patient someone is assuredly to blame if a serum is administered which is quite other from what it is intended to be, and assuredly, also, we must hold the practitioner who administers the serum as responsible to the patient.

If I am correct in this, the physician should abstain from assuming with regard to his patient responsibility for any serum except where, as in the case of an antidiphtheria serum, the bacteriologist is prepared to give him definite information with respect to the amount of protective substances in the serum. Again, all experimentation with sera of uncertain composition ought, I submit, to be undertaken exclusively by those who, understanding the possibilities of error, would proceed in these matters with a due sense of responsibility. I shall return to the subject later.

For the present, let me turn to the second of the issues spoken of above, and let me consider with you whether there is any possibility of determining in connexion with a serum which purports to be an antibacterial serum whether it is rich in antibacterial elements, or whether it contains toxic elements derived from the bacterial vaccines which were inoculated in the horse.

There are in point of fact a whole series of methods which may be exploited in this connexion.

1. It may be determined upon animals whether a serum which purports to be an "antiserum" does or does not possess toxic properties.

In this connexion attention may be drawn to the fact that a particular "antistaphylococcus serum" which was examined by Dr. Bulloch was found to be extremely toxic.

2. It may be determined upon animals whether, failing the production of an overt toxic effect on animals, the incorporation of a serum reduces the resisting power of the animal organism to the corresponding bacterial infection.

In this connexion attention may be drawn to the fact that one of the "antiplague sera" which was furnished to the Indian Plague Commission for trial upon man, and which fell to me as a member of that Commission to test, proved to be a serum which, while it was not definitely toxic in the sense that the antistaphylococcus serum referred to above was toxic, was none the less a serum which lowered the resisting power of guinea-pigs to plague infection, causing these animals to succumb to the test inoculations in shorter time than the control animals—the

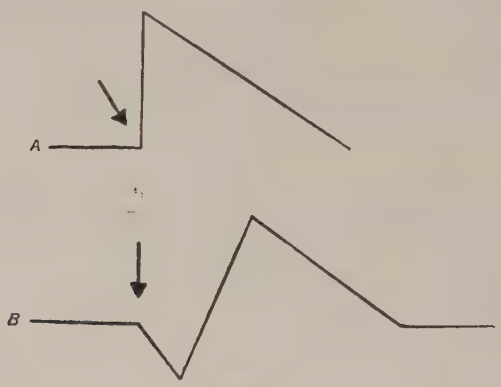


FIG. 4.

extent to which death was hastened being in each case directly proportional to the dose administered.

3. It may be determined whether the addition of a serum to normal human serum does or does not deprive this serum of its antibacterial powers. I may here instance the fact that a highly agglutinating "anti-typhoid serum" which was suggested for use upon the troops in South Africa, proved to be a serum which could not be added even in small quantity to normal blood *in vitro* without abolishing the bactericidal power which is normally exerted upon the typhoid bacillus by human serum.

4. Lastly, a serum which purports to be an antibacterial serum may be tested by the method which finds illustration in the Curve above.

The curve which I have labelled A would, I take it, be accepted by everyone as the type of curve which we are entitled to expect when we

make a series of measurements of the protective substances of an animal's blood in connexion with the intravenous injection of an antiserum.

The curve which I have labelled B would, I take it, be conceded to be the type of curve which would be obtained in connexion with the intravenous inoculation of a bacterial vaccine.

The inference would appear to be justified that where the latter instead of the former type of curve is obtained in connexion with the inoculation of a serum; that serum must contain, not antibacterial substances, but bacterial elements derived from the vaccine which was employed in the "immunisation procedures."

I have applied this test in connexion with a serum which was derived from a reputable laboratory, and which was labelled "antitubercular serum," with the result that I obtained in the case of a rabbit inoculated with this serum a curve of the type B—a curve which was practically identical with that obtained in the case of a control rabbit inoculated intravenously with tuberculin. I may point out to you that this observation falls into line with the fact that typical "tuberculin reactions" have over and over again been recorded in connexion with the exhibition of "antitubercular sera" to tubercular patients. You will, in view of this, I think, be with me when I urge that not alone such experiments as the above on animals, but if possible also measurements of the effect exerted on the antibacterial power of the human patient, ought preliminary to its issue to be made in connexion with every serum issued for the treatment of septicæmic disease. Where such definite measurements of the effect exerted by a serum upon the blood of patients have not been carried out, it is sometimes practicable to discern the character of the serum from clinical observation alone.

1. The clinician would be justified in suspecting the presence of bacterial poisons in a serum in those cases where a tuberculin reaction or other similarly characteristic reaction supervened upon the exhibition of the serum.

2. He would perhaps be justified in a similar suspicion where severe constitutional symptoms other than those which are characteristic of the serum disease, supervene upon inoculation—in particular where severe symptoms of intoxication make their appearance with greater frequency in connexion with the treatment of the graver cases than in connexion with the less serious cases of the disease.

3. Lastly, the clinician would be justified in suspecting the presence of bacterial elements in serum where there supervenes immediately upon its inoculation an exacerbation of patients' symptoms, followed after an interval by a distinct improvement.

This particular sequence of events would, I submit, find its most satisfactory explanation in the *hypothesis that the serum is functioning as a vaccine.*

The idea that a serum may in reality be a bacterial vaccine in dis-

guise, and the idea that benefit may be derived from the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine in cases of septicæmia are new and as yet unventilated ideas. I am anxious to commend these ideas to your consideration. Let me begin by putting it to you once again that, in view of all that we know with respect to the difficulty of obtaining a cumulation of antibacterial substances in the blood, and in view of what we know with respect to the rule of thumb manner in which the immunisation of horses is at present conducted, it is quite as likely that a residuum of the bacterial vaccines originally incorporated should be contained in the serum issued as that a really useful quantum of antibacterial substances should be contained in it. If this is so, a serum obtained by the immunisation of horses, while it may at one time be a vehicle for antibacterial substances, may at other times quite well be in effect a bacterial vaccine.

Passing to consider the possibility of bacterial vaccines rendering useful service in connexion with the treatment of septicæmic infections, I have to confess that the idea that bacterial vaccines could here play a useful rôle was only a short time ago very uncongenial to my preconceived notions. I conceived that when bacteria found access to the blood and generalized themselves in the system the machinery for immunization which is at the disposal of the organism was fully called into action. In accordance with this I assumed that to inoculate bacterial vaccines in such circumtances would be to add fuel to the fire without contributing anything to the elaboration of those antibacterial elements which serve to extinguish the conflagration.

I have now recognized that both the premises upon which I built and my inferences from those premises are assailable.

In the first place, while it is true that the machinery for immunisation with which the organism is provided is called into action in septicaemic diseases, it would seem certain that under the conditions which obtain in such diseases that machinery is often not working to its full capacity.

An unmistakable indication of this is furnished by the fact that in the exactly analogous conditions which obtain where bacterial cultures or the filtrates from these are inoculated intravenously into horses there is obtained, in some cases at least, only a very poor yield of protective substances.

Again, in the reasoning which I above rehearsed, the possibility of a different effect being produced by bacterial elements introduced into the blood stream and the same bacterial elements introduced directly into the tissues was overlooked. Yet consideration will show that there may be quite important differences, first in the matter of the toxic effects exerted, and secondly with respect to the immunising response elicited by one and the same quantum of bacterial elements introduced directly into the blood stream, or, as the case may be, directly into the tissues. The general intoxication effect—which above all we have to apprehend

in septicaemic conditions—may be expected to be greatest where, as occurs in these infections, bacterial derivatives find direct access to the circulating blood, and least where, as would be the case in the inoculation of a vaccine, the bacterial elements are introduced into the tissues. In this latter case, as may often be seen in connexion with the inoculation of small quanta of antityphoid bacilli when the patient keeps his bed after the inoculation, the toxic effect of the vaccine may expend itself exclusively upon the tissues at the seat of inoculation, constitutional symptoms being here practically absent.

Equally important are the differences which may manifest themselves in the matter of the immunising response according as one and the same quantum of bacterial elements is incorporated into the blood, or, as the case may be, directly into the tissues. In the case where bacteria are, as in septicaemic conditions, found in the blood stream, or in organs standing in direct relation with this, the bacterial derivatives are of necessity diluted by the whole volume of the blood and lymph before they can come into application upon the tissues in which, we may take it, the machinery for the elaboration of protective substances is located. In conformity with this great dilution of the bacterial derivatives a comparatively speaking ineffective immunising stimulus will here be administered. In contrast with this, where a bacterial vaccine is inoculated directly into the tissues, the bacterial products will come into application upon these in a very concentrated form, calling forth a correspondingly larger production of protective substances.

Such larger production of protective substances is, in point of fact, regularly achieved in the horse in connexion with the production of diphtheria antitoxin, when, in lieu of intravenous inoculations, subcutaneous and intra-muscular inoculations are resorted to, and, it would seem, in particular in the case where the inoculations are made with very concentrated toxins. My fellow-workers and I have also recently, in connexion with the treatment of a considerable number of cases of Malta fever, and in connexion with one case of infective endocarditis—the details of which will be elsewhere published—achieved by the exploitation of the corresponding vaccines in carefully controlled doses both an increased production of protective substances, and in each case in association with this a rapid cure.

Having now, I hope, made it clear that a serum which is administered as an "antiserum" may in reality be a bacterial vaccine in disguise, and having further indicated to you that bacterial vaccines may be exploited with very happy results in connexion with the treatment of septicaemic disease, I think that you will bear with me when I suggest to you that many of the successful results which have been achieved by serum-therapy would find their simplest explanation in the assumption that the sera which were exploited operated as bacterial vaccines.

The idea that this might be so suggested itself to me first in connexion with a particular sample of highly agglutinating anti-Malta fever serum which was prepared and issued by me from the Pathological Department of the Army Medical School, Netley. It was reported to me with respect to this sample of serum that it produced in the two Malta fever patients upon whom it was employed in each case, as its first result, an alarming exacerbation of the fever, and in association with this in each case very severe urticaria and oedema. After the lapse of a few days there supervened a sudden turn for the better, resulting, I understand, in each case in a rapid cure.

Looking back on these cases, and calling to mind on the one hand the fact that this sample of serum was obtained only after the horse had been subjected to a long course of what was throughout in intention a process of immunisation; and on the other hand, the fact that nothing at all resenbling the effects which were obtained by this sample of serum had been obtained with samples drawn off earlier in the course of the horse's "immunisation," which were tested upon Malta fever patients—among others upon myself, at a time when I came under that category—and correlating with these facts the fact that an exacerbation of the fever is seen also in connexion with the inoculation of a Malta fever vaccine into Malta fever patients, I regard it as in the highest degree probable that the serum which caused the effects described above must have contained toxic elements derived from the Malta fever vaccines which had been incorporated into the horse.

I have seen a train of events somewhat similar to that recounted above supervene also in connexion with the inoculation of antistreptococcus serum, and I suspect that some of you may also have had similar experiences, for I gather from the literature that intoxication symptoms followed by improvement in the patient's condition are from time to time met with in connexion with the inoculation of many different "antisera."

Isolated facts cannot, however, furnish a basis broad enough for generalization such as that which I am seeking to commend to your acceptance. You will, I doubt not, as a precondition to embarking upon any serious consideration of the hypothesis I have suggetsed to you, desire to be furnished with a summary of the best results which have been obtained in connexion with the serum-therapy of septicaemic diseases; and you will desire to have furnished to you, in connexion with that summary, data which would countenance the idea that the results obtained may properly be referred, not to protective substances, but to toxic bacterial derivatives contained in the serum employed.

It so happens that in a paper recently published by Chantemesse on the treatment of typhoid fever by an "antityphoid serum" I find as nearly as possible all that I require for compliance with your wishes. Let me place you in possession of the facts which are recorded in Professor Chantemesse's paper. He has during the last five years treated

with his "antityphoid serum"—if I understand aright—all the cases, 712 in number, which have been admitted to his typhoid wards. By placing side by side with the results obtained upon these patients the results obtained without serum in the typhoid wards of all the other Paris hospitals taken together, the following comparison is obtained :

	Number of Cases of Typhoid Fever treated.	Number of Deaths which occurred among these.	Case Mortality.
			Per cent.
Treated without serum . .	3,595	753	17·3*
Treated with serum . . .	712	27	3·7

* M. Chantemesse's arithmetic would here appear to be at fault.

It cannot be doubtful to any one who considers these results, or who has had the privilege, as I have had, of visiting Prof. Chantemesse's wards and seeing his cases, that we have here a very brilliant and, I presume, an absolutely unique achievement in connexion with the treatment of typhoid fever.

Our present concern in connexion with that achievement is to consider whether the results which have been obtained are to be imputed to protective substances elaborated in the organism of the horse and transferred to the patient in the vehicle of the serum, or to a residuum of the typhoid vaccine originally inoculated into the horse and transferred to the patient in the vehicle of the serum.

This fundamentally important issue is not discussed in M. Chantemesse's paper. We are, however, supplied with certain data from which we can make our own deductions.

Let me try to marshal these data for you :

1. We learn in M. Chantemesse's paper that two well-marked phases come under observation in connexion with the inoculation of the serum. Immediately after inoculation there supervenes a "phase of reaction." This phase may last from four to five days. It is associated with an exacerbation of the patient's symptoms.

Upon this phase of reaction follows a "phase of defervescence."

There would seem to me to be little doubt that these two phases must be identified with the "negative" and "positive phases" considered earlier in this paper. In other words, it seems to me clearly indicated here that the inoculation of the serum is followed by a reduction in the antibacterial power of the blood—a reduction which stands in relation to the exacerbation of the fever—and that this is followed up by an increase in the antibacterial power of the blood, standing in relation with the defervescence which is observed.

2. We learn that the dose of the serum which is employed is very small—"a fraction of a cubic centimetre"; further, that this dose is reduced proportionally with the severity of the symptoms and the gravity

of the case. It may even, I understand, be reduced in very severe cases to "half a drop."

Again, we learn that when reinoculation is resorted to the dose is further cut down by one half; and, lastly, we learn that where reinoculation is undertaken it is undertaken only after the expiration of a considerable number of days—in the case of the published curves after twenty-three and sixteen days respectively.

When we come to ask ourselves whether this scheme of dosage, a scheme of dosage which has given the brilliant results above recorded, can be reconciled with the idea that we are dealing here with a true "antityphoid" serum, it becomes clear as noonday that the scheme of dosage employed is the exact reverse of that which would be apposite if we were dealing with a true "antiserum" such as antidiphtheritic serum.

When dealing with a true antiserum one does not limit the dose in an ordinary case to "a fraction of a cubic centimetre," nor does one diminish the dose to "half a drop" in the gravest cases—those cases where the organism stands most in need of protective substances. Rather does one, where a true antiserum is to hand, give in each case, unless where limited by financial considerations or considerations which have reference to the serum disease, large doses of serum. Again, in the more serious cases one lets all the considerations above referred to go by the board and gives larger and larger doses. And, yet again, where the result which one desires is not achieved by a single inoculation one does not allow a long interval to elapse before reinoculation.

In contrast to all this, when one is exploiting a bacterial vaccine in the treatment of a septicaemic disease one would, except for the fact that the dose can much more appropriately be regulated by the measurement of the antibacterial power of the patient's blood, follow a scheme of dosage which would be an exact replica of that followed by M. Chantemesse. I think I need not further labour my point.

3. Let me turn to a further series of considerations which suggest that the antityphoid serum which M. Chantemesse has so brilliantly exploited is a typhoid vaccine in disguise.

It is, as all who have attempted it know, a very difficult task in the case of the horse to carry immunisation against the typhoid bacillus up to the point at which a satisfactory "antiserum" is produced. There is thus an *à priori* improbability that M. Chantemesse has obtained in his serum a therapeutically useful quantum of protective substances. Nor does M. Chantemesse, apart from the fact that his serum is efficacious in reducing the death-rate in typhoid fever, claim very much for his serum. What he claims for it amounts to no more than this—that the serum possesses a considerable agglutinating power, and that a quantum of serum corresponding to the maximum dose which is employed therapeutically upon man—that dose, if I understand M. Chantemesse aright, never exceeds "a fraction of a cubic centimetre"—may with impunity be inoculated intra-cerebrally into rabbits and guinea-pigs.

I would ask you to note that neither the one nor the other of these findings is in any way inconsistent with the idea that the serum may owe its efficacy to the presence of typhoid vaccine.

The presence of agglutinating elements in the serum cannot, as we have seen, be accepted as evidence of the absence of bacterial derivatives. You will remember that the toxic "anti-Malta fever serum" which was discussed above was possessed of well-marked agglutinating power. And you will remember also that the "antityphoid serum," referred to above as a serum which completely abolished the bactericidal power which the normal blood exerts upon the typhoid bacillus, was in like manner a serum which possessed a well-marked—indeed, an altogether exceptionally well-marked—agglutinating power.

If the presence of agglutinins cannot be accepted as evidence of the freedom of a serum from toxic properties, much less can in the case of an "antityphoid serum" experimental results such as those obtained by M. Chantemesse on rabbits and guinea-pigs be accepted as adequate evidence. These I regard as quite inconclusive, first, because very marked constitutional symptoms may be produced in man by doses of typhoid vaccine which are insignificantly small in comparison with those which are required to kill rabbits or guinea-pigs; and secondly, because, as pointed out earlier in this paper, the resistance of the organism to bacterial invasion may be seriously reduced by the exhibition of the serum, even where ostensible symptoms of poisoning are completely absent.

Scrutinizing M. Chantemesse's successful results from all the different points of view which I have asked you to consider, I think there is no way of escape from the conclusion that his results—and I would urge that these are the only statistical data which are conclusive as to the utility of serum-therapy in connexion with septicaemic disease—are in all probability to be regarded as results obtained by the inoculation of bacterial vaccines.

Let me try now to bring out in clear relief the salient points I have endeavoured to establish in this discourse.

1. I have tried to make good to you the proposition that the sera which are issued as "antisera" for the treatment of septicaemic conditions may, as the case may happen, contain a certain quantum—not necessarily a therapeutically useful quantum—of protective substances elaborated by the horse, or they may be inert, or finally they may contain bacterial elements derived from the culture originally inoculated into the horse.

Any one of these three varieties of serum may at present be sold to you under the denomination of an "anti-serum."

2. I have drawn your attention to the fact that the scheme of dosage which would be indicated in the case of a serum which contained only protective substances would, if followed in the case of a serum such as was last in question, be dangerously erroneous. In like manner a

scheme of dosage such as would be appropriate in the case where the serum is the equivalent of a bacterial vaccine would, in connexion with a true antiserum, be absolutely ineffective.

3. Lastly, I have endeavoured to bring home to you that there is good reason to believe that the only brilliant results which have been achieved by serum therapy on a series of cases—to wit, the results of M. Chantemesse—have been achieved by the inoculation of a serum which may be presumed to have functioned as a bacterial vaccine.[1]

If useful serum-therapy in septicaemic diseases resolves itself into a question of the inoculation of bacterial derivatives, there is no need, I think, for me to point out to you the moral.

[1] *It appears from his paper read before the International Congress for Hygiene and Demography, Berlin,* 1907, *that M. Chantemesse has now tacitly adopted the view which is here put forward.*

It would seem clear also from many of the descriptions of the clinical symptoms (negative and positive phase effects) which have been observed after the injection of Marmorek's "antitubercular serum" that we have here also to deal with an "active immunisation" insinuating itself under the mask of a "passive immunisation."

Synopsis of the Principles of Vaccine-Therapy and Therapeutic Immunisation Generally.[1]

Being the Substance of a Series of three Herter Lectures delivered before the Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, and of a Lecture delivered before the Harvey Society of New York, in October, 1906.

By A. E. Wright.

I. Introductory Criticism.—(1) Treatment by Chemical Antiseptics—(2) Treatment by the Extirpation of the Obtrusive Focus of Infection—(3) Treatment by the Determination of Lymph to Focus of Infection—(4) Serum-therapy—(5) Expectant Treatment.

II. Principles of the Method of Vaccine-therapy, and Sketch of the Machinery of Immunisation?

Question as to how far the Particular Composition of the Vaccine is a Material Element in the Success of an Inoculation Process.

III. Question as to what is the Best Method of Gauging the Immunising Effect of a Vaccination—(1) Test Inoculations with Living Cultures undertaken upon Vaccinated Men or Animals—(2) Test Inoculations with Living Cultures undertaken, not upon the Vaccinated Organism, but Vicariously upon Animals treated with Serum derived from the Vaccinated Animal or Man—(3) Consideration of the direct Toxic Effects produced by Inoculation.—(4) Consideration of the Improvement or Aggravation of the Clinical Condition which follows upon Inoculation—(5) Evaluation of the Antibacterial Power of a Sample of the Patient's Blood; and Discussion of Question as to whether we ought to aim at a "Complete" or at a "Partial Evaluation"—Grounds for taking as our Routine-guide in connexion with Immunisation Procedures the Estimation of the Opsonic Index.

IV. Detailed Study of the Curves of Immunisation which are obtained by the Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines—Question as to whether it would not be possible, by piling one Inoculation upon another, to achieve a larger Output of Antibacterial Substances, and in Association with this a Positive Phase of Longer Duration—Question as to whether it is expedient to employ in Successive Inoculations Progressively Increasing Doses of Vaccine, and Suggestions with Respect to the Regulation of the Dosage—Question as to the Site which ought to be selected for the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine.

V. In addition to mastering the Physiology of the Immunising Response the Immunisator must concern himself also with the following:—

(i.) Auto-inoculations—Assistance which can be obtained from Purposely Induced Auto-inoculations in the Diagnosis of Obscure Cases of Localized Bacterial Infection.

(ii.) Conditions which obtain in the Foci of Bacterial Infection.

VI. On the two Broad Principles which ought to guide us where we set ourselves to combat Bacterial Infections by the agency of the Protective Elements which are furnished by the Organism.

(i.) Comparison between the Therapeutic Policy which is embodied in these Principles, and the Policies embodied in the Measures which are currently employed in the Treatment of Bacterial Infections—Rationale of the Policy which is embodied in the two Therapeutic Principles formulated above.—Question as to which of these two Therapeutic Principles is to be followed in those Cases where they come into conflict.

[1] Originally published in the *Lancet*, August 17 and 24, 1907. *Revised and brought up to date, Oct.* 31, 1908.

(ii.) Question whether Artificially induced Auto-inoculations furnish a better Agency for raising the Antibacterial Power which the Blood exerts upon the Infecting Microbe than Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines—Can Inoculations with Bacterial Vaccines be undertaken in Bacterial Infections which are associated with Spontaneous Auto-inoculations?

(iii.) Therapeutic Measures which are appropriate where we desire to bring the Antibacterial Agencies of the Blood into Application upon the Bacteria in the Focus of Infection.

VII. General Discussion of the Question as to how the Achievements of Vaccine-Therapy ought to be evidenced and adjudicated upon—Unreasonable and unconsidered Requirements in connexion with the Evidence to be adduced in proof of the Value of Vaccine-Therapy—Method of escaping from the Evidential Difficulty which would seem to arise in connexion with the circumstance that Statistical Proof of the Value of Vaccine-Therapy cannot be furnished—Evidence which establishes that there is a close Correlation between the Rise and Fall of the Opsonic Power of the Blood and the Clinical Progress and Regress of the Patient —Further evidence of correlation—Summary of the Results which have been obtained by Vaccine-therapy.

VIII. Concluding Remarks. On the inherent limitations of Vaccine-Therapy—Amount of bacteriological training and labour required for proper conduct of Vaccine Therapy—Suggestions as to selection of cases for treatment.

I.—Introductory Criticism.

GENTLEMEN,—I have undertaken to outline to you—so far as I can do so within the limits at my disposal—the principles of vaccine-therapy—i.e., of the treatment of bacterial disease by the inoculation of the corresponding vaccines.

Let me preface what I have to say to you on this subject by asking you briefly to review with me the methods—other than vaccine-therapy —which we have to-day at disposal for the treatment of bacterial disease.

The following are, I think, the only methods which come here into consideration: (1) *treatment by chemical antiseptics;* (2) *treatment by the extirpation of the obtrusive focus of injection;* (3) *treatment by the determination of lymph to the focus of infection;* (4) *serum-therapy; and* (5) *the "expectant treatment."*

(1) Treatment by Chemical Antiseptics.

Antiseptics have found in medicine a threefold application. They have been locally applied with a view to holding in check and extinguishing localized bacterial infections. They have been used for the purpose of checking putrefaction in discharges and devitalized tissues. They have been administered internally with a view to checking microbial growth in the blood, or in regions which can be reached only by the channel of the blood.

Neither the second nor the third of these applications calls for any discussion. There has never been any doubt as to the possibility of suppressing putrefactive changes by antiseptic irrigations. And it is now all but universally recognized that it is futile to attempt to check

[1] We have a general formula for such antiseptics when, in technical terms, which perhaps improve a little on those suggested by Ehrlich, we say that they are more "*histotropic*" than "*parasitotropic.*"

bacterial growth in the interior of the organism by antiseptics [1] which have—as our present antiseptics have—a greater affinity for the constituent elements of the body than they have for any bacteria.

Attention may therefore here be concentrated upon the issue as to whether the antiseptic applications are effective in holding in check and extinguishing localized bacterial infections.

It is, of course, currently believed that this method of treatment is effective. It is in this faith that the surgeon introduces antiseptics into septic wounds or, where he happens to be so minded, into abscess cavities. It is in this faith that the physician resorts in the case of pulmonary infections to antiseptic inhalations. And it is in this faith that the dermatologist, gynæcologist, laryngologist, aurist, and genito-urinary specialist are strenuous—each in the application of antiseptics to the particular province of the body which he takes under his care.

It will be profitable for us to collate the facts and to consider whether there is in reality any trustworthy basis for the belief that inspires all this practice.

Significant in this connexion appears to me the fact that antiseptics are now by general consent abandoned in connexion with the treatment of ordinary surgical wounds. Significant also is it that the practice of introducing antiseptics into abscess cavities—erstwhile so common—is now less and less frequently resorted to. Significant, again, is it that treatment by antiseptics in case of bacterial invasions of mucous membranes is to-day more and more frequently followed up by curetting, scraping, and so-called "radical" operations. Above all significant, is it that so distinguished a dermatologist as Sabouraud should sum up the results of antiseptic treatment of bacterial diseases of the skin as follows: *ç'a été une chose curieuse que la faillite des antiseptiques dans le traitement des maladies dermatologiques parasitaires. On fondait sur eux des espérances colossales, ils n'ont presque rien donné.*"

The results which have been obtained in connexion with pulmonary infections by antiseptic inhalations and in connexion with bacterial infections of the genito-urinary passages by "urinary" and other antiseptics are, I am persuaded, neither better nor worse than those which have been obtained in connexion with diseases of the skin.

Now all this failure of antiseptics is, I submit, only what might *à priori* have been expected. Let me put the case to you as I see it.

It is, of course, axiomatic that antiseptics can take effect only upon those bacteria with which they come into contact. It is obvious also in the case of bacterial infections of the skin and mucous membranes that the infecting bacteria will not all be lying on the surface, and that they will not, when lying on the surface, be limited to those regions which are accessible to antiseptics. It follows that it will be quite unreasonable to expect from any application of antiseptics a complete sterilization. In every case a residue of bacteria will survive. Inevitably these will multiply and reoccupy the disinfected surface.

[1] *Bulletin de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1904, p. 286.

And this is not all. The antiseptic will not, as the unthoughtful assume, add its antibacterial power to the antibacterial power of the living organism. On the contrary, the antiseptic will directly antagonize the protective forces which the living organism has at command. It will paralyse the phagocytes, and will abolish the antibacterial power of the blood fluids. The disinfected surface will thus, by the action of the antiseptic, be left "swept and garnished"—ready for reinvasion by the expropriated bacteria.

And, again, this is not all. The antiseptic application will also injure the histological elements and, in particular, the capillaries of the tissue to which it is applied. It will thus lead to an outpouring of lymph from the disinfected surface. That outpouring will not only wash away the antiseptic, but it will, where a skin surface is in question, convert the natural armour of the normal epidermis into a lymph-sodden pulp in which bacteria will easily establish themselves.

(2) Treatment by the Extirpation of the Obtrusive Focus of Infection.

Where the invading bacteria have penetrated into the interior of the body their destruction by antiseptic applications is recognized to be out of question and the policy of proceeding against them by surgical methods comes up for consideration.

I can understand that extirpation may be imperative where an organ has been completely disorganized by invading bacteria and where there is danger to life from the spread of the infection. I can also understand that a case can be made out for extirpation where there is prospect of removing all the infecting bacteria without danger or sensible mutilation. Lastly, I can understand that it will be an added advantage if an extirpation operation removes along with the infecting bacteria a useless organ which is specially subject to infection.

But assuredly these are not the conditions under which the majority of scraping and extirpating operations are undertaken. And in particular these are not the conditions which confront us in those extirpation operations which are employed as a routine treatment in connexion with localized tuberculous infection. Here long before the surgeon has been called upon the scene not a few of the bacteria may, by the agency of the blood and lymph stream, have been carried beyond reach of his knife.

It will be clear that it cannot be claimed for extirpation operations undertaken in these circumstances that they are in any real sense of the term "radical operations."

They are operations which aim only at the extirpation of one or more obtrusive foci of infection.

In harmony with this conclusion is, I submit, the fact that tuberculous disease so often recurs after operation—exceptionally, in the form of general tuberculosis; commonly, as a localized process in the site of the operation, or elsewhere.

Such results are not, I think, adequately explained by mechanical disturbance in the focus of infection, or by the incomplete character of

the operation. There is probably at work here also another factor. A reduction in the antibacterial power of the blood may, as we shall see, supervene upon operative interference.

(3) Treatment by the Determination of Lymph to Focus of Infection.

The method of extirpation by the knife is only one of the methods which can be employed for the treatment of bacterial infections when these have passed beyond the reach of antiseptic applications.

Of the other methods the more important are the application of hot fomentations, massage, the method of Bier, the various forms of radio-therapy, free incision into infiltrated tissues, and the evacuation and drainage of abscess cavities.

In all of these methods—and it is this which has induced me to bring them together here under a single heading—we have a determination of lymph from the circulating blood to the focus of infection. We have also, except in those cases where an external vent is provided, a conveyance into the circulating blood of a lymph which has in passing through the focus of infection become impregnated with bacterial products.

I shall, before I have done, explain to you, in connexion with the passage of blood fluids into the focus of infection, that these blood fluids will exert in every case some antibacterial effect upon the invading bacteria and, in connexion with the passage of bacterial products from the focus of infection into the circulation, that these products will effect very important modifications in the blood both in the direction of reducing and in the direction of increasing its antibacterial power.

We may, accordingly, from the passage of blood fluids into the focus of infection, expect in every case a certain therapeutic effect.

From dissemination of living bacteria, and from the conveyance of bacterial products from the focus of infection into the blood which will occur where no external vent for these is provided, we must, on the other hand, expect occasional disaster.

You know that disaster has occasionally supervened upon massage, upon the application of Bier's bandages and upon radio-therapy.

(4) Serum-therapy.

All the therapeutic methods which have been in question above have application only to localized bacterial invasions. Serum-therapy has more ambitious aims.

After a successful application in connexion with the treatment of diphtheria this method has—and this without intermediary trial in connexion with simple, localized, and correspondingly more tractable forms of infection—been applied to the treatment of the most desperate and complicated varieties of bacterial infection. Serum-therapy has, as you know, found application not only in connexion with septicæmic infections but also in those most complex mixed infections which we have to deal with in pulmonary phthisis.

In these applications serum-therapy has, I submit, everywhere disappointed expectation.

It is not enough to realize the fact of failure. Wherever, in connexion with the application of any therapeutic method, we meet with repeated failure we are called upon to make a critical regress upon the facts and inquire into the rationale of that method.

It is exacted from us that we should, in accordance with this principle, here consider whether there is any assured basis for the treatment of bacterial infections by serum-therapy.

The serum-therapy of bacterial infection is, in point of fact, built upon the postulate that the animal organism possesses the capacity of responding to the incorporation of practically unlimited quanta of bacterial cultures by a practically unlimited output of antibacterial substances. Now this assumption, while it might be thought to win support from the analogy of the effective immunising response which occurs where diphtheria or tetanus toxin is incorporated into horses, is, as I think you will presently appreciate, entirely out of accord with the results which are ordinarily obtained by the inoculation of bacterial cultures. When you shall have considered how different are the ordinary everyday events which supervene upon bacterial inoculations from that miracle of immunisation which accomplishes itself when diphtheria toxin is administered to a horse, you will, I believe, be quite prepared to recognize that the *à priori* assumption that there will result from the introduction of a moderate quantum of an inoculated animal's serum into a patient's blood anything in the nature of a marked increase of his antibacterial power is entirely unwarranted.

(5) Expectant Treatment.

I now come to the expectant method of treating bacterial disease, the last of the five therapeutic methods which were enumerated at the outset of this paper. We have, as you appreciate, in the expectant treatment a therapeutic method which is based upon the adoption of a policy of non-intervention as between the invaded organism and the invading bacteria. We have here, in fact, a therapeutic method which commits the destiny of the patient—so far as that destiny is involved in the issue of his conflict with the invading microbes—entirely into the hands of chance.

It is agreed that by this method—which consists in little more than feeding and nursing the patient and keeping him at rest in bed—far better results are achieved in generalized bacterial infections than any that have been obtained by active medication. We need only to call to mind here the fact that from 80 to 90 per cent. of recoveries are under the expectant treatment achieved in typhoid fever.

There is, however, also a reverse to the medal.

We find there that we have in typhoid fever from 10 to 20 per cent. of fatal cases, that we have in streptococcal septicæmias and in plague—

abstain); thirdly, by the fact that the leucocytes will, in the case where the supply of micro-organisms is unrestricted, ordinarily fill themselves to absolute repletion; and fourthly, by the fact that the leucocytes will continue to ingest bacteria in a concentration of salt which entirely suppresses "spontaneous phagocytosis."

Seeing that phagocytosis of bacteria without subsequent intracellular digestion would, from the point of view of the protection of the organism, be meaningless, it will be plain to you that the digestive powers of the leucocytes would logically here come up for consideration. Into such discussion I am, however, for the present debarred from entering, not having as yet qualified myself to speak at first hand on the matter. Permit me, none the less, to give here my tribute of admiration to the brilliant initiating work which has been done on this subject by your fellow-countryman, Dr. Opie.

(*b*) *Antibacterial elements of the blood fluids.*—The blood fluids differ essentially from the nutrient fluids which are ordinarily employed by the bacteriologist for the cultivation of micro-organisms in the respect that, while the latter are nutrient fluids pure and simple, the blood fluids contain in addition to nutrient constituents also antibacterial elements.

The antibacterial elements which are here in question are "bacteriotropic elements" in the sense that they turn towards and enter into combination with elements of the bacterial body. Our knowledge of the modifications which are effected in the bacterial body under the influence of the bacteriotropic substances in the blood fluids is, it cannot be doubted, extremely incomplete. So much, however, already stands fast that the effect of the blood fluids upon the bacterial body may manifest itself in different ways.

The bacteria may be killed without being dissolved (*bactericidal effect*).

The bacteria may not only be killed but dissolved (*bacteriolytic effect*).

The bacteria may be so altered as to agglutinate in the presence of salt (*agglutination effect*).

The bacteria may be so altered as to be readily ingested by phagocytes (*opsōnic*[1] *effect*).

Inasmuch as the blood fluids produce in bacteria the different chemico-physical effects here enumerated, and inasmuch as agglutinating and opsonic effects can be obtained independently of each other, and independently of any bactericidal and bacteriolytic effects, it is convenient to assume that we have in the blood fluids four classes of bacteriotropic substances: *bactericidins*, *bacteriolysins*, *agglutinins* and *opsonins*.

Of these four varieties of bacteriotropic substances the opsonins would appear to be the most important.

We may ascribe to them a predominating importance, first, because it can be shown that the opsonic effect is, by either the normal or immune

[1] Derived from the Greek ὀψωνέω, and the Latin *opsōno,—I convert into palatable pabulum.*

blood, exerted upon every species of bacteria, whereas the agglutinating effect is exerted only upon special varieties of bacteria, and the bactericidal and bacteriolytic effect among pathogenic micro-organisms apparently only upon the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio.

The opsonins derive further practical importance from the fact that they can be very accurately measured (the error of estimation in the case of ordinary bloods and in the hands of a good worker being rarely greater than plus or minus 5 per cent.) and that it is possible, seeing that the opsonic effect of the normal blood fluids is very marked, to register not only (as in the case of the agglutinating power) an increase but also a reduction in the opsonic power of the blood.[1]

From the consideration of the protective machinery of the organism let me now turn to the consideration of certain preliminary points in connexion with the bacterial vaccines which operate upon that machinery. The first question which confronts us here is the question as to how far the success of an inoculation process is dependent upon the particular composition of the vaccine. I have in view here in speaking of the particular composition of the vaccine not the axiomatic requirement that it must be affiliated to, or connected by affinity with, the microbes which it is designed to combat, but rather the minute details with regard to its source and manufacture.

Question as to How Far the Particular Composition of the Vaccine is a Material Element in the Success of an Inoculation Process.

Reflection will make clear that the success of an immunisation process must depend, in the first place, upon the power of immunising response which the organism may happen to possess with respect to the particular bacterial infection or intoxication process which is in question, and in the second place, upon (*a*) the composition of the vaccine and (*b*) the dosage and method of administration. Up to the present the composition of the vaccine has been considered to the practical exclusion of the question of dosage. Whenever ill-success has attended a process of immunisation, or whenever it has appeared to any one that it " ought " to be possible to improve upon the result already obtained ; straightway the suggestion has been put forward that some change " ought " to be made in the composition of the vaccine. In such cases living vaccines have been proposed as substitutes for sterilized vaccines ; vaccines derived from virulent cultures as substitutes for vaccines derived from avirulent cultures ; vaccines derived from cultures more closely affiliated to the microbes against which protection is sought as substitutes for vaccines obtained from cultures less closely affiliated ; vaccines derived from agar cultures for vaccines obtained from broth cultures ; and

[1] Increase and reduction in the opsonic power of the blood is measured by comparing the amount of purely induced phagocytosis which is obtained with a normal blood with the amount of purely induced phagocytosis which is obtained with the blood of the patient under examination.

vaccines obtained by the trituration of bacteria, by autolysis, or treatment by caustic alkalies and subsequent precipitation with acids, as substitutes for vaccines which have been sterilized in the ordinary way by heat.

It has been claimed in connexion with each of the modifications here in question that its employment is dictated both by weighty *à priori* considerations and analogies and by the event of actual experiments.

Of the *à priori* considerations and analogies which have been adduced, I will consider only the contention that living vaccines ought to be preferred to vaccines which have been sterilized by heat, on the ground that inoculations with the former furnish close analogies with actual infections which are known to confer immunity, whereas there are no such close analogies between these last and inoculations with vaccines which have been subjected to the action of heat. To this I could rejoin that even supposing the temperature of boiling water, which the objector has here in view, to produce in a bacterial culture chemical changes as fundamental as those produced by that temperature in egg-albumin, a temperature which just suffices for sterilization might quite well leave the chemical constitution of a bacterial culture for all practical purposes unaltered, just as there is a temperature, short of the coagulating temperature, which will, when applied to a hen's egg, prevent germination, leaving the chemical characters of its albuminous substances substantially unaltered.

If I refrain from all attempt to meet with analogical reasonings of this kind the many other suggestions which have been put forward in connexion with the constitution of bacterial vaccines, it is because I hold that in scientific controversy the proper procedure is always either to bring proof of a contested proposition, or to make *tabula rasa* by demonstrating that such proof is not forthcoming.

Let me now try to show you that the reasoning which has been held to establish that a vaccine of a particular composition is more effective than a vaccine of somewhat other composition has in every case been inconclusive.

Where comparative experiments are undertaken upon two animals or upon two different sets of animals with different vaccines, and where in the one case a more effective response has been obtained than in the other, all that has been established is that the one vaccine employed in a particular dose x has at the date of the test inoculation conferred a greater measure of protection than another vaccine employed in another dose y. Now it is obvious that unless we have assurance that the doses x and y which have been employed in the comparative experiments represent the optimum doses of these vaccines (or doses which stand in each case in the same relation to those optimum doses) we can have no assurance that the survival or non-survival of the test animals is determined by the difference in the vaccine and not by a difference in the dose.

Now no serious attempt has ever been made to employ in comparative experiments exactly equivalent doses of competing vaccines; the question has not even been thoughtfully considered.

There has thus, in the course of our study of the question as to how far the particular composition of the vaccine is material to the success of an immunisation process, been elicited that we are not yet in a position to affirm of any particular variety of vaccine that it possesses an advantage over another vaccine. This issue cannot, in point of fact, be properly investigated until it has been realized that equivalent quantities of two vaccines are those quantities which produce equivalent effects upon the immunising machinery of the organism, and until it has been elicited by preliminary investigations what are the equivalent doses of the vaccines under consideration, and what are the toxic effects of those quantities. Pending the experimental investigation of these questions we shall, it seems to me, be well advised if we avoid all disputation as to whether this or that vaccine is the better, and emphasize only the fact that it it within our power to immunise against every variety of microbe, provided that we have at disposal a vaccine which is affiliated to that microbe and have at disposal the means for arriving at the proper dosage.

III.—Question as to What is the Best Method of Gauging the Immunising Effect of a Vaccination.

The methods which have been from time to time employed or proposed for the purpose of gauging the immunising effect of a vaccine may be ranged under the following headings :—

(1) *Test inoculations with living cultures undertaken upon vaccinated men or animals.*

(2) *Test inoculations with living cultures undertaken, not upon the vaccinated organism, but vicariously upon animals treated with blood derived from the vaccinated men or animals.*

(3) *Consideration of the direct toxic effects which supervene upon inoculation.*

(4) *Consideration of the improvement or aggravation of the clinical condition which follows upon inoculation.*

(5) *Evaluation of the antibacterial power of the blood.*

(1) *Test Inoculations with Living Cultures undertaken upon Vaccinated Men or Animals.*

Among the methods which have just been enumerated the method of test inoculation occupies, in the esteem of the ordinary bacteriological worker and of the scientific onlooker a place by itself. It is in bacteriological laboratories almost an article of faith that we have in the method of test inoculations a method which procures, where immunity exists, decisive evidence of that immunity, and a method which elicits in every case an answer in terms of "yea" or "nay" to the question as to whether a particular inoculation procedure is effective.

I must insist that this is quite an unconsidered view. While it is true that an experiment in which the control animals succumb and the vaccinated animals survive furnishes conclusive proof of the efficacy of a vaccination process, the converse by no means holds true. Nothing can be established against the efficacy of any vaccination process by any experiment in which the vaccinated animals sicken or succumb. Their illness or death may, as we shall recognize when we have considered the reaction of immunisation, be discounted in the case where either too large or too small a quantum of vaccine has been inoculated, and in the case where the test inoculation is either excessive or premature.

When a test inoculation experiment gives negative results we are accordingly called upon to reserve our judgment. We are not on the results of any negative experiment entitled to draw any wider negative conclusion than that the particular dose of vaccine which came into application failed to protect against such and such a quantum of living culture incorporated at such and such an interval after the vaccination.

You will appreciate that an answer in these terms is not an acceptable answer to experimental questioning. It is not the answer in terms of " yea " or " nay " which the inquirer who thinks of immunity in absolute instead of in quantitative terms feels himself entitled to expect. Nor again is it the kind of answer which is helpful to you or me when elaborating or applying a process of immunisation.

In such work we require not methods which can register only the highest degree of protection, not methods which can tell us only the condition of the organism which prevails at one selected moment, not methods which can be applied only with risk to the life of the vaccinated ; but methods which take cognizance of any progress, be it never so small, in the direction of immunity, or of any standstill, or of any retrogression—methods which allow us to follow from day to day and from hour to hour the workings of the machinery of immunisation, and methods which are applicable to vaccinated man or animal without either risk to life or discomfort.

(2) *Test Inoculations with Living Cultures undertaken, not upon the Vaccinated Organism, but Vicariously upon Animals treated with Serum derived from the Vaccinated Animal or Man.*

This method of testing the result of an immunisation, a method which is of course closely modelled upon the procedure which is employed in connexion with the testing of diphtheria antitoxin, has found application in connexion with the testing of the so-called " antibacterial sera " which have been suggested for therapeutic use. It has been employed also by Pfeiffer and Kolle and other German observers in connexion with antityphoid inoculations undertaken upon man.

While this test method has over that which we have just discussed the advantage of being free from risk to the vaccinated, it is not clear that more has not been here lost in directness of demonstration than has been gained in

matter of the avoidance of risk. It is by no means certain that the survival of the animals which are treated with serum supplies a correct measure of the immunity of the vaccinated organism which furnishes the serum. It is not even clear that the survival of the vicariously inoculated animals is always, as the theory of this test method would require, the result of "passive," as distinguished from "active immunity." [1] Finally, it is from the practical point of view a not unimportant consideration that the following out of a reaction of immunity by such a method as this might involve the expenditure of a whole hecatomb of animals.

(3) *Consideration of the direct Toxic Effects produced by the Inoculation.*

The idea has widely prevailed in connexion with prophylactic inoculation that the toxic effects which are due directly to the action of the vaccine may be used to gauge the immunising effect. In connexion with this suggestion the following may probably be laid down with confidence.

(*a*) We have in the clinical symptoms only a measure of the intoxication effect which is produced by the vaccine.

(*b*) Immunising response is by no means necessarily proportional to intoxication.

(*c*) There is not yet available any body of experimental data such as would enable us in connexion with any immunisation procedure to expect from a particular quantum of constitutional disturbance a defined amount of immunisation.

It follows that we cannot, in connexion with prophylactic immunisations, accept the clinical symptoms which supervene upon inoculation as a measure, even as an indirect measure, of the immunisation which will be achieved.

(4) *Consideration of the Improvement or Aggravation of the Clinical Condition which follows upon Inoculation.*

The question as to whether, in connexion with therapeutic immunisation, the clinical event may serve to gauge the immunising response which is elicited is a question which cannot profitably be approached until we have made a deeper study of the facts. I will reserve what I have to say on the subject for another occasion,[2] premising here only this, that while it is an axiom that there must, wherever we are dealing with any immunisation process which is therapeutically effective, of necessity be a correlation between immunising response and clinical improvement, the clinical event cannot be recognized as an unfallacious measure of the immunising response, unless we are entitled to assume that the only factor which comes into consideration in connexion with changes in the patient's clinical condition is the occurrence of an immunising response.

[1] Cf. here the discussion of the possibility of active immunisation resulting from the exhibition of so-called "*antibacterial sera*" (*supra*, pp. 309 *et seq.*).

[2] See pp. 436–448, *infra*.

Now this would be a quite unjustified assumption. In the clinical result we have only the terminal event in a long and intricate chain of causation, and whether that result is amelioration or aggravation, or recovery or death, it is in each case the resultant of many factors of which the achievement of a satisfactory immunising response is only one. I need perhaps hardly point out that it would profit a patient nothing to have responded to an inoculation by an elaboration of antibacterial elements, if from any cause the antibacterial agencies which were at disposal in his blood failed to obtain access to the invading bacteria. Nor would it profit the patient anything in his struggle with disease if his machinery of immunisation responded to every call while some other essential part of his physiological machinery gave out.

(5) *Evaluation of the Antibacterial Power of a Sample of the Patient's Blood, and Discussion of the Question as to whether we should aim at a "Complete" or a "Partial Evaluation."*

It having become clear that clinical failures may occur independently of any default in the matter of immunising response and that the clinical event does not in any case furnish a direct measure of the effect of an inoculation, we shall be well advised to look elsewhere for that satisfactory measure of immunising response which we require. Seeing that all the changes of which we know in connexion with immunisation are changes in the antibacterial power of the blood, we may appropriately inquire whether it is not possible directly to measure the effect of an inoculation by evaluating the antibacterial power of the blood.

We may perhaps succeed in threading our way through the many pitfalls which here lie in our path if we make a point of inquiring whenever any evaluation of antibacterial power comes up for consideration (*a*) *whether the evaluation in question aims at being a "complete evaluation" or a "partial evaluation,"* (*b*) *what practical value is claimed for the evaluation, and* (*c*) *on what grounds that claim is based.* The following considerations may perhaps be of assistance in the resolution of these questions.

Where an immunisator sets out to make a *complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood* he is setting out to obtain a measurement which shall be an absolute measure of the resistance of the patient to infection, and which shall be accepted as such, immediately, and by everybody.

Where immunisator sets out to make a *confessedly partial evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood* he sets out to obtain a measurement which—though the expert may value it—will not for the world in general possess any practical significance until it has been established that there is a definite correlation between the condition of the blood as revealed by such a measurement and the clinical condition of the patient, and in particular until it has been established that an increase or diminution of the bacteriotropic element which

is being measured is associated respectively with an aggravation or an improvement in the clinical conditions.

When we survey these disadvantages which are incident to a partial evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood, it would at first sight seem unquestionable that an immunisator would be well advised to aim in every case at a complete as distinguished from a partial evaluation.

Let me, however, try to show you that we cannot have any assurance that a complete evaluation is in any case practicable; nor, supposing that it were shown to be practicable, could we have any assurance that such a measurement, made as it is *in vitro*, would furnish us with an accurate measure of the patient's resistance to infection.

Let us first consider whether anything in the nature of a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood is in reality practicable.

For a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood there are two prerequisites.

The *first* of these is that our knowledge of the antibacterial agencies of the blood should be exhaustive; that we should know with precision the rôle which each such agency plays in the destruction of bacteria; and that we should have discovered a common denominator such as is required where the sum of the values of a number of diverse antibacterial agents has to be arrived at.

The *second* prerequisite is that we should have at command a satisfactory technique for measuring the effect of all these antibacterial agencies, severally or in combination.

Without going so far as to say that all difficulties in connexion with the elaboration of an adequate technique have been overcome, it may be confidently affirmed that what stands between us and a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood is much more fundamental than any question of technique.

When we reflect that it is only very recently that the rôle of the leucocytes as antibacterial agents has won universal recognition, and when we look back and remember that the list of bacteriotropic elements of the blood might have seemed already complete at a time when neither the agglutinins nor the opsonins had been discovered, it would be clear that it would to-day be venturesome to assert—especially in view of the fact that Wells has shown the blood of infants [1] is sometimes almost devoid of opsonic power—that there are now no further antibacterial elements in the blood awaiting discovery.

But even if that were assured it is clear that our knowledge of the antibacterial agencies with which we are acquainted is in many respects incomplete.

We have no assurance that agglutinins actively co-operate in the destruction of bacteria. It is only of the nature of a surmise that they

[1] *Practitioner*, May, 1908.

play an important rôle in that destruction by the part which they play in promoting phagocytosis. Again, in connexion with the tubercle bacillus, and I may add the staphylococcus, we have not as yet any experimental evidence to show whether the opsonins which promote the phagocytosis of these microbes play any active part in their destruction.

We do not even, as a matter of experimental knowledge, know that these microbes are killed in the interior of the leucocytes.

Above all, where two or more diverse antibacterial agencies come into operation upon a microbe, such as the typhoid bacillus, we cannot say how much of the antibacterial effect exerted is due to each of the several agencies—how much to phagocytosis and how much to the bacteriolytic activity of the blood fluids.

These considerations will, I think, have made it clear to you that in the present state of knowledge we *cannot make a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of a sample of blood, or cannot, at any rate, be sure that it lies in our power to make it.*

I want, further, to try to show you that such *complete evaluation, if practicable, would not furnish any absolute measure of a patient's resistance to bacterial infection.* Let me, with a view to bringing this home to you, select for consideration a simple case. As simple a case as any is the case of resistance to staphylococcus infection, for we have here a case where immunity may, for aught we know to the contrary, depend upon phagocytosis alone. Assuming this to be so, and assuming figures to be available, representing the number of staphylococci phagocytosed by a measured sample of normal blood and again by a measured sample of a patient's blood, the question would immediately arise as to whether we had here a measure of the phagocytic capacity of the patient in terms of that of the healthy man.

In connexion with this problem I would invite your attention, first, to the fact that in connexion with phagocytic evaluations like those here in question, there will of necessity have been left out of account eventual differences in the emigrating power of the leucocytes.

Now such differences, if they exist, would in a case of an actual bacterial infection be quite capable of influencing the issue as between the invading microbe and the resisting organism.

Again I would ask you to reflect that where we estimate *in vitro* the relative phagocytic capacities of two bloods, we bring into operation in each case only an infinitesimal fraction of the total force of phagocytes, and only an infinitesimal fraction of the total volume of antibacterial fluids which are in each case available in the organism; and we conduct the experiments under conditions which do not admit either of a reinforcement of the force of phagocytes which is engaged, or of a supplementation of the antibacterial fluids which are brought into operation.

Now the reinforcement of the phagocytes engaged by new and unpoisoned relays of phagocytes, and the continuous replacement of exhausted antibacterial fluids by unexhausted fluids may quite well

suffice to level up the conditions of an individual who has a less effective blood to the conditions of an individual who has a more effective blood.

The more we reflect upon the possibilities to which attention has here been drawn, and upon the fact that there must be endless other differences which escape us, between the conditions which obtain in the case of a phagocytic experiment conducted *in vitro* and those which obtain in the body in actual infection, the more clearly will it be brought home to us—and this is a truth for which Metchnikoff has always contended—that no matter how closely we think we may have reproduced *in vitro* the conditions which obtain *in vivo* we can never be sure that we have reproduced all the essential conditions, and it will never be legitimate to treat the measurements obtained *in vitro* as if they held true without qualification in the living body.

If I have succeeded in bringing home to you that grave, perhaps insuperable, difficulties stand in the way of a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of the blood, and if I have shown you that the advantages which such a complete evaluation promises may not be realizable, you will be prepared to consider very seriously the question as to whether it would not be well in connexion with immunisation procedures to abandon all idea of gauging the results of an inoculation by a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of the blood and to resort instead to a methodical exploitation of any accurate and non-fallacious[1] method of partial evaluation which may prove to give results which are definitely correlated with significant clinical events.

I would venture to point out that I have in all my immunisation work, both in prophylactic inoculation against typhoid fever, and in the therapeutic inoculations with which we are here specially concerned, kept this principle steadily in view. *Abandoning as futile all attempt at a complete evaluation of the antibacterial power of the blood, I have in each case guided myself by measurements of the content of the blood in some one selected bacteriotropic element.*

In the case of my earliest *antityphoid inoculations*[2]—anticipating that there would assuredly prove to be a correlation between the development of high agglutinating power and recovery from, and immunity against, typhoid fever—I guided myself by measurements of the content of the blood in agglutinins, conducted with a technique specially devised for this purpose.

[1] It will be plain that we cannot expect to find evidence of any correlation between the data of a blood test and clinical events unless we are employing an accurate and unfallacious method of arriving at the content of the blood in the particular bacteriotropic element which we have selected for measurement.

Let me observe in passing that in the case of the estimation of the opsonic power the more important fallacies we have to be upon our guard against are: (*a*) the clumping of bacteria under the influence of the agglutinins, (*b*) the dissolution of bacteria under the influence of bacteriolysins, (*c*) the clumping of the corpuscles under the influence of haemaglutinins, (*d*) spontaneous phagocytosis, and (*e*) the intracellular digestion of the microbes.

[2] *Lancet*, September 19, 1896; *British Medical Journal*, January 16, 1897.

Anticipating a similar correlation between the development of high bactericidal power and immunisation—I elaborated a technique for the measurement of the bactericidal power of the blood [1] and guided myself then by this more sensitive method [2] in prophylactic inoculation against typhoid fever.

In my first *antistaphylococcus inoculations*—after having elicited that the blood fluids exert no bactericidal effect upon this microbe—and anticipating, therefore, that there would turn out to be a correlation between phagocytic response and clinical improvement—I guided myself [3] by the method of measuring the phagocytic power of the blood which was devised by my friend and fellow-worker, Leishman.

Later, when Douglas and I had elicited the rôle of the blood fluids in connexion with phagocytosis, and the fact that increased phagocytic response occurs in the immunised patient quite independently of any change in the leucocytes, I guided myself in my staphylococcus inoculations by estimations of the opsonic index.[4] Here again I anticipated that there would prove to be a correlation between an increase of the opsonic index and clinical improvement.

Conforming always to the same principle, I guided myself in my earliest *antitubercle inoculations*—following in connexion with these the lead of Koch—by estimations of the tuberculo-agglutinating power.[5] And, as soon as the difficulties which had stood in the way of the accurate determination of the tuberculo-opsonic index had been overcome, I guided myself by this as a more sensitive test.[6]

Exactly the same course was followed in connexion with *prophylactic and therapeutic immunisation against the micrococcus Melitensis*.[7]

Recently in the case of immunisation against most *other microbes* I have gone directly to the estimation of the opsonic index.

You will now realize that the principle upon which as a foundation vaccine-therapy has been built up, is the principle that we should guide ourselves by evaluating in an accurate manner some one selected bacteriotropic element of which we have grounds to believe that its increase in the blood will prove to be correlated with clinical improvement.

Grounds for taking as our Routine guide in connexion with Immunisation Procedures the Estimation of the Opsonic Index.

While, as you now appreciate, vaccine-therapy has been developed on the basis of a partial evaluation of the antibacterial power of the blood, it is not by any means necessarily and indissolubly bound up with the

[1] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxi, 1902.
[2] *Lancet*, September 14, 1901.
[3] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902; *vide* pp. 199–226.
[4] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxiv; *vide* pp. 100–111.
[5] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxiv; *vide* pp. 124–125.
[6] *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, vol. lxxiv, *vide* pp. 126–132.
[7] *Vide* pp. 393 and 395.

estimation of the opsonic index. None the less there are very good grounds for taking that measurement as our routine guide in connexion with most immunisation procedures.

What is of moment here is, *first*, the fact that the changes in the opsonic index occur, so far as is known, in connexion with immunisation against all bacteria without distinction, *secondly*, the fact that these furnish a very sensitive record of immunising response, *thirdly*, the fact that an accurate technique is available for measuring these changes, and *fourthly*, the fact that there is an overwhelming body of evidence showing that there is a correlation between the rise and fall of the opsonic index and favourable or, as the case may be, unfavourable changes in the clinical condition of the patient.

As compared with the measurements of the phagocytic power of the blood which can be obtained by the modification of Leishman's method which was described and made use of by Douglas and myself in our earlier work,[1] measurements of the opsonic power have an advantage inasmuch as they are not affected by variations in the number of leucocytes, or by any variations in the phagocytic activity of these leucocytes, or by such differential variations in the population of leucocytes as would be produced by the disappearance of older and the advent of younger generations. In the case of opsonic estimations we avoid all such fallacies; for we concentrate our attention upon a particular change in the blood which stands, as I shall show you, in relation to immunising response, and we deliberately exclude from consideration all other changes which may occur in the blood.

IV.—Detailed Study of the Curves of Immunisation which are Obtained by the Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines.

It is almost unnecessary for me to describe to you here—for I have already over and over again described them—the outstanding features of the reaction of immunisation which is called forth when a quantum of a bacterial vaccine such as just suffices to produce a sensible constitutional disturbance is administered.

You know that there follows upon such inoculation a fall in the antibacterial power of the blood, and you know that this is succeeded by a rise in the antibacterial power of the blood.

You further know that after a varying interval the antibacterial power of the blood comes down to a level only a little higher than the level of origin and may remain there for a very long period (this is what may be expected in the case of prophylactic inoculations), or it may quickly return to the point where it stood before inoculation (this is what generally happens in the case of an infected organism).

[1] *See p.* 76—*Procedure No.* 1, *and p.* 102—*last paragraph. This method has since been rediscovered and claimed by R. M. Veitch, Journal of Pathology and Bacteriology, Jan.*, 1908; *Hugo Kämmerer, Münch. Med. Wochenschrift*, 1908, *No.* 28; *O. B. Brown, Journal Amer. Med. Assoc., Feb.* 22, 1908, *and others.*

We have here the four events which I have designated as "the ebb" (the *negative phase*), "the flow" (*positive phase*), "the backflow" (subsequent decline of the curve), and the "sustained high tide of immunity" (seen in connexion with prophylactic inoculations and in connexion with therapeutic inoculations where recovery is nearly complete.)

This phrase, as already indicated, delineates only the larger features of the curve, which are revealed by a daily examination of the blood. Where more frequent and in particular where earlier blood examinations are made two other features attract attention. The *first* is a transient *initial rise* preceding the negative phase. We may think of this as of an incoming wavelet which arrives before the ebb which precedes the main wave of immunity. This wavelet and its position in the general scheme of oscillation is shown on the record below (Fig. 1). The *second* feature is a second sinking away of the curve which occurs subsequent to the positive phase. We may speak of this as the *secondary ebb*.

It is not to be assumed that the form of curve, as set forth in the chart here in question, is universally conformed to.

Where a dose of vaccine which is only just sufficient to produce an effect on the blood is administered the negative phase is elided, and

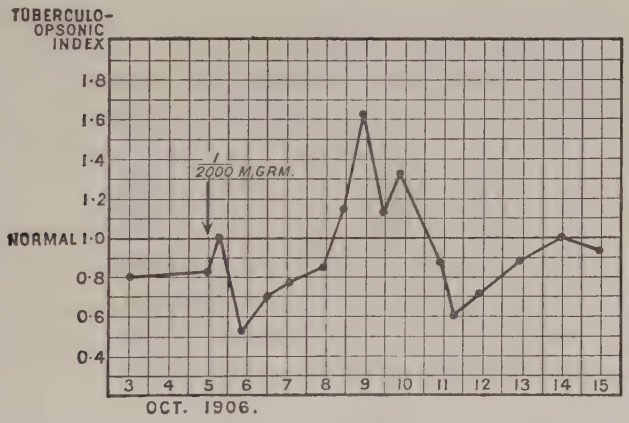


FIG. 1.—Chart showing the changes in the opsonic power of the blood which followed upon the inoculation of $\frac{1}{10000}$[1] milligramme of T.R. into a patient suffering from tuberculous cystitis.

there is registered only a positive phase. The curve in such a case neither rises so high nor does it maintain itself so long above the base line, as in the case where a large quantum of vaccine has been administered.

Where an excessive dose of vaccine is administered—meaning here by an excessive dose a dose whose inoculation produces severe constitu-

[1] For an explanation of the difference between this quantum and that set down on the chart *vide* p. 123, note 2.

tional symptoms—the negative phase is proportionately accentuated and prolonged. Where the quantum of vaccine is immoderately large, the antibacterial power of the blood may be reduced for a period of weeks. The advent of a positive phase may often in such a case be awaited in vain.[1]

Chronology of the different phases of the curve of immunisation.—Having now learned the features of the curves which are obtained after the inoculation of different quanta of bacterial vaccines, we may further study the chronology of the successive incidents.

The traditional view—a view which would seem to have been derived from experience with vaccinia—is that a period of ten days is always required for the establishment of active immunity. Largely owing to the fact that this view was adopted by Pasteur, it became part of the current religion of bacteriologists, a fixed period of ten days being always allowed to elapse before animals and men were subjected to test inoculations or to reinoculation.

So far as I know Haffkine[2] was the first to claim that a condition of immunity was achieved already within 24 hours after the inoculation of a vaccine. He put forward this claim in connexion with his plague vaccine, basing his contention on the statistical results of antiplague inoculations undertaken in India—respectively in the Byculla Gaol in Bombay and in the village of Undhera.

Some years afterwards, the matter having in the meantime been advanced a step further by the publication, under Haffkine's auspices, of evidence pointing to the successful inoculation of patients who were already in the incubation period of plague—I obtained, in the course of a study of the changes effected by antityphoid inoculation in the bactericidal power of the blood, evidence of development of increased bactericidal power in the blood on the day subsequent to the inoculation of moderate doses of antityphoid vaccine.

Following upon this, I obtained, in connexion with my first therapeutic inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine, evidence of increased phagocytic response on the day subsequent to inoculation.

[1] It may be interesting in this connexion to note the following points :—

1. Immoderate negative phases due to over-dosage rarely come under observation except in the case of patients who are new to inoculations. After a prolonged series of inoculations it is the rule (but by no means an invariable rule) to find that a large surplus of vaccine over that which is required to raise the bacteriotropic pressure of the blood can be tolerated.

2. Where by inadvertence an excessive dose of vaccine has been administered it is unnecessary indefinitely to await the return of the bacteriotropic pressure to the normal. In such a case the desired rise can practically always be obtained by reinoculating, as soon as all constitutional symptoms have disappeared, with a minimal dose of vaccine.

3. The initial rise which has been referred to in the text may come into observation also in connexion with the inoculation of an excessive dose of vaccine. It may be provisionally assumed that such initial rise is the response of the organism to that fraction of the total dose which is immediately absorbed.

[2] *Vide* Report of the Indian Plague Commission.

One would have thought that the achievement of an immunising effect within so short a period as 24 hours would have constituted a record.

We have, however, now obtained, in very numerous instances, conclusive evidence of an augmentation of the opsonic power of the blood within an hour after the inoculation of tubercle vaccine, and also trustworthy evidence of associated clinical improvement within that time both in connexion with the inoculation of tubercle vaccine in an infection of the eye, and also in connexion with the treatment of furunculosis by inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine.

The augmentation of the opsonic power and the clinical improvement which are here in question were, as you will appreciate, correlated, in the case where very small doses of vaccine were employed, with the development of the ordinary positive phase, and, in the case where moderate doses of vaccine were employed, with the development of that feature in the curve which was referred to above under the designation of the initial rise.

Question as to whether it would not be possible by Piling one Inoculation upon another to Achieve a Larger Output of Antibacterial Substances and in Association with this a Positive Phase of Longer Duration.

It will be every man's—at any rate, every beginner's—thought that it *ought* to be practicable to achieve a larger output of antibacterial substances, if not by the employment of larger doses of vaccine, then assuredly by piling up inoculation upon inoculation. I have already discussed this question elsewhere,[1] and have pointed out that, while it may be possible in connexion with certain vaccines and the employment of submaximal doses—using the term submaximal doses here to denote doses smaller than those which would give maximal immunising response—to obtain cumulation in the direction of the positive phase, such a result can with other vaccines—and in particular with tubercle vaccines—very rarely, if ever, be obtained.[2]

Where this situation confronts us the proper policy would appear to be to treat each inoculation as an independent event, following up one inoculation by another as soon as the effect of the antecedent one is passing off.

Question as to whether it is Expedient to Employ in Successive Inoculations Progressively Increasing Doses of Vaccine, and Suggestions with Respect to the Regulation of the Dosage.

Close kin to those primitive ideas which suggest that the immunising response *must* increase proportionately with the dose of vaccine employed, and that, failing this, it *must* be possible to obtain an increased immunis-

[1] *Clinical Journal*, May 16, 1906 (*vide* pp. 305–306).
[2] *Transactions of the Royal Medical and Chirurgical Society*, vol. lxxxix (*vide* pp. 272–273).

ing response by piling one inoculation upon the other, is the idea that it *must* be possible to achieve a greater yield of protective substances by employing in successive inoculations doses of vaccine increasing by geometrical progression.

In point of fact, experiment shows clearly, not alone that no advantage is reaped from such progressive augmentation of the doses of vaccine, but that such a system of dosage, if persisted in, culminates in disaster. And indeed it is obvious, on *à priori* considerations alone, that where the dose of vaccine is progressively augmented a point must sooner or later be arrived at when the power of immunising response will give out.

I would therefore put it to you that the proper principle of dosage in connexion with any series of inoculations is never to advance to a larger dose until it has been ascertained that the dose which is being employed is too small to evoke an adequate immunising response.

In actual practice I regulate the dosage of bacterial vaccines for therapeutic purposes in accordance with the following scheme :

Where an examination of the patient's blood taken 24 hours after inoculation shows that the index has been considerably reduced, I take it that the smaller dose would have been appropriate.

Where examination of the blood 24 hours after inoculation shows that the index has been raised, and where after the expiration of an interval of a week or ten days the index has fallen back to what it was before inoculation—the patient having experienced throughout nothing in the form of constitutional disturbance—I take it that a larger dose might appropriately have been administered.

Where, in association with a slight initial fall after inoculation, the index is, after the expiration of a week or ten days, found to stand higher than it was at the outset, I take it that an appropriate dose has been administered.

Question as to the Site which Ought to be Selected for the Inoculation of a Bacterial Vaccine.

A whole array of observations point to the local production of bacteriotropic and vaccinotropic substances generally at the site of inoculation.

We have, in the first place, the observation that an infinitely greater yield of antitoxins—and it would seem also of antibacterial substances generally—is achieved in horses by the subcutaneous as contrasted with the intravascular method of inoculation.

We have, further, the observation, in connexion with antityphoid inoculation, that seemingly a more effective immunisation reaction is induced in patients who show considerable local reaction at the seat of inoculation than in those who suffer from severe constitutional symptoms apart from any appreciable local reaction.

We have further observations to the effect that local immunity may

be acquired and retained apart from the acquirement or retention of general immunity.

If we may build—as it would seem that we may—upon the aggregate of these observations, it would logically follow that the site of every inoculation which is undertaken for therapeutic purposes deserves to be very carefully considered in connexion with the site of the focus of infection which is to be influenced.

We may speculate as follows. Where protective substances pass into the blood through a channel which does not lead through the focus of infection—let us, for the purpose of fixing our ideas, suppose that focus to be situated in a lymphatic gland—the newly elaborated antibacterial substances will come into operation upon that focus only after they have been diluted by the whole volume of the blood. Where, on the contrary, the inoculation has been made—if I may so express it—*up stream* from the focus of infection—i.e., in some part of the lymph watershed which drains through the focus of infection—the antibacterial substances which are produced at the site of inoculation may, on their passage into the blood, be expected to come into application upon the focus of infection in a concentrated condition.

Pending the time when the place of origin of the bacteriotropic substances which appear in the blood after inoculation shall have been definitely set at rest by some *experimentum crucis*,[1] I have made some tentative therapeutic experiments on the relative efficiency of inoculations undertaken up stream from the focus of infection as compared with inoculations made in regions which were not so related to that focus. I feel satisfied that these experiments—while suggesting that one and the same portion of tissue tires out on too frequent inoculation—have furnished results conformable to those which might have been expected to follow from the theory of the production of bacteriotropic substances at the site of inoculation.

To take only one case out of many, I was much impressed by the fact that the theory of the local production of protective substances suggested a procedure which successfully arrested the spread of a tuberculous affection which long defied treatment by the ordinary method of inoculation. This successful result was obtained in the case of an originally ulcerous process which, while it had completely healed in the centre, was, under the influence of inoculation, spreading at the borders in the form of a ring of indurated tissue. Its arrest and definite cure were achieved when—executing a strategic move—I inoculated the tubercle vaccine in a number of different points disposed circle-wise around the extending ring.

[1] I would throw out in this connexion the suggestion that the production of antibacterial substances at the site of inoculation would be definitely set at rest if, after the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine into a limb, it were shown that an increase of antibacterial substances in the blood could be achieved by either massage or massage combined with the application of a Bier's bandage.

V.—In addition to mastering the Physiology of the Immunising Response the Immunisator must concern himself also with the following.

Up to this point we have concerned ourselves only with the study of the physiology of immunisation, i.e., with the study of the reaction of the organism to the immunising stimuli and of the methods of applying those immunising stimuli in such a manner as to achieve and maintain a high bacteriotropic pressure in the circulating blood.

We must go further if we are to be in a position to cope successfully with any obstinate bacterial infection.

1. *We must inquire whether, apart from the inoculation of vaccines, important changes occur in the bacteriotropic power of the circulating blood; and, if so, under what conditions such changes occur.*[1]

2. *We must inquire into the conditions which obtain in the foci in which bacteria maintain themselves in the organism; and must ascertain whether these conditions differ from those in the circulating blood; and, if they differ, in what respect they differ.*

3. *We must, after carefully surveying the whole facts, think out for ourselves the broad principles which ought to be followed where we set ourselves to combat bacterial infections by the agency of the protective elements which are furnished by the organism.*

4. *Taking it, as a first therapeutic axiom, that the bacteriotropic pressure of the circulating blood ought in each case to be brought up to, and maintained at, a high level, we have further to consider, on the one hand, whether this ought to be effected by the agency of auto-inoculations, or of inoculations with bacterial vaccines; and, on the other hand, whether inoculations with bacterial vaccines may be employed in cases where we are confronted with "spontaneous auto-inoculations."*

5. *Taking it, as a further therapeutic axiom, that the leucocytes and bacteriotropic substances which are the instruments of immunisation ought to be brought into operation upon the bacteria in the focus of infection, we must consider by what means this may in each case be effected.*

Having formulated our programme, we may take up the study of these subject-matters *seriatim*. We may begin by a study of auto-inoculations.

(1)—Auto-inoculations.

It will be obvious to consideration that intoxication phenomena and immunising responses exactly similar to those which supervene upon the inoculation of bacterial vaccine, must in the ordinary course occur whenever bacterial products, or as the case may be bacteria, escape from localized foci of bacterial infection and pass into the circulation.

It will be clear that it must be by the agency of such auto-inoculations that the machinery of immunisation is set in motion in bacterial infections,

[1] The doctrine of auto-inoculations is developed in the next subsection.

and that it must be by the agency of immunising responses to such auto-inoculations that spontaneous cures are achieved.

If you will now bring this into relation with the facts to which I drew your attention when I was discussing the "expectant treatment" of bacterial disease, you will appreciate that generalized infections must be characterized by frequent, perhaps continuous, auto-inoculations; that strictly localized infections must be characterized by an absence of auto-inoculations; and that there must be an intermediate class of localized infections—infections which are associated with occasional constitutional disturbance—where there must be occasional auto-inoculations.

And again you will see that we have here an explanation of the fact, that something is to be hoped for from expectant treatment in generalized infections while little or nothing is to be hoped from it in connexion with strictly localized infections.

And it will now have become clear to you that the something unknown which the "medical attendant" sits down to "expect" in bacterial infections is an effective auto-inoculation—or rather such a series of properly graduated and properly timed auto-inoculations as shall evoke in the organism of the patient adequate immunising responses.

Up to the present we have thought only of *spontaneous auto-inoculations*. We have to consider now another class of auto-inoculations, to wit, artificially *induced auto-inoculations*.

Taking our departure from an illuminating observation made by my collaborator, Dr. J. Freeman, in connexion with the effects produced on the blood by the massage of a gonococcal joint, we have at St. Mary's Hospital during the last twelvemonth devoted ourselves to a systematic study of the conditions under which auto-inoculations can be produced in persons affected with localized bacterial infections.

We have been able to show that auto-inoculations follow upon all active and passive movements which affect a focus of infection, and upon all vascular changes which activate the lymph stream in such a focus.

Evidence has been obtained of the production of auto-inoculations by massage and extirpation operations affecting tuberculous glands; by passive extension, massage, and divers surgical operations affecting tuberculous and gonococcal joints; and by scraping operations undertaken in connexion with tuberculous caries and staphyloccocal osteomyelitis.

Again, evidence has been obtained of the production of artificial auto-inoculations in phthisical patients when they were called upon to breathe deeply and when they were examined by percussion and auscultation.

We have also in connexion with a laryngeal affection seen an auto-inoculation supervene upon reading aloud.

Again, we have obtained evidence that auto-inoculation may follow upon walking exercise in the case of patients affected with tuberculous disease of the lungs or of the bones or joints of the lower extremity or with severe tuberculous epididymitis.

We have also obtained evidence that in the case of patients with spinal caries auto-inoculations are induced by a change from the recumbent to the sitting posture and from the sitting to the erect posture.

Lastly, we have evidence that auto-inoculations are produced both by active and passive hyperæmia (application of hot fomentations and of Bier's bandages) to limbs affected with tubercle and streptococcus respectively.

Assistance which can be Obtained from Purposively Induced Auto-inoculations in the Diagnosis of Obscure Cases of Localized Bacterial Infection.

Let me for a moment here digress from my main theme to consider the assistance which may be derived from the induction of artificial auto-inoculation where a problem of diagnosis confronts us.

Rightly understood, all methods of bacteriological diagnosis in which we arrive at the nature of the infection by a process of induction from a measurement of the bacteriotropic content of the blood are methods which have as their aim the detection of the changes which are produced in the blood by the agency of auto-inoculations.

The following three examples will suffice to make this clear.

The agglutination test in typhoid fever—credit for which was claimed by Widal on the plea that the increased agglutinating content of the serum was something quite unrelated to an immunising response evoked by an auto-inoculation [1]—is now by common consent recognized to be a test which depends—as Gruber, with his collaborators Durham and Grünbaum, from the very first discerned—on the detection of products of immunity produced in response to an auto-inoculation.

The "test for thermostable opsonins," whose diagnostic value was first demonstrated by Reid and myself, furnishes in like manner evidence of an immunising response to a foregoing auto-inoculation or, as the case may be, to an inoculation of the corresponding bacterial vaccine.

Exactly the same thing holds true of Bordet's "absorption of complement test" recently so ingeniously exploited by Wassermann.

It is clear that in all these cases diagnosis has perforce to wait upon spontaneous auto-inoculation, and that perforce it has to wait also upon immunising response. Now both the one and the other of these may, as we have seen, in connexion with localized infections, be indefinitely deferred.

It accordingly marks a distinct step in advance when we come to realize that we can, in the case where the focus of infection is accessible, supply the place of the spontaneous auto-inoculation which makes default by the induction of an artificial auto-inoculation.

Let me say in this connexion that we have—by the agency of massage,

[1] "Pour arriver à la conception de séro-diagnostic j'ai dû précisément commencer par me débarasser de l'idée erronée que la réaction agglutinante était une réaction d'immunité."—*Widal*, Annales de l'Institut Pasteur, vol. xi, 1897, p. 359.

active muscular movements, Bier's bandaging, or, as the case may be, other methods of artificial auto-inoculation, combined in each case with the measurement of the opsonic index before and after such event, obtained diagnostic results which have up to the present invariably been borne out by the subsequent history of the case.

I would note here—for it is germane to the subject-matter under discussion—that we have had recourse to auto-inoculations associated with measurements of the opsonic index not alone for the preliminary diagnosis of the bacterial infection, but also for the purpose of obtaining information with regard to the progress of the patient.

Where an artificial inoculation can no longer be induced in a focus which previously could be made to influence the blood we are entitled to conclude that the focus of infection is extinct.

Where an auto-inoculation can still be induced we may be assured that the focus of infection is still aglow.

(2)—Conditions which Obtain in the Foci of Bacterial Infection.

I have already often pointed out that the foci in which bacteria cultivate themselves are in every case "*foci of lowered bacteriotropic pressure*," and that the deficit of antibacterial substances in such foci can be accounted for by the fact that bacteriotropic substances are absorbed whenever blood fluids come in contact with bacteria, and by the fact that in the case of foci which are cut off from the blood stream the conveyance of bacteriotropic substances to the focus of infection by the lymph stream can only rarely keep pace with the afore-mentioned absorption. This premised with regard to the conditions which are common to all bacterial foci, I may here conveniently direct attention to *special conditions which obtain* (*a*) *in infections of serous membranes where serous effusion has taken place,* (*b*) *in abscesses,* (*c*) *in sinuses, and* (*d*) *in association with brawny swelling of the subcutaneous tissues.*

(*a*) *Conditions which obtain in the case where bacteria are growing in, or in contact with, serous effusions.*—These are well exhibited in connexion with tuberculous peritonitis. Here, as my fellow-worker, Douglas, and I have already shown, the ascitic fluid has in every case a much lower opsonic index than the circulating blood. It follows that the bacteria which are cultivating themselves in, or in contact with, such ascitic fluid are not exposed to the full bacteriotropic pressure of the circulating blood. We have here, as I have already pointed out, an explanation of the success which has attended tapping, and in particular laparotomy, in connexion with tuberculous peritonitis. That success is satisfactorily accounted for by the replacement of a lymph which has by stagnating in the focus of infection forfeited much of its antibacterial virtue by a fluid of higher efficacy freshly derived from the circulating blood. Manifestly we should be neglecting a very important element in the treatment if, while aiming at the destruction of bacteria

in a serous membrane by processes of immunisation, we were to fail to take into account the fact that the bacteria which are the object of our attack are cultivating themselves under a lowered bacteriotropic pressure.

(*b*) *Conditions which obtain in abscesses.*—In abscesses the conditions are more complicated. Here we have to take into account not only the absorption of bacteriotropic substances by bacteria, but also another factor which does not come into consideration in the case of ordinary serous effusions. This factor is the liberation of a tryptic ferment from the leucocytes. Such liberation occurs, as Opie has shown, whenever these formed elements disintegrate in pus. It is clear that as soon as—under the influence of autolysis or bacterial action—leucocytes have disintegrated in an abscess in numbers sufficient to abolish the opsonic and antitryptic power of the surrounding fluid, not only the normal bacteriotropic defence of the blood fluids, but also the leucocyte defence will be thrown out of gear. I have neither the time nor the data to discuss with you here certain important but incidental issues which suggest themselves in this connexion, in particular the issue as to whether the liberation of tryptic ferment in the abscess—which Opie has brought into association with the destructive and burrowing action of pus—may not also account for the paralysis of all phagocytic effort which sooner or later overtakes the leucocytes in every focus of suppuration and for the frequent sterilization of the contents of an abscess. It is, however, incumbent on me to point out to you that where we are aiming at the destruction of the bacteria in a suppurating focus by the agency of opsonins and leucocytes, and are aiming at the same time at the safeguarding of the tissues from the digestive action of the pus, it would be futile to attempt this task without making provision for the replacement of the tryptic and non-opsonic pus fluid by an antitryptic and opsonic fluid freshly derived from the circulating blood.

(*c*) *The conditions which obtain in sinuses.*—The conditions with which we have to deal in a sinus where that sinus is freely discharging pus are, I take it, essentially similar to those which prevail in an abscess which is discharging without emptying itself. In other words, we have a pus fluid which possesses a low opsonic power, and which exerts upon the tissues a digestive effect—a digestive effect which makes itself manifest to the eye in the case of a discharging sinus in the sodden and unhealthy appearance of the skin around the orifice. In the case of a choked sinus we have to deal with conditions which might be compared to those which would obtain in a well if the water which originally flowed into it had deposited an insoluble element in such a manner as to choke up all the conduits of supply. We can easily conceive how, on the walls and floor of such a well, forms of life might maintain themselves which would be quite incompetent to penetrate into the surrounding soil, or to hold their own in the face of a copious flow of water from the soil into the well. A dry sinus is, if I understand the situation aright, analogous

to just such a choked well, the obstacles to the inflow of lymph being, on the one hand, the density of the granulation tissue, and on the other hand, the lining membrane of fibrin which clothes the walls of the sinus. If these are in reality the conditions under which bacteria maintain themselves in a sinus, we shall need for their dislodgment something more than a mere increase of the bacteriotropic power of the blood and circulating lymph.

(*d*) *The conditions which obtain in "brawny swelling."*—Next in order we have to consider the case where we have a focus of bacterial growth in tissues which are affected with "brawny swelling." I take it that in brawny swelling we have conditions which are—in the respect that the bacterial growth is cut off from the blood and lymph stream—analogous to those which have just been under consideration in connexion with sinuses. It is in the nature of a minor difference only that in brawny swelling the bacterial growth is isolated from the blood and lymph stream by the clotting of the lymph in the lymph spaces, while in the case of a dry sinus the isolation of the bacteria is brought about by the clotting of the lymph on the surface of granulation tissue.

VI.—On the two Broad Principles which ought to guide us where we set ourselves to combat Bacterial Infections by the Agency of the Protective Elements which are furnished by the Organism.

The fundamental principles which ought to inform our therapeutic operations where we undertake to combat bacterial infections by weapons taken from the armoury of the organism may conveniently be expressed in two general principles.

These may be formulated as follows :—

Principle 1.—*Therapeutic immunisation should be resorted to in every case where the antibacterial power of a patient's blood falls below the standard which is attained where the organism is making effective response to infection.*

Principle 2.—*Where the blood is rich in antibacterial elements a fuller lymph stream should be determined to the affected part in order that the antibacterial elements and leucocytes of the blood may come into effective operation in the extravascular focus of infection.*

(1) Comparison between the Therapeutic Policy which is embodied in these two Principles, and the Policies which are embodied in the Measures currently employed in the Treatment of Bacterial Infections.

It will, I think, be useful if, in connexion with the therapeutic programme which is embodied in these precepts, you will let me try to show you both wherein it agrees, and wherein it differs from the therapeutic measures which are currently employed in the treatment of bacterial infection.

(*a*) Where "*expectant treatment*" is resorted to, the above programme

is departed from, first, in the respect that the measurements of the antibacterial power of the blood which are postulated in *Principle* 1 are omitted, and, secondly, in the respect that the physician contents himself with awaiting spontaneous auto-inoculations and immunising responses, whereas *Principle* 1 demands that he shall, where spontaneous immunisation makes default, address himself to the task of immunisation.

(*b*) In *serum-therapy* an attempt is made to carry out the therapeutic programme of *Principle* 1. That attempt, in the form in which it is usually made in connexion with septicaemic infections is, however, an altogether unintelligent attempt. It is unintelligent, *first*, in the respect that the investigation of the patient's blood is consistently omitted ; and, *secondly*, in the respect that the physician makes here four unverified assumptions. He makes, *first*, the assumption that the organism of the animal which supplies the serum will have responded with an immunising reaction to the immoderate quantities of bacterial vaccines which the serum manufacturer is wont to employ ; *secondly*, the assumption that a fractional part of such output of antibacterial substances as has been obtained in the horse will suffice to produce a therapeutic effect in man ; *thirdly*, the assumption that the antibacterial elements which are postulated to be present in the horse serum will exert a therapeutic effect on man in spite of the fact that they are foreign to the human organism ; and *fourthly*, the assumption that these antibacterial elements will exert this therapeutic effect notwithstanding the very high dilution in which the serum comes into application.

Let it be noted that where vaccine-therapy is the form of therapeutic immunisation which is employed, the antibacterial substances which are obtained are native to the patient's organism ; further, that the total yield of these substances can be brought to bear on the infecting microbes in the concentration in which they are available in the blood.

(*c*) In the case where an attempt is made to deal with bacterial infection by the *extirpation of the obtrusive focus or foci of infection* it may happen upon occasion that the programme of *Precept* 1 may without the knowledge of the surgeon be carried out. This will happen when in response to one of those auto-inoculations, which are, as we have seen, incident to surgical operations, an immunising response has been evoked in the organism of the patient.

Let it, however, be noted that even where everything is favourable we cannot hope much from such an isolated and unregulated auto-inoculation as would be associated with a surgical operation.

(*d*) Where the surgeon *cuts down upon pus and drains*, or where he makes, in connexion with a carbuncle or with " brawny infiltration," free incision into tissue spaces which are blocked with inflammatory exudation, supplementing in each case the work of his knife by *hot fomentations* or *cupping*, he is carrying out the programme of *Principle* 2 by provid-

ing opportunity for a free streaming of lymph through the focus of infection.

Let it be noted that while the carrying out of so much of our therapeutic programme as applies to the determination of lymph to the focus of infection may, where the antibacterial power of the patient's blood is satisfactory, by itself suffice to extinguish the infection, such success will be almost out of question where the antibacterial power of the patient's blood fails to come up to the normal standard.[1] Where this is the case, *Principle* 1, which enjoins resort to the therapeutic immunisation, will be found to be not merely a counsel of perfection but a dictate of absolute obligation.

(*e*) In the case where a *Bier's bandage*, or a hot fomentation, or any other device for activating the lymph stream is applied *in the absence of an external outflow for the lymph* there will be carried out in association with the programme of conveying antibacterial elements into the focus of infection also a programme of auto-inoculation. As between that programme and the programme of therapeutic immunisation which is prescribed in *Principle* 2 there are quite important differences. These differences will be explained when we come to consider the question whether auto-inoculations can be substituted for inoculations with bacterial vaccines.

Let us, however, first consider certain more general points in connexion with our therapeutic programme.

Rationale of the Policy which is embodied in the Two Therapeutic Principles formulated above.

By the *achievement and maintenance of a high bacteriotropic pressure in the circulating blood* the following advantages will be realized :—

(*a*) The citadel of the circulating blood will be held secure against septicæmic invasion.

(*b*) Bacteria when carried into the blood will be killed there instead of being carried from point to point unharmed, and in a condition to establish new foci of infection.[2]

(*c*) There will be at disposal in the blood a reservoir of antibacterial fluid of satisfactory potency which will be available for the purposes of flushing any bacterial nidus in the tissues.

By the *determination of lymph to the focus of infection* the full bacteriotropic pressure of the circulating blood—whatever that may happen to be—

[1] The futility of operating against bacteria with a lymph of low bacteriotropic pressure—a fact which comes home to every one who examines the blood of patients who fail to get well under ordinary treatment—is conclusively established in a paper by Dr. Bulloch dealing with the tuberculo-opsonic indices of 100 lupus patients who were under treatment in the Finsen light department of the London Hospital. It is clearly shown in that paper that the Finsen treatment of lupus fails in cases where tuberculo-opsonic power stands at an abnormally low level (*vide supra*, pp. 146–149).

[2] *Vide, as an illustration of the importance of this point, infra, pp.* 398–399, *and p.* 412.

will, as has already been indicated, be brought into operation upon the bacteria which would otherwise be exposed only to the lower bacteriotropic pressure which obtains in the focus of infection.

Question as to which of these two Therapeutic Principles is to be followed in those Cases where they come into Conflict.

As has already been incidentally suggested at the outset of this lecture, we have to take into consideration in connexion with the activation of the lymph stream in the ordinary case—the case where no external outlet for the lymph is provided—on the one hand, the antibacterial effect which the lymph stream will exert upon the invading bacteria, and on the other hand, the auto-inoculation effect which will be exerted by the dissemination in the organism of the bacterial products which have been washed out of the focus of infection.

Now while such auto-inoculation may carry with it advantage (as may be seen when, in connexion with Bier's treatment, improvement manifests itself in foci anatomically remote from the seat of application of the bandage) it may often happen that the lymph stream which is induced in the focus of infection will convey into the blood an excessive quantum of bacterial products. In such a case the auto-inoculation will result in a lowering of the bacteriotropic pressure of the blood and upon occasion in constitutional disturbance.

Where we have to choose between lowering the bacteriotropic pressure of the circulating blood by an excessive auto-inoculation, and leaving the bacteria in a localized focus of infection for the nonce unmolested, we ought unhesitatingly to elect for the latter alternative. The safeguarding of the citadel of the circulating blood against septicaemic invasion, and the building up of a barrier in the blood against the passage of living bacteria from one point of the system to another, are considerations which must outweigh all others. And be it noted, even if we were prepared to jeopardize the life of the patient for the sake of molesting the bacteria in the focus of infection such policy would carry with it its own Nemesis ; for once the quality of the blood fluids in the main reservoir had been tampered with, immediately all power of operating effectually upon the bacteria in the focus of infection would be lost.

(2) Do Artificially-induced Auto-inoculations furnish a better Agency for raising the Bacteriotropic Power of the Blood against the Infecting Microbe than Inoculations of Bacterial Vaccines ?

In the following respects auto-inoculations would appear to have the advantage over inoculations of bacterial vaccines.

(*a*) Where we are employing auto-inoculations we must inevitably be employing the correct vaccine, or in the case of a mixed infection the correct mixture of vaccines.

(*b*) Our therapeutic operations are not—when we proceed by the method of auto-inoculation—as they are when we proceed by the method of vaccine-therapy—limited by our power of cultivating the infecting micro-organisms on artificial media.

(*c*) Treatment by auto-inoculation may in every case be begun without any preliminary diagnostic work, and without the delay which is inevitable where a special vaccine has to be prepared.

(*d*) The draining off from the focus of infection of the lymph which is impregnated with bacterial products, and its replacement by lymph freshly derived from the blood stream, may be expected to exert a beneficial effect upon that focus.

These advantages are, however, more than outweighed by the following disadvantages.

(*a*) In the case of auto-inoculations we operate with living cultures. The activated lymph stream may accordingly carry into the blood stream, not only bacterial products, but also living bacteria.

(*b*) In the case of auto-inoculations we are operating with unmeasured, and therefore often ill-adjusted, doses of bacteria and their products.

Where we have to deal with a very considerable focus of infection, or, failing this, where in connexion with a smaller focus the irrigation with lymph is very searching and unduly prolonged, there will be washed into the general blood and lymph stream an excessive dose of the bacterial products.

Where, on the other hand, we have to deal with a small focus of infection, or where in the case of a larger focus irrigation with lymph is continued for too short a time, too small a vaccinating dose will come into application.

Again, where by reason of a gradual restriction of bacterial growth effected by immunisation, or where by reason of a repeated draining off of bacterial products under the influence of Bier's treatment or of massage, diminishing quantities of bacterial products are available in the focus of infection, there will come into application diminishing doses of vaccinating elements, while there may quite well be required, for the maintenance of adequate immunising responses, undiminished, or increasing, doses of these elements.

(*c*) Auto-inoculations are not everywhere practicable. Active and passive hyperæmia can be conveniently applied only in the case of foci which are positioned in the extremities or in other accessible situations; while active and passive movements are applicable as auto-inoculating agents only where such movements do not involve pain or local injury.

(*d*) As compared with immunisation by bacterial vaccines hypodermically inoculated, immunisation by auto-inoculations is, it would seem, always more expensive to the patient—expensive in the sense that the

patient obtains for one and the same equivalent of intoxication a smaller yield of bacteriotropic substances.

(*e*) Finally: The demands which are made upon the patient's time, and the work which is thrown upon the physician are, in the case where auto-inoculation methods are employed under the control of blood examinations, much more serious than in the case where the patient is inoculated with bacterial vaccines.

Can Inoculations with Bacterial Vaccines be undertaken in Bacterial Infections which are associated with Spontaneous Auto-inoculations?

The issue as to whether inoculations of bacterial vaccines can be undertaken in bacterial infections which are associated with auto-inoculations would at first sight appear to be a perfectly simple issue. In reality we have to consider here a number of different problems. We have to distinguish (*a*), *the case where we have microbes growing in a localized focus of infection and where auto-inoculations are superinduced when a lymph stream courses rapidly through that focus, and* (*b*) *the case where the infecting microbes are cultivating themselves in the circulating blood, or in direct anatomical relation to this, producing "spontaneous auto-inoculations" whenever the bacteriotropic pressure of the blood falls.*

(*a*) *Case of a localized infection with "superinduced auto-inoculations."* Here treatment ought, I take it, to be directed, *first*, to placing a check upon the auto-inoculations, and, *secondly*, to following up by vaccine-therapy, carefully regulated, any advantage which the patient may have derived from his past auto-inoculations.

The first of these objects may in many cases be achieved by keeping the patient absolutely at rest, and by avoiding in particular all muscular movements which might send lymph through the focus of infection.

Where rest by itself does not suffice to cut off the auto-inoculations, it may prove possible further to diminish the lymph stream by taking advantage of the blood-inspissating and anti-lymphagogic action of calcium salts.

The great principle which we have to keep in view in connexion with the following up of auto-inoculations by inoculations of bacterial vaccines is that in every case, before the employment of bacterial vaccines is undertaken, the patient should be permitted to derive all the advantage that he can from his past auto-inoculations. Where the patient's index is seriously reduced by reason of a foregoing auto-inoculation an interval ought to be allowed to him for recovery before any further inoculation is made. And again where the patient's opsonic index is already well above the standard of the normal, inoculations ought to be postponed till the index is on the decline.

(*b*) *Case of a generalized infection with spontaneous auto-inoculations.*

In the case of *a septicaemia which is evoking from the organism satisfactory immunising responses*, the proper policy would appear to be

a policy of abstention from all interference. In other words here—and, I may add, here alone—the expectant treatment would appear to be in place.

In the case *of a septicaemia which fails to evoke any, or which evokes only very unsatisfactory immunising responses* I would suggest that an attempt should be made to call forth immunising responses by inoculations of bacterial vaccines.

To this proposal it might very naturally be objected that, inasmuch as the vaccinating bacterial products are here already circulating in the blood, producing an intoxication, it would be unreasonable to expect from the incorporation of further bacterial elements anything more than an aggravation of that intoxication.

Let me, however, try to show you that the employment of vaccines in these cases is not the unreasonable proceeding that it might at first sight appear.

I would call back to your mind here what was said above on the subject of the probable place of origin of the antibacterial substances.

If I am right in supposing that the bacteriotropic substances are manufactured in the tissues at the seat of inoculation, consideration will show that the conditions for successful immunisation must be less favourable when the vaccinating elements are thrown into the circulating blood than when they are inoculated directly into the tissues. In the case where the vaccines are introduced into the circulation they will come into application upon the tissues only after they have been diluted by the whole volume of the circulating blood; where they are inoculated directlyinto the tissues they will come into application upon these in a concentrated form.

It is accordingly not irrational to assume that there would be a possibility of a septicaemic patient deriving in this respect advantage from the inoculation of bacterial vaccines.

There still remains the objection that the inoculation of bacterial vaccines might aggravate his intoxication.

The rejoinder to this objection is, I think, suggested by the consideration that local toxic effects on the tissues—such as are produced by the subcutaneous inoculation of vaccines—and a local elaboration of bacteriotropic substances—such as we have reason to believe follows upon inoculation—would be inexplicable apart from a holding back of the toxic substances in the tissues.

Now if toxic substances are held back in the tissues, it follows that the incorporation of an aliquot quantum of vaccine into the tissues must produce less intoxication than the inoculation of that same quantum of vaccine directly into the blood stream.

I would put it to you in view of these considerations that the question as to whether vaccine-therapy can, or cannot, be successfully employed in connexion with septicaemic disease is a question which ought not to be prejudged. It is a question which can be decided only by actual trial.[1]

[1] *Vide here the results of such vaccine-therapy set forth on pp.* 392–409, *infra.*

(3) Consideration of the Therapeutic Measures which are Appropriate where we desire to bring the Antibacterial Agencies of the Blood into Application upon the Bacteria in the Focus of Infection.

While I must needs postpone to another occasion[1] a full exposition of the therapeutic principles which the immunisator ought to take as his guide where the antibacterial agencies of the blood are to be brought into application upon microbes which have established themselves in the tissues, I may here briefly summarize the principles as follows :—

We must provide for the conveyance of bacteriotropic substances into the infected region.

In the case where an accumulation of stagnant fluid in the focus of infection effectually prevents the entrance of bacteriotropic substances we must as a preliminary measure draw off the fluid which occupies that focus.

In the case where there are other mechanical obstacles to the free streaming of lymph through the focus of infection we must remove those obstacles.

(*a*) *Conveyance of bacteriotropic substances to the infected region.*—The douching of the focus of infection by a stream of lymph fresh from the blood vessels can in the case where the tissues are uninjured and the lymphatic channels are unobstructed, be effected by determining by the agency of heat, or any other rubefacient, a larger blood supply to the region affected. It can also—as in Bier's method—be effected by banking up the blood in the veins in such a manner as to increase the hydraulic pressure in the capillaries.

(*b*) *Removal of stagnating fluid from the focus of infection in the case where this prevents the lymph which transudes from the blood vessels finding proper access to the infecting bacteria.* In the case where the lymph can effectively make its way through the focus of infection, permeating every part of it, access of the bacteriotropic substances to the infecting bacteria will manifestly be provided for by the activation of the lymph stream quite apart from any operative interference. In such a case the stagnant fluid which occupies the bacterial focus will—whether for good or for ill—be driven on into the general circulation by the *vis a tergo* exercised upon it by the activated lymph stream. Where this method of dispersion is inapplicable, or where for any reason it is contra-indicated, the evacuation of the stagnating fluid by operative measures will obviously be desirable. In the case where we have in an abscess a tryptic fluid which is eating its way into the surrounding tissues[2] such evacuation, will not only be desirable but imperative.

Where we elect to employ the method of evacuation, as distinguished

[1] *Vide infra, pp.* 452 *et seq.*

[2] It is perhaps worth noting that the fact that an abscess gives fluctuation does not by any means furnish sufficient warrant for concluding that it contains a tryptic fluid and that operative measures must be resorted to. Again, even where the contents of an abscess have by the disintegration of leucocytes already acquired tryptic powers, it may still be practicable to abolish that tryptic power and to effect resolution by leading into that abscess cavity a sufficient quantum of antitryptic lymph.

from the method of dispersion, our choice will lie between simple incision, incision followed by cupping—as advocated by Klapp—and evacuation by aspiration. This last method has, I submit, an advantage over all others in the respect that it does away with all scarring and minimises both the risk of the entrance of bacteria from without, and the risk of auto-infection of the edges of the wound. It also secures, more effectively than any method of incision and drainage, what is in the case of an abscess the obvious desideratum, to wit, the filling up of the evacuated cavity with an antitryptic and opsonic lymph which will both inhibit bacterial growth and arrest further digestive destruction of the tissues.

(c) *Removal of obstacles to the free streaming of lymph through a focus of infection.*—We have seen above that a deficient outflow of lymph and the formation of a lining of fibrin on its walls are in the case of a sinus favourable to the survival of the infecting microbes. I am accustomed to combat these conditions by introducing into every dry sinus a solution of 0·5 per cent. citrate of soda and 5 per cent. sodium chloride. I may explain that the citrate of soda, by decalcifying the lymph, prevents coagulation and scabbing; and that the salt, acting by osmosis, causes fluid to transude from the blood vessels. Under the influence of this application a clear lymph wells out and the local conditions rapidly improve.

The situation in the case where we have a carbuncle or brawny swelling of the subcutaneous tissues being, in the respect that the lymph stream is obstructed, essentially similar to those which have just been considered, it must be treated on the same principle.

I may perhaps in this connexion make brief reference to a case of Ludwig's angina which came not long ago under my observation. The patient, a middle-aged man, had in the first instance developed what was taken for an indolent furuncle in the parotid region. When, after considerable delay, this was incised no trace of pus was met with, and the tissues were found to be everywhere dry and infiltrated. They remained in this condition, and the wound showed absolutely no disposition to heal.

Two weeks later the patient, who up to that time had been taking outdoor exercise, was suddenly taken seriously ill, and the brawny swelling, which up to that time had been limited to a patch on the left cheek, spread rapidly round under the jaw from one ear to another.

A surgeon now carried a series of vertical incisions deep down into the indurated tissues. Twenty-four hours afterwards the patient had lapsed into a condition of low delirium; and the local conditions showed no sign of improvement.

When brought to see him I could not, even at the bottom of the gaping incisions, find sufficient moisture to fill the loop of a platinum needle. Film preparations obtained by pressing cover-glasses against the sides of the wound showed very abundant streptococci, and only here and there a leucocyte. Blood from a vein at the elbow, drawn

with the intention of making a culture, clotted instantaneously in the syringe.

It was immediately clear that what was most urgently required in this case was, not that further means of antibacterial defence should be furnished to the patient, but that such means of antibacterial defence as were already at his disposal should be brought into application upon the streptococci in the focus of infection. With a blood so viscid and coagulable as was that of this patient, it was inconceivable that any lymph should transude into his tissues. It was to be expected, also, that any transuded lymph would immediately clot.

Influenced by these considerations, I prescribed 60-grain (4 gramme) doses of citric acid[1] every three hours. Six hours after the treatment had been begun lymph began to ooze into the wounds, and by next morning all the wounds had begun to bleed. The administration of citric acid was now suspended.

A culture of the infecting microbes having now been obtained, the opsonic index of the patient's blood was determined. This working out at 1·8, and very distinct amelioration having taken place in the patient's symptoms, I did not think it necessary to resort to inoculation treatment. Nor did afterwards any occasion for immunising intervention arise, the patient making continuous and rapid progress to complete recovery.

There is, I think, a lesson in this case which we shall do well to take to heart in connexion with all conditions where the access of lymph to the infected tissues is difficult.

With the discussion of these special therapeutic problems I have at last brought to a close my exposition of the main principles of vaccine-therapy so far as these are at present clear to me. You will, perhaps, expect me to say in conclusion one or two words on the subject of the results which have been achieved by the application of this method in actual practice.

VII.—General Discussion of the Question as to how the Achievements of Vaccine-Therapy ought to be evidenced and adjudicated upon.

Although, as I am well aware, nothing can be more irksome than to be called away to consider abstract principles where one desires to learn of actual achievements, I would venture to urge upon you that it would be well before adjudicating upon the value of vaccine-therapy to ask yourselves what results you may within reason expect from the method and what proof of its achievements you may legitimately require.

You will perhaps respond in your thoughts that surely a correct judgment on the value of vaccine-therapy might be most easily arrived at, if the case for and the case against this new therapeutic method were

[1] *Vide Wright and Knapp*, "*Lancet*," *December* 6, 1902, *p.* 1531; *Medico-Chirurg. Transactions, vol.* 86; *and Wright and Paramore*, "*Lancet*," *October* 14, 1905.

argued before you by able advocates representing the extreme positions of enthusiasm and scepticism. You think very probably, that in the course of such a discussion the legitimacy of every postulate would be investigated, and that by each party every argument would be brought forward which might tell in favour of his own side and against that of his opponent.

I have no doubt that that would be so. But none the less I would deprecate polemical discussion as an agency for preparing the mind for the task of adjudication, and as a means of arriving at scientific truth. I go further. If a man has put forward his case in such a way as to give an opening for polemical attack, I hold that that man is always deserving of blame.

If such a one—so I put the matter to myself—had been careful not to advance any statement without adequate proof, if he had kept his eyes open to every issue which ought to have been considered, if he had explained everything which stood in need of explanation, if he had never lapsed into ambiguous language, and lastly, if he had had sufficient discernment to anticipate the criticisms of the unintelligent and biased, assuredly, he would not then have furnished openings for polemical attack.

I have, too often, had to reproach myself for coming short in every one of these respects. But here I have redoubled my efforts. In connexion with every conclusion which I have arrived at, I have here endeavoured to set forth the chain of reasoning which has led me to that conclusion. I have still to try to reply by anticipation to the censures which I shall draw upon myself by neglecting to furnish to you evidence of the value of vaccine-therapy in accordance with certain required forms, and for addressing myself instead to the task of furnishing you with other and more convincing evidence.

Unreasonable and unconsidered Requirements in connexion with the Evidence to be adduced in proof of the Value of Vaccine-Therapy.

The following are the criticisms which have been made, or may be expected, in connexion with the evidence which has been furnished of the value of vaccine-therapy.

(*a*) *The clinical data with respect to the results of vaccine-therapy ought to be kept quite separate from, and ought to be considered quite without reference to, the data which are furnished by blood examination.*

(*b*) *In connexion with vaccine-therapy nothing short of a complete cure ought in any case to be accepted as evidence of success; again, any case of relapse or reinfection, and any case where any inoculation procedure has been resorted to without success, will suffice to establish the inefficacy of the method.*

(*c*) *In connexion with every cure which is credited to vaccine-therapy the possibility of that cure having occurred spontaneously must be taken into consideration.*

(*d*) *In connexion with determinations of the opsonic index, special precautions ought to be taken to eliminate the element of unconscious bias, and where such special precautions have not been taken the records must be held to be suspect.*

(*e*) *In case of an author's account of what can be achieved by his method, an ample allowance must be allowed for a biased selection of cases, and for self-deception in connexion with the condition of the patients before treatment is undertaken, and in connexion with the progress they have made under that treatment.*

(*f*) *Proof of the efficacy of vaccine-therapy would be furnished only by a statistical record of the event of treatment in an extensive series of consecutive cases.*

(*a*) *Contention that the results of the blood examinations ought to be put out of sight in considering the clinical results.* This is a contention which you will find advanced, on the one hand, by those who desire that the treatment of bacterial infections should remain—at least so long as they are practising members of our profession—on the level of pure empiricism, and, on the other hand, by those who are not satisfied that there is any real correlation between the condition of the blood as revealed by opsonic determinations and the clinical condition of the patient. With the former class of objector I know that you will not, under any circumstances, have any fellowship. Nor have I any fear that you will, when you shall have studied the proof of the correlation between the clinical condition of the patient and the opsonic power of his blood, range yourselves with the latter class of objectors.

The contention that you would, if you were to shut your eyes to the record of the opsonic readings, be in a better position to judge what vaccine-therapy had done in a particular case, would then make exactly the same appeal to you as would the contention that an engineer would arrive at a better opinion on the performance of an engine if he were to close his eyes to the readings of the steam gauge.

(*b*) *Contention that nothing short of a complete cure ought to be accepted as evidence of successful vaccine-therapy, and that any case of relapse or reinfection, or any case where any inoculation has been resorted to unsuccessfully, will suffice to establish the inefficacy of the method.* This will not, I think, appeal to you as an equitable contention. You will, I think, feel that where vaccine-therapy has set out to extinguish a particular infection, and where it can be proved to have accomplished this object, this ought, from the strictly scientific point of view, to be accounted a success, even where, either in consequence of irreparable organic damage already inflicted, or of a coexisting secondary infection which has been overlooked, or of any other cause, death afterwards supervenes. Again, where a generalized infection has been held under, and the patient has thereby been restored to life and comparative health by vaccine-therapy, I think you would feel it reasonable to give the method

credit for that achievement, even if, under the influence of an intercurrent infection, or by reason of the premature discontinuation of the treatment, a relapse were afterwards to take place. If you are, as I feel assured, ready to place yourselves at this point of view, in adjudicating upon the results of vaccine-therapy, *à fortiori* you will not countenance certain other palpably irrational contentions. I have in view here the contention that the method of vaccine-therapy can be discredited by the citation of a case which has been treated without success by a conscientious and competent immunisator; and the still more egregious contention that the method is discredited when it fails in careless and incompetent hands. You know that success can be expected only where the pathogenetic agent or agents have been identified, only where by the agency of properly graduated and interspaced doses of the appropriate vaccine or vaccines it has been possible to maintain the antibacterial pressure at a high level, and only where the protective elements of the blood have come into operation in any nidus in which the infecting microbes may have established themselves.

(c) *Contention that in connexion with every cure which is credited to vaccine-therapy the possibility of that cure having taken place spontaneously should be taken into consideration appears at first sight to be a perfectly reasonable contention.* When I urge upon you that the *vis medicatrix naturae* comes insistently to the aid of the physician, even where he ignorantly opposes it, and when I ask you to reflect that among all the therapeutic methods which have been practised there is probably not one—be that method never so harmful—which is not credited with many cures, you will perhaps realize that I can have no possible quarrel with the critic who demands that it shall be demonstrated to him, in connexion with the cures which are ascribed to vaccine-therapy, that they are not to be credited to the spontaneous operations of nature.

The critic who makes this demand from me may therefore be assured that he is forcing an already open door. When he contends that spontaneous cures of bacterial disease do occur, he is only emphasizing one of the fundamental axioms upon which the immunisator builds. For if it were not for the fact that spontaneous cures do occur, and for the fact that there follows upon these in many cases a condition of insusceptibility to further infection, the immunisator would have no warranty for expecting anything either from prophylactic or therapeutic inoculations. In other words, were it not that nature is competent to bring about these results under the stimulus of auto-inoculation, assuredly all attempts to bring them about by artificial inoculations would be vain.

But while the immunisator is in very little danger of overlooking the possibility of spontaneous recovery, there is equally present to his mind that he must, when he is considering the likelihood of spontaneous recovery, draw a sharp distinction between one kind of infection and another. Not only are there, as we have seen in the course of the discussion of the expectant method, differences in this respect as between

infection by one species of microbe and infection by another, but there is also, as was pointed out, in this respect a very fundamental distinction between generalized and purely localized infections. There are, in other words, bacterial infections in connexion with which spontaneous recovery is the rule, others where it is very exceptional, and again others where it can hardly be said to come into consideration at all.

Now these are precisely the kind of points which are overlooked or put out of sight by the partisan objector. Exploiting, wittingly or unwittingly, the fallacy which the schoolmen spoke of as a fallacy *a dicto secundum quid ad dictum simpliciter*, he would fain have you infer from the fact that spontaneous cure is a common event in connexion with certain types of bacterial infections, that it is to be expected in connexion with all bacterial infections without distinction.

When you have scrutinized the cases I have published of successful immunisation, you will not fail to observe that I have limited myself to the citation of cases which were, in my opinion, refractory or desperate cases, i.e., cases in connexion with which spontaneous cure by auto-immunisation was in my opinion improbable, or quite out of question.

We now come to the two last contentions—

(*d*) *Contention that in connexion with determinations of the opsonic index special precautions ought to be taken to exclude unconscious bias, and in particular that steps ought in every case to be taken to conceal from the laboratory worker the identity of the bloods he is dealing with.*

(*e*) *Contention that in the case of every clinical account which is given by the author of a new therapeutic method, liberal discount ought to be made for self-deception in estimating the severity of the cases before treatment, and in estimating the progress made under treatment.*

These are contentions to which no honest man can refuse to concede a certain amount of force, for bias is a factor which has to be taken into consideration as affecting to a greater or less extent every human observation.

But just as we have in connexion with the *fallacy of spontaneous recovery* carefully to distinguish between the different classes or types of bacterial infection, so here in connexion with the *fallacy of bias* we have to draw a sharp line of distinction between observations which involve a large subjective element and numerical estimations in which the subjective element practically falls out of account.

While ordinary clinical observations come under the former, opsonic determinations come under the latter category.

Let me assure you that it is practically impossible in connexion with these to practise unconscious dishonesty without afterwards finding oneself out. If, for instance, when making an opsonic count, one were, under the influence of a desire to make the estimation one was engaged upon agree with a previous one, and under the impression that one's figures were coming out too high or too low, to relax one's watch upon oneself, and

half guiltily and half unconsciously to overlook here a leucocyte and there a leucocyte which one might suspect of containing too many or too few bacteria for one's purpose, retribution would almost certainly follow in the form of too low a phagocytic count where one had sought to avoid too high a count, or in the form of too high a phagocytic count where one had sought to avoid too low a result. A similar Nemesis would dog our steps if, after counting our usual quota of leucocytes selected at random, we were to endeavour by counting a larger number of leucocytes selected under the influence of bias to alter a result which represented the correct average count of any specimen.

When we pass to the region of clinical observation we pass, as already said, to a region where unconscious bias may often mislead our judgment.

It is impossible here to be sure that one might not under the influence of bias mistake a case which might readily have recovered spontaneously for a refractory case, and a case in which spontaneous recovery was not out of question for a desperate case; and that one might unconsciously exaggerate the progress that a patient made under treatment. But even here there are manifestly limits to one's power of self-deception, and we have in those cases where thermometrical measurements are available, results which can hardly be vitiated by bias.

(*f*) *Contention that definite proof of the value of vaccine-therapy could be furnished only by a statistical record setting forth the event obtained by inoculation in an extensive series of cases.*

Let me, in connexion with this contention, begin by asking you to consider what would be the evidential value of a statistical record of the event of treatment in a consecutive series of cases.

It is, I think, clear that, apart from any incidental value which it might derive from the inclusion of refractory or desperate cases, such a series of cases would acquire value only if it were placed over against a series of quite similar control cases.

Now a series of untreated cases such as would serve the purpose of controls cannot in practical life be obtained.

For such a series of untreated controls there would therefore have to be substituted, as the only possible alternative, a series of cases treated by another method, and by another practitioner. Now if this were done, the scientific issue would immediately be confused, not only by doubts as to the comparability of the two series of cases, but also by the question as to whether the therapeutic method which was applied in the control cases was hurtful, innocent, or beneficial; and above all it would be confused by a question of personal competition.

If you will consider what confusion would in this way be introduced into the issue which we are here concerned to resolve, you will, I think, understand the motives which influence me when I say that I do not propose, either here or elsewhere, to supplement by any attempted statistical proof that presumptive proof of the efficacy of vaccine-therapy which I claim to have already furnished by the citation of numerous

refractory and desperate cases successfully treated by the inoculation of bacterial vaccines.

Method of escaping from the Evidential Difficulty which would seem to arise in connexion with the circumstance that Statistical Proof of the Value of Vaccine-Therapy cannot be furnished:

I am, however, convinced that there is a very simple way out of the difficulty which would seem to arise in connexion with the fact that the presumptive proof of the efficacy of vaccine-therapy which I claim to have already furnished by the citation of refractory and desperate cases successfully treated cannot be supplemented by any statistical proof.

Assuredly my proper course is to do all I can to win proselytes and to leave it to these to furnish to you corroboration of the results which I have obtained in refractory and desperate cases.

If I have succeeded in elucidating the general principles upon which vaccine-therapy proceeds, and if I now succeed in bringing home to you that there is ample evidence of a close correlation between the results which are furnished by opsonic determinations and the clinical condition of the patient, and in bringing home to you that the method of vaccine-therapy has a very extensive sphere of application, I feel sure that there are among you scientific workers who will undertake to master the somewhat delicate technique for the measurement of the opsonic index and to carry out inoculations under that control.

I may commit it to such workers to furnish to you testimony of the value of vaccine-therapy which will be free from the fallacies which must be incident to every "author's account."

Having with this put you in possession of my thoughts, let me now try to set out the evidence which establishes that the rise and fall of the antibacterial power of the blood, and in particular the rise and fall of the opsonic power of the blood, are correlated respectively with improvement and aggravation in the clinical symptoms.

Evidence which establishes that there is a close Correlation between the Rise and Fall of the Opsonic Power of the Blood and the Clinical Progress and Regress of the Patient.

The evidence consists of data furnished by blood examination and clinical observation conjointly.

These data may be obtained by the study of the conditions which spontaneously present themselves in the course of disease, or by the study of the conditions which present themselves in patients who have been treated by bacterial vaccines. They may be obtained (*a*) *by making upon a number of patients in each case a single observation, and in conjunction with this a single measurement of the opsonic index, or* (*b*) *by following out upon patients who are kept under continuous observation in each case the events which supervene upon inoculations of bacterial vaccines or auto-inoculations.*

It will be convenient to arrange the evidence under these two headings, and then to consider, in connexion with the data which I furnish to you under each of these headings, what evidential value those data might properly have for you.

Evidence obtained by making upon a succession of patients in each case a single observation and in conjunction with this a single measurement of the opsonic index.

By tabulating a series of such observations made in conjunction with Douglas upon a succession of patients suffering from very chronic and strictly localized staphylococcic and tubercular lesions I have demonstrated that these were correlated with a low opsonic index with respect to the pathogenetic microbe which is in question.

Vide pp. 103 *and* 118 *supra.*

By similar observations—observations which must now total up to very many thousands—I have satisfied myself that in all bacterial infections, without exception, a low opsonic index is correlated with an unsatisfactory clinical condition, while a high opsonic is—with only occasional exceptions which can be very well accounted for on the hypothesis that the focus of infection is here shut off from the circulating blood—correlated with a clinical condition which is for the moment improving.

Discussion of the evidential value of these data.—Assured as you are of these data only by my testimony, and unable as you are here to satisfy yourselves of the regularity with which the rule as stated above is conformed to, and of the sufficiency of the explanation which is here put forward to account for occasional departures from that rule it is clear that the data which have just been recorded can at best have for you the value of presumptive proof of a correlation between the opsonic power of the blood and the clinical conditions.

Evidence obtained by following out upon patients who are kept under continuous observation the events which supervene upon inoculations of bacterial vaccines.

The data which have been obtained by this means can most advantageously be set out in the form of "immunisation charts."

Under this heading would come (*a*) *charts relating to those localized infections whose evolution is sufficiently acute to allow of the manifestation of objective signs of clinical progress or regress within quite short intervals.*

The charts here in question set forth in the form of a trace the changes effected by inoculation in the opsonic index, while the particulars of the clinical changes, which of course are not available in the form of quantitative data, are appended in the form of a verbal gloss. Charts such as these—applying as they do for the most part to infections which readily yield to vaccine-therapy—are for the most part "short charts"—charts which set forth the result of only one or two inoculations.

Those, and also the materials for such charts which have been pub-

lished by myself and by other workers, bring out (*a*) that as soon as, by the agency of the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine, the low indices which are associated with localized infections give place to high indices, the clinical conditions improve; (*b*) that during the "negative phase" the symptoms are aggravated, and (*c*) that during the " secondary ebb " to which attention was called above relapses are prone to occur.

For charts—or as the case may be, materials for such charts—vide supra, pp. 107–111, *and pp.* 248–254.

Discussion of the evidential value of these data.—Against the evidential value of such charts as have been in question above, the following objections might be urged. In the first place it might be contended that inasmuch as the clinical data which are furnished in connexion with these charts are furnished by ordinary clinical observation and not by any quantitative and mechanical method an allowance must in connexion with the clinical descriptions be made for *bias*. Further, it might be contended that inasmuch as we have here to deal only with " short charts" the coincidences between the favourable and unfavourable changes in the opsonic index and the favourable and unfavourable changes in the clinical condition might quite well be *fortuitous coincidences*. Lastly, it might be urged that, inasmuch as there must in every case inevitably be a selection of charts for publication, an element of *unconsciously biased selection* might quite well operate to bring about the publication of all the charts which showed the desired correlation and the holding back of all the charts which failed to show such correlation.

The validity of the first two of these objections so far as it concerns the charts which have just been cited can be easily rebutted. The hypothesis of bias in the clinical observations can here hardly lie, inasmuch as it is here only a question of judging whether a furuncle has got worse or has got better, and whether an existing furuncle has disappeared or a new one has made its appearance. Nor will the hypothesis of unconscious biased selection of charts lie in the case of the records here cited, for none were here excluded except on the ground other than they were not sufficiently detailed or on the ground that they were mere replicas of those published. But while these objections cannot be upheld, it will be clear to consideration that you cannot in the case of " short charts," apart from the publication of a long series of unselected charts, exclude the possibility of the simultaneous changes in the opsonic index and symptoms being the result of fortuitous coincidence.

Charts relating to generalized infections which are associated with pyrexia.—On the charts here in question are delineated two traces representing respectively the opsonic readings and the thermometrical readings. It is shown in these charts that—at any rate as soon as the auto-inoculations have been brought in some measure under control—an inverse relation between the opsonic power and the temperature readings makes itself manifest.

For charts which exhibit in connexion with the inoculation of bacterial

vaccines this inverse relation between the opsonic index and temperature,[1] *vide infra, pp.* 388–409, *Charts* 9, 10, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20, and 21.

Discussion of the evidential value of these data.—In view of the fact that not only the changes in the opsonic index but also changes in the clinical condition are here registered by the aid of exact quantitative measurements, and in view of the fact that in each case a sufficiently long series of inoculations is recorded to allow of the definite exclusion of the fallacies of fortuitous coincidence and unconscious biased selection of results which conform to expectation, it may, I think, without fear of contradiction, be asserted that you have here in connexion with the inoculation of bacterial vaccines conclusive evidence of a close correlation between a rise and fall of the opsonic power and a fall and rise of the temperature. Now while a rise of temperature need not invariably be indicative of an unfavourable change in the condition of the patient, and while it may upon occasion be an accompaniment of an immunising response, and while *per contra* a fall in temperature is not always indicative of a favourable change, none the less it may unhesitatingly be asserted that in a septicaemic condition a reduction of temperature is almost always indicative of an inhibition of bacterial growth in the body, and that a rise of temperature is indicative of an increase in bacterial growth. It thus follows that we have here evidence that a favourable change in the opsonic power is correlated with a favourable, and an unfavourable change in the opsonic power with an unfavourable, change in the patient's condition.

Further Evidence of Correlation.

While the charts which have just been considered constitute a very convincing form of evidence, and while they constitute the only form of evidence which is calculated to carry conviction to the critical auditor or reader who is called upon to adjudicate upon the question of correlation apart from any personal experience of the results of inoculation, it must not be supposed that these charts have any unique value for the man who has seen with his own eyes how the clinical conditions in every infection improve or change for the worse according as the opsonic index rises or falls. In point of fact, while there is not among the clinical symptoms of disease any symptom which does not vary with the changes in the opsonic index, there are among them many which bring home the fact of correlation more vividly to the observer who comes into actual contact with the cases.

It would be impossible and it is also unnecessary here to attempt anything in the nature of a complete summary of the evidence in favour of correlation which enforces itself upon the notice of the immunisator as

[1] *For charts which show in connexion with auto-inoculations instead of this inverse relation a direct, and up to the present unexplained association between a rise and fall of temperature and a rise and fall of the opsonic index, vide pp.* 387–388 *and* 391–392, *Charts* 7, 8, 11, and 12.

he day by day compares the results of his blood testings with the clinical condition of his patients. Brief reference may, however, be made to some of the more striking evidence.

The fact that the favourable issue of pneumonia is associated with a rise in the opsonic index is brought out very clearly in the charts which have been published by MacDonald[1] from Dr. Bulloch's laboratory. It is here shown that during the course of pneumonia the opsonic power is continuously subnormal, and that the *crisis* in pneumonia occurs in connexion with a sudden and striking rise in the opsonic power of the blood. The same association between a rise in the opsonic index—a rise here achieved as the result of the inoculation of a pneumococcus vaccine—and clinical improvement in a pneumococcic infection is shown by Eyre. It is again shown by the workers in Hektoen's laboratory that the favourable or unfavourable event of pneumonia is correlated with a rise or fall in the opsonic index.

The fact that changes in the opsonic index stand in close relation to increased or diminished *pain* comes strikingly under observation in connexion with the treatment of gonococcal rheumatism by gonococcus vaccine. *Chart* 6, *p.* 386 *infra*, *sets forth in a very striking manner the close correlation which exists between the clinical symptoms and the readings of the opsonic index in gonococcal rheumatism.*

The same association as in gonococcal rheumatism comes under observation in connexion with the treatment of *tubercular arthritis* by tubercle vaccine, the conditions being here only so far different that we have here to deal, not so often with pain, as with a feeling of weakness and of fatigue in the joint.

The fact that changes in the opsonic index stand in close relation to increased or diminished pain comes again under observation (it comes here under observation in association with increased or diminished *frequency of micturition*) in *tubercular cystitis*. So marked is this association that it is in the ordinary case possible before the blood is tested to foretell from the symptoms whether the opsonic index will turn out to be high or low.

A very striking association between the severity of the *pain* and the opsonic index comes under observation again in the case of patients who are the victims of *malignant disease*. Here, in practically every case, the pain of the associated inflammation is relieved when, by the inoculation of appropriate doses of a vaccine made from the staphylococcus which was denoted by Doyen *micrococcus neoformans*, the opsonic index to this micro-organism has been raised. And the pain as regularly recurs when the opsonic index to this micro-organism again falls.

A similar correlation between the amount of purulent discharge and the opsonic readings comes under observation in connexion with purulent discharges from mucous membranes—in particular in connexion with gonococcal discharges.

[1] *Transactions Pathological Society of London*, 1905.

Charts showing the correlation which exists between the opsonic readings both in gonorrhoea and otitis are set forth in the papers of Hektoen's pupils.[1]

A correlation, and a very striking correlation, between the *psychical symptoms* and the readings of the opsonic index may be observed in a large variety of bacterial infections. Low indices in tuberculosis are for the most part associated with low spirits; high indices with high spirits. The *spes phthisica* may very probably be associated with the immunising responses with which the organism responds to the tubercular auto-inoculations. In a very similar way in the case of coli infections the patient's outlook upon life varies with his opsonic index.

Finally, in connexion with chronic and long-lasting infections, such as tubercle, it may be observed that where the disease is in process of being completely extirpated, the opsonic index maintains itself after inoculation for considerable periods at a level well above the normal (*maintained high tide of immunity*), whereas in cases where the infection is not yet being satisfactorily overcome, the index always falls away rapidly to a subnormal level.

Let me now, with a view to showing you how extensive is the sphere of application of vaccine-therapy, try to summarize for you my personal experience of the results of vaccine-therapy. Let me deal separately with each of the more important types of infection.

Summary of the Results which have been obtained by Vaccine-therapy.

Strictly localized infections affecting the subcutaneous tissue, lymphatic glands, bones, joints and other parts of the body.

Typical examples of this class of infections are to hand in the case where staphylococci or streptococci have penetrated into the subcutaneous tissue, and in the case where tubercle bacilli have effected a lodgment in lymphatic glands.

In these cases, and in the whole class of cases of which these are examples, all but uniformly successful results are achieved by vaccine-therapy supplemented, as occasion has required, by measures for determining a free lymph flow in the focus of infection.

In the case of ordinary furunculosis improvement has generally been almost immediate. On the other hand, in cases where the tissues have been much infiltrated, and where—as in carbuncle—the lymph flow is obtruded, improvement has never been rapid until a free flow of lymph has been established in the affected region.

In the case of tuberculous infection of the lymphatic glands the period of treatment—measured from the inception to the complete retrocession of the swelling—has varied, according to the extent of the infection and the individual patient's power of immunising response,

[1] *Centralblatt f. Bakteriologie.* I. Abth. Orig. Bd. xliv, Heft 5.

between five weeks and eighteen months. It has, on the whole, averaged about six months. Where suppurating tuberculous glands have been in question, or where suppuration has supervened in the course of the vaccine treatment, this complication has in every case been successfully dealt with by vaccine-therapy after incision, or aspiration, supplemented by chemical suction.

What applies to tuberculous infection of the lymphatic glands applies in a general way also to tuberculous infection of the testicle, and to simple tuberculous infection of the kidney and urinary passages.

It applies also—but on this question I speak with a reserve imposed upon me by a very restricted experience—to early cases of tubercle of the lungs.

Ulcerative Type of Infection.

In my experience this type of infection—a type which is met with in connexion with the breaking down of nodules in the deeper tissues, and in connexion with the invasion of those tissues from the surface—does not differ with respect to its tractability to vaccine-therapy from the type of infection last considered, except only in the case where secondary infections have supervened. If anything—given the case where secondary infections have either been avoided or been successfully combated—an open ulcer is more tractable to vaccine-therapy than a focus of infection in the deeper tissues which has not yet found external vent, and more tractable than a focus of infection in the epidermis which has not yet penetrated to the underlying lymph-bearing strata. It will be clear that, as soon as the subcutaneous tissues have been tapped, the lymph stream which courses through these will well up through the floor of the ulcer, coming into application, as it does so, upon the infecting micro-organisms.

Infections of the Skin.

Infections of the skin fall naturally into two categories. Where the infected skin is comparatively dry and scaly and non-vascular we are dealing with a form of infection which is, in my experience, relatively intractable to vaccine-therapy. A typical example of such a type of skin infection is furnished by the superficial scaly form of lupus which has from the point of view of its superficial resemblance to psoriasis been, very appositely, denoted "*lupus psoriasis*." Where the microbes penetrate deep into the skin we have forms of infection which are very tractable to vaccine-therapy.

Infections of Mucous Membranes and of the Glands and Ducts which stand in connexion with Mucous Membranes.

Infections of mucous membranes are, in my experience, very readily influenced by vaccine-therapy. Many very successful results have been obtained in connexion with the most various infections of the middle ear, antrum, nasal sinuses, dental alveoli, and salivary glands. Successful results have also been obtained in connexion with coli infections of the

intestinal mucous membrane and gall-bladder. The same holds true in connexion with many different infections of the uterus, kidney, urinary bladder, and urethra.

It is to be noted in connexion with many of these infections that they have been mixed infections, and in connexion with the infections of the urinary passages in particular that there was often superadded to the infection of the mucous membrane a bacteriuria. The extinction of this bacteriuria—which is an incomparably more difficult task than the relief of cystitis and the extinction of the infection in the mucous membrane—has been achieved in a considerable percentage of the cases which I have treated.

Infections of Sinuses.

In my experience very successful results are obtained in these cases when the inoculation of bacterial vaccines is combined with the application of a local lymphagogue.

In conclusion, I may perhaps say a word on the subject of results that have been obtained in the treatment of "mixed infections," and in the treatment of "generalized infections."

Mixed Infections.

While the suggestion that mixed infections must be expected in suppurative processes occurring in connexion with surfaces which harbour microbes may quite well be universally acceptable, as not breaking in upon any accepted belief, the suggestion that the question of mixed infection must perforce be considered in connexion with every case of phthisis, lupus, tubercular caries, tuberculous cystitis, and tuberculous ulceration will, in the very nature of things, be unacceptable to many clinicians. Such a suggestion will be felt to call in question both the clearness of vision of those who in connexion with these diseases clamour, and have clamoured, for antituberculous remedies only, and the critical acumen of those who, without taking into account the fallacies which are incidental to clinical methods, confidently undertake to adjudicate on antituberculous remedies by the naked eye observation of the effects upon cases where, in addition to the tubercle bacillus, other pathogenetic microbes are at work.

Be it acceptable or unacceptable, there is no escape from the fact that practically every case of suppurating lupus is complicated by staphylococcus infection, and that the majority of aggravated cases of lupus are complicated by a streptococcus infection.

What holds true of lupus holds true of the majority of tubercular sinuses.

Having appreciated the magnitude and the far-reaching nature of the issues involved in the treatment of mixed infections, we may come to the question of the results achieved in these cases by vaccine-therapy. We have two cases to consider.

Case where vaccine-therapy is directed to the destruction of only one of the different species of infecting microbes.—In a few instances—notably

in two cases of rupial furunculosis where we had to deal with a mixture of streptococci and staphylococci—the extinction of one of the microbes under the influence of the corresponding vaccine has indirectly led to the extinction of the other. This event is, however, extremely exceptional.

In most cases the employment of vaccine-therapy directed to the destruction of a single species of microbe leaves the other species quite unaffected. It may even—and this applies in particular to surface infections of mucous membranes or ulcers—leave the ground free for the multiplication of the other—i.e., the originally competing microbe.

Case where vaccine-therapy is directed to the destruction of each of the different species of infecting microbes.—Where in cases of mixed infection measures are taken to immunise the patient against each of the different infections very successful results have been achieved. Successful results have been achieved, notably in the case of lupus, cystitis, and endometritis. While naturally the task of the immunisator is more laborious and more intricate in the case where two or three different vaccines are employed, it would seem that the organism of the patient does not find the task of responding to a number of different vaccines (always supposing that each of these is administered in appropriate and properly interspaced doses) given together more difficult than the task of responding to one variety of vaccine only.

Generalized Infections.

In association with my fellow-workers I have, up to the present, treated by vaccine-therapy some half-dozen cases of Malta fever and an equal number of cases of streptococcal septicaemia.

In each of the cases of Malta fever the course of the disease would seem to have been favourably influenced—the clinical improvement occurring in each case in association with an increased development of antibacterial substances in the blood.[1]

In the cases of streptococcal septicaemia[2] the results have been as follows :—

In two cases—one of these being a case of malignant endocarditis—a complete cure was achieved, in each case in association with a very satisfactory immunizing response. In a third case—also a case of malignant endocarditis—the high temperature which had lasted for three months before vaccine-therapy was resorted to, came down to the normal under the influence of the inoculations, the patient making an excellent immunising response. In this case death by cardiac complication occurred on the fourth day after defervescence.

In three other cases of streptococcal endocarditis the patient succumbed, having in each case failed to make any immunising response to the inoculations.

[1] *For a Chart applying to one of these cases, vide infra, Chart* 13, *p.* 389.
[2] *For details and Charts of these cases, vide infra, pp.* 388–405, *Charts* 13–21.

VIII.—Concluding Remarks.

I would venture in conclusion to come back once more upon the therapeutic measures which are currently employed for the purpose of combating bacterial infections. I want to come back upon them, in order to consider in connexion with these and with vaccine therapy one further point. If disillusion and disappointment have followed upon the enthusiastic exploitation of antiseptics, surgical extirpation and serum-therapy, we may well ask ourselves whether in the future the same tale will not have to be told of vaccine-therapy.

To this there is but one inevitable answer. Unless we can detect, and unless it should be given to us to avoid, the fallacies which have led to unjustified expectations and consequent disillusion in connexion with current therapeutic methods we shall assuredly not escape such disillusion in connexion with any newly introduced therapeutic method.

Our sins of omission and commission in connexion with the therapeutic methods which were mentioned above, were, I apprehend, the following :—

(1) *Sufficient thought was not in any case devoted to the problem which was to be attacked.* In the case where antiseptics were employed to combat bacterial infection, the issue as to whether the conflict of the organism with the infecting microbe might not be paralysed by the ingestion or application of the antiseptic was in practice overlooked. So was the issue as to whether anything in the nature of a complete sterilization could by these means be achieved. In connexion with surgical extirpation the issue as to whether it is theoretically possible to extirpate with the knife all the infecting micro-organisms was put out of sight. In the case of serum-therapy it was assumed without either *à priori* justification or experimental proof that the animal which was vicariously inoculated would respond to any kind of demand that might be made upon it by the immunisator.

(2) *It was not in connexion with any of these therapeutic methods thought necessary to study in a systematic manner by bacteriological investigations the effect of the treatment upon the infecting bacteria and the patient's power of resistance.*

I may for instance point out to you that it has not been thought necessary or worth while in connexion with any form of serum-therapy to study on the patient the effect of that treatment upon the antitoxic or antibacterial power of the blood.

(3) *We permitted ourselves in connexion with each newly introduced therapeutic method to indulge in extravagant expectations.*

In reality, far more important consequences than one might at first suppose depend upon a proper regulation of expectation in the field of medicine. So long as we as a profession go on hankering after the impossible, so long as we demand of every new therapeutic method that it shall after the manner of a magic wand achieve the marvellous with

little labour, and that it shall give its best results even when it is applied in an absolutely blind empirical manner, so long will disillusion continue to dog the steps of medicine.

There will be an end, once and for all, to such clamouring for the moon as soon as science shall have imported order and measure into our expectations. It will then come home to us that when man has in any branch of applied science obtained results commensurate with the knowledge and labour which he has brought into application he has obtained everything he is entitled to ask or expect.

Now in medicine we have aspired to directive control over bacterial infections without thinking it necessary to acquire an intimate knowledge of the phenomena of infection, or of the consequences of intervention, or of the *modus operandi* of our remedial agencies.

Inherent Limitations of Vaccine-therapy.

It would therefore be well that in connexion with vaccine therapy we should appreciate the limitations which are inherent in the method, and the labour which its proper conduct may entail, and further that we should distinguish between the cases where we may hope to achieve certain and easy success, and the cases where success, if achieved at all, must be dearly bought.

(*a*) We must keep constantly in mind that where we have recourse to vaccine-therapy we furnish to the organism not the protective substances which are required, but only a stimulus which will under favourable conditions elicit a production of such substances. It is an obvious corollary that the success of the treatment is in every case conditional, on the one hand, upon the right choice, and right dosage, and right interspacing of the vaccine, and, on the other hand, upon the patient's individual capacity for immunising response.

(*b*) We have further to call to mind that the protective substances which are formed in response to the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine disappear in the infected organism rapidly from the blood.

It follows that if we are not immediately successful in destroying all the infecting micro-organisms—and such immediate success can hardly be expected except in the case of incipient infection—we have to make up our minds to go in for a programme of periodical inoculations —just as a gardener who undertook the task of clearing the weeds out of a neglected garden would make up his mind to renew his efforts week by week until his purpose was accomplished. And just as in gardening no one finds any ground for surprise if the weeds spring up again, when a residue has been left in the soil, or when the ground lies open to seeds borne in from without, so in connexion with bacterial infections recrudescences and fresh reinfections must be expected where a residue of microbes are left in the body, and where the channels through which infection originally found entrance are left open and unguarded.

(*c*) Where we are dealing with generalized infections or localized infec-

tions which have reached the stage at which auto-inoculations are occurring vaccine-therapy encounters special difficulties.

(*d*) Lastly, we have to realize that what can be directly achieved by vaccine-therapy is nothing more than a greater protective power in the circulating blood. Hence when we aim at the destruction of microbes which are as it were barricaded round in the tissues we cannot expect success until those barricades have been broken through.

What Bacteriological Training and what amount of Bacteriological Labour is required for the Proper Treatment of Bacterial Infections by Vaccine-therapy?

When as in ordinary cases of furunculosis, or lymphangitis, or erysipelas, the clinical appearances immediately tell us the infecting microbe, and the required vaccine, and when the proper dosage of the vaccine for such cases has already been worked out and made known, treatment by vaccines, like the empirical use of proprietary medicines and drugs, may be undertaken, and for the most part successfully undertaken, without anything in the nature of special knowledge, and with no more technical skill than is required for administering an injection of morphia.

If all bacterial infections were as tractable as those just mentioned, and if the appropriate dosage of every variety of vaccine had been as fully worked out, and, above all, if there was any such thing as an optimum system of dosage which would apply to all cases alike, or if in all cases the condition of the patient was such that it was a matter of indifference as to whether we obtained the best attainable results, or something less than the best results, then vaccine-therapy might be reduced to a mere rule of thumb.

But in Nature nothing of this kind ever does work out as a system of rule of thumb, and just as in technical chemistry and engineering the rule of thumb artizan has been supplanted by the scientific craftsman, so also will it be in medicine. Hence the real issue we have to discuss here is not the question as to what is the irreducible minimum of medical knowledge which is required for vaccine-therapy, but rather what is the minimum of bacteriological knowledge and technique which must be at disposal in order to ensure that the results which are obtained shall in every case be the best which are at present obtainable.

Manifestly the immunisator must for the purposes of diagnosis and treatment have at his command whatever knowledge and technique may be required for identifying the microbes in both " open " and "closed" infections, for gauging the gravity of each infection, for determining whether a dose of vaccine is too large or too small, for ascertaining whether the time has arrived for reinoculation, and for satisfying himself—when as the result of treatment the overt symptoms of the disease shall have disappeared—whether the infection has really been completely extinguished.

For the identification of the more common and more formidable and

more easily recognized pathogenetic microbes in "open infections," a training in bacteriology and technique such as may under favourable circumstances be acquired by students in an ordinary course of bacteriology ought perhaps to suffice. But for all the other purposes enumerated such training is hopelessly inadequate. It does not impart, it does not even aim at imparting, that intimate acquaintance with the bacteriology of the human body in health and disease which is the first requirement of the physician who seriously intends to diagnose bacterial diseases and to apply to each its specific treatment. And again the ordinary student's course of bacteriology does not—any more than does the ordinary student's course in chemistry—impart any training in accurate quantitative work.

In both the one and the other of these respects—and I trust I may say so unblamed—the education of even the professed bacteriologist is at fault. On the one hand, unless he has given special study to this subject, he has not at command that knowledge of the bacteriology of the human body which an immunisator requires, and, on the other hand, his rare attempts at quantitative work—consisting as they do of little more than the enumeration of colonies on Petri dishes, the making of dilutions in more or less cumbrous ways, and the measurement of bacteria by loopfuls, or where larger quantities are in question, by fractions or multiples of agar tubes or bouillon cultures—all these attempts, I say, bear much the same relation to quantitatively accurate bacteriological methods as the technique of the beginner at billiards bears to that of a professional.

I must therefore insist that a serious discipline in quantitative technique—a discipline similar to that which is required before any one can play billiards or do any effective work in chemistry—is an indispensable preliminary to undertaking quantitative bacteriological work for the purposes of diagnosis or guidance in immunisation.

I pass from the discussion of the bacteriological training which is required as a preparation for the work of an immunisator to the question of the amount of bacteriological labour which will be called for in connexion with each particular case.

We may here consider work (1) in connexion with *diagnosis*, (2) in connexion with the *preparation of vaccines*, and (3) in connexion with the *regulation of the treatment*.

(1) *Work in connexion with diagnosis.*—In connexion with diagnosis we have three types of cases to consider: (*a*) cases where the nature of the infection is obvious from the symptoms, (*b*) cases of "open infection" where the nature of that infection is uncertain, and (*c*) cases of "closed infection," where the nature of that infection is uncertain.

It is clear that no diagnostic work of a bacteriological nature is called for in connexion with the first class of cases.

In the second class of cases microscopic preparations and cultures must be made from the discharges, and in the case where these methods

give negative results, or where we suspect that in addition to the microbes which are found there may be other microbes which are unrepresented in the films and cultures, inoculations into animals must be employed, or we must resort to those methods of inferential diagnosis which are applicable in the case of "closed infections." Moreover, it must be kept in view that, however exhaustive our initial diagnostic examination of an open infection, we cannot rest content with this. The diagnosis must from time to time be revised, for new varieties of microbes may invade the wound, and varieties originally present may disappear.

In the case of "closed infections" direct methods of diagnosis are of course inapplicable. Here a series of measurements of the patient's opsonic index must be made with a view to determining whether his index with respect to each suspected variety of micro-organism fluctuates spontaneously, or can be made to fluctuate by activating the lymph stream in the focus of infection.

(2) *Work in connexion with the preparation of vaccines.*—With respect to this it will suffice to say here that while it would seem probable that in all cases the best results would be obtainable by the use of vaccines prepared from the individual patient, and while such vaccines ought, wherever possible, to be resorted to in dangerous or obstinate infections, in the ordinary case, stock vaccines give very satisfactory results.

(3) *Work in connexion with the regulation of the treatment.*—We have again three cases to consider (*a*) the case of comparatively light infections where the symptoms give us adequate guidance in the regulation of our inoculations, (*b*) the case of localized infections where the symptoms afford no guidance in the treatment, while at the same time our proceedings are not interfered with by auto-inoculations, (*c*) the case of generalized infections where we have to reckon with irregularly recurrent spontaneous auto-inoculations.

As in the *first* case considered in connexion with diagnosis, so here in the first case which has to be considered in connexion with treatment, bacteriological work may be dispensed with.

In the *second* case it will generally suffice if we inform ourselves from time to time by blood examinations that our scheme of dosage is correct. But where more rapid and certain results are required we shall do well to control each dose, testing the blood in the manner already explained before and twenty-four hours after each inoculation. And where the progress of the case leaves something to be desired, more frequent blood examinations, or even daily blood examinations may be advisable.

In the *third* class of cases, where we are dealing with an irregular and almost continuous series of auto-inoculations, it will be imperative, if we propose to intervene by inoculation, to keep in touch with what is happening in the body. This involves measuring the opsonic index once a day, if not oftener.

On consideration of this onerous programme of work you will inevitably ask yourselves whether it would not be possible to substitute for the

measurement of the opsonic index some unlaborious clinical observation, or whether, in default of this, it would not be possible to substitute for the measurement of the opsonic index some less laborious method of blood examination.

With regard to the former question I would emphasize that there is no clinical observation which can be accepted as an equivalent to a measurement of the opsonic index.

In connexion with the latter question I would point out, on the one hand, that there is no other available method, and, on the other hand, that, as experience in connexion with every other branch of science teaches, quantitative determinations are of necessity laborious.

Having now come quite to the end of my task, let me add one final word on a question whose importance will be manifest as soon as I have formulated it for you.

Question what Cases give for the Labour entailed upon the Immunisator the largest Return of Advantage to the Patient.

The wholly unscientific atmosphere which pervades almost all our medical thinking shows itself perhaps most conspicuously in this, that it hardly occurs to you and me to begin in medicine with the simple and easy problems, and to advance from these to the more complicated and difficult ones.

Setting our hearts upon the immediate discovery of, shall I say, a cure for cancer, or for advanced consumption, or for septicaemia, we fail to reflect that in the case of the first we have not yet found that loose end which, followed up, might perhaps lead to the unravelling of the problem, that in the case of the second we have probably a multiform mixed infection complicated with what are in effect voluminous open abscesses, and that in the case of septicaemic diseases we have to deal with the most uncontrollable types of infection.

And, aspiring after a remedy for these, we have neglected to work at the comparatively simple and soluble problems of localized diseases.

We must wholly put away from us all such immoderate ambition if we are in connexion with vaccine-therapy to reap the best results from our labour.

Except only when we are striving to open up new fields we shall do well to embark with the greatest reluctance upon the treatment of very grave septicaemic cases, and to reserve our working strength for really fruitful work in connexion with localized and incipient infections.

Studies in Connexion with Therapeutic Immunisation.[1]

By A. E. Wright, S. R. Douglas, M.R.C.S. (Eng.), Captain I.M.S. (Retired); J. Freeman, M.D., Radcliffe Travelling Fellow (Oxon.); J. H. Wells, M.B., B.S. (Lond.), Alexander Fleming, M.B., B.S. (Lond.), and other Members of the Staff of the Department for Therapeutic Immunisation, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.

I.—I. Charts illustrating Points in connexion with the Immunising Reaction which is obtained in Response to the Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines—II. Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with the First Beginnings of Tuberculosis Infection—III. Chart showing in connexion with a Case of Gonococcal Arthritis, Auto-inoculation and Immunising Response, and the Correspondence which exists between these Phenomena and the Clinical Events—IV. Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with Advanced Phthisis—V. Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with Generalized Infections—VI. Charts showing (*a*) the Conditions which are met with in Man in Streptococcal and other Septicaemias, and (*b*) the Results which have been obtained in these Conditions by Recourse to Vaccine-therapy—VII. Charts illustrating the fact that Auto-inoculation Effects are obtained where Active or Passive Movements are undertaken in connexion with Localized Bacterial Infections—VIII. Charts showing that Auto-inoculation Effects are Elicited by Operative Interference with Foci of Bacterial Infection—IX. Charts showing that Auto-inoculation Effects are obtained by Active and Passive Hyperaemia affecting Foci of Bacterial Infection.

II.—Table illustrating some of the Diagnostic and Therapeutic Problems that can be resolved by recourse to the auto-inoculation test.

We have in the course of the past three years in connexion with the treatment of out-patients in the Department for Therapeutic Immunisation at St. Mary's Hospital, of in-patients in the Hospital, and of patients outside the Hospital, had opportunity of investigating a number of points in connexion with the diagnosis of bacterial diseases and their treatment by methods of immunisation. We reproduce below a selection of some of the more interesting of our records.

We have divided our paper into two parts.

In Part I we treat first of certain unregarded points in connexion with the immunisation curves which are obtained by bacterial inoculations. We then deal with auto-inoculations, showing that these may come under observation in connexion with the first beginnings

[1] Reprinted from the *Lancet*, November 2, 1907.

of tuberculous infection, and that they are a regular accompaniment of the hectic fever of advanced phthisis. We then show in connexion with a case of gonococcal arthritis that there is a very intimate relation between auto-inoculation and auto-immunisation on the one hand, and the clinical symptoms of the patient on the other. We then take up the question of generalized bacterial infections and show that spontaneous auto-inoculations and immunising responses are a characteristic feature in anthrax septicaemia as seen in rabbits. From this we pass on to deal with human streptococcal and staphylococcal septicaemias, setting out here all the work which we have done with a view to eliciting immunising responses by the agency of vaccine therapy in those cases where spontaneous immunising responses make default. Finally, we set forth some of the more interesting of the records which we have obtained in the course of systematic study of auto-inoculations in connexion with localized bacterial infections. We here consider, first, the effect of massage and of active muscular movements affecting the focus of infection; then the effect of operative interference with such foci; and lastly, the effect of active and passive hyperaemia affecting these foci. The forty-four records which we bring forward in illustration of these various points are all submitted to the reader in the form of charts provided with a brief explanatory commentary.

In Part II we bring forward evidence to show that we have in the induction of an auto-inoculation, when this is preceded and followed up by a series of measurements of the opsonic index, a method which can be turned to account for the resolution of some of the diagnostic and therapeutic problems which present themselves for solution in connexion with every localized infection which is not accessible to direct bacteriological examination. Of the fifty-one records which we bring forward in illustration of the problems which can be resolved by this method one is, by way of illustration, submitted in graphic form. The remaining fifty are for convenience of study arranged in a table.

PART I

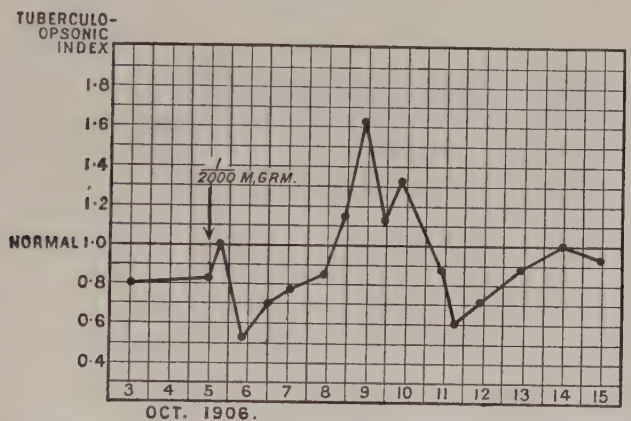
I.—Charts illustrating Points in connexion with the Immunising Reaction which is obtained in Response to the Inoculation of Bacterial Vaccines.

Chart 1 exhibits, in addition to the negative and positive phases, which are already familiar features in connexion with every immunisation curve, two minor features which are not without a certain interest. The first of these is the upward movement of the curve which follows directly

upon inoculation anticipating the negative phase.[1] The second is the sinking away of the curve after the positive phase to a point below the original point of departure.[2]

The first of these features is of interest as explaining the immediate clinical improvement which not infrequently supervenes directly upon the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine. The second is of interest as explaining the fact that indices appreciably lower than those encountered in the untreated condition may be met with subsequent to the inoculation of vaccines. To be noted in connexion with the secondary ebb of the curve of immunisation is the fact that the point of lowest ebb has no

CHART I.



Owing to the fact that the quantum of dry tubercle powder in Koch's T.R. was declared by them as ten milligrammes in one cubic centimetre, when it was in reality only two milligrammes in one cubic centimetre, the dose here inoculated would in reality be only $\frac{1}{10000}$th milligramme.[3]

sooner been reached than—and this is seen also in Charts 3 and 6—the tide spontaneously turns again.

Chart 2 exhibits the results obtained by measuring the agglutinating power of a guinea-pig which was subjected to successive inoculations of a vaccine consisting of a culture of the glanders bacillus which had been sterilized by heating to 60° C. It will be seen that we have here on record in connexion with the agglutinating power of the blood a succession of negative and positive phases exactly comparable to the succession of negative and positive phases which are registered where, in connexion with bacterial inoculations, successive measurements of the opsonic or,

[1] This feature is again exhibited in Charts 27, 30, 38, 39, 41, and 44, and again in the Table under serial numbers 6, 10, 13, 17, 27, 28, 29, and 31.

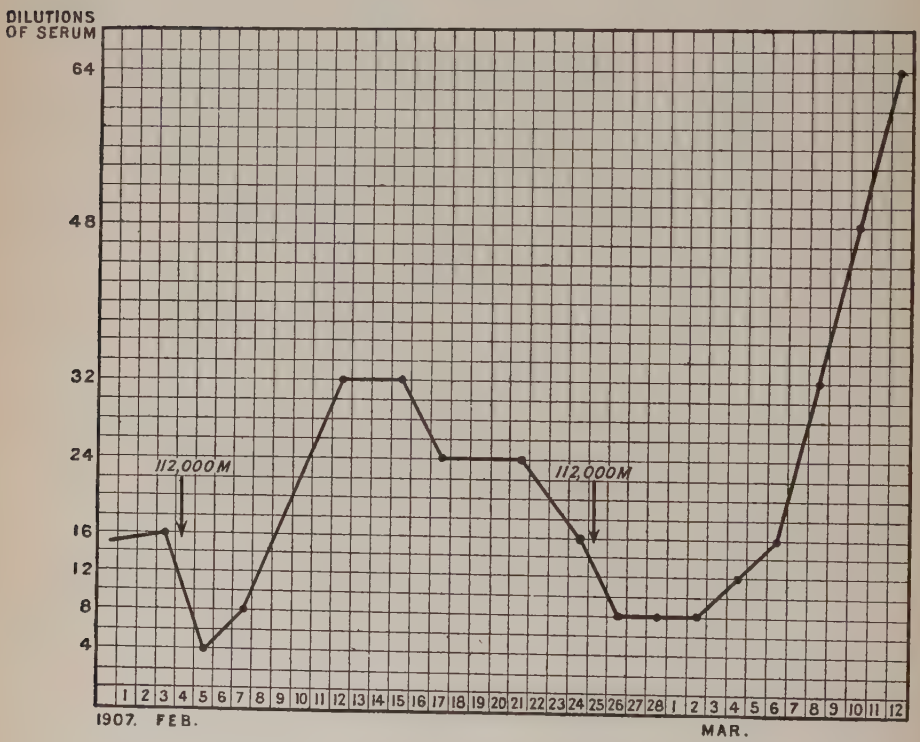
[2] This feature is again exhibited in Charts 3, 5, 6, 23, 26, 30, and 40, and in the Table under serial numbers 14 and 28.

[3] *Vide supra*, page 123, footnote No. 2.

as the case may be, of the bactericidal power of the blood are undertaken. It is thus clear that the course of the immunising reaction can be followed by measurements of the agglutinating power of the blood.

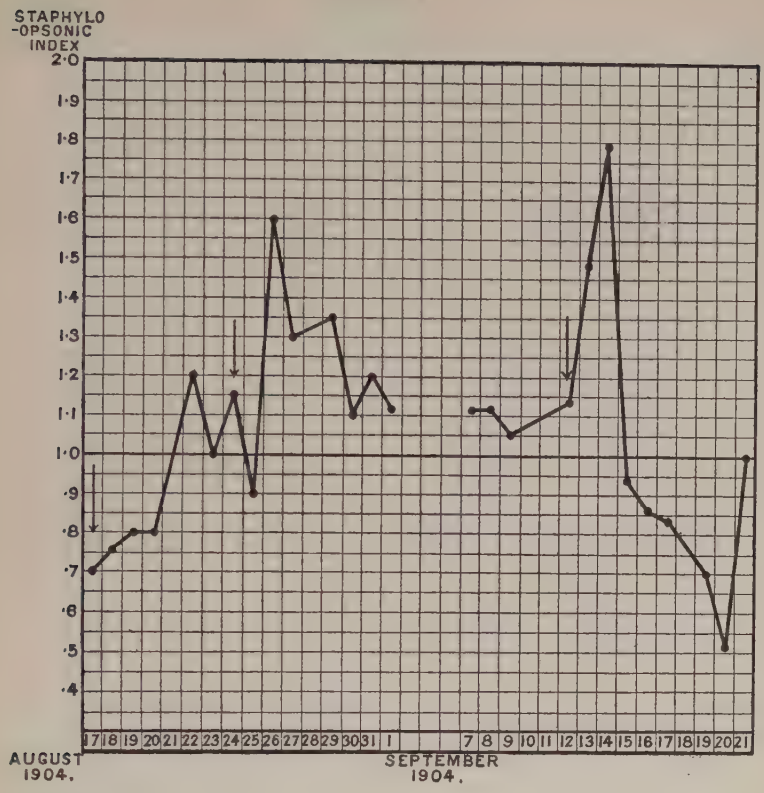
Chart 3 refers to a laboratory boy who was the subject of acne and who was inoculated by us with staphylococcus vaccine. To be noted in

CHART 2.



connexion with the chart is (*a*) the fact that the first two doses of vaccine gave a cumulative effect in the direction of the positive phase; (*b*) the fact that there supervened upon the very high "spring-tide" which was evoked by the third inoculation a very pronounced "secondary ebb"; and (*c*) the fact that the progressive improvement which was achieved in association with the positive phases which are here on record was, in the period of the secondary ebb, succeeded by a temporary aggravation of the patient's condition.

CHART 3.



II.—Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with the First Beginnings of Tuberculous Infection.

The two following charts which refer to past workers in this laboratory appear to us to possess quite exceptional interest in connexion with the detection of the first beginnings of tuberculous infection. Before considering them we may premise the following : (*a*) In connexion with the measurements of the tuberculo-opsonic index which are carried out in this laboratory, as a matter of daily routine, we employ as controls the sera of from two to four laboratory workers, with respect to whom we feel confident that they are not the subjects of any tuberculous infection. Both the laboratory workers whose charts are here in question came under this description. (*b*) In the ordinary case where the blood of a patient is in question we work out the opsonic index by dividing the phagocytic count which we obtain with his serum by the mean of all the phagocytic, counts which we obtain with the control sera. In the case of the laboratory workers here in question the index was in each case obtained by dividing

the phagocytic count corresponding to the particular worker's serum by the mean of the phagocytic counts of himself and his fellow-workers.

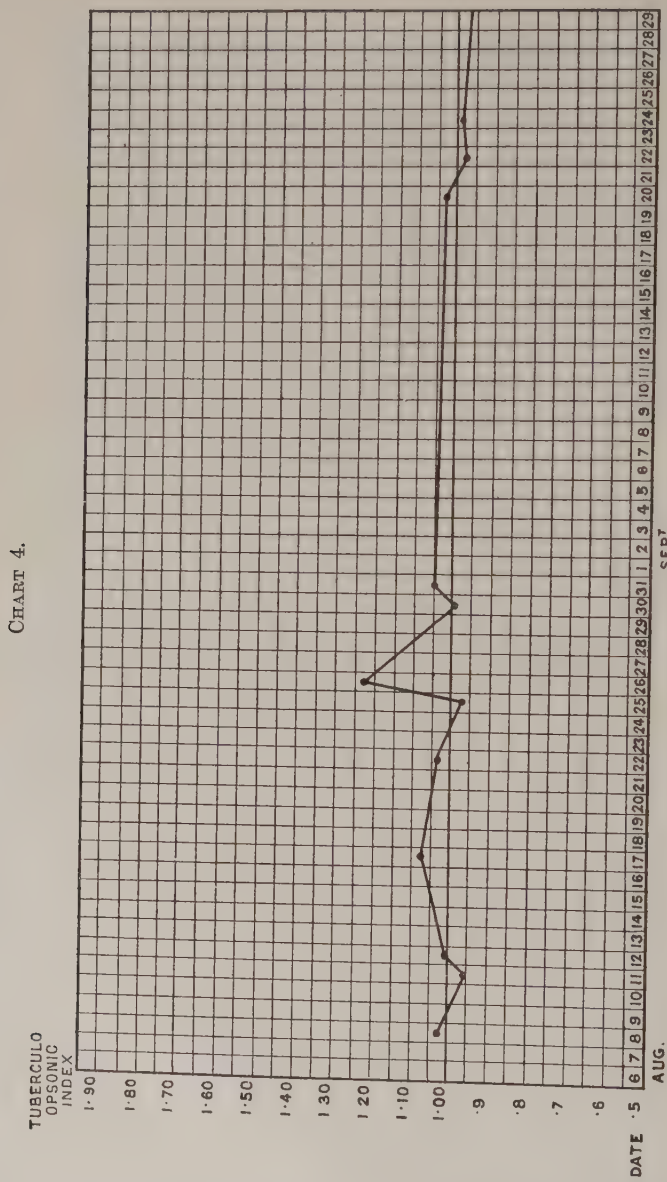


CHART 4.

Chart 4, which refers to the first of the two cases which are in question, shows that during the ten weeks which are covered by the first two-thirds

of the chart the tuberculo-opsonic index of our fellow-worker's blood never ranged below 0·9 or above 1·1, except on a single occasion (in

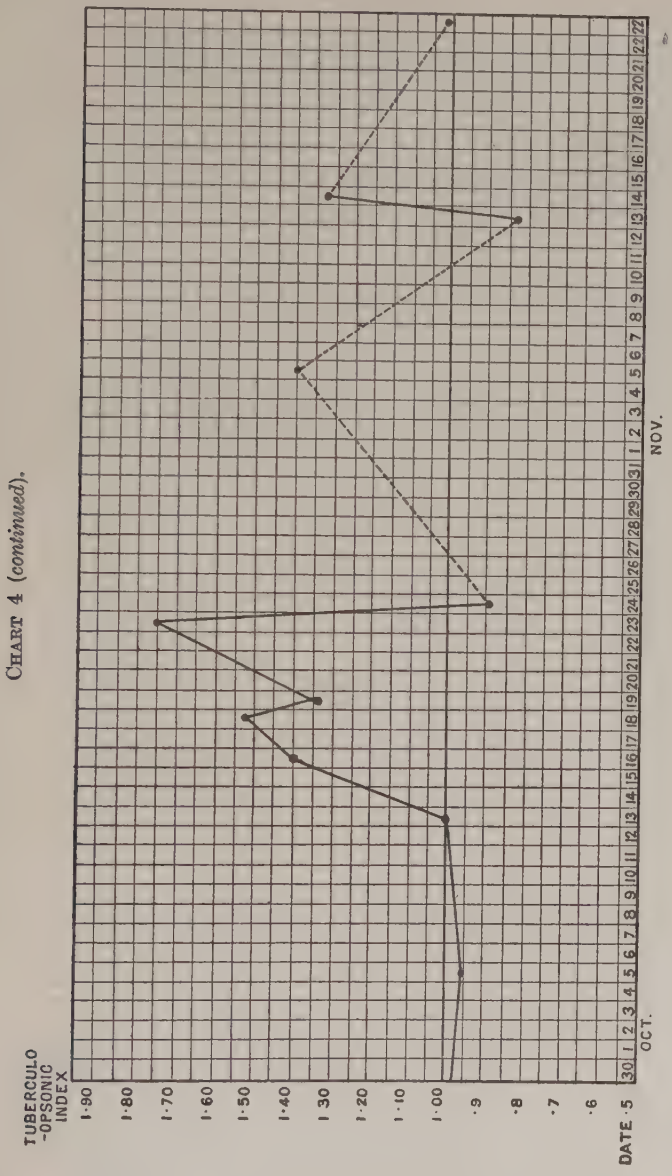


CHART 4 (*continued*).

August) when a reading of 1·25 was obtained. In the middle of October, for the first time, a serious discrepancy made itself manifest between this

worker's blood and the other control bloods. With a view to probing this matter to the bottom we took samples of blood from each of the workers in the laboratory—then some ten in number—and tested each individual worker's serum against the pooled serum of all the workers. It immediately emerged that the serum of the particular worker whose chart is here in question showed the abnormally high tuberculo-opsonic index which signalizes an immunising response to a tuberculous inoculation or auto-inoculation. An acute febrile attack now supervened. It was diagnosed as "typical influenza." Our fellow-worker, who was a man of splendid physique, however, lost flesh very rapidly, developed a cyanotic hue, and complained of a certain amount of tenderness in connexion with the lymphatic glands of the neck. In association with these symptoms a tuberculo-opsonic reading of 1·75 was obtained, and twenty-four hours after a reading of 0·9. It was now ascertained that the patient had more than ten years before undergone an extirpation operation for tuberculous glands in the supra-clavicular region. We take it, in view of all these circumstances and of the subsequent events, that we were here face to face with what we are persuaded must be a comparatively common event—to wit, a tuberculous septicaemia.

Of quite special interest is the subsequent history of this case. The patient made a rapid convalescence, recovered the weight that he had lost, and returned to work in the laboratory. His tuberculo-opsonic index none the less showed the fluctuations delineated in the last quarter of the chart. To us it seemed clear that we had here evidence of tuberculous infection. To others the patient's appearance made such infection quite incredible. To believe here in tuberculous infection, and to believe in it upon the evidence of a fluctuating opsonic index alone might quite well, so they reasoned, be fruit of a mind diseased. Our fellow-worker none the less elected to exchange the late hours and the physical strain of laboratory work for an outdoor life. He reported to us before long that the fluctuation of his tuberculo-opsonic index had not been without significance. He had developed tuberculous epididymitis.

Chart 5 refers to a laboratory worker who took the place of the worker last in question. Here we have:—in the last week of November and the first week in December, nine successive tuberculo-opsonic readings which varied between 0·95 and 1·05; in the last three weeks of December, a series of twelve readings, among which there are a quite unusual number of low readings and among these one significantly low reading; in the first fortnight of January, again, nine readings, of which eight fall below the normal, one again being significantly below the normal; then, in the last week in January, a fluctuation which has all the characters of an inoculation or auto-inoculation curve—i.e., a negative phase, a positive phase, and a secondary ebb; and, lastly, throughout the rest of the chart a very significant series of large oscillations in which very low readings are interspersed with isolated high readings.

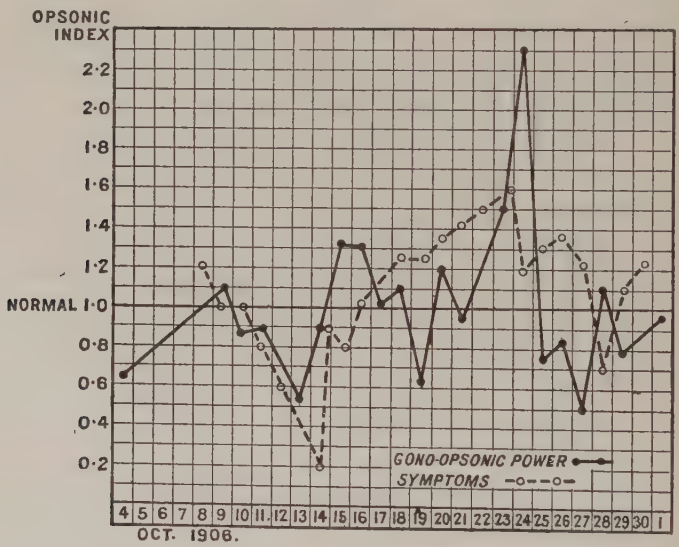
CHART 5 (*continued*).

Of special import in connexion with this chart are the following facts. Early in the last week in January—i.e., in the week in which the first really significant fluctuation was registered—a lymphatic gland in the submaxillary region began to swell and to give a little trouble. After a few days this trouble subsided and the gland could no longer be felt. Early in the second week of February one of the physicians made a careful examination of our fellow-worker's chest. His examination gave only inconclusive results. About the date on which the chart here terminates tubercle bacilli were detected in our fellow-worker's sputum.

III.—Chart showing, in connexion with a case of Gonococcal Arthritis, Auto-inoculation and Immunising Response, and the Correspondence which exists between these Phenomena and the Clinical Events.

Chart 6.—This chart furnishes a record of the measurements of the gono-opsonic index which were made in connexion with a case of gonococcal

CHART 6.



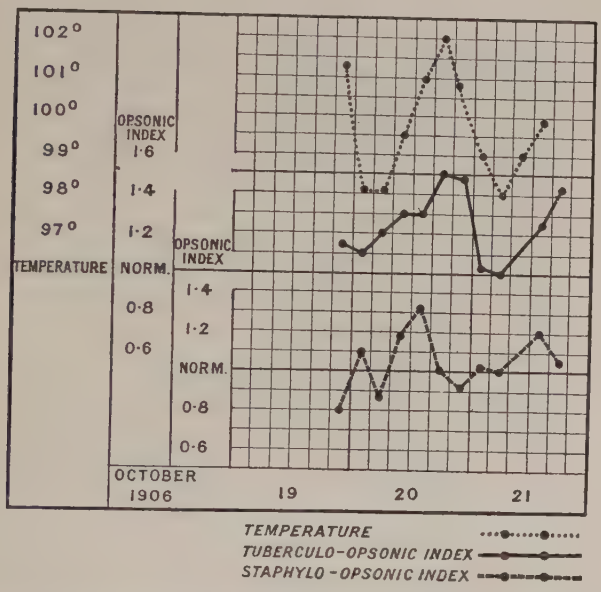
arthritis in St. Mary's Hospital. Along with the records of the blood testings we have entered upon the chart also a record of the daily state of the patient. The two records were obtained by different observers working without any intercommunication. Dr. J. Freeman, who undertook the blood examinations, did not enter the wards, while Mr. K. Lees, who undertook the record of the symptoms, was engaged exclusively in clinical work. The clinical record was obtained in the form of the curve here charted by assigning a daily quota of marks to the patient in accordance with a scheme previously agreed upon. Very convincing, when considered

in the light of these facts, is, we think, the testimony of the chart to the close interrelation between the content of the blood in protective substances and the clinical state of the patient. (Compare here the events that are put on record in connexion with Charts 22 and 23 and 33.)

IV.—Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with Advanced Phthisis.

Chart 7 has reference to a case of phthisis. The patient was in the last stage of the disease and was affected with a typical hectic pyrexia. His sputum, which had been frequently examined, was characterized by the association of numerous staphylococci with the tubercle bacillus. In

CHART 7.

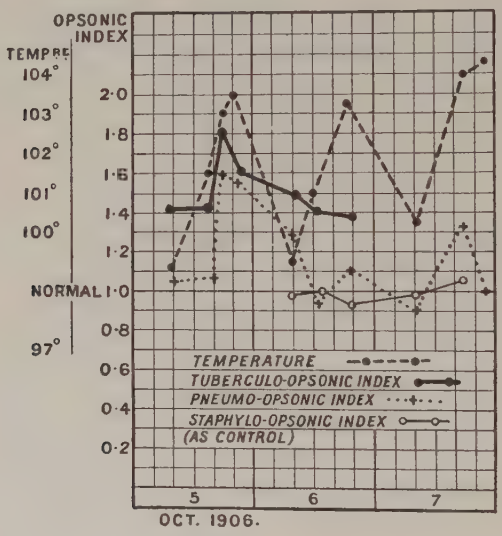


he upper division of the chart we have the temperature curve ; in the middle division the record of the observations which were made on his uberculo-opsonic power ; and in the lowest division of the chart the record f the changes in his staphylo-opsonic power. It will be seen that the ise and fall of the temperature here coincides with a rise and fall in the uberculo-opsonic power, and that it corresponds also in a general way with fluctuation in the staphylo-opsonic power.

Chart 8.—This chart has reference to another patient also in the last tage of phthisis. This patient's sputum had been continuously free from taphylococcus, while it contained on each occasion in addition to tubercle

bacilli innumerable pneumococci. It will be seen that while the tuberculo- and pneumo-opsonic power of the patient's blood rose and fell with his temperature, his staphylo-opsonic power remained unaffected. It is interesting to note that in an earlier period of his disease—when, however, the hectic temperature had already persisted for over six months—there was no daily variation in his tuberculo-opsonic power, while his pneumo-opsonic power rose and fell with the diurnal variation of the temperature.

CHART 8.

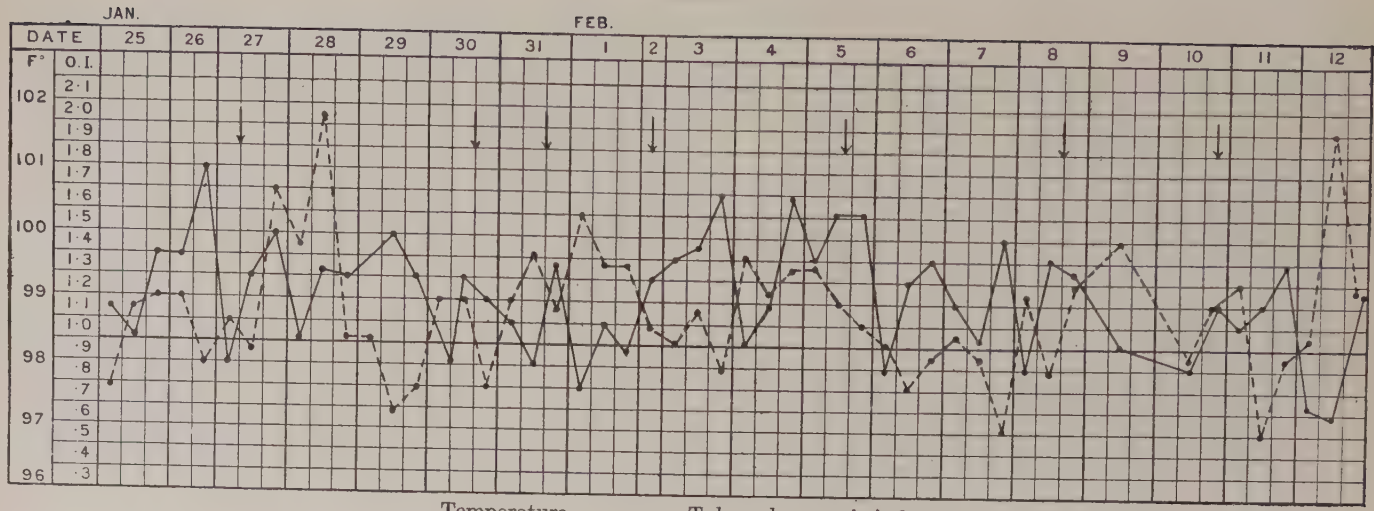


Charts 9 *and* 10.—These charts which we owe to Dr. A. C. Inman, who worked with us for a long time and who is now in charge of the opsonic department at the Brompton Hospital for Consumption, refer to two cases of pulmonary phthisis which were treated with tuberculin under the control of the opsonic index. These records are introduced here as showing in a quite typical way that inverse relation of opsonic index to temperature which can be traced throughout the whole of the charts which relate to septicaemic infection in man.

V.—Charts showing Auto-inoculation Effects in connexion with Generalized Infections.

Charts 11 and 12 relate to two rabbits which were inoculated in each case with half of an agar culture of living anthrax bacilli. There are registered on the chart in each case the fluctuations of the anthraco-

CHART 9.



Temperature ——— Tuberculo-opsonic index – – – – –.

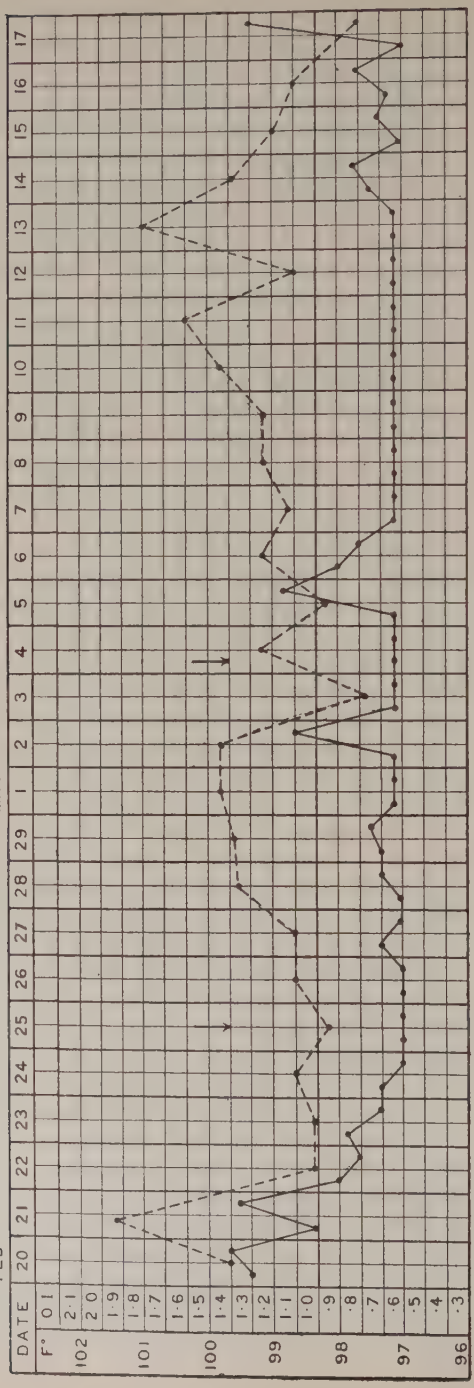

FEB
MAR
DATE
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
F°
102
101
100
99
98
97
96
2·1
2·0
1·9
1·8
1·7
1·6
1·5
1·4
1·3
1·2
1·1
1·0
·9
·8
·7
·6
·5
·4
·3
Temperature ——— Tuberculo-opsonic index - - - - -

CHART 10.

opsonic power[1] of the blood in association with the temperature readings,

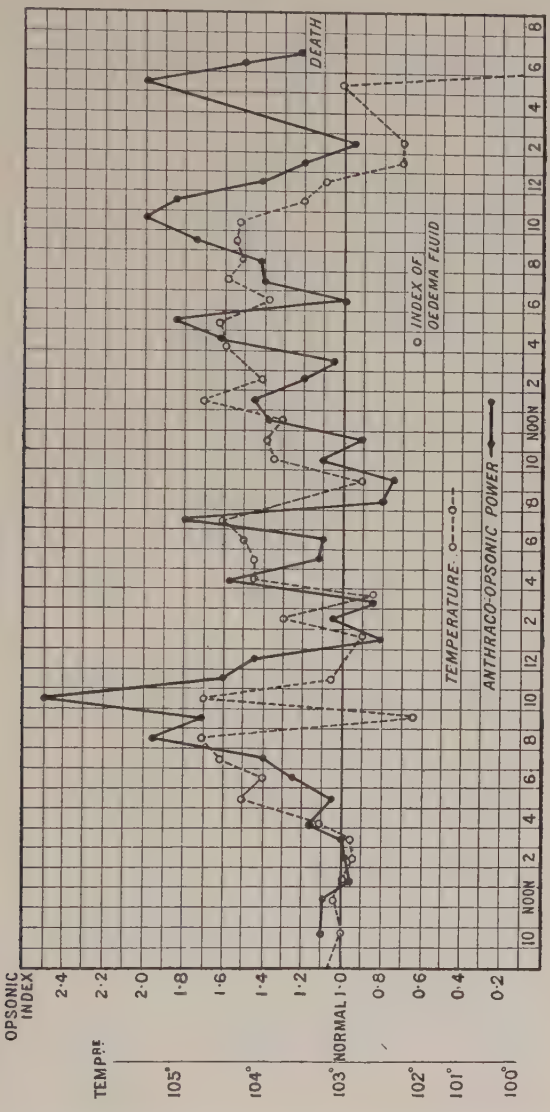


CHART 11.

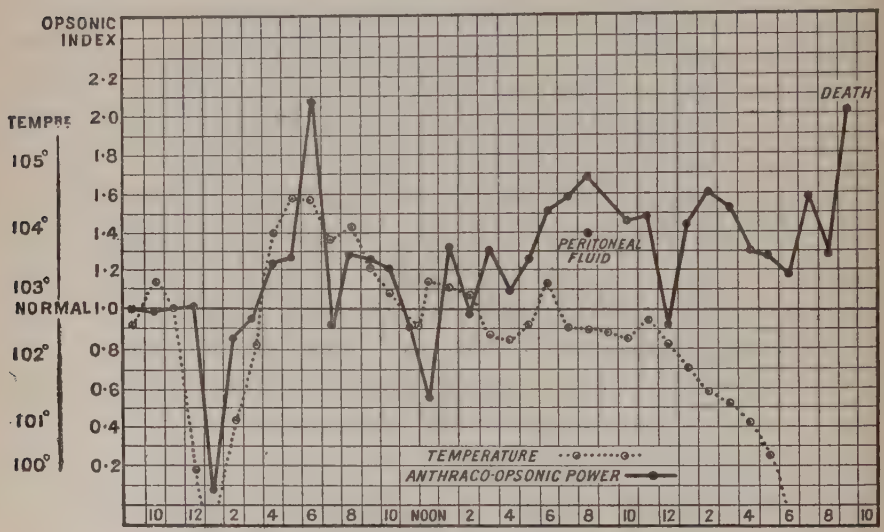
[1] The technique which was employed for the estimation of the anthraco-opsonic power of these rabbits' blood differed from the ordinary technique (*a*) in the respect that a suspension of spores was here substituted for the customary bacterial suspension; and (*b*) in the respect that the opsonic index was here arrived at not by comparison with the blood of a normal animal, but by comparison with blood drawn off from the rabbits before the outset of the experiment, or with a blood which had been standardized against this.

which were taken in the rectum. The more important points which are brought out in the charts are the following :—

1. The animal organism is shown to be capable of making immunising responses even to such acute infections as were here in question.

2. The fluctuations of the body temperature are shown to correspond here in an astonishing manner with the fluctuations of the opsonic power of the blood.[1]

Chart 12.



3. The generalization that the bacterio-tropic pressure in the focus of infection is normally lower than that in the circulating blood is here corroborated by the fact that the fluid drawn off from the site where the inoculation was made had in each case a smaller opsonic power than the circulating blood.

4. A comparison of Chart 11, where the machinery of immunisation shows sign of flagging at the close, with Chart 12, where the machinery of immunisation continues to respond in an active manner, shows that death in acute infectious disease is not always the result of a breakdown in the machinery of immunisation. It may also follow upon the breaking down of some other part of the physiological machinery. (*Vide* here Chart 17.)

VI.—Charts showing (*a*) the Conditions which are met with in Man in Streptococcal and other Septicaemias, and (*b*) the Results which have been obtained in these Conditions by Recourse to Vaccine-therapy.

The subjoined group of charts depict a type of septicaemia which

[1] A quite similar correlation between temperature and immunising response is exhibited in Charts 7 and 8.

would appear to differ fundamentally from the type depicted in Charts 9 and 10. A study of so much of the Charts 13, 14, 15, 17, and 18 as

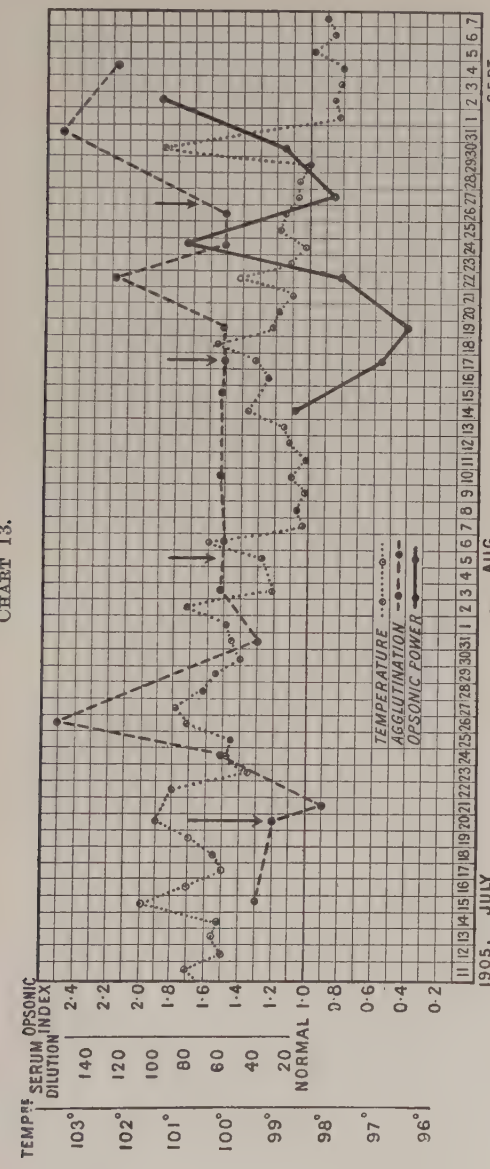
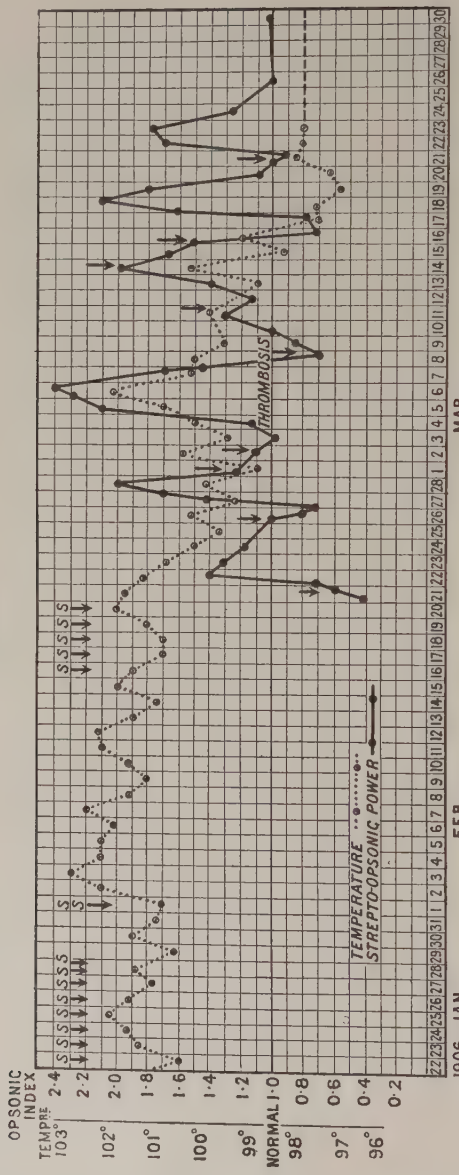


CHART 13.

refers in each case to the untreated condition of the patient, and of the whole of the Charts 16 and 19, shows that the spontaneous immunising

responses which are so salient a feature in connexion with Charts 7 and 8 and 11 and 12 here make default. In view of this fact—and it is a fact

CHART 14.


OPSONIC INDEX
TEMPRE 103°
102°
101°
100°
99°
98°
97°
96°
NORMAL 1·0
2·4
2·2
2·0
1·8
1·6
1·4
1·2
0·8
0·6
0·4
0·2
S S S

made in each of the cases which are charted below a methodical attempt to evoke the required immunising responses by the subcutaneous inoculation of bacterial vaccines.

Chart 13 applies to a case of Malta fever which had been running the lingering course which is characteristic of so many cases of this disease. As is the rule in such lingering cases, the patient's serum was found to possess only a very moderate agglutinating power—agglutination effects being incompletely developed in all dilutions above 1 in 40. This being the situation of affairs, a series of inoculations of a vaccine made from a sterilized culture of the micrococcous Melitensis was undertaken, the effect of these being watched by blood examinations and temperature observations.[1]

In connexion with the first two inoculations the examination of the blood was confined to the measurement of the agglutinating power. In the case of the last two inoculations—when the difficulties in connexion with the opsonic technique as applied to the micrococcus Melitensis had been successfully overcome—examinations of the opsonic power were added. The chart shows that an increase of the bacteriotropic substances of the blood was obtained by vaccine-therapy, and that this went hand-in-hand with a decline of the temperature—this last remaining permanently normal after the date at which the chart ends.

Interesting also is the fact that, as might have been expected, the temperature rises in the negative phase when the bacterial substances which have been injected are no doubt circulating in the blood.

Finally, it is to be noted that there is a general agreement between the rise and fall of the agglutinating power and the rise and fall of the opsonic power.

Chart 14.—The details of the case to which this chart applies have already been published in *The Lancet*[2] by Sir James Barr and Dr. Blair Bell conjointly with one of ourselves. It will suffice in elucidation of the curve here published to rehearse the more interesting features of the case.

The patient, a young woman, was taken ill some three or four weeks before the date at which the chart commences with an acute sore-throat, accompanied by high fever. In association with the condition in the throat an acute swelling developed in the side of the neck. In connexion with this the question of incision was considered. Before this could be carried out the temperature, which had been very high and continuous, became lower and remittent, and the swelling rapidly disappeared. A cardiac murmur now developed and the case assumed all the characters of an infective endocarditis. Treatment by "antistreptococcic" serum was now resorted to by Sir James Barr and Dr. Blair Bell, and

[1] It is to be noted that the temperatures which are recorded in this and the subsequent charts are in each case average temperatures representing the mean of all the observations which were made in the course of the twenty-four hours.

[2] *The Lancet*, February 23, 1907, p. 499.

was persisted in daily on eight successive days, as indicated on the chart, without any lowering of the temperature. After several attempts to obtain a culture from the blood had proved abortive a

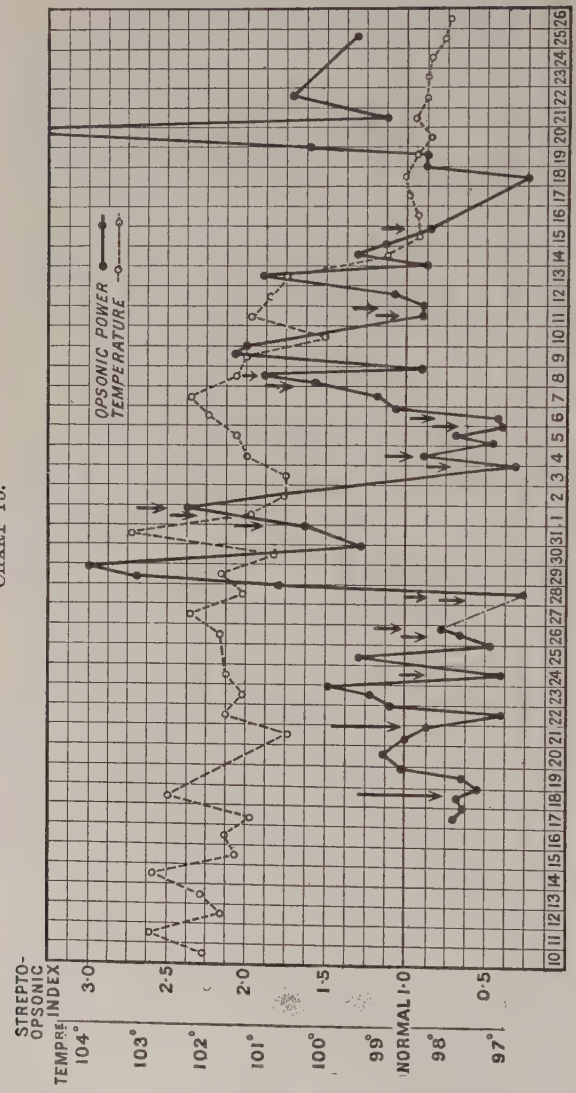


Chart 15.

culture of streptococcus was on February 12 obtained. Following upon this finding, "anti-streptococcic" serum was again resorted to by Sir James Barr and Dr. Blair Bell. On February 21, the day following the last of the second series of serum injections, two measurements

of the patient's opsonic power were made with a culture of the streptococcus derived from the blood of February 12. It will be noted that in spite of the fact that large quantities of "antistreptococcic" serum had been administered the patient's opsonic index proved to be very low. Vaccine-therapy was now resorted to, a vaccine made from cultures of the patient's streptococcus being employed in doses of from 5,000,000 to 12,500,000. The favourable result of this treatment can be appreciated on noting in the chart how the inoculations were followed by very striking immunising responses, and how in association with the increase in the opsonic power the temperature rapidly declined[1] until within little more than three weeks after the first inoculation it came down to, and remained permanently at, the normal level, the patient making an uninterrupted recovery without any subsequent relapse.

Chart 15.—The patient to whom Chart 15 applies was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital early in May, 1906, with phlegmonous abscesses and a high temperature. Soon after admission her condition became extremely critical, new abscesses developing in different parts of the body and her temperature ranging very high. Cultivations made from the blood remained sterile, but streptococci were recovered in pure culture from the abscesses. The patient's strepto-opsonic power as tested with these cultures ranging between 0·6 and 0·7, it was decided to see whether anything could be done for the patient by the inoculation of a vaccine which had been prepared from her streptococcus. The effects which were obtained by this means and the relation in which the patient's temperature stood to the opsonic power of the blood, can be followed upon the chart.

A study of the chart will suggest that the low opsonic power recorded on May 17 stood in relation with the high temperature of the 18th; that the rise of the opsonic power on the 20th stood in relation to the decline of the temperature on the 21st; that in a similar manner the low opsonic reading of the 22nd stood in relation to the rise of temperature that day; the rise of the opsonic power on the 29th to the lower temperature of the 30th; the low opsonic reading of the 31st to the higher temperature of June 1; the high opsonic reading of June 1 to the decline of temperature on the next two days; the low opsonic readings of the 4th, 5th, and 6th to the rise of temperature of those days; the high opsonic readings of the 8th and 9th, with the lower temperature of the 10th; again, the low opsonic readings of the 11th and 12th, with the high temperature of those days; and, lastly, the high readings of the 13th and 14th, with the defervescence which took place on those days.

[1] It is of incidental interest in connexion with this case that a thrombosis which developed in the left iliac vein in the course of the treatment, sending up the temperature in the manner shown in the chart, was very rapidly and effectually dissipated by the administration of large doses of citric acid, as recommended by one of us. ("A Note on the Causation and Treatment of Thrombosis occurring in Connexion with Typhoid Fever." (*The Lancet*, December 6, 1902, p. 1531.)

And there is more than this. The record of the new abscesses which developed after the patient came under our observation shows that

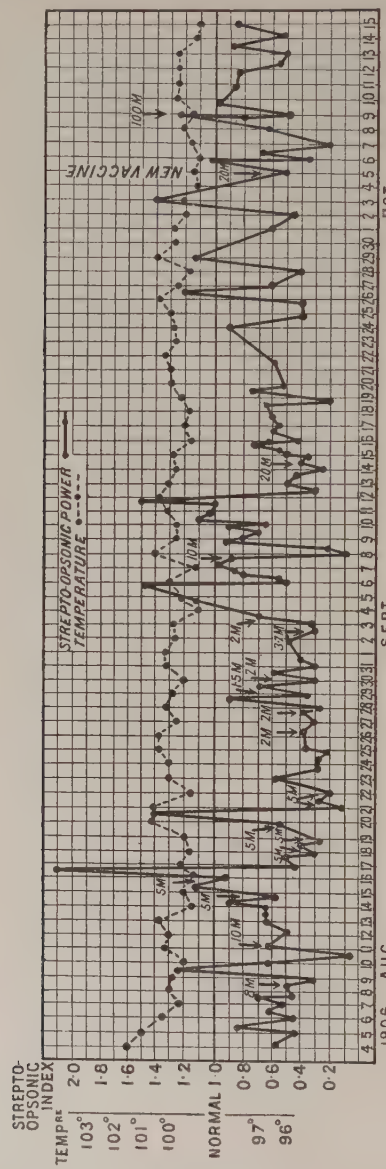


CHART 16.

these developed on May 17th, 18th, 20th, 26th, 31st, and June 13th respectively. It will be seen on consulting the chart that May 17th, 18th, 26th, and 31st were all days on which low readings were

obtained, and that May 20 and June 13 were both days which followed immediately upon days when low opsonic readings were obtained. It would on general grounds seem to us very probable that days when the citadel of the blood is not firmly held against bacterial invasion would be likely to be days in which bacteria could be conveyed unharmed from place to place by the channel of the circulation.

We have only to add with respect to this case that after the defervescence of June 13th and 14th the temperature never rose again, the patient leaving hospital early in July in a very satisfactory condition.

Chart 16 refers to a patient, aged about thirty-five years, who was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital on July 31, 1906, with symptoms of cerebral embolism, pyrexia, and systolic murmur. The history which was obtained was to the effect that while engaged in her ordinary work twelve weeks previously the patient had been suddenly seized with facial paralysis and complete hemianaesthesia. A culture of streptococcus having been obtained from the blood and nine successive measurements of the patient's strepto-opsonic index having shown that she was not making any spontaneous immunising response, vaccine-therapy was resorted to. The vaccine was, of course, made from the patient's streptococcus. In spite of the fact that an almost lavish amount of labour was expended upon this case ; in spite of the fact that we reached high and reached low to find an effective dose of our vaccine ; in spite of the fact that we essayed with small doses frequently repeated and with large doses spaced far apart ; in spite of the fact that we went over the ground a second time and made fresh cultures from the blood, recovering again a streptococcus, and prepared a new vaccine,—in spite of all this, and in spite of the fact that the patient was when we commenced relatively speaking strong and vigorous, all our efforts to elicit immunising responses were as good as unsuccessful, the opsonic power of the blood remaining almost continuously below the normal line. The clinical event was in conformity with this. The patient, becoming gradually weaker, went home and died within a week after the date upon which our chart terminates.

When we compare this case and the case to whom Chart 15 refers, and when we remember that that patient, though enfeebled and almost moribund, made vigorous immunising response and recovered, while this patient, though comparatively vigorous and strong, made no such response and succumbed, the importance of immunising response cannot but be very forcibly suggested to us. The lesson that immunising response is an all-important factor in recovery will be seen to be the lesson which is taught by all our cases.

Chart 17 refers to another case of streptococcal endocarditis. The patient, a man aged over fifty years, had at the date at which the chart begins already undergone three months' continuous fever associated with progressive aortic mischief and cardiac dilatation. A culture of streptococcus was obtained from his blood and vaccine-therapy was embarked upon. The chart shows that the patient immediately responded

with an increase in his opsonic power, but that for a whole month no effect was produced upon his temperature. During that month the cardiac dilatation was making steady progress, and towards the end it became clear that the cardiac muscle was on the point of giving out. Finally, and it would seem in association with the immunising response to the last

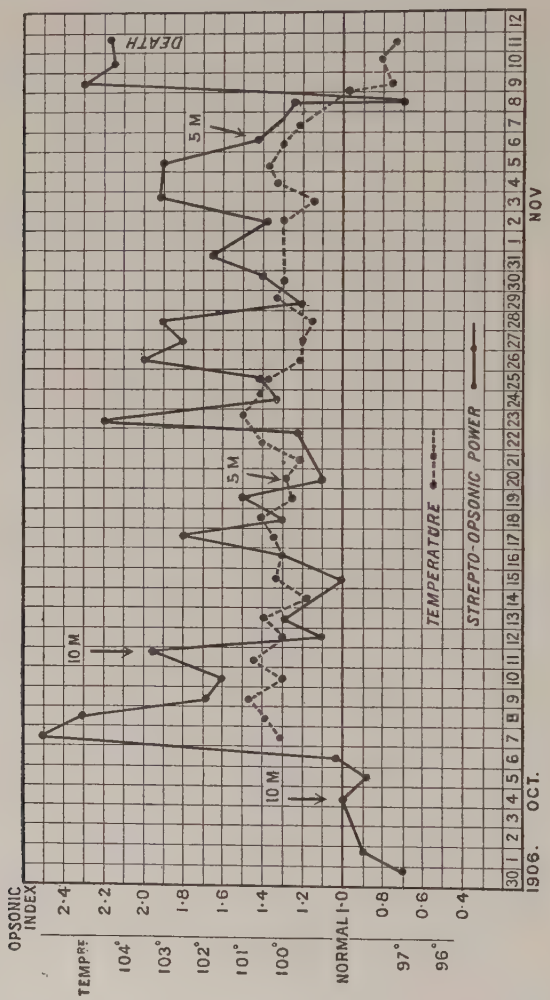


CHART 17.

noculation, the temperature became, first, normal, and, then, subnormal. At this point death stepped in and terminated the scene.

It would seem to us that the lesson of Chart 12—the lesson that death may supervene in bacterial infections independently of any breakdown in the machinery of immunisation—is here strikingly corroborated.

Chart 18 relates to a patient, aged twenty-five years, who was sent up to St. Mary's Hospital for inoculation treatment from Winchester Hospital.

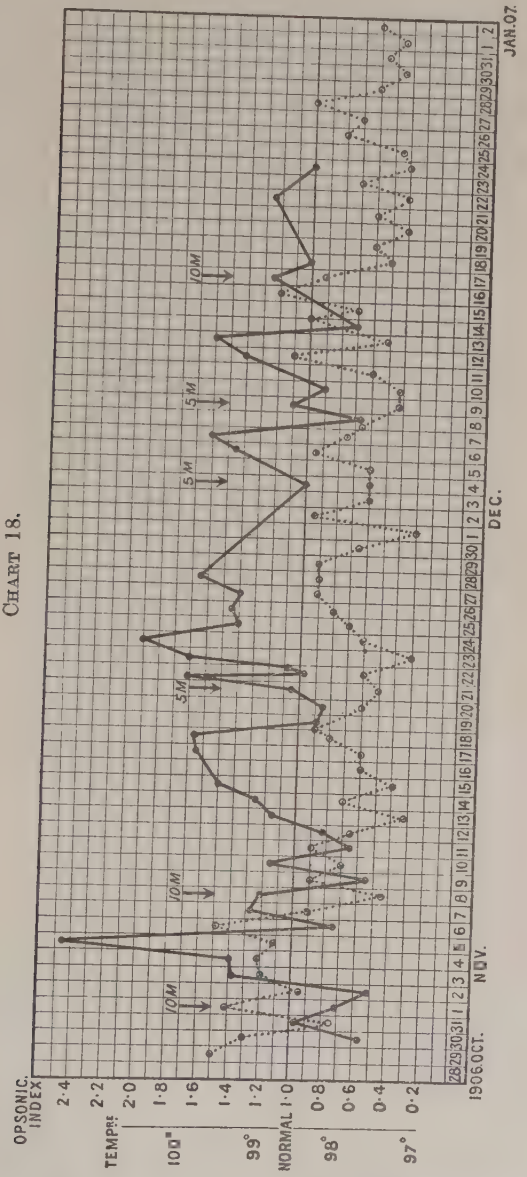


CHART 18.

A culture of staphylococcus had there been obtained from her blood. She had a history of eight months' occasional pyrexia and of pulmonary

infraction and cerebral embolism arising in connexion with obvious mitral disease. On September 27, 1906, the day after the patient had been admitted to St. Mary's Hospital, cultures were made from the blood, with a

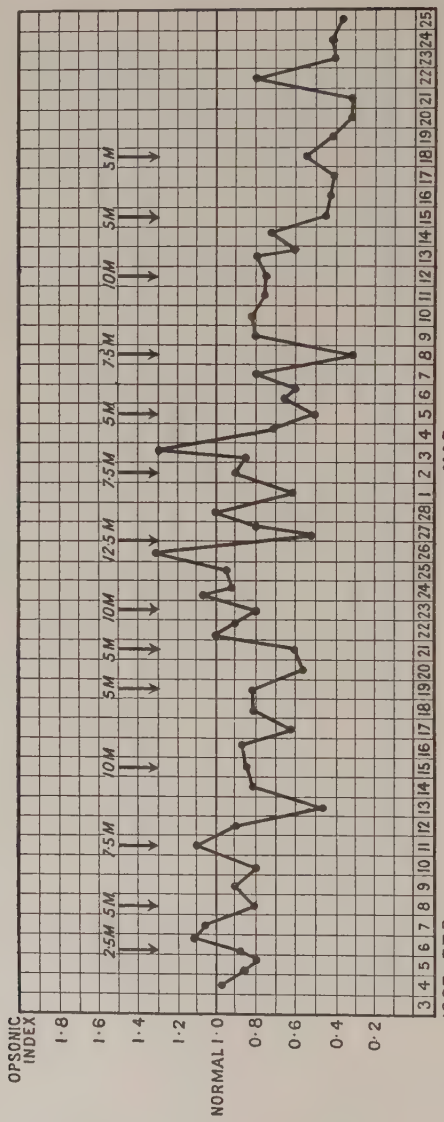


CHART 19.

negative result. None the less, in view of the bacteriological findings at Winchester Hospital, and the fact that her index was fluctuating to staphylococcus, it was thought well to inoculate with staphylococcic

vaccine. On October 17 she was injected with a small dose of the vaccine which we were employing in the treatment of ordinary staphylococcal infections. On October 27, during an exacerbation of her pyrexia, cultures were again made from the blood. These revealed the presence of a staphylococcus which possessed in several respects quite aberrant characters. A vaccine having been prepared from this staphylococcus the inoculations were resumed with the result that the patient's temperature soon became normal and remained permanently normal after the date at which the chart ends.

As will be seen on reference to the chart, the inoculations elicited in this case on the whole quite satisfactory immunising responses, the patient's staphylo-opsonic index maintaining itself almost constantly above the normal line.

Chart 19.—The patient to whom this chart refers was a man aged thirty years, who had many years before developed a mitral lesion after an attack of "rheumatic fever." Commencing insidiously with pyrexia and weakness the septicaemic attack which is here in question gradually unmasked itself as ulcerative endocarditis, the cardiac symptoms developing first in connexion with the mitral valve and afterwards involving the aortic valves. After repeated unsuccessful attempts a small diplococcal streptococcus was cultivated from the blood early in February. A vaccine having been prepared from this, inoculation treatment controlled by daily measurements of the opsonic index was embarked upon. It was soon recognized that the patient made no satisfactory immunising response to small doses, and that larger doses produced constitutional disturbance associated with pronounced negative phases. None the less, after some three weeks' treatment, a certain amount of improvement made itself manifest, and some slight hope was entertained for the patient. These hopes, however, proved illusory, immunising response to inoculation was conspicuous by its absence, and a steady downward tendency made itself manifest both in the opsonic power and in the patient's condition. Vaccine-therapy was accordingly abandoned and soon after the date at which the chart terminates the patient succumbed.

It is again very clearly brought out by the history of this case that where inoculation fails to evoke immunising response it is entirely useless.

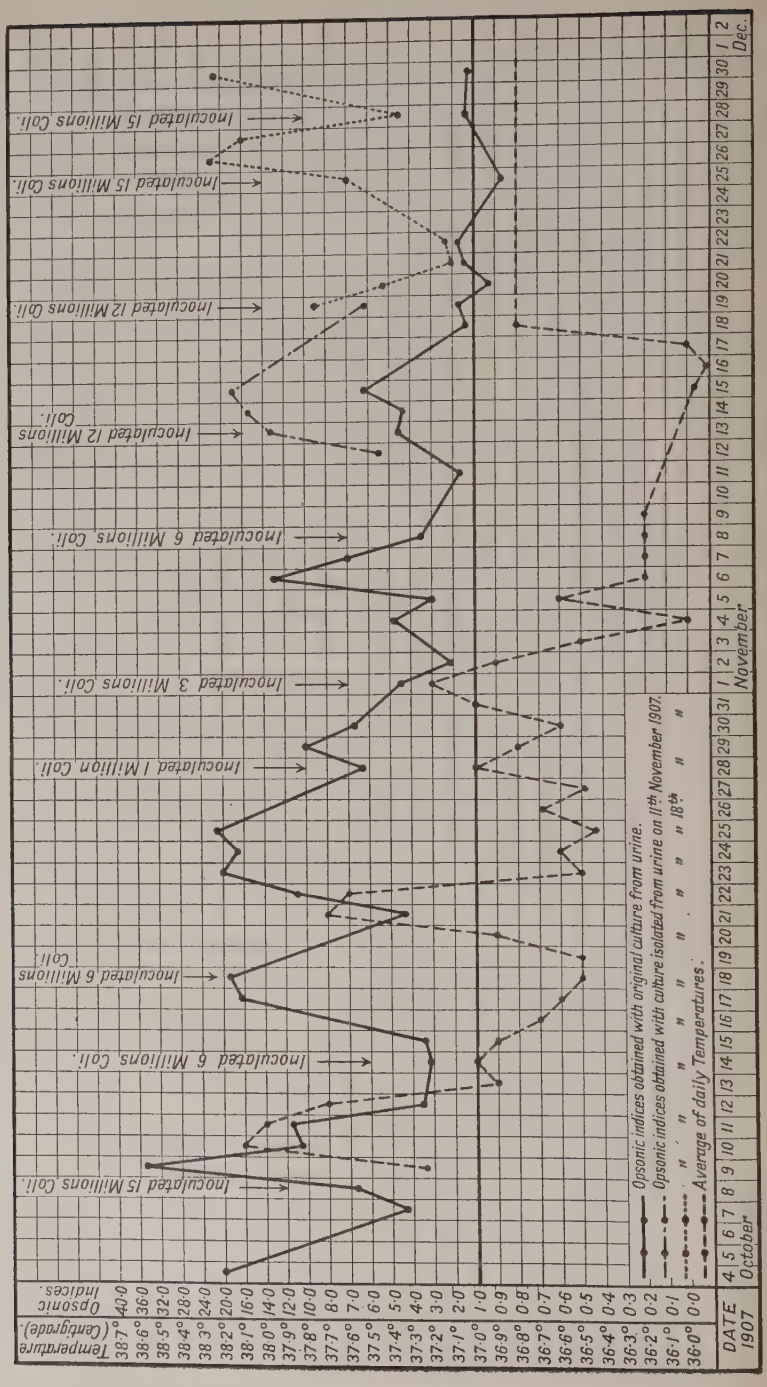
Chart 20 refers to an old gentleman who had been suffering for years from coli-cystitis and enlargement of the prostate, and who had long been unable to pass urine without recourse to the catheter.

For many months previous to the date at which the curve begins he had suffered from attacks of fever recurring at intervals of one to two or three weeks. These were rapidly reducing his strength, and produced great discomfort, owing to the necessity for very frequent recourse to the catheter.

He had long been treated unavailingly with urinary antiseptics and by daily washings of his bladder.

When proceeding to London for treatment by vaccine-therapy he

CHART 20.


Temperature (Centigrade).
Opsonic Indices.
Inoculated 15 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 6 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 6 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 1 Million Coli.
Inoculated 3 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 6 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 12 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 12 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 15 Millions Coli.
Inoculated 15 Millions Coli.
Opsonic indices obtained with original culture from urine.
Opsonic indices obtained with culture isolated from urine on 11th November 1907.
" " " " " " " " 18th " "
Average of daily Temperatures.
DATE 1907
October
November
Dec.

was, while travelling, attacked with fever, but managed to complete his journey. On arrival a pure cultivation of the bacillus coli was obtained from his urine, and on the next day his opsonic power to this microbe was measured. As shown in the chart it came out at 20·0.

This high opsonic index may, we think, be ascribed to an auto-immunisation elicited by the auto-inoculation which produced the rise of temperature.

In view of the high reading which had been obtained inoculation was postponed until it should be found that the effect of this immunising response had passed off. A commencement was then made with a dose of vaccine corresponding to 15 millions of the patient's coli bacillus. Inasmuch as some constitutional disturbance and increased irritability of the bladder supervened upon this inoculation, a reduced dose of 6 millions was employed for the next inoculation. When as a result of this dose the index had been raised to 36·0 and the temperature had become sub-normal, we endeavoured by a repetition of this dose to cumulate in the direction of the positive phase. Instead of this the index fell away, and in association with this the patient again developed bladder irritability and a pyrexial temperature. This last made way for a sub-normal temperature as the positive phase of the immunising response supervened, the irritability of the bladder at the same time quieting down.

With a view to avoiding everything in the nature of constitutional reaction the dose of vaccine was on the next occasion cut down to 1 million. This resulting in nothing more than a very brief rise in the opsonic index and a correspondingly brief lowering of the temperature, followed by a gradual decline of the opsonic index, and a corresponding increase of temperature, a further dose of 3 millions was administered on November 1. This produced a very distinct effect in lowering the temperature, but the opsonic index did not rise beyond 13·0.

All this time very marked progress was being made, the irritability of the bladder had quite disappeared, the catheter was employed only four times in the twenty-four hours, the patient was intellectually and physically more alert and was putting on flesh, and was quite losing the worn and anæmic appearance which he had originally presented. Furthermore the urine, which had been turbid with microbes, showed in a very characteristic way the phenomenon of agglutination, the microbes agglomerating into clumps large enough to be visible to the naked eye, and these as they rapidly settled down to the bottom of the urine glass left the whole upper portion of the urine absolutely water-clear.

On November 8 a further dose of 6 millions was inoculated without producing any visible rise in the index. On November 13, a further dose of 12 millions was administered producing only a trifling rise in the index. On November 19 another dose of 12 millions was administered without apparent effect on the index, and again on November 25 and

28, doses of 15 millions were administered without any effect on the index being registered.

All this time, in spite of the fact that the index was coming down lower and lower, and in spite of the fact that the inoculations were doing nothing to raise it, the patient was making wonderful progress, gaining strength daily.

It was obviously impossible to refrain from seeking an explanation of these paradoxical findings. It occurred to us that the microbe we were working with might be changing in the course of artificial cultivation, and might be becoming less and less resistant to the opsonic effect of the normal control serum, and accordingly that the apparent sinking[1] away of the opsonic indices might quite well be due not to a diminution in the numerator but to an increase in the denominator in the fraction $\frac{\textit{phagocytic count of the patient's blood}}{\textit{phagocytic count of the normal blood}}$ which gives us the opsonic index.

With a view to putting this hypothesis to the test we cultivated the bacillus coli afresh from the patient's urine on November 11 and again on November 18, and while the patient remained under observation measured his opsonic power daily with respect to the original microbe and freshly isolated microbe, obtaining the results which are shown on the chart.

We may note, in conclusion, that since the patient returned home he has periodically been injected with small doses of coli vaccine, and he is reported to have remained marvellously well in every respect.

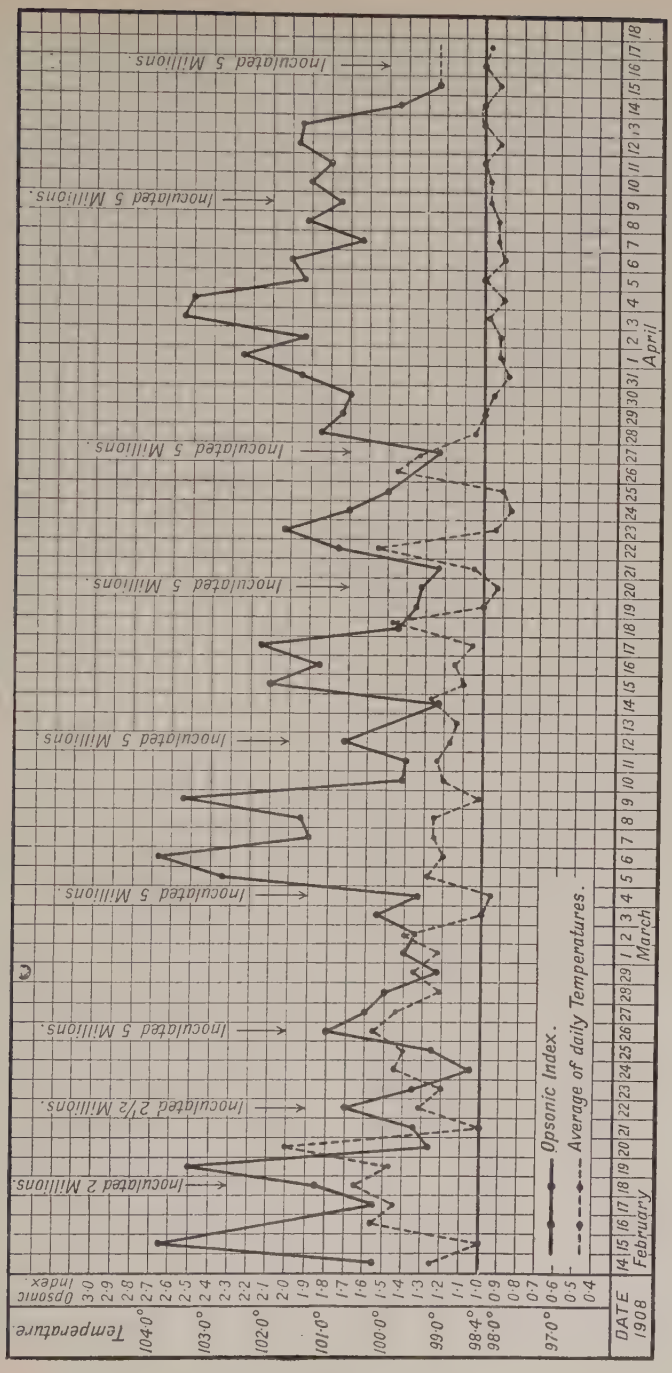
Chart 21 refers to a girl aged 22, who when seen by her physician on December 12, 1907, was found to be suffering from dilatation of the heart and a loud systolic murmur. (Two and a half years previously he had ascertained that she had a reduplicated second sound at the mitral area.) The patient stated that she had developed "influenza" in November, and that she had not been able to shake it off. A provisional diagnosis of "ulcerative endocarditis, probably of influenzal origin," was arrived at.

The patient was sent to bed. It was then found that she was suffering from an intermittent pyrexia. During December there were days when the temperature reached 102° and 103° F., and then the temperature came down almost to the normal for several days in succession. Early in January, 1908, the condition became more serious, with excruciating and continuous pains in the back and legs which necessitated recourse to injections of morphia.

On January 11, after intense and long-continued pain at the inner

[1] With a view to avoiding a possible source of error from this cause, experiments are now in progress with a view to seeing whether one and the same formalinized bacterial suspension may not be employed where, as here, a prolonged series of tests are made with a microbe which undergoes attenuation on artificial media.

CHART 21.


Temperature.
Opsonic Index.
DATE 1908
February
March
April
Opsonic Index.
Average of daily Temperatures.
Inoculated 2 Millions.
Inoculated 2½ Millions.
Inoculated 5 Millions.

side of the right ankle, an abscess developed here. The pus was sent for bacteriological examination and a negative report was received.

On January 12 there was a distinct rigor and the temperature ran up to 105° F. On this occasion, as on a previous occasion, in December when the temperature ran up to 103° blood was drawn off from a vein in the arm by her medical attendant. On both these occasions the blood cultures were reported as sterile.

The patient's condition had now become extremely critical. There were frequent rigors and profuse sweating, a very dilated heart, a rapid pulse and a prolonged systolic murmur. Recourse was now had to hypodermic and rectal injections of "anti-streptococcus" serum. These were continued for ten days without any sensible effect on the temperature.

On January 18, after intense pain which had continued for days, a small abscess developed on the left shin. Pus from this was sent for bacteriological examination, and a report was received to the effect that "a micro-organism resembling a pneumococcus" had been isolated, but that the cultures had died out.

In consequence of this report the "antistreptococcus" serum injections were abandoned, and injections of "antipneumococcus" serum and a pneumococcus vaccine were resorted to. On January 19, after severe headache which had continued for days, an abscess about two centimetres in diameter developed on the forehead at the margin of the hair. This turned black and sloughed, leaving a clean cut ulcer which healed very imperfectly.

On February 6 a new abscess developed on the right hand over the fifth metacarpal bone. A specimen of the discharge from this abscess, and a few days later another sample of the same, were sent to one of us (A. E. W.) for examination. The specimen consisted in each case of a blood-stained transparent gelatinous fluid which showed under the microscope no micro-organisms and no formed elements, except here and there the remnants of a broken down leucocyte.

Cultures which were made from the first specimen yielded only an isolated colony, in the case of the second sample only a very scanty growth. In the course of the study of this micro-organism it occurred to one of us (J. H. W.) that we might be dealing with the bacillus of glanders. This was afterwards confirmed when a brown growth was obtained on potato, and when a typical inflammation of the tunica vaginalis was produced in a male guinea-pig by intraperitoneal inoculation of the culture.

The fact that the patient's blood, a sample of which had been obtained for the purposes of the test, gave an opsonic reading of 1·6 rising next day to 2·65 made it practically certain that the micro-organism that had been isolated was the infective micro-organism which we were seeking.

On February 14 one of us (A. E. W.) went down to the country to see the patient. She was found in a very feeble and extremely emaciated condition, with a very loud presystolic murmur and an apex beat well

outside the nipple line. The wounds in the ankle and hand were found to have healed by first intention, but there was some diffuse oedema on the ulnar border of the dorsum of hand, such as might have suggested tubercular disease. The wound on the shin and the ulcer upon the forehead were imperfectly scabbed over, and below the latter were a couple of indurated nodules, which, were it not for the other features of the case, might have been taken for acne indurata. Inquiry was now made into the possibility of infection from horses, and it was elicited that the patient's pony had had "an influenza-like cold with a running at the nose." The pony, which was one of three, was inspected, and was found to have a thin nasal discharge, and it was arranged that all the three ponies should be tested with mallein. Of the three one gave a definite mallein reaction, and was shot, and was on post-mortem examination found to be suffering from glanders. The suspected pony did not on this occasion give the mallein reaction, but subsequently developed definite signs of glanders, and was then shot.

A diagnosis of glanders having been established, a vaccine was made from the culture which had been isolated from the patient, and vaccine-therapy was begun on February 18, the opsonic power of the blood being measured daily. The details of the inoculations and of the malleo-opsonic readings are shown upon the chart in association with the temperature curve which was obtained by taking the mean of the six daily thermometrical readings.

On March 3 the temperature, which had during the two previous months only rarely touched the normal, remained at the normal for a whole day. Since March 28 the evening temperature has not risen above 99 F. and since April 1 the patient's progress has been very rapid, the heart rate coming down to normal, the dilatation disappearing, and the patient putting on flesh rapidly, finally leaving for the seaside on May 11 to all appearance perfectly well.

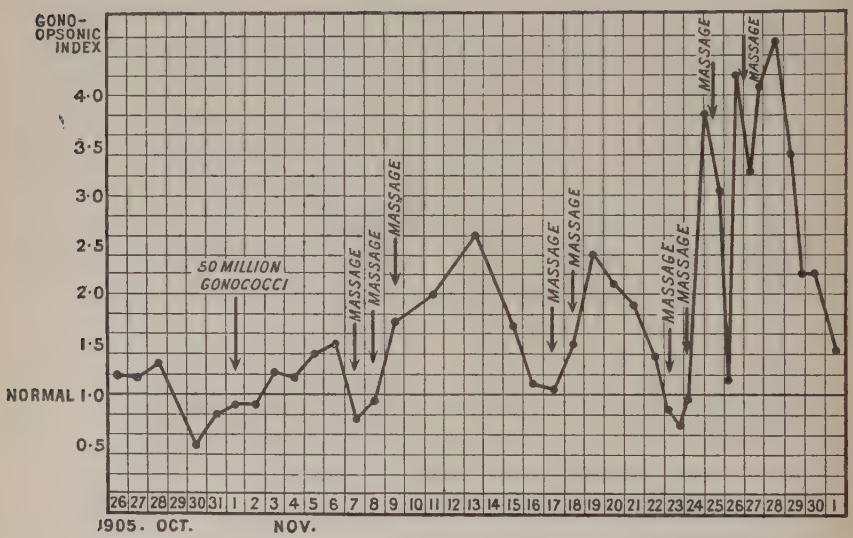
While recovery seems complete, there is reason to think that the glanders bacillus may not yet have been completely extirpated. Since the date on which vaccine-therapy was begun there have been the following evidences of the continued presence of the microbe in the system. On February 29 two small abscesses developed in the right axilla. After incision these healed by first intention. On April 3 the scar on the forehead broke down, and an abscess which had formed under it was incised and evacuated. On April 23 signs of activity manifested themselves in the scar on the left shin, and on May 9 a small amount of the same blood-stained gelatinous fluid as had been obtained from the other abscesses was evacuated. The observations of the malleo-opsonic power of the blood are still being continued.[1]

[1] At date of going to press (Oct. 1st, 1908), the patient is in perfect health. For the clinical notes relating to this case we are indebted to Dr. Hathaway, who was throughout in charge of the case, and who proposes later to publish a full account of the case in conjunction with one of us (J. H. W.).

VII.—Charts illustrating the fact that Auto-inoculation Effects are obtained where Active or Passive Movements are undertaken in connexion with Localized Bacterial Infections.

Chart 22 brings before the eye the result of the experiment which initiated our study of *induced auto-inoculations*. The chart relates to a case of gonococcal polyarthritis which was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital towards the end of October, 1905. As appears on the chart, vaccine-therapy was here embarked upon, a dose of gonococcal vaccine corresponding to 50,000,000 gonococci being administered on November 1.

Chart 22.



Six days afterwards, when it was proposed to administer a second dose of vaccine, it was found that the patient's knee had been massaged on the previous evening. In connexion with this the patient complained that while the massage itself had not been painful he had suffered six hours afterwards from constitutional reaction and from an aggravation of all his joint troubles quite similar to that which he had experienced a few hours after the gonococcal vaccine had been inoculated. The massage had, he said, "played him up cruel." Dr. Freeman, immediately recognizing that a negative phase effect due to massage might here be in question, thereupon desisted from his intended injection of vaccine, and took steps to investigate in a sytematic manner the effects of massage. The chart very plainly tells the history of his experiment. It is of fundamental significance to note, in the first place, that in association with the ample immunising responses which are recorded upon the chart the condition of the patient's joints improved with rapid

strides, and, in the second place, that although massage was confined to the knees and ankles such joints in the upper extremities as were affected improved *pari passu* with the joints in the lower extremities.

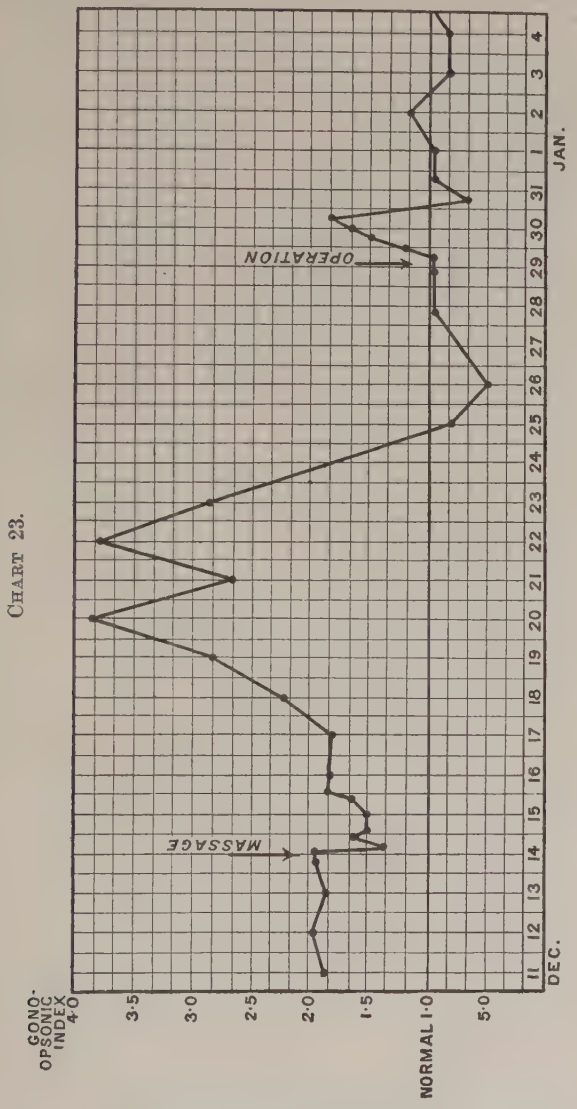


CHART 23.

The inference that this last result was attributable to therapeutic immunisation is borne out by the fact that quite similar effects on remote regions of the body come under observation in connexion with another method of therapeutic immunisation, to wit, with Bier's method

of passive congestion. (*Vide* in connexion with this commentary to Chart 43.)

Chart 23 has reference to a case admitted to St. Mary's Hospital for recurrent arthritis of the right knee which had supervened upon a gonorrhoea contracted some twelve years previously. The patient's gonopsonic index was tested on five occasions, readings of 1·8 to 2 being on these occasions obtained. Although this of itself afforded strong presumptive proof of gonococcal infection, it was thought desirable before going further to make the diagnosis certain. With this view massage was prescribed. The operator who was employed was an enthusiast. After he had emptied the knee by his manipulations he expressed himself as satisfied that he had effected a cure. Fourteen hours later the left knee, which during the previous six months had been giving no trouble, began to swell and to become painful. This supervened in association with a fall in the gonopsonic index and, possibly, as a consequence of a dissemination of living gonococci by the channel of the blood. Within twenty-four hours the left ankle also began to be painful, and, during the three subsequent days, the swelling increased in both joints; then, coincidently with the rapid rise in the opsonic curve which is shown in the chart, the swelling in both joints rapidly decreased. On December 29, when both knees were quite free from effusion, the right knee was opened up with a view to the removal of synovial fringes which interfered with the movements of the joint. An auto-inoculation effect, similar to those which will be considered in a subsequent section of this paper, followed upon this operation.

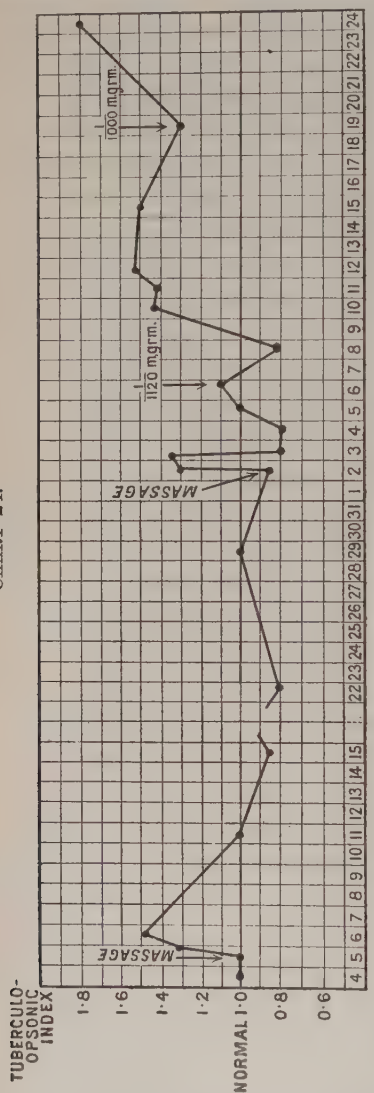


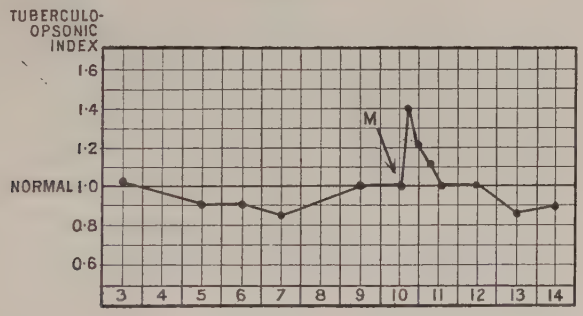
CHART 24.

Chart 24 has reference to a patient, aged twelve years, who was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital with an arthritis of the knee which was

suspected to be of tuberculous origin. After the patient's tuberculo-opsonic power had been measured on two successive days, and had been found to be on each occasion normal, gentle massage was applied to the knee for half an hour. The result was to raise the boy's tuberculo-opsonic power from 1 to 1·5. About one month later, the knee having in the meanwhile been in plaster, gentle massage was again applied, with a somewhat similar result. Treatment by tubercle vaccine was now embarked upon. The effect which was produced upon the patient's blood by the first two inoculations is shown in the chart.

Chart 25 has reference to a patient who came to us for treatment with enormous masses of glands on both sides of the neck, and, further, glands in both groins. The patient had previously undergone six successive extirpation operations at the Middlesex Hospital. On one of these occasions the glands were microscopically examined and were pronounced to be tuberculous. After tuberculin treatment had been carried out by us for many months without appreciable improvement, it was resolved

CHART 25.

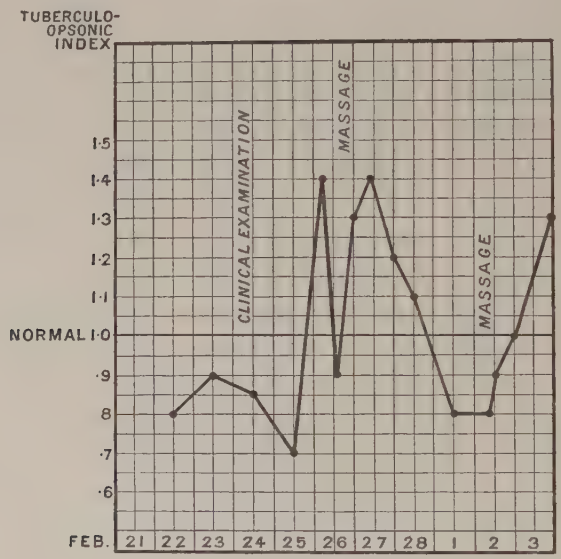


to test the diagnosis by massaging the glands. With a view to this, after an interval of weeks, during which all treatment was suspended, the patient's tuberculo-opsonic power was measured on six successive occasions, with the results shown in the chart. The glands in the neck were then gently massaged. Three hours after this the patient's opsonic index had risen from 1 to 1·4, falling then by stages to 1·3, 1·22, 1·12, and, finally, twenty-four hours after the massage to 1 as at the outset. Encouraged by the positive result of this diagnostic experiment vaccine-therapy with tuberculin was persisted in, with the result that a phenomenal improvement has now taken place in the patient's condition.

Chart 26.—The case to which Chart 26 applies was that of a young woman who came to us for treatment with enormous masses of glands entirely obliterating the outline of the jaw and chin. The patient was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital with a view to determining whether we had here to deal with tuberculous infection. In accordance with our programme, the patient was, previously to massage, to remain in bed

undisturbed for four days, her tuberculo-opsonic index being examined daily. This programme was followed out for three days, blood being drawn off for testing on each morning. It, however, so happened on the afternoon of the third day that the visiting physician selected this patient for a practical clinical demonstration, and that he called upon each member of his class to palpate the patient's glands. The effect of this palpation stands out clearly to view in the chart in the negative

Chart 26.

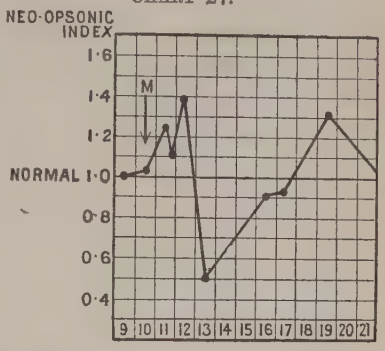


phase of February 25 and the positive phase of the morning of February 26. Quite unconscious of what had happened our part of the programme was followed out, the patient's blood being drawn off for examination on February 25 and again on the morning of February 26. Immediately after this latter sample of blood had been drawn we proceeded to carry out massage. The effect produced by this massage is seen in the chart in the low reading of the afternoon blood of February 26 and the positive phase and the secondary ebb which succeeded it. On March 2, when the blood had returned to its normal equilibrium, massage was again undertaken. In association with this there was again a marked fluctuation in the tuberculo-opsonic index.

Chart 27 relates to one of seventy or more cancer and sarcoma patients whom we have, with a view to the possible relief of some of their symptoms, treated with a vaccine made from that variety of staphylococcus which Doyen has brought into notice under the name of the *micrococcus neoformans*, attributing to it an etiological significance in connexion with tumour

formation. The patient here in question was a woman, aged thirty-four years, who was the subject of an inoperable sarcoma of the upper jaw which projected through the unbroken skin of the cheek in the form of an orange. With a view to determining whether in this case anything could be hoped for from inoculations with a neoformans vaccine—and obviously such advantage cannot be hoped for unless Doyen's microbe is present in the tumour—we here had recourse to massage and obtained the result which is exhibited in the curve. We would here insist, in passing, that there appears to be very little room to doubt, in view not only of experiments like the above, but also in view of the fact that the neo-opsonic index of cancer patients is continually fluctuating, that the so-called micrococcus neoformans finds means to establish itself in a large majority of malignant tumours—the tumour forming in such case, no doubt merely a *locus minimae resistentiae* to invasion by a microbe which may be constantly present on the surface of the body.

Chart 27.



(For further examples of the induction of auto-inoculation by massage and passive movements see Table under Serial Numbers 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 25, 26, 27 and 41.)

Chart 28.

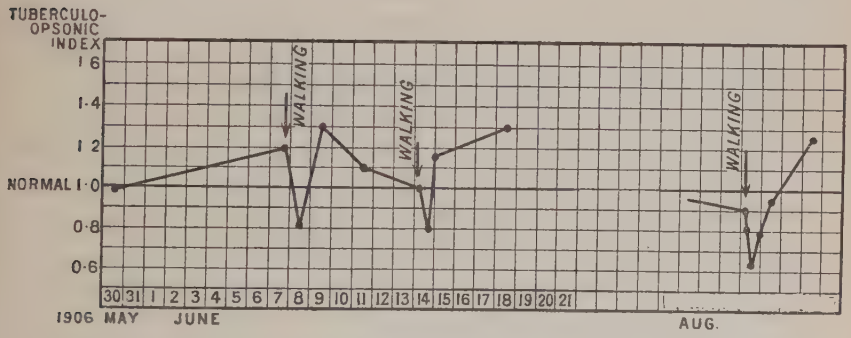


Chart 28 relates to a youth who presented himself for treatment for a small sinus under the inner ankle of the right foot which refused to heal. The patient recounted that four and a half years previously he had pierced his foot with a sharp spicule of bone when he was digging into the ground a cartload of bones obtained from the butcher as manure. The puncture thus made healed up and had broken open again. When this sequence of healing over and breaking open again had repeated itself

several times the patient sought advice at St. Thomas's and afterwards at St. Bartholomew's Hospital. He underwent in these hospitals three successive scraping operations. The foot had also been put up in plaster, and had been kept at rest upon a peg leg. The patient stated that he had not had his foot to the ground for eighteen months. The patient's tuberculo-opsonic index worked out as 1. He was instructed to return in ten days' time in order that his tuberculo-opsonic index might be tested before and after walking on the foot. We hoped by this means to learn whether the presumably tuberculous focus of infection in his foot was extinct or aglow. Owing to a want of precision in our instructions the patient anticipated our wishes and discarded his peg leg when he had come within a short distance of the hospital and came hobbling into the laboratory. After withdrawing a sample of blood we set him to pace the hospital corridor for a matter of twenty minutes or more. Another sample of blood was then withdrawn, and the patient resumed his peg leg. The readings which we obtained with these samples and with those obtained the next day and again two days after will be seen in the chart. They furnished to us presumptive evidence of the presence of tubercle in the foot. With a view to further testing the diagnosis the peg leg, which had in the meantime been resumed, was on June 14 again discarded and the patient was again set to pace the hospital corridor for twenty minutes. The results of the testings of the samples of blood withdrawn immediately before walking, immediately after walking, and—we think [1]—two to three hours after walking, and again three days later, are displayed in the chart. We see in the results confirmation of the diagnosis of tubercular infection in the foot. Our diagnosis thus made, vaccine-therapy with tuberculin was begun. Six weeks after, when the sinus had to all appearance completely healed, the peg leg was again discarded and the patient was set to walk the hospital corridor again for forty-five minutes. Samples of blood were drawn off for examination immediately before walking, half an hour, two hours, four and three-quarter hours, ten hours, and again twenty-one hours after walking. The results as set forth in the chart admonished us to continue our inoculations. After the treatment had been continued for seven months and again six months later, further tests of the patient's progress were made. The tuberculo-opsonic readings which were obtained on these occasions will be found chronicled in the Table, under Serial Numbers 23 and 24. On both occasions the patient, who had long ago discarded his peg leg, undertook for the purpose of the test very active exercise (quick walking and cycling). The inference arrived at after the last testing—the inference, to wit, that the tubercle focus in the leg was extinct—is apparently confirmed by the fact that the foot has now for months been quite well—the last, and we hope final, incident in its pathological history having been the working out of a sequestrum through the skin without a trace of suppuration.

[1] Our record here fails us.

Chart 29 relates to a youth with a sinus in the heel which was discharging through three minute openings. The successive tuberculo-opsonic readings which are recorded on the chart on August 19 correspond respectively to samples of blood drawn off immediately before walking, immediately after walking, and one hour after walking. There was, in addition to the readings that appear on the chart, also another reading on August 20 which gave a value of 1·1.

CHART 29.

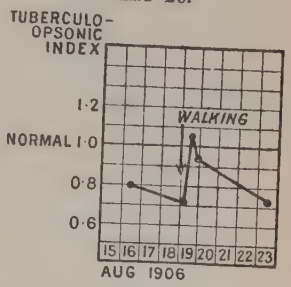
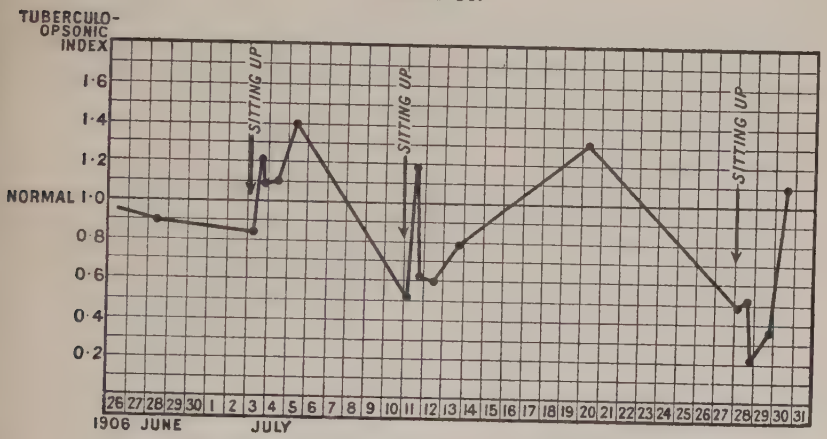


Chart 30 applies to a young medical man with caries of the spine. After very marked improvement in his condition had been achieved by vaccine-therapy the question arose as to whether improvement had gone far enough to allow of his sitting up in bed. The patient was instructed to make the experiment on July 3, withdrawing samples of blood for examination immediately before sitting up, half an hour after sitting up,

CHART 30.



again six hours after, and then on the two following days. Ten days afterwards the experiment was repeated, and it was again repeated after another interval of eighteen days. The results[1] of these tests seeming to us to warrant the inference that the focus of tubercle in the spine was still aglow, we suggested to the patient that it might quite well be prudent,

[1] It will be observed that we have here registered both on July 3 and July 11 an initial rise very similar to that to which attention was drawn in connexion with Chart 1; and we have perhaps in the low initial readings of July 10 and July 18 in each case a secondary ebb such as was illustrated in Charts 1 and 3.

with a view to the avoidance of excessive auto-inoculations, to sit up only at intervals of ten days.

The next two charts disclose the fact that auto-inoculation effects can in cases of pulmonary infection be elicited by respiratory exertions.

CHART 31.

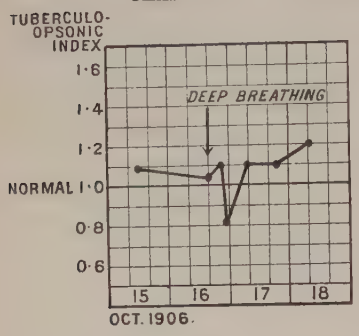


Chart 31 shows the fluctuation in the tuberculo-opsonic index of a comparatively quiescent case of phthisis which was elicited by a series of forty maximal inspirations and expirations.

Chart 32 shows the fluctuations which were obtained in another case of phthisis by a thorough clinical examination of the chest. The patient was in bed at the time of clinical examination and remained in bed during the period of observation. Immediately before the examination his tuberculo-opsonic index—and we may no doubt ascribe this to an antecedent spontaneous auto-inoculation—stood at 1·4, while his staphylo-opsonic index stood at 1. The chart clearly shows that there supervened here upon the deep breathing, coughing, and other respiratory exercises which are associated with auscultation a characteristic negative and positive phase such as is obtained by

CHART 32.

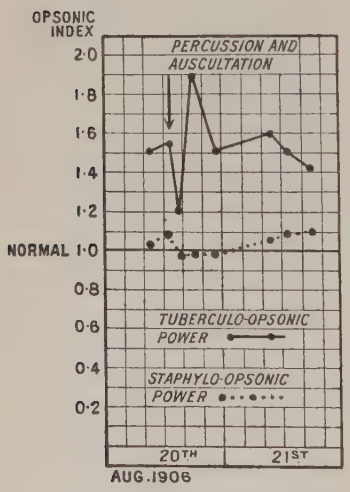
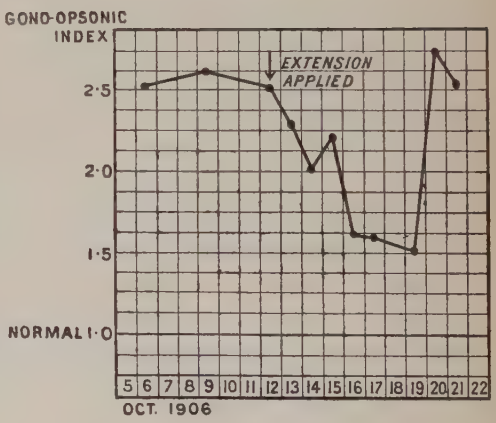


CHART 33.



the inoculation of tuberculin. The patient's staphylo-opsonic index remained, as the chart testifies, throughout unaltered.

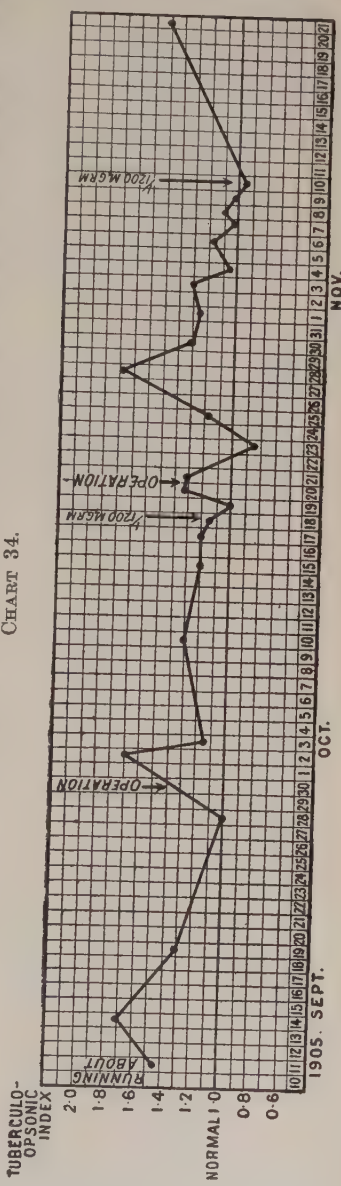
We think that it is of interest to note in connexion with the evidence which is here furnished with respect to the induction of an auto-inoculation

by clinical examination of the chest in phthisis, that the results here obtained are in harmony with the observation that periodical chest examinations may in the case of phthisical patients be followed by constitutional disturbance.

(For further examples of the induction of auto-inoculations by active movements of infected parts see Table under Serial Numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 23, 24, 30, 34 and 35.)

Chart 33 refers to a patient who was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital on October 6, 1906, with gonococcal arthritis, the knee being rigid and flexed. The patient's gono-opsonic index having been measured on October 6 with the result shown upon the chart, a dresser was charged to apply extension. The patient's gono-opsonic index was again measured on the 9th and 12th. As the chart shows, practically the same values were obtained as on the first occasion. On October 12 the surgeon in charge of the case examined the apparatus, found that it was not exerting any pull upon the leg, and proceeded to make the extension effective. Upon this the patient began to complain of general malaise and of pain in other joints. In association with this we registered the fall in the gono-opsonic index which is shown on the chart. External circumstances made it impossible to follow the curve beyond the point at which it here terminates.

CHART 34.



VIII.—Charts showing that Auto-inoculation Effects are Elicited by Operative Interference with Foci of Bacterial Infection.

Chart 34 refers to a child, aged seven years, who was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital with caries of the fibula. Up to the time of admission the child had been running about in the country. Her tuberculo-opsonic index working out at 1·4, we came to the conclusion that the child had tuberculous disease, that she had auto-inoculated herself, that immunisa-

tion was in progress, and that it would be advisable to postpone vaccine-therapy until such time as the child's tuberculo-opsonic index should have returned to the normal. Coming back to the case a few days after the patient's blood had been found to be normal, we found that a scraping operation had two days previously been undertaken, and that the patient's index had risen to 1·7, to fall off again on the next day to 1·15. After watching the progress of events for another fortnight and finding that the patient's index was no longer fluctuating and that the case was not making rapid progress, we proceeded on October 18 to inoculate with tuberculin. On returning to test the result of this inoculation we found that a second scraping operation had been undertaken and that the rise of the opsonic index had been checked. Continuing our measurements of the opsonic index we registered, as will be seen in the curve, a typical negative and positive phase. Finally, when the patient's index had returned to the normal, we resumed our tuberculin inoculations.

CHART 35.

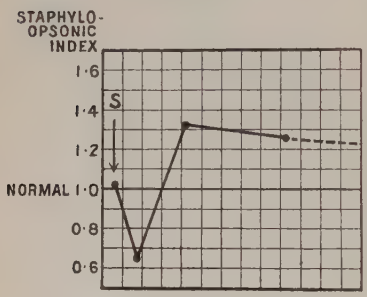


Chart 35 refers to a boy, aged twelve years, who was admitted to St. Mary's Hospital with osteomyelitis. The curve shows the typical negative and positive phase which supervened upon the opening up and scraping of the focus of infection.

Chart 36 refers to a child, aged seven years, with tuberculous disease of the hip, and *Chart* 37 to a child with tuberculous glands on both sides

CHART 36.

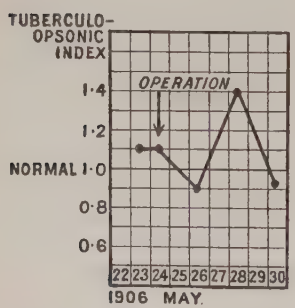
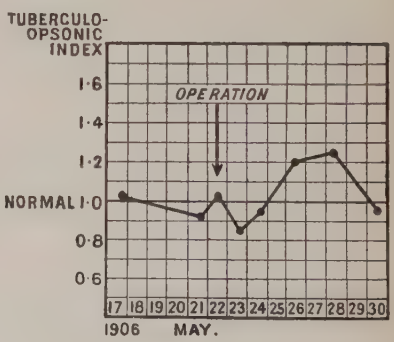


CHART 37.



of the neck. The curves show that in each case a typical fluctuation of the tuberculo-opsonic index supervened upon operation.

IX.—Charts showing that Auto-inoculation Effects are obtained by Active and Passive Hyperaemia affecting Foci of Bacterial Infection.

Chart 38 relates to a patient, a boy, aged sixteen years, who presented himself for treatment with an extensive ulcer on the front of the leg below the knee standing in connexion with carious bone in the head of the tibia. The patient was taken into hospital and his blood was drawn off for examination, once on November 20, twice on the 21st, and again on the 22nd. His tuberculo-opsonic indices worked out for these occasions as 0·78, 0·7, 0·7, and 0·8 respectively. At 3 p.m. on the 22nd, immediately after the sample of blood which gave the reading last mentioned had been withdrawn, a hot poultice was applied to the ulcer. At 4 p.m., when the poultice was removed, the patient's tuberculo-opsonic index stood at 0·87 ; it stood at 6 p.m. at 1·1 ; at 8 p.m. at 1·06 ; and at 10 p.m., at 0·9. On the 23rd, at 2 a.m. it stood at 0·94 ; at 6 a.m. at 1·12 ; at 12 noon at 1·43 ; and at 6 p.m. at 1·35. Finally, on the 24th, the patient's index had reverted to its normal of 0·75.

Manifestly we have here a quite typical auto-inoculation effect produced by bacterial products washed out of the focus of infection by the ampler lymph flow which is obtained by active dilatation of the blood vessels. (Cf. Table, Serial Number 17.)

CHART 38.

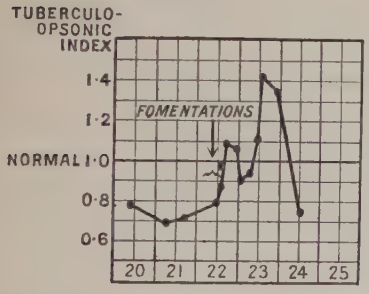
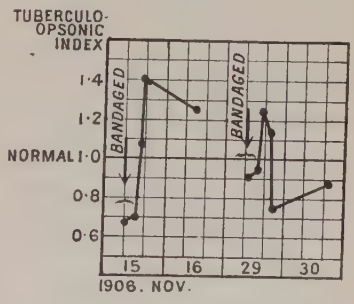


CHART 39.



The series of observations recorded in Charts 39–43 were made by us conjointly with Dr. F. S. Patch, of Montreal. They show that auto-inoculation effects are induced by the passive hyperaemia which is recommended by Bier. Here, as in the case of active hyperaemia, the cause of the blood changes must assuredly be sought in the washing out of bacterial products from the focus of infection by the agency of the accelerated lymph stream.

Chart 39 refers to a young woman who was suffering from extensive lupus of the face and of both elbows. In the first of the two observations which are in question in this chart the bandage was applied to the right upper arm for a period of two hours, and readings of the tuberculo-opsonic index were taken, immediately before applying the bandage,

immediately after the removal of the bandage, again two and four hours afterwards, and finally twenty-four hours afterwards. On the second occasion, some fourteen days later, the bandage was applied round the arm for an hour, readings of the tuberculo-opsonic index being taken immediately before bandaging, half an hour after the bandage had been applied, immediately after the removal of the bandage, one hour after, six hours after, and again twenty-four hours after. A striking clinical amelioration was here obtained from the application of the bandage.

Chart 40 refers to a boy, aged ten years, who was suffering from lupus of the right hand associated with superficial tuberculides in both feet. The bandage was applied round the forearm. On the two occasions on

CHART 40.

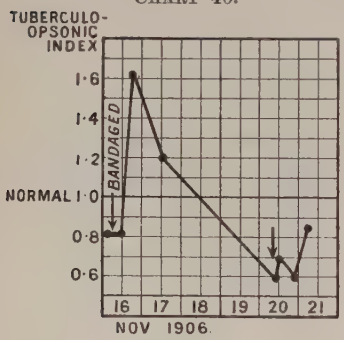
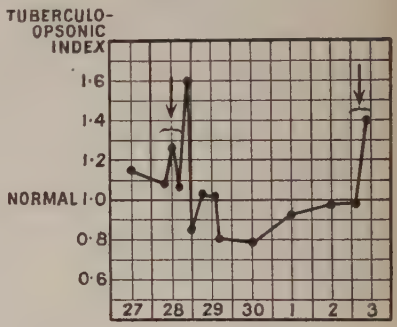


CHART 41.



which it was employed it was applied in each case for one hour, readings of the tuberculo-opsonic power being taken immediately before bandaging, immediately after bandaging, and again eight and twenty-four hours after bandaging.

Of incidental interest in connexion with this chart is, first, the fact that we have here an example of the secondary ebb to which attention was directed at the outset of this paper, and further, the fact that a disproportionately small result, as compared with that obtained on the first occasion, was here registered in association with the second application of the bandage.

CHART 42.

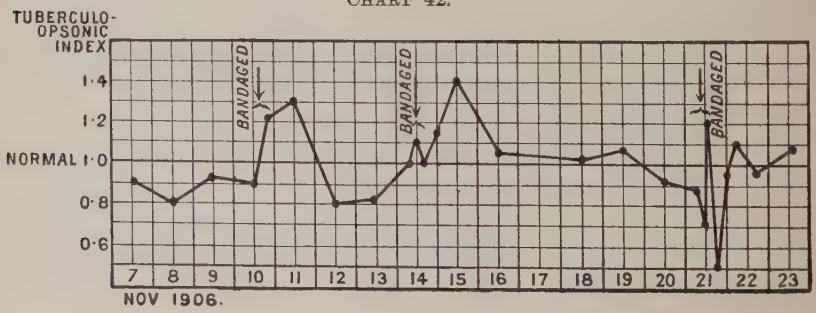


Chart 41 refers to a girl, aged fifteen years, who was the subject of tuberculous synovitis of the right knee. In the first of the two observations which are in question in this chart the bandage was applied for one and a half hours, readings of the tuberculo-opsonic index being taken twenty-four hours before, immediately before, in the mid-period of the bandaging, immediately after the bandaging, again one hour, six hours, eighteen hours, and again thirty hours after the bandaging, and then daily for a succession of days. In the case of the second observation readings were taken only at the beginning and at the end of the bandaging.

Chart 42 applies to a child, aged two and a half years, who was affected with tuberculous synovitis of the right knee. Three separate observations were here made in the course of a fortnight, the patient being kept in bed during the whole period with a poroplastic case applied to the limb. The bandage was applied, on the first occasion, lightly for three hours, and on the second occasion equally lightly for three and a half hours. On the third occasion it was applied much more tightly, but only for one and three-quarter hours. On this occasion one reading of the tuberculo-opsonic index was taken immediately before the bandaging, three readings during the period of bandaging, and again another six hours after the removal of the bandage.

Chart 43 refers to a boy, aged nine years, who was affected with extensive glandular and cutaneous tuberculosis and who had undergone a very large number of operations with a view to the relief of these conditions. Large ulcers occupied the left forearm, the dorsum of the left hand, and the right supraclavicular region. Three separate bandaging observations are in question in the chart, the bandage being applied on each occasion

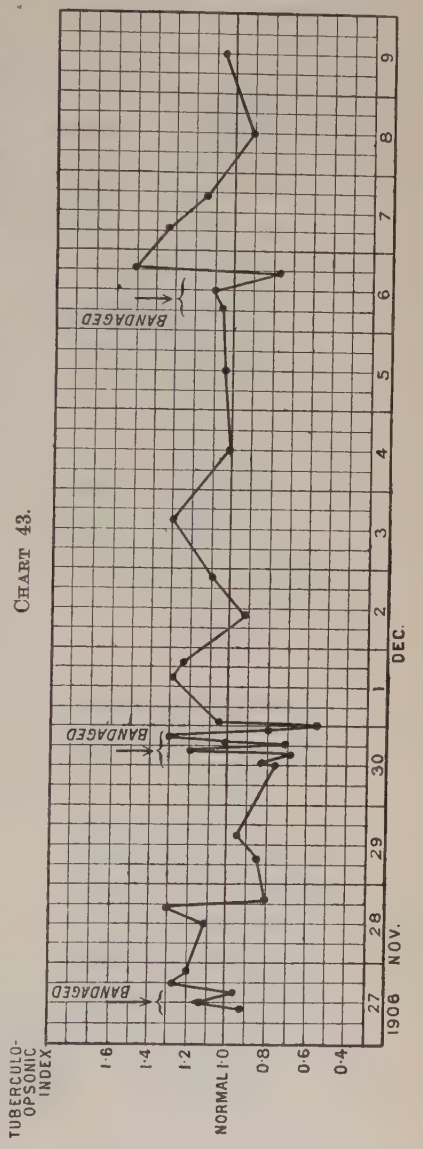


CHART 43.

round the upper arm on the left side. It was applied on the first occasion for one hour, and on the second and third occasions in each case for three hours.

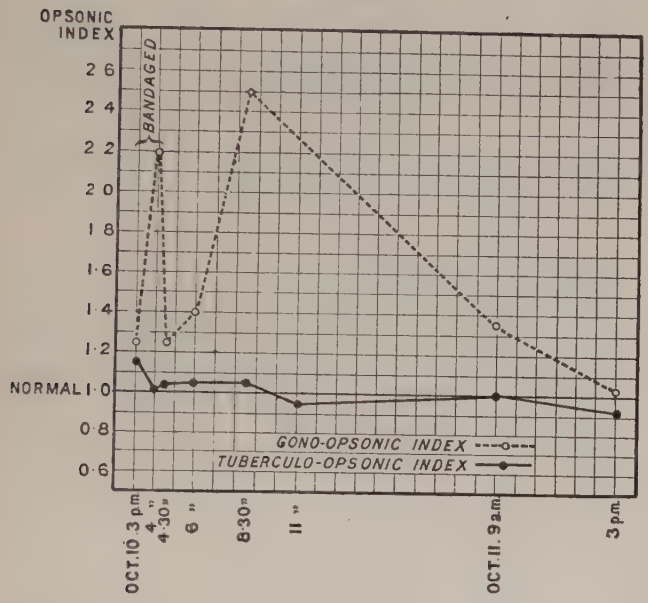
Of interest in connexion with this case are the following points:—(*a*) Very striking amelioration of the patient's condition was here obtained, the open ulcers all healing over in the interval between the first and third bandaging. (*b*) The amelioration was not confined to the bandaged left limb; it was almost equally conspicuous in the large ulcer which occupied the supraclavicular region on the right side of the body. (*c*) On the first and second occasions on which the bandage was applied lymph poured out in a copious stream from open ulcers on the dorsum of the hand and forearm—showing clearly that we have to deal in the case of the bandaged limb with an activated lymph flow. (*d*) The lymph which poured out from the ulcer gave on each occasion lower tuberculo-opsonic readings than the circulating blood. In the case of the first bandaging the two samples of lymph which were tested gave readings of 0·8 and 0·62 respectively; the six successive samples of lymph which were tested on the second occasion gave a series of readings ranging downwards by gradual steps from 0·7 to 0·2. It may, we think, be inferred from this fact that the opsonic index of the fluid in the interior of the tuberculous focus stood at 0·2, or even lower, at a time when the opsonic index of the circulating blood stood at 0·8. (*e*) Finally, it is of interest to mention that on a subsequent occasion, when after a relapse the bandage was again applied, a lymph was obtained which conveyed tuberculous infection to a guinea-pig.

PART II.

Chart 44 refers to a patient who presented herself for treatment with a swollen wrist-joint which was suspected to be tuberculous. It appeared that the patient had in the past suffered from arthritis in the left hip and the right shoulder, and that these had been attributed to gout. The patient's tuberculo-opsonic index was measured on September 25 last and on October 4 and 8. It worked out on the first occasion as 0·94, on the second as 0·95 and on the third as 0·97. As these readings furnished no indications of any tuberculous auto-inoculation, the patient was further questioned and a history of vaginal discharge was elicited. This discharge had, however, completely ceased, and the vaginal secretion proved to be free from gonococci. The patient's gono-opsonic index was measured on October 4, 7, and 8. The readings obtained on these occasions were 1·1, 1·35, and 1·03. As these readings furnish no indication, or at best only a very doubtful indication, of a gonococcal auto-

inoculation, a Bier's bandage was now applied to the patient's forearm for one hour. The gono- and tuberculo-opsonic readings which were obtained in association with this procedure are set out in the chart. It

CHART 44.



will be seen that they show a characteristic fluctuation in the gono-opsonic index, while the tuberculo-opsonic index remains quite unaffected. In view of this result the patient is now being treated with gonococcus vaccine.

Table illustrating some of the Diagnostic and Therapeutic Problems that can be resolved by Recourse to the Auto-Inoculation Test and by Consideration of its Event.

Serial Number.	Clinical Features of Case.	Diagnostic or Therapeutic Problem.	Procedure resorted to with a view to the Induction of an Auto-inoculation.	Particulars of Opsonic Readings.	Conclusion arrived at, and Remarks.
				Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.	
1	Tuberculous phthisis. Tubercle bacilli in sputum	May patient take gentle exercise ?	30 minutes' sharp walk	Before walk . . . . 1·09 Immediately after . . 1·02 6 hours after . . . 1·06 24 „ „ . . . 0·98	Yes ; he may take gentle exercise.
2	Same patient as No. 1	May he take hard exercise ?	70 minutes' hard walk	Before walk . . . . 0·92 Immediately after . . 0·96 6 hours after . . . 1·14 24 „ „ . . . 1·03	Since 70 minutes' hard walk appears to induce an auto-inoculation it will probably be well for him to avoid very severe exercise.
3	Tuberculous disease of knee-joint . .	Should vaccine-therapy with tuberculin be continued ?	Walking exercise	Before walking . . . 1·10 Immediately after. . 1·19 5 hours after . . . 1·03 9½ „ „ . . . 1·41 24 „ „ . . . 1·32	Tuberculin inoculations ought to be continued. (*Vide serial number* 37 *infra.*)
4	Patient was suspected of phthisis and was rejected for insurance, but was declared sound by two independent physicians.	Was he rightly rejected ? (First test)	Vigorous walk .	Before walk . . . . 0·85 Immediately after . . 0·62 6 hours after . . . 0·73 24 „ „ . . . 0·80	Patient is tuberculous and was rightly rejected.
5	Same patient as No. 4	(Second test)	„ „	Before walk . . . . 0·79 Immediately after . . 0·56 6 hours after . . . 0·71 24 „ „ . . . 0·63	
6	Tuberculous disease of the knee . .	May the knee be massaged to obtain more freedom of movement ?	Massage of affected joint	Before massage . . . 0·91 1 hour after . . . 1·44 6 hours after . . . 0·76 7 days „ . . . 1·22	Knee must be kept at rest and inoculation with tuberculin would be appropriate.
7	Chronic arthritis of ankle-joint. In Australia lesion was diagnosed by one physician as rheumatic arthritis, by another, who found that his tuberculo-opsonic index was 0·74 as probably tuberculous.	Is the arthritis rheumatic or tuberculous ?	Massage of affected joint	Before massage . . . 0·76 Immediately after . . 0·83 6 hours after . . . 0·97 24 „ „ . . . 1·00 48 „ „ . . . 0·74	Patient is suffering from tuberculous arthritis. Inoculations with tuberculin are indicated.—These are being carried out with marked advantage.

8	Arthritis of ankle-joint	Is the arthritis tuberculous ?	Massage of affected joint	Before massage . . . 0·93 Immediately after . . 0·78 6 hours after . . . 1·02 24 „ „ . . . 0·93	Patient is suffering from tuberculous arthritis and inoculations with tuberculin are indicated.—These are being carried out with marked benefit to the patient.
9	Illness commencing acutely with abdominal symptoms and high fever. Abdominal pain and tenderness continuing, tuberculous peritonitis is suspected	Is the disease tuberculous ?	Gentle massage of abdomen for 10 minutes	Before massage . . . 1·31 Immediately after . . 1·12 6 hours after . . . 0·88 36 „ „ . . . 1·76	The disease is tuberculous.—The patient recovered completely under tuberculin treatment.
10	Suspected tuberculous disease of hip .	Is the disease tuberculous ?	Movement of affected joint	Before movement . . 0·90 ½ hour after . . . 1·16 2½ hours after . . . 1·02 7½ „ „ . . . 0·94	The diagnosis still remains doubtful.
11	Since sprain eight months ago swelling and pain in left wrist, which has been getting progressively worse	Is the disease tuberculous ?	Bier's bandage applied to fore-arm of affected side for half an hour	Before bandaging . . 0·74 Immediately after . . 0·92 ½ hour after . . . 0·89 18 hours after . . . 0·77 36 „ „ . . . 0·81	The disease is probably tuberculous.
12	Arthritis of ankle associated with much swelling, some tenderness, and pain. The onset was acute. A skiagram showed some bony lesion in tarsus. Amputation had been advised in another hospital, but patient refused operation	Is the disease tuberculous ?	Bier's bandage applied above ankle for one hour	Before bandaging . . 0·92 Immediately after . . 0·81 4 hours after . . . 1·00 24 „ „ . . . 0·74	The disease is tuberculous.—Inoculations of tuberculin have already produced a most marked improvement in the condition.
13	Painless swellings of the left wrist, elbow, knee, and ankle of three months' duration. Knee had been tapped and fluid had furnished a culture of staphylococcus albus. Sinus in ankle yields a culture of staphylococcus	Is the arthritis tuberculous or staphylococcic ?	Wrist massaged for ten minutes.	Before massage . . . 0·98 ½ hour after . . . 1·01 4½ hours after . . . 1·15 22 „ „ . . . 1·08 30 „ „ . . . 1·15 *Staphylo-opsonic Indices.* Before . . . . . 0·70 ½ hour after . . . 0·88 4½ hours after . . . 0·78 22 „ „ . . . — 30 „ „ . . . 0·78	The disease appears to be neither tuberculous nor staphylococcic.
14	Tuberculous arthritis of hip with secondary infection and sinuses which had been treated by inoculation.	Is the tuberculous disease eradicated ?	Vigorous movement of hip-joint	*Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.* Before massage . . . 1·06 ½ hour after . . . 0·96 2 hours after . . . 0·86 5½ „ „ . . . 0·85 12 „ „ . . . 1·06 24 „ „ . . . 1·25 3 days „ . . . 0·69	Tuberculous disease is still present.

Table illustrating some of the Diagnostic and Therapeutic Problems that can be Resolved by Recourse to the Auto-Inoculation Test and by Consideration of its Event—(continued).

Serial Number.	Clinical Features of Case.	Diagnostic or Therapeutic Problem.	Procedure resorted to with a view to the Induction of an Auto-inoculation.	Particulars of Opsonic Readings.	Conclusion arrived at, and Remarks.
15	Dactylitis of two fingers following fall from a horse	Is disease tuberculous ?	Massage of affected fingers	Before . . . . . 0·95 ½ hour after . . . 0·91 5½ hours „ . . . 0·73	The disease probably is tuberculous. —Practically complete recovery has taken place under tuberculin treatment.
				Gono-opsonic Indices.	
16	History of swelling of joints after strain. Twice treated in hospital abroad for gonococcal arthritis	Is disease due to gonococcus ?	Massage of affected joint	Before massage . . . 0·97 6 hours after . . . 1·00 24 „ „ . . . 1·04	The arthritis is not of gonococcal origin.
				Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.	
17	Tuberculous arthritis of knee and tuberculous kidney	Does a hot fomentation applied to a tuberculous lesion produce an auto-inoculation ?	Application of hot fomentations to tuberculous knee	Before fomentation. . 1·00 1 hour after . . . 1·32 2 hours „ . . . 1·14 8 „ „ . . . 1·14	Yes. (*Cf. also Chart* 34.)
18	Tuberculous arthritis of wrist . .	May tuberculin inoculations be abandoned ?	Massage of joint and passive movement	Before massage . . . 0·78 15 hours after . . . 1·24 24 „ „ . . . 1·06 48 „ „ . . . 1·17	No. Tuberculin inoculations must continue.
19	Ganglion on dorsum of wrist occurring in a patient with other tuberculous lesions	Is this ganglion tuberculous ?	Massage of ganglion	Before massage . . . 0·65 After „ . . . 0·65 1½ hours after . . . 0·69	Apparently not.
20	Tuberculous glands removed from neck five years ago. Diffuse swelling of wrist following accident five months ago	Is the swelling of wrist tuberculous in character ?	Massage and movement of wrist for 15 minutes	Before massage . . . 0·98 After „ . . . 0·76 24 hours after . . . 0·74	Yes.
21	Uncomplicated tuberculous hip treated by complete rest and inoculations of tuberculin for five months	May inoculations cease?	15 minutes massage	24 hours before . . 0·85 Immediately before . 0·91 „ after . . 0·80 3 hours after . . . 0·90 15 „ „ . . . 0·94 24 „ „ . . . 1·10 36 „ „ . . . 0·81	Yes.

22	Arthritis of long standing in a patient who has had gonorrhoea	Is arthritis gonorrhoeal?	Massage of affected joint	*Gono-opsonic Indices.* Before massage . . . 1·10 15 hours after . . . 1·26 24 „ „ . . . 1·37 3 days „ . . . 1·02 4 „ „ . . . 1·00	The arthritis is probably gonorrhoeal.
23	Tuberculous disease of ankle (See p. 415 *supra*, Chart 28.)	Is tuberculous focus extinct?	Walking on affected ankle without splints	*Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.* Before walking . . . 0·83 Immediately after . . 0·80 12 hours after . . . 0·67 24 „ „ . . . 0·79	Tuberculous disease may still be present.—Tuberculin inoculations were continued.
24	Same patient as 23, 26 weeks later	Is tuberculous focus extinct?	Walking and bicycling	Before . . . . . 0·85 After . . . . . 0·73 12 hours after . . . 0·73 24 „ „ . . . 0·84	Probably focus is extinct.
25	Tumour in hypogastrium in connexion with the uterine body diagnosed as probably tuberculous	Is tumour tuberculous?	Massage of tumour for 20 minutes	7 days before massage. 0·83 3 „ „ „ . 0·87 Immediately before . 1·23 „ after . . 1·25 5 hours after . . . 1·30 24 „ „ . . . 0·96	Tumour is tuberculous.—Tumour has markedly shrunk under the influence of tuberculin inoculations.
26	History of pain in hip and lameness. Examination by surgeon gave a negative result. Patient sent on for corroboration or otherwise of this diagnosis	Is disease tuberculous, or may boy return to school?	Vigorous massage and movement of hip	Before massage . . . 1·00 Immediately after . . 1·09 6 hours after . . . 1·05	Disease is not tuberculous and boy may return to school.
27	Large mass of glands in groin, followed by development of extensive nodular masses in abdomen	Are the glands tuberculous or malignant?	Glands vigorously massaged	*Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.* Before massage . . . 0·96 Immediately after . . 1·45 6 hours after . . . 0·95 24 „ „ . . . 1·70 *Neo-opsonic Indices.* Before massage . . . 1·02 Immediately after . . 1·02 6 hours after . . . 0·95 24 „ „ . . . 1·67	Patient is suffering from tuberculous glands and malignant disease. Patient died some weeks later and at the necropsy it was found that the pelvic peritoneum was infiltrated with lymph-adenomatous masses. The retro-peritoneal and mesenteric glands were all enlarged and in some definitely caseated tuberculous deposits were found. (*Vide Chart* 27.)

Table illustrating some of the Diagnostic and Therapeutic Problems that can be Resolved by Recourse to the Auto-inoculation Test and by Consideration of its Event—(continued).

Serial Number.	Clinical Features of Case.	Diagnostic or Therapeutic Problem.	Procedure resorted to with a view to the Induction of an Auto-inoculation.	Particulars of Opsonic Readings.	Conclusion arrived at, and Remarks.
28	Suspected tuberculous laryngitis. Patient sent up from out-patient department for diagnosis	Is laryngitis tuberculous ?	Talked vigorously for one hour	*Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.* 24 hours before . . 0·94 18 „ „ . . . 0·98 Immediately before . 0·87 „ after . . 1·00 ¼ hour after . . . 1·12 3½ hours „ . . . 1·24 6¾ „ „ . . . 0·83 8¼ „ „ . . . 1·00 12 „ „ . . . 0·88 20 „ „ . . . 1·00 30 „ „ . . . 1·00 2 days „ . . . 0·75 3 „ „ . . . 0·75	Laryngitis is probably tuberculous.
29	Osteomyelitis of femur with sinus. Sinus has persisted for seven years	Is there here persistent staphylococcic infection ?	Bier's bandage applied for one hour	*Staphylo-opsonic Indices.* Before bandaging . . 0·53 During „ . . 0·81 Immediately after . . 0·72 ¼ hour after . . . 0·84 1½ hours „ . . . 0·93 2½ „ „ . . . 1·10 36 „ „ . . . 1·81 72 „ „ . . . 0·62	There is here persistent staphylococcic infection.—The sinus completely healed under the influence of staphylococcic inoculation.
30	Affection of eye diagnosed as probably tuberculous ; suspected tuberculous disease of lung	Is pulmonary tuberculosis present ?	Vigorous tennis playing	*Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.* 24 hours before playing 0·65 Immediately before . 0·75 „ after . . 0·75 5 hours after . . . 0·99 24 „ „ . . . 1·00	Pulmonary tubercle is probably present.

31	Arthritis of knee	Is the arthritis tubercular ?	Administration of an anaesthetic and operation on the knee	Immediately before operation 0·52 During „ 1·19 8 hours after . . . 0·49 24 „ „ . . . 0·72 30 „ „ . . . 1·05	The patient is tubercular. The appearances of the knee and its subsequent history suggested that it was rheumatoid, and the fact that the fluid that was withdrawn was injected into a guinea-pig without rendering it tubercular supported the idea that we had here a non-tubercular arthritis. Subsequent inquiry revealed that the anaesthetist had at the operation detected signs of tubercular infection at one apex.
32	Polyarthritis (both knees, both ankles and fingers)	Is the arthritis tubercular ?	Bier's bandages applied above both knees	24 hrs. before bandaging 0·82 Immediately before . 1·08 1 hour after . . . 1·08 8 hours „ . . . 0·87 24 „ „ . . . 1·26 48 „ „ . . . 1·03 72 „ „ . . . 0·89 Morning . . . . . 1·06 Evening . . . . . 1·22	The arthritis is tubercular.
33	Pulmonary tuberculosis	Does exercise here cause an auto-inoculation ?	Ordinary exercise		
34	Tubercular disease of the knee . .	Has the tubercular infection been extinguished by vaccine-therapy, and may the patient lay aside his splints ?	Walking	Before walk . . . 1·28* Immediately after . . 1·18 ½ hour after . . . 1·20 2½ hours „ . . . 1·13 6½ „ „ . . . 0·95 16 „ „ . . . 1·17 20 „ „ . . . 1·35	The tubercular infection has here been almost extinguished. The patient who before this investigation was undertaken had been pronounced by the surgeon in charge to be free from all objective signs of disease, was authorized to discard his splints, but was kept under observation for another four months. After the lapse of another two months, during which time he remained perfectly well, patient contracted the infection of influenza. In association with this the symptoms of tubercular disease manifested themselves again in the knee, and a tubercular nodule developed in the ankle.
35	Tubercular disease of the hip . . .	Has the tubercular infection been extinguished by vaccine-therapy, and may the patient discard his crutches ?	Walking	Before walk . . . 1·02 Immediately after . . 0·95 1 hour after . . . 0·62 3 hours „ . . . 0·94 5 „ „ . . . 1·17 10 „ „ . . . 1·12 20 „ „ . . . 1·2	The tubercular infection still persists; patient must not discard his crutches, and inoculations must be continued. The patient who before this investigation was undertaken had by the surgeon in charge been pronounced free from all objective signs of disease suffered thereafter from a return of all his symptoms.

* This high index is no doubt due to a tuberculin inoculation which the patient had received ten days previously.

Table illustrating some of the Diagnostic and Therapeutic Problems that can be resolved by Recourse to the Auto-Inoculation Tests and by Consideration of its Event—(continued).

Serial Number.	Clinical Features of Case.	Diagnostic or Therapeutic Problem.	Procedure resorted to with a view to the Induction of an Auto-inoculation.	Particulars of Opsonic Readings.	Conclusion arrived at, and Remarks.
36	Arthritis with effusion of left knee diagnosed as tubercular	Is the infection tubercular?	Bier's bandage applied above the knee	Before bandaging . . 1·06 ½ hour after . . . 0·89 5 hours „ . . . 0·9 20 „ „ . . . 1·0	The arthritis is not tubercular.
				Gono-opsonic Indices.	
		Is the infection gonococcal?	Same application as was in question above	Before bandaging . . 1·4 ½ hour after . . . 1·24 5 hours „ . . . 1·36 20 „ „ . . . 1·84	The arthritis is gonococcal.—Subsequent inquiry revealed that the patient had suffered from a vaginal discharge six weeks before the arthritis had manifested itself, and that she had afterwards suffered from a contracture of the hand.
				Tuberculo-opsonic Indices.	
37	Tuberculous disease of knee joint. Same case as No. 3. After three months' further tuberculin treatment	Has the tubercular infection been extinguished?	Walking exercise	Before walk . . . 0·93 After „ . . . . 1·10 8 hours after . . . 0·96 24 „ „ . . . 1·00 48 „ „ . . . 0·98	The tuberculous focus is probably extinct. The patient has been doing full day's work for the last six months without any recurrence.
38	Disease of tarsus, probably tuberculous	Is condition tuberculous?	Exposure to X Rays	3 hours before . . 0·73 1 hour „ . . 0·74 ½ hour after . . . 0·84 5½ hours „ . . . 0·60 20 „ „ . . . 0·62	Condition is tuberculous as shown by the persistent low index, but the exposure to X rays was insufficient to induce an auto-inoculation.
39	Arthritis of knee.	Is condition tuberculous?	Bier's bandage applied ½ hour	Before . . . . . 1·08 ½ hour after . . . 1·35 3 hours „ . . . 1·16 6 „ „ . . . 1·12 18 „ „ . . . 0·93	Condition is tuberculous.
40	Arthritis of knee.	Is condition tuberculous?	Bier's bandage applied ½ hour	Before . . . . . 1·02 Immediately after . . 1·11 6 hours after . . . 1·27 18 „ „ . . . 1·16	Condition is tuberculous.

41	Suspected tuberculous peritonitis . .	Is condition tuberculous ?	Massage of abdomen	Before . . . . . 1·30 ½ hour after . . . 1·25 3 hours „ . . . 1·09 8 „ „ . . . 1·82 24 „ „ . . . 0·83	Condition is tuberculous.
42	Pulmonary tuberculosis, bacilli in sputum	Does hard walking induce an auto-inoculation ?	Eight mile walk	Before walk . . . 0·61 After „ . . . 0·63 2 hours after . . . 0·62	Walk not sufficient to induce auto-inoculation.
43	Suspected tuberculous infection . .	Is a tuberculous infection present ?	Vigorous dancing	Before dance . . . 1·11 Immediately after . . 1·25	A tuberculous infection is present.
44	Same case as Nos. 43 and 45 . . .	Is a tuberculous infection present ?	Second dance (the day after the previous one)	Before dance . . . 1·58* After „ . . . 1·14 10 hours after . . . 0·77	A tuberculous infection is present, and it would be unwise for patient to dance two days in succession.
45	Same case as Nos. 43 and 44 . . .	Is a tuberculous infection present ?	Vigorous golfing excise	Before . . . . . 1·23 After . . . . . 1·18 6 hours after . . . 1·08 24 „ „ . . . 1·36	A tuberculous infection is present.
46	Suspected tuberculous meningitis. .	Is a tuberculous infection present ?	Lumbar puncture. 20 c.c. fluid withdrawn	Before . . . . . 0·84 5 hours after . . . 1·23 24 „ „ . . . 1·16 3 days „ . . . 0·88	The condition is one of tuberculous meningitis. This was confirmed at the autopsy.
47	Acute pleurisy	Is this pleurisy tuberculous ?	Vigorous rubbing of chest with liniment	24 hours before . . 0·92 12 „ „ . . 1·08 5 „ after . . . 1·50 17 „ „ . . . 1·23 24 „ „ . . . 1·12	Pleurisy is tuberculous.
48	Pulmonary Phthisis	Does a long walk cause an auto-inoculation ?	Two hours' walk (8 miles)	Before . . . . . 0·85 After . . . . . 0·72 3 hours after . . . 1·15 6 „ „ . . . 1.21	Walking is sufficient to induce an auto-inoculation.
49	Same case as No. 48 after tuberculin treatment	Same problem (six months later)	Two hours' walk (same miles)	Before . . . . . 0·92 After . . . . . 0·84 4 hours after . . . 1·03 7 „ „ . . . 0·98	Walking does not now induce an appreciable auto-inoculation.
50	Ulceration of both legs	Is condition tuberculous ?	Bier's bandage, both legs	Before . . . . . 0·74 ½ hour after . . . 1·03 4½ hours after . . . 1·06 18 „ „ . . . 0·64	Condition is tuberculous.

* This result is no doubt due to the auto-inoculation due to the dancing of the previous day.

On some Points in connexion with Vaccine-Therapy and Therapeutic Immunisation generally.[1]

Being the substance of a Lecture delivered before the Harveian Society of London, March, 1908.

By A. E. Wright.

Introductory

Part I.—Question as to whether it would not be possible to achieve and maintain an increased Output of protective substances apart from Periodic Measurements of the content of the Blood in Protective Substances—Suggestion that by Clinical Observations and Blood Testings such a Knowledge of the Effects of bacterial vaccines has been arrived at as would make it possible to guarantee a good Result from the Inoculation of a definite Quantum of a Standardised vaccine—Suggestion that the clinical symptoms of the patient will furnish to the immunisator a guide by which he may regulate his immunisation procedures—Résumé of the Conclusions which have been arrived at—Does the technique for the Determination of the opsonic index furnish to the immunisator accurate and useful information with respect to the way in which the patient is progressing?

Part II.—How may such antibacterial agencies as the patient may already be possessed of or may acquire by immunisation, be directed to the destruction of microbes in the focus of infection?—General question of the distribution of antibacterial agents in the Normal Organism—Nature of the inflammatory reaction which supervenes upon a bacterial invasion of the tissues, and changes in the Distribution of the Antibacterial Agents which are effected by that Reaction—Conditions which present themselves in the Case where Microbes have survived the Inflammatory Reaction, which has supervened upon their Invasion, and have established themselves in a Nidus in the Tissues—Consideration of the Therapeutic Measures by which we may bring the Antibacterial Agencies of the Circulating Blood into Effective Operation upon the Microbes in a Nidus of Infection—Organization of the Medical Profession for carrying out the Work of Therapeutic Immunisation—Conclusion.

Already in my first paper on the treatment of staphylococcus infections by the therapeutic inoculation of staphylococcus vaccines,[2] I suggested that we had in vaccine-therapy a general therapeutic method which would be applicable to the treatment of all kinds of localized bacterial infections.

[1] Reprinted from the *Practitioner*. Special Number on "The Opsonic Method and Vaccine-therapy," May, 1908.

[2] *Lancet*, March 29, 1902, *vide* pp. 224–226.

In my next publication on therapeutic inoculation, I made bold to predict that the physician of the future would be an immunisator.[1]

Already these anticipations are justifying themselves. I do not know that there is any one who has made trial of vaccine-therapy in connexion with localized bacterial diseases who is not satisfied with its efficacy as a therapeutic measure, and the day when the physician will be an immunisator is, I think, perceptibly nearer.

Far from the possibilities of vaccine-therapy in the field of the treatment of localized bacterial infections being already exhausted, those possibilities have as yet been only very incompletely explored. Only a few and tentative experiments have, up to the present, been undertaken in connexion with bacterial infections of the mucous membranes. The application of vaccine-therapy in connexion with endometritis and bronchitis is almost unstudied, and the method has not yet been applied to whooping cough or to mumps. The question as to whether the Klebs-Loeffler bacilli, in the case where these survive on the throat after an attack of diphtheria, can be eradicated by vaccine-therapy, and the precisely similar question which presents itself in connexion with the persistence of typhoid bacilli and other pathogenetic bacteria after convalescence, are in like manner still untouched. Again, while it may be taken as certain that in malignant disease advantage may be obtained from vaccine-therapy directed to the destruction of the microbes which invade the tumour, final judgment on the question whether this has any retarding effect upon the disease cannot yet be pronounced. Lastly, it cannot be doubted that there are numberless disorders which, though they are not now brought into connexion with bacterial infection, are in reality directly caused by such. Many of these might prove amenable to vaccine-therapy. It has been suggested to me that vaccine-therapy might perhaps with advantage be employed in connexion with hay fever. It might also be successfully applied in dentistry in connexion with the relief of toothache in the same way as it has already been applied to the treatment of pyorrhoea alveolaris. Again, jaundice and cholecystitis might be treated by vaccine-therapy, and if I may draw any deduction from an almost desperate case, which I have recently seen get well under vaccine-therapy, there would be a prospect of success in certain cases of pancreatitis. And I cannot refrain from throwing it out as a suggestion that there may quite well lie at the root of pancreatic diabetes a bacterial infection (possibly sometimes a colic or a tubercle infection) which might perhaps be amenable to vaccine-therapy.

Leaving all these problems for the future to resolve, I may, before I pass to the subject-matter proper of this paper, put you in mind of certain recent developments in connexion with vaccine-therapy and auto-immunisation.

(*a*) It has been established by my fellow-workers and myself in the

[1] *British Medical Journal*, May 9, 1903, *vide* p. 227.

Inoculation Department of St. Mary's Hospital, that vaccine-therapy is applicable not only to localized infections but also to septicaemic diseases.

(*b*) We have shown that spontaneous auto-inoculations occur not only in connexion with septicaemic diseases, but also in connexion with localized diseases where the focus of infection has attained to a certain development.

(*c*) We have shown that auto-inoculation can, in the case of localized disease, be artificially induced by massage, by active and passive movements, and by active and passive hyperaemia affecting the focus of infection.

(*d*) We have shown that such artificially-induced auto-inoculations can be turned to useful account in diagnosis, evidence of an auto-inoculation with the products of a particular microbe being equivalent to proof of the presence of that microbe in the particular region of the body which has been explored.

(*e*) We have shown that the success of certain empirical methods of treatment, and, in particular, the success of Bier's method of passive congestion, is probably largely dependent upon the fact that, when skilfully and felicitously applied, it induces adequate and not excessive auto-inoculations.

I do not propose here to go back over any of this ground. It has been traversed by my fellow-workers and myself in a conjoint paper contributed to the *Lancet* of November 2nd last.[1]

Let me, instead, deal with two other issues which present themselves for consideration in connexion with therapeutic immunisation.

The first of these has reference to the question as to whether it would not be possible to achieve and maintain the desired improvement in the patient's blood apart from periodic blood-examinations. Associated with this is the question as to whether the technique, which we use for the determination of the opsonic index, gives accurate and useful results.

The second issue has to deal with the question as to what is the best method of directing such protective agencies, as a patient may be possessed of, or acquire by immunisation, to the destruction of the microbes in the focus of infection.

PART I

Question as to whether it would not be possible to achieve and maintain an increased output of protective substances apart from periodic measurements of the content of the blood in protective substances.

The importance of this issue will appear when we reflect upon what is bound up with it. There is bound up with it the question whether

[1] *Vide* pp. 372–429.

it is imperative upon every physician, before embarking upon therapeutic immunisation, to serve an apprenticeship in bacteriology, to master the technique of blood testing, and thereafter to undertake, in connexion with his cases, the labour of making periodic blood examinations.

In discussing this question, I think we may, at this hour of the day, confidently assume that no one would now seriously advocate that injections of bacterial vaccines should be undertaken entirely in the dark, as was done in connexion with the earlier inoculations of Koch's tuberculin. Every one will agree that since we have, in vaccines, an agency that is, according as it is wisely or unwisely used, powerful for good or for ill, we must, where we employ vaccines, either have a guarantee for the correctness of the dosage, or a system of control which will tell us when our dose is too large, when it is too small, and when it ought to be repeated. I may, therefore, take it that the suggestion that the inoculation of bacterial vaccines should be undertaken apart from anything in the nature of controlling blood examinations, is to be understood not as a contention that the dosage need not be a matter of concern, but rather as a suggestion that the accumulated experience of the past, and the observation of the clinical symptoms, will serve as adequate guides in any immunisation procedures.

This suggestion—though it may perhaps have suffered something from the advocacy of those who are above everything concerned to avoid anything in the nature of undue personal effort, and anything in the nature of a change in the established order in our profession—is none the less deserving of our most earnest consideration, for there can be no question but that the shortest and least laborious way to a result is, where it can be safely followed, always the best way.

It will facilitate the discussion of the question as to how far periodical blood examinations may be dispensed with in favour of other methods of regulating the dosage, if you will allow me to introduce a little more precision into the suggestion that past experience and observation of the clinical symptoms may serve us as a sufficient guide into our immunisation procedures. We may read this (*a*) as a suggestion that we have already, by clinical observation and blood testings, attained to such knowledge of the effects of bacterial vaccines as enables us to guarantee that a good result will follow upon the inoculation of a particular dose of a standardised vaccine. Or, again, we read it (*b*) as a suggestion that, even if such absolute guarantee as might be desirable should not yet be available, the clinical symptoms of the patient will inevitably furnish such further data as might be required for the regulation of his dosage.

Suggestion that by clinical observations and blood testings such a knowledge of the effects of bacterial vaccines has been arrived at as would make it possible to guarantee a good result from the inoculation of a definite quantum of a standardised vaccine.

Though inexperience might suppose that the blood testings, which

have been carried out, and the clinical experience which has been gained, would enable us to foretell with absolute accuracy the effect of a given dose of this or that vaccine upon the human organism, we have not only not arrived at this point, but there is very little likelihood of our ever arriving at it. Where we are handling, on the one hand, vaccines, and on the other hand, the human organism, we are dealing with factors neither constant nor invariable.

Let us consider, first, the vaccine. Here, even where we particularise a particular dose of a vaccine which has been standardised by counting the contained microbes or by weighing the contained microbial substance, we can never leave out of consideration the possibility that a difference in the strain of microbes employed, or some minute overlooked difference in the mode of preparation, or perhaps some change occurring spontaneously during keeping, might affect the potency of the vaccine. It will follow that where we prescribe, let us say, a dose of gonococcus or streptococcus vaccine, such as would correspond to 1,000,000 gonococci, or, as the case may be, 1,000,000 streptococci, we cannot always be sure that we shall be applying precisely the same *ictus immunisatorius*. Here, then, is one of the difficulties which stand in the way of our accurately forecasting the effect of the inoculation of a bacterial vaccine. It is a difficulty which can be circumvented only by directly controlling the effect of the vaccine upon the patient. More formidable is the difficulty which is created by the fact that there is not, as is clearly shown in connexion with preventive inoculation against typhoid fever, any constancy in the immunising response of healthy men to one and the same dose of one and the same vaccine.

And greater than all is the difficulty which is created by the fact that there are very great differences in the effect produced by one and the same dose of vaccine in the infected as compared with the healthy, and in the severely infected as compared with the lightly infected. For this reason it is impossible to foresee accurately the effect which a vaccine will produce when inoculated into an untried patient.

Lastly, still further difficulties arise where we are asked to predict, instead of the result of an isolated inoculation, the effect of a whole series of inoculations periodically undertaken upon a patient. The difficulty of prediction here is insuperable, owing to the circumstance that, either as the result of the patient's personal factor, or as the result of the special features of his infection, the point at which he fails to respond to small immunising stimuli, and the point at which he tolerates and responds to larger immunising stimuli, are reached in the one case earlier and in the other case later.

While the fact that our powers of prevision are thus limited must be emphasised and kept in view, there would be grave error in supposing that we can never predict the results of an inoculation. If there is, in connexion with bacterial vaccines, one thing which is more assured

than another, it is that it must always be possible, after it may be a lengthy process of trial and error, to arrive at a dose regarding which it will thenceforward be possible to predict that it will, when employed upon patients who are suffering from a localised infection of strictly limited extent, produce either a very slight negative phase followed by a positive phase, or a positive phase without the intervention of any negative phase. Such doses, when they have once been arrived at, may be safely employed in the treatment of strictly localised infections apart from an exercise of control on the part of the practitioner.

It may be predicted, in connexion with a staphylococcus vaccine, that it will, when administered in a dose corresponding to 100 million of staphylococci to a patient, who is developing an isolated furuncle, practically always produce an immediate positive phase and arrest the development of that furuncle. It may further be predicted of a dose corresponding to 250 to 300 millions of staphylococci, administered three to four days later, that it will reinforce the action of the previous dose, and practically always put an end to the furuncle. Again, it is probably safe to predict of a streptococcus vaccine, which has been prepared from an ordinary case of erysipelas, that it will, when inoculated in a dose corresponding to 2,000,000 of streptococci, abort, or at any rate temporarily arrest, an incipient streptococcic lymphangitis. In like manner, where we have to deal with a tubercular adenitis or arthritis of strictly limited extent, it may be predicted that an initial dose of 1–20,000 mgr. of a dried and comminuted tubercle culture will give a satisfactory positive phase without the intervention of any serious negative phase. If, however, inquiry were made for a dose of the same vaccine, which would apply to all tubercular patients without distinction, that demand being coupled with the condition that a serious negative phase should not, in any case, be produced, the dose would probably have to be fixed at not larger than 1–50,000 mgr.

The question of the appropriate dosage to employ, when taking in hand a case of tubercular infection carries us on—since here there can be no question of eradicating the infection by one or two inoculations —to consider the question whether it would be possible to lay down a scheme of dosage such as would comply, on the one hand, with the proviso that a positive phase should follow upon every inoculation and, on the other hand, with the proviso that no serious negative phase should in any case result.

Assuming a case of strictly localised tubercular infection of limited extent, and postulating inoculations at 10-day intervals, it might perhaps be tentatively laid down that, starting with a dose of 1–20,000th mgr. of Koch's tubercle powder, this dose might, as a rule, be increased every month by gradual increments up to 1–4,000th mgr., this latter dose being reached only after the expiration of six months' treatment. There would indubitably be many cases which would benefit under the exhibition of more generous doses. And, again, there would be other cases

where, after years of treatment, doses of 1–20,000 mgr. could not with advantage be exceeded.

I think it will have become clear, from the consideration of these data, that if, in connexion with tubercular infection, a hard-and-fast scheme of dosage were to be laid down, such as might safely be carried out in the absence of any method for readjusting the doses, it would —and what applies in connexion with tubercular infections applies *mutatis mutandis* to all other chronic infections—it would, I say, be necessary to employ almost minimal doses of vaccine. In point of fact, doses would have to be employed which would not allow of the attainment of either satisfactory or rapid results in the majority of patients. Some method of controlling and readjusting the dose to the special requirements of each individual case is thus seen to be essential.

Let me now turn to consider the suggestion that the clinical symptoms of the patient are capable of furnishing the guide of which the immunisator stands in need.

Suggestion that the clinical symptoms of the patient will furnish to the immunisator a guide by which he may regulate his immunisation procedures.

It is one thing to assert that it is very often possible for the immunisator to glean from the patient's symptoms information which would assist him in selecting his doses of vaccine—that such help can be obtained is a self-evident truth—it is quite another matter to put forward—as has recently been done—the suggestion which stands at the head of this subsection. We have it here implied that the clinical symptoms of the patient will in every case inform us whether we have been employing the proper quantum of vaccine, or too large, or too small a quantum. It is the suggestion thus understood which I propose here critically to consider.

If I were directly addressing the authors of that suggestion, I do not say that I might not be tempted to deal with it by the Socratic method. I might in such case, with a view of convicting its authors of having put forward an ill-considered proposal, press for answers to the following questions. I might quite well, addressing myself to them, ask :—

(*a*) Is it quite certain that there will, in every case where immunisation may be called for, be clinical symptoms to guide you in your dosage ?

(*b*) Given the case where the patient presents an obvious pathological condition (I have in view here either a definite constitutional disturbance or a definite local lesion), what will be the symptoms, which will tell you that you have inoculated, as the case may be, an appropriate dose, or an excessive dose, or too small a dose of your vaccine ; and, again, what will be the signs by which you will know that the hour has arrived for reinoculation ?

(*c*) Is there any certitude that such changes, as your inoculations

may be capable of producing, will, in every case, be produced with sufficient promptitude to inform you before the inoculation next in series falls due, whether you ought to employ the same dose of vaccine, or increase or diminish the dose ?

(*d*) Is it inconceivable, in the case where the localised focus of infection is shut off from the blood stream, that you may obtain by inoculation an effect upon the circulating blood without obtaining a corresponding change in the condition of the focus of infection ?

(*e*) Or finally, recasting a verse from Kipling into a question—

> How do you *know* that your God will rouse you
> A little before the nuts work loose ?
> How do you *know* that *His* pity allows you
> To leave off from work whenever you choose ?

Instead of merely suggesting that these questions demand answers, I will try to supply these. Let me begin by putting it to you that we have, in connexion with the question as to whether we may trust to the clinical symptoms to serve as guides to us in therapeutic inoculation, to consider four different classes of cases. We have :—

(1) *the case of a localised infection, which is of such a nature that the clinical observer can immediately either see for himself or learn of every change which occurs in its condition ;*

(2) *the case of a localised infection where the conditions are unfavourable to the observation of changes in its condition ;*

(3) *the case of an acute febrile condition ;*

(4) *the case where all local and general symptoms are in abeyance.*

Let me deal with each of these cases seriatim, and before we have done, it will be found that an answer has been furnished to each of the questions I have formulated above.

(1) *The case of a localised infection, which is of such a nature that the clinical observer can immediately either see for himself or learn of every change which occurs in the focus of infection.*

The most typical examples of such infections as these are the staphylococcic infections of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, to wit, furunculosis, suppurating acne, and sycosis. These are representative, not only in the respect that they are directly accessible to inspection and palpation, but also in the respect that they may rapidly become better or worse. This acute evolution is, as consideration will show, very material, inasmuch as we can in such cases count on being put into possession of the results of the foregoing inoculation before we are called upon to undertake the inoculation next in series. In the same class with these may be placed the streptococcal infections of the skin and subcutaneous tissue which take the form of impetigo, "serous furuncles," erysipelas, and lymphangitis.

In the category of localised infections whose evolution can be readily followed, may further be placed infections of wound surfaces and mucous

membranes by pyogenic micro-organisms. Here information can be drawn, not only from the appearances of the suppurating surfaces, but also from the amount of discharge. In the case where the seat of the infection, though communicating with the exterior, is more deep-seated —as, for instance, in the ear or uterus or male urethra—we can still draw certain inferences from the amount of the discharge and from its character.

In the category of local infections, whose course can be readily followed, may be included also many of the localised infections with which we have to deal in connexion with the kidney, the bladder, the colon, and other organs. Here we may glean information with regard to the condition of the focus of infection by noting the character of the excretions, or, as the case may be, the amount of the secretion. We can, for instance, measure the quantity of albumen and the amount of pus in the urine. We can, again, in the case where we are immunising against a coli infection of the urinary tract, watch for that characteristically rapid clarification of the urine by flocculation and sedimentation which comes under observation when the microbes undergo agglutination in the urine. In colitis we can watch for a change in the excretion of mucus and in the shedding of the membranous casts. In Miculicz' disease—a disease which appears to be generally associated with a streptococcus infection of the salivary and lachrymal glands—we can take note of the variation in the amount of saliva and tears. And in those cases of cholecystitis, where, after operation, the bile evacuates itself through the operation wound, we can similarly obtain some information with respect to the infection by noting the changes in the bile.

Where the localised focus of infection is so situated as to interfere with a delicate reflex mechanism—I have in view here the case where frequency of micturition results from a bacterial infection—we have, again, a sensitive recording mechanism which may keep us informed with respect to the progress or regress of the infection.

And these objective signs, in connexion with the focus of infection, are not our only means of learning of the condition of the local focus. Where we have, in association with a local focus of infection, pain or discomfort, and, of course, we have these in connexion with very many forms of localised infection, we can very often, through the intermediary of these, learn of any changes which may occur in the focus of infection. It will thus be seen that, by one way or another, we may, in connexion with a large number of localised infections, hope to be kept informed with respect to their progress by the intermediary of the clinical symptoms.

The problem as to how we are to interpret this information and to turn it to account in regulating our dosage is very far indeed from being a simple problem. We have, however, in our hands an important clue to the interpretation of the clinical data when we call to mind that—

(*a*) A moderate dose of vaccine, such as would generally be the most

useful dose in connexion with a chronic infection, produces, after a comparatively short negative phase, a positive phase which might, on an average, extend over the interval between two successive inoculations undertaken some 10 days apart.

(*b*) A smaller dose would produce an immediate positive phase, but a positive phase which would not be maintained for more than a very few days.

(*c*) An excessive dose would produce a negative phase, which would last through a large part, if not through the whole, of the interval which usually elapses between two inoculations.

Keeping the graphic curves, which correspond to these three types of response, clearly before the mind's eye, we can now take the clinical history and see which of these different types of curve it will fit in with.

The chronology of the different incidents will here give most important indications. Where, in connexion with pustular acne or furunculosis, there has been a fresh outcrop of spots, or a new furuncle, or increased pustulation, or where, in connexion with tubercular cystitis, there has been more pain and increased frequency of micturition, or where, in connexion with an infected wound or mucous membrane, there has been more discharge, or where, in connexion with a gonococcal or tubercular arthritis or in connexion with a tubercular adenitis, previously painless, pain has developed after inoculation, we may take it that there has been a negative phase, and that the type of response is that which is obtained by the inoculation of a moderate or, as the case may be, an excessive dose. Where the negative phase symptoms have been severe or prolonged it will be plain that the dose of vaccine has been excessive.

Where, on the contrary, we learn that there was improvement for a few days after inoculation, and afterwards a relapse to the conditions which obtained before inoculation, we may suspect that our dose of vaccine has been too small.

These conclusions will be confirmed if there has been associated with the exacerbation of the local symptoms, a rise of temperature, or a general feeling of malaise and constitutional disturbance, and, with the improvement in the local symptoms, a condition of euphoria.

Fallacies in connexion with the interpretation of the clinical symptoms. It might be supposed that, with the above clue in our hands, the interpretation of the clinical symptoms would, at any rate, in the class of cases we are here discussing, give us quite adequate guidance in the matter of dosage and the interspacing of our doses. This is very far indeed from being the case.

On the one hand, the conditions in the focus of infection may upon occasion be quite fallacious guides. And, on the other hand, the constitutional symptoms cannot be relied upon to convey all the facts which are material for us to know.

These points with regard to the fallaciousness and incompleteness of the clinical record, even at its best, may be conveniently considered

here. We then need not come back upon them when we come to deal with the three other categories of clinical cases which were enumerated above.

(a) *The clinical symptoms which are associated with the focus of infection may convey quite an erroneous idea of the conditions which there obtain.*

Where, as is so often the case, a lupus which is infected by streptococci is being treated with inoculations of tubercle vaccine only, the local appearances may be very fallacious. In such a case progress in the direction of the suppression of the tubercular infection may quite well be masked by the persistence, or, as the case may be, incidental exacerbation of the streptococcic infection. Where, in a case of combined infection by two species of microbes, both the microbes are attacked by vaccine-therapy, with the result that one is successfully combated while no headway is made against the other, the appearances may quite well suggest to the purely clinical observer quite an erroneous idea of the state of the case.

Where we are dealing with deep-seated infection we may erroneously attribute significance to an increase or to a recurrence of œdema. In illustration of the opportunity for error, which presents itself in connexion with œdema, I may instance the case of a patient who had been discharged as cured of a lupus of the nose, and who, alarmed at a recurrence of the swelling and reddening, recently came back again for further inoculation treatment. On examination of this patient's opsonic index a normal reading was obtained. It was also noticed that the patient's fingers were badly chilblained. This fact, taken together with the circumstance that her blood coagulability was markedly diminished, suggested that we had before us not a recurrence of the lupus, but a chilblain on the nose. This inference was confirmed when the swelling and reddening of the nose, and in association with this the chilblains on the fingers, rapidly disappeared under the influence of calcium lactate.[1]

It may quite well be that variations in the size of tubercular glands and perhaps changes in the amount and effusion in tubercular joints, may in similar manner occur, independently of any progress or regress of the infection, directly as the result of changes in the coagulability and viscidity of the blood.

(b) *The clinical symptoms in connexion with the focus of infection, even when they convey accurate information with respect to the conditions which there obtain, may suggest to us quite a wrong idea of the conditions which obtain in the circulating blood.*

I have often pointed out that we have no right to assume from the fact that the conditions in a patient's blood are unfavourable to the growth of microbes that we have conditions unfavourable to their growth also in every other region of the body. Where the conditions in a nidus of bacterial infection have been investigated, it has almost invariably

[1] *Vide* author's paper: "On the Pathology and Treatment of Chilblains," *Lancet*, Jan. 30, 1897. *It may be incidentally noted here that chilblains, occurring in an adult who has not suffered in this way in childhood, and occurring in association with indolent nodes in the hands, often give indication of the presence of tubercular infection.*

turned out that these have been much more unfavourable to the destruction of micro-organisms than those in the blood.

Into the reasons of this I propose, in the second part of this paper, to go more fully. For the present it will suffice to point out that it follows directly from the fact of the conditions in the blood differing from those in the nidus of infection, that the local symptoms cannot—even in case they convey to us an accurate account of the conditions of the microbial infection in the local focus—give us a true measure of the conditions which obtain in the circulating blood.

The significance of this conclusion cannot escape you. You will appreciate that, inasmuch as the object of all inoculations is to operate on the condition of the blood, and inasmuch as the success or ill-success of inoculations can be judged only by the effect which is exerted on the blood, and inasmuch as the symptoms which manifest themselves in the focus do not furnish an unfallacious index of the condition in the circulating blood, we have not in those symptoms any unfallacious guide for control of the dosage.

(c) *The fact that the patient's general clinical condition remains undisturbed does not warrant us in assuming that the antibacterial potency of his blood is not undergoing momentous fluctuations under the influence of spontaneous auto-inoculations.*

We have just seen that the observation of the focus of infection is capable of suggesting to us quite a false idea of the effect that has been produced upon the blood by inoculation. Equally important is it for us to appreciate that we may be led quite as far astray if we take it upon ourselves to infer, from the fact that the patient has remained free from constitutional disturbance, that his blood has not, under the influence of spontaneous auto-inoculations, undergone alterations such as the immunisator ought to take into account in regulating his dosage and in interspacing his inoculations. Again, we should fall into error if we were to assume of every slight constitutional disturbance that it must stand in connexion with an auto-inoculation. From the responsibility of guessing in such a case, and from the dangers of guessing wrong, there would seem to be no way of escape except that which is provided by blood examinations.

Thus far I have spoken only of the case of a localised infection which gives to the clinical observer notification of every change which occurs in its condition. We have next to consider the case where changes in the focus of infection do not manifest themselves either rapidly or clearly upon the clinical record.

(2) *The case of a strictly localised infection where the conditions are unfavourable to the observation of changes in the condition of the focus of infection.*

Typical examples of the class of local infections I have here in view are furnished by the majority of cases of tubercular adenitis, tubercular arthritis, lupus, and pulmonary phthisis. Here we are dealing with

processes which are so slow in their evolution that one cannot, between one day and the next, or between one week and the next, or even it may be between one month and the next, make certain whether there has been progress or regress.

It is, of course, obvious that the clinical symptoms in connexion with the focus of infection will ultimately tell us whether vaccine-therapy has been of benefit, or has been productive of harm, or, as the case may be, that it has effected no sensible change in the focus of infection. But information which arrives thus tardily, arrives too long after the event to be of service. It is from the point of view of its unfruitfulness to the patient to be classed almost in the same category as the retrospective information which the physician derives from his post-mortem examinations and his case-mortality statistics.

For where we discover, only after a long sequence of inoculations, that the scheme of dosage which we adopted was appropriate to the conditions of the case, we have no certainty that the situation has remained the same and that the same scheme of dosage is still appropriate. The verdict of the clinical symptoms on that point will, if the inoculations are continued, be furnished only after another period of months, and then the problem will once more present itself and the answer will once more be postponed, and so on indefinitely.

Again, where we discover, after a long sequence of inoculations, that sensible harm has been done, we learn only that our scheme of dosage has been ill-chosen, but we do not know in what direction to seek for a better scheme. In like manner where, after a long sequence of inoculations, we discover that the condition of the focus is unaltered, we do not know whether some of our sequence of inoculations have been benefiting the patient, or whether others may not have been doing him harm, or whether they have all been alike ineffective.

The German proverb speaks here truth when it tells us that "God Almighty does not send in the reckoning on every Saturday night." That reckoning comes, in cases such as we are here considering, only after long waiting. And when it comes, it comes not in the form of a detailed account with each item set out with its profit and loss, but only as a grand total. It is therefore the part of a prudent man anticipating the day of reckoning to make periodic inquisition and to find out for himself how his account stands.

(3) *The case of an acute febrile condition.*

In the respect that we are here face to face with a pathological phenomenon, whose course can be continuously followed by the clinician, the case of an acute febrile condition presents analogies with the case of a localised infection which has an acute evolution, and which is directly accessible to inspection. In fever we have, in the readings of the clinical thermometer, a means of judging of the results of our inoculations which is of equal value with the indications which are, in the cases of localised infection, afforded to us by a direct inspection of the focus.

While the temperature curve is a measure of intoxication and not of immunisation, and while there is no direct and constant relation between the temperature curve and the production of antibacterial substances in the organism, we may take it that a diminution in the antibacterial potency of the blood generally leads to a multiplication of microbes in the system, this to increased intoxication, and this, in its turn, to a rise of temperature. In like manner, we may take it, that an increase in the antibacterial potency of the blood leads, as a rule, to a restriction of microbial growth in the organism, this to diminished intoxication, and this, in its turn, to a reduction in the temperature. But while it is the rule to find this inverse relation of temperature to antibacterial potency, it is certainly not the invariable rule. It is notorious that excessive intoxication may condition a fall in temperature; and it is conceivable that a rise in temperature may sometimes be directly associated with efficient immunising response.

We must, as in connexion with localised infections so also in connexion with pyrexia, be on our guard against the fallacy of mixed infection. Just as the aggravation or persistence of clinical symptoms in connexion with a local focus may sometimes be imputable to an intercurrent, or already pre-existing but subordinate infection, so here, in connexion with pyrexia, a rise or fall of the temperature may sometimes be imputable to a bacterial infection other than the one which is being combated.

(4) *The case where all local and general symptoms are in abeyance or have returned to the condition which prevailed previous to inoculation.*

The case I have here in view may be encountered indifferently in connexion with the three classes of infections considered above.

In connexion with the first class of infection, and let us here take the case of a furuncular infection, the situation arises when, after the disappearance of all active furuncles, a condition of uncertainty prevails as to whether the patient is now immune, or whether he is still liable to suffer at any moment from a recurrence of his troubles.

In connexion with the second class of cases, let us say, in the case of a tuberculous joint, the problem presents itself where the clinical symptoms have quieted down, and we are left in a state of uncertainty whether the infection has been eradicated or whether it still persists.

In connexion with a pyrexial infection, we are confronted with the difficulty when we are called upon to decide whether the invading microbes have been eradicated or whether there is still liability to recurrence.

It will be manifest that in none of these situations—and let us note that situations such as these must sooner or later arise in connexion with every immunisation which is progressing towards recovery—can the immunisator obtain any guidance or help from clinical methods.

Résumé of the conclusions which have been arrived at.

Let me now try to sum up to you very briefly the main conclusions which have been reached in our inquiry as to how far, and in what kind

of case, the clinical symptoms enable us to correct and control the dosage of our vaccines.

Pro hac vice, I may perhaps with advantage discard the vocabulary of science for the vocabulary of metaphor.

(1) Where it is a question only of a short passage, or, as the case may be, of a succession of short passages, with landmarks continuously in view, over familiar waters where, while stranding is not out of question, serious shipwreck is unthinkable, it would be ridiculous to insist that the pilot should keep the lead going, and should set his course by compass readings. On the other hand, even here, if, as often happens, the landscape becomes indistinct, or is temporarily obliterated, the only rational alternative to anchoring and waiting for the reappearance of the landmarks would be to proceed by compass readings and by the lead.

(2) Where it is a question of a protracted voyage, during which no sequence of guiding landmarks could be expected to come into sight, it is desirable that compass readings should be taken every time that the ship is put upon a new course, or, if that should be impossible, always at the very first warning of impending danger. For otherwise the vessel might very easily zigzag about to no purpose, or she might, if the error in shaping her course happened to be a cumulative one, go very far out of the right track and come to serious disaster.

And we must here beware of thinking that the possibility of error in connexion with the laying off of the ship's course is the only possibility of error which we have to take into consideration. There are cases in which the ship may be flung violently off her course by the buffeting of winds and seas. And there are cases where, under some bias of wind or current, the ship may come off her course in a perfectly insensible manner. She may then easily run on the rocks if we do not lay out our bearings by the help of the compass.

(3) Where it is a question of navigating through specially perilous and uncharted waters, where a wrong turn of the helm might at any moment bring disaster, he would be a very imprudent and reckless seaman who would dispense with the aid of lead or compass, even when there were landmarks in sight. Continuous soundings might here quite well give us timely warning of dangers, of which, even with a good look-out, we might be unaware until we had already run in amongst them. Nor would the prudent seaman discard compass and lead until the vessel had come safely into harbour, or until, as the case might be, all efforts to save the ship had been abandoned.

My metaphor will have accomplished its purpose if it has brought home to you that, while we can in many cases conduct our immunisations aright by relying on the experience gained in the past, and upon clinical observation, there are whole classes of cases—these being cases where the only hope for the patient is to be found in the proper conduct of immunisation procedures—where the clinical symptoms cannot be trusted to furnish the necessary guidance.

If this is so, it will be well for us to consider how it has come about that the clinical symptoms have been proclaimed to be an all-sufficient guide. I suggest that the explanation of this is to be found, not in any doubt as to the reality of the risks which might be incurred by the administration of excessive doses of vaccine, but in the persuasion that, if only the glaring errors which were committed in connexion with the original inoculations of Koch's tuberculin are avoided, the results of vaccine-therapy will be, on the whole, satisfactory. Associated with this is, I submit, also the further persuasion, that where failures occur the responsibility for these need not necessarily rest with the immunisator, and that such responsibility can at any rate never be brought home to him.

I see nothing to censure in this attitude. It is clearly an attitude which conforms in every point to the accepted code of medical ethics. But, at the same time, I cannot conceal from myself that in every other department of practical life—let us think, for instance, of shipping or railways or any engineering industry—a much higher standard of responsibility is enforced. It is only in connexion with medicine that the expert is content to aim at an average of satisfactory results ; it is only in medicine that he thinks efforts to secure uniform success uncalled for ; and it is only in medicine that he contends that he has at disposal all the information he requires for his guidance, when a moment's consideration would make it clear to him that he is taking risks, and is proceeding in the dark.

Of a certainty this will not go on for ever. The higher standard of responsibility, which is enforced everywhere else in civilised life, will ultimately be enforced also in medicine. It will be enforced in medicine when we shall have shaped it into something more like a scientific profession.

We have here come, as you will immediately perceive, face to face with the critical question as to whether vaccine-therapy has been placed upon a definite scientific footing by the technique, which, in conjunction with Leishman, Douglas, and others of my fellow-workers, I have elaborated for measuring the changes in the blood which follow upon inoculation. I refer here in particular, but not exclusively, to the technique for the determination of the opsonic index of the blood.

Does the technique for the determination of the opsonic index furnish to the immunisator accurate and useful information with respect to the way in which the patient is progressing ?

It will not have escaped attention that while the statements, which my fellow-workers and I have made with respect to the accuracy of the opsonic technique and the diagnostic value of the opsonic index, have been fully confirmed by a large body of workers, the technique has, by certain authors, been denounced as flagrantly inaccurate, and it has been asserted confidently, and with an imposing show of figures, that there is no differ-

ence between the serum of the infected and the uninfected man in the matter of its power of inciting phagocytosis.

The proper reply to such assertions is to set out a large number of duplicate experiments and counts showing the consistent results which the technique yields in the hands of competent workers, and then to leave it to the authors, who have obtained only inconsistent results, to explain whether their results are to be ascribed to a want of intelligent appreciation of the principles of the technique, or to an incapacity for that conscientious attention to detail which the technique exacts, or to a bias which leads to the scamping of the precautions which are required for the avoidance of error.

My friend and fellow-worker, Dr. Alexander Fleming, has been good enough to come to my aid in this matter, and to extract from our laboratory records a large number of control experiments which were made in the course of our ordinary work. He has supplemented these by carrying out, both independently and in association with others of our laboratory workers, a large number of further control experiments. Dr. Fleming has also taken upon himself the labour of investigating, in a methodical manner, the effect of certain errors in technique, and, in particular, the effect of a fallacy in connexion with the agglutination of red blood corpuscles which has been only recently encountered by us. The results of these inquiries will be found set out in a paper which appears in this number of *The Practitioner*.[1]

The results,[2] which are there placed on record, demonstrate in a con-

[1] *Practitioner*, May, 1908, pp. 607–634.

[2] While these, which concern the only vital points in connexion with the technique, are fully set forth in Dr. Fleming's paper, there are two further points in connexion with the measurement of the opsonic index which are reserved for further study. The *former* of these relates to the question as to whether trustworthy results can be obtained by the opsonic technique in cases where the patient is suffering from severe bacterial intoxication. The *second* question as to whether estimations of the opsonic index made in different laboratories ought, given accurate work, to show the same close agreement as duplicate estimations made in the same laboratory.

Question as to whether trustworthy results can be obtained by the opsonic technique in cases where the patient is suffering from a severe bacterial intoxication.

A priori considerations would suggest that, in cases of severe bacterial intoxication—and *mutatis mutandis* the same applies to "absorption experiments" made to test the specificity of the opsonins of normal blood—there may quite well come into consideration in addition to such effect as may be exerted upon the bacteria by the opsonins of the serum also a toxic effect exerted upon the leucocytes by the bacterial toxins in the serum. At any rate, whether this is the explanation of the matter, or whether that explanation is to be sought in the non-exclusion of the fallacy of hæmagglutination which is wont to occur in such cases, it is to be observed that, in two series of experiments, which were undertaken in our laboratory collectively by the staff and by some workers who were attending the course of instruction, very inconsistent results were obtained with the bloods derived from two patients who were suffering from severe bacterial intoxication, while the results obtained in the case of the control bloods showed in both cases almost ideal agreement.

Question as to whether estimations of the opsonic index made with different cultures in different laboratories ought, given accurate technique and accurate work, to show the same closely concordant results as may properly be exacted in the cases of duplicate estimations made with the same cultures in the same laboratory.

While it is of course well understood that where an opsonic index is to be deter-

clusive manner that in connexion with tubercle—and it is only in connexion with tubercle that the accuracy of the method has been specifically called in question—the opsonic technique gives, in competent hands, extremely consistent results, and that it gives these, not only in the case of normal uninfected persons, but also in the case of the infected persons with whom we have dealt in our hospital.

I need not say any more but pass on to consider the utility of the information furnished by the opsonic index. This may be considered under two headings. We may consider first what has been learned in the way of principles and facts of general application by the measurements of the opsonic index, and secondly what help is furnished by estimations of the opsonic index in connexion with the treatment of a case.

A few words will suffice in connexion with each of these questions. In connexion with the former, I would draw your attention to the fact that—if we except the case of immunisation against typhoid where the changes in the bactericidal and agglutinating powers of the blood have served as a guide—almost everything that we know of the laws which govern the immunising responses which are evoked by bacterial vaccines in man, everything that we know of the phenomena of autoinoculation, and everything that we know with respect to the proper dosage of our vaccines, is derived from the opsonic index.

If any light has been thrown on the machinery of immunisation in man, if it has been possible to substitute for the excessive doses of tuberculin which were originally employed, as a first step, the maximal doses which could be administered without injury, and afterwards, both in connexion with tuberculin and in connexion with a num-

mined, exactly comparable quantities of serum, exactly comparable quantities of phagocytes and exactly comparable numbers of bacteria must be employed in the tubes which correspond respectively with the patient's blood and the normal blood, there is a further theoretical requirement which had been overlooked. Where duplicate pairs of experiments, undertaken with different bacterial suspensions, are to give concordant results, the microbes employed must in each case be comparable from the point of view of their power of resisting phagocytic attack. Now we are not entitled to assume of all the tubercle cultures, which might come into application in different laboratories, that they correspond in this respect; and it is *a priori* probable that this property may be modified to a varying extent by the different treatments to which the cultures may be subjected in different laboratories. While this possibility must always be kept in view, it would appear, from such control-experiments as we have carried out, that the mode of culture and the mode of preparation does not in the case of the tubercle bacillus make any important difference, if indeed it makes any, in the opsonic index arrived at.

It is quite otherwise in the case of certain other microbes, in particular in the case of the bacillus coli and the meningococcus. Here (and this has already been pointed out by Houston in connexion with the meningococcus) very different results may be obtained when bloods are tested with different cultures all derived from the same stock. For in association with the attenuation which these microbes undergo upon artificial media, they gradually become less and less resistant to the phagocytic attack of the normal blood. A comparatively low index is now obtained where before a very high index was obtained, the result being of course simply due to an increase in the denominator in the fraction:

$$\frac{\textit{phagocytic count of the patient's blood}}{\textit{phagocytic count of the normal blood.}}$$

ber of other bacterial vaccines, the minimal doses which can be employed with effect, and if we are now in a position to interspace our doses of vaccines in connexion with scientific principles—all this is due to the technique of the opsonic index.

When we turn from the general to the particular and ask what help we can gain from the determination of the opsonic index in connexion with the treatment of individual cases, I would point out that we can, by the aid of the opsonic technique, determine for each individual case exactly the same points, in connexion with the dosage, as have already been determined by the technique for the average case.

Knowing as I do full well that we have not in the opsonic readings anything even remotely comparable with the sextant and chronometer observations, patent log readings, and enumerated revolutions of the screws by which the position of an Atlantic liner is fixed from hour to hour as she crosses the ocean, I was, as you will perhaps have remarked, careful when employing the language of metaphor to speak of the measurement of the content of the blood in protective substances as analogous to the soundings and compass bearings of the navigator rather than to the more highly developed methods of nautical science.

While the modern navigator is in a position, in most cases, to prick off his position upon the chart with accuracy, the immunisator of to-day, less fortunate because less well equipped with scientific methods, can at least tell by his measurements of the opsonic power, or, as the case may be, by his measurement of any of the other protective elements of the blood, whether he is shaping a proper course for his patient, and whether his patient is keeping on that course.

Let me now pass to consider the second division of my subject-matter.

PART II.

How may such antibacterial agencies as the patient may already be possessed of or may acquire by immunisation, be directed to the destruction of microbes in the focus of infection?

Where inoculations are undertaken for prophylactic purposes, the immunisator is not required to make any dispositions for bringing the antibacterial elements of the blood fluids and the phagocytes into application upon invading microbes. They will come into application in a perfectly automatic manner.

Exactly the same thing holds true in connexion with vaccine-therapy where the invading bacteria have not as yet effected any fundamental alterations in the invaded tissues.

Entirely different is the situation when vaccine-therapy is resorted to

in cases where the invading bacteria have already firmly ensconced themselves, and have profoundly modified the conditions in the focus of infection. Here it will not suffice to increase and maintain the antibacterial power of the blood. It will be necessary in each case to take special steps to bring the phagocytes and antibacterial elements of the blood fluids to bear upon the invading micro-organisms.

Before we can profitably consider what these steps ought, in each particular case, to be, it will be well to take a general survey of the conditions with which we have to deal.

We may study, *first*, the distribution of the antibacterial agents in the normal organism ; *secondly*, the inflammatory reaction which supervenes upon a bacterial invasion of the tissues, and the changes in the distribution of the antibacterial agent which are associated with that reaction ; and, *thirdly*, the conditions which present themselves when microbes have survived the inflammatory reaction, and have made for themselves a nidus in the tissues.

General question of the distribution of antibacterial agents in the normal organism.

In the circulating blood the organism has at immediate disposal practically the whole of its defensive forces. It has here at disposal, on the one hand, the bacteriotropic substances which are contained in the plasma and, on the other hand, its whole force of phagocytes.

It follows that where microbes make their way into the blood stream there will come into application against them, not only a superabundance of phagocytes, but also a superabundance of bacteriotropic substances. These last will operate upon the bacteria with a mass effect which will be continuously kept up to a level corresponding with the full bacteriotropic pressure of the patient's blood.

Where, on the contrary, the microbes effect an entrance into the tissues, they will find opposed to them, for the moment, only such stray phagocytes as may be casually passing through the tissue spaces which are the subject of invasion, and only such quantum of antibacterial substances as may be contained in the lymph which is flowing through these particular tissue spaces.

It is, in view of these considerations, immediately intelligible that the animal organism should, as it does, successfully resist microbes, administered through the channel of the blood, when it fails to offer resistance to the self-same microbes, administered by way of the tissues. It is also in conformity with these considerations that localised infections should be ordinary every-day events, that these localised infections should only very rarely lead on to secondary septicaemia, and that primary septicaemic infections should be of comparatively rare occurrence.

From these general considerations, we may also draw the lesson that, in all cases of localised infection, the aim and object of our treatment

ought to be to level up the conditions in the infected tissue to the conditions in the circulating blood.

Nature of the inflammatory reaction which supervenes upon a bacterial invasion of the tissues and changes in the distribution of the antibacterial agents which are effected by that reaction.

No one who has perused the illuminating lectures in which Metchnikoff discourses on the Comparative Pathology of Inflammation will fail to call to mind his great generalisation that everywhere through the invertebrate and vertebrate kingdoms the intrusion of bacteria or other foreign elements into the tissues is responded to by a determination of phagocytes to the seat of injury. Nor will any one who has read those lectures have forgotten that Metchnikoff there contends that the phagocytes are the only antibacterial agency, and that in the emigration of phagocytes is to be found the whole import of inflammation.

Since the publication of the lectures, we have in connexion with immunity been moving on to new view-points. Much has since then been learned about the antibacterial powers of the blood fluids, and in particular the work of Douglas and myself has shown that phagocytes, when unaided by the opsonic power of the blood, are comparatively impotent. It has accordingly become impossible to confine our attention, as did Metchnikoff in his lectures, to the phagocytes, and to regard these as alone significant, overlooking the increased transudation of fluid from the blood vessels which invariably accompanies inflammation, or setting this aside, as Metchnikoff did, as a phenomenon to which no special significance was to be attributed.

In short, we can no longer see in the transfer of phagocytes from the circulating blood to the invaded tissues the whole import of inflammation. Rather we must to-day recognise in inflammation a process which ministers to immunisation, on the one hand, by the transfer of phagocytes, and, on the other hand, by the transfer of antibacterial fluid from the circulating blood to the invaded tissues.

When we correlate with this view of inflammation the therapeutical principle which was borne in upon us by the consideration of the distribution of the antibacterial agencies in the normal body, it becomes clear that the therapeutical principle in question—I mean the principle of levelling up so far as may be the conditions in the invaded tissues to those in the circulating blood stream—is neither more nor less than a policy of bringing intelligent aid to nature, and furthering the defensive measures by which the organism responds to bacterial invasion.

Moreover, it will presently appear that while the original theory of Metchnikoff failed to furnish any explanation of the frequent ineffectiveness of the inflammatory reaction, the theory of Metchnikoff as here amended puts into our hands a key which unlocks the problem of the frequent miscarriage of the inflammatory reaction, supplying at the same time indications as to how such miscarriage may be rectified.

Conditions which present themselves in the case where microbes have survived the inflammatory reaction, which has supervened upon their invasion, and have established themselves in a nidus in the tissues.

A nidus, in the sense in which I here employ the term, is constituted whenever, as the result of the miscarriage of an inflammatory reaction, and of changes in the tissues and products of inflammation, conditions are established in the focus of infection which are specially favourable to the infecting microbes.

Common to every bacterial nidus is the circumstance that the effective access of phagocytes and bacteriotropic substances to the infecting microbes is in some way hindered.

The impediment may consist in any of the following:—(*a*) a defective blood supply to the seat of infection; (*b*) a hypercoagulable and hyperviscid condition of the blood, for this would impede transudation of fluid from the blood vessels and would be favourable to the coagulation of effused lymph in the tissue spaces; (*c*) an accumulation of excessive fluid in the focus, for this would prevent the phagocytes coming in contact with the bacteria; (*d*) a blocking of the tissue spaces by accumulated leucocytes and coagulated lymph, for this would constitute a mechanical hindrance to the entrance of fluids and phagocytes into the focus of infection; (*e*) a stagnation of lymph in the focus of infection, for this would lead to a gradual reduction of the antibacterial potency of the lymph, which would render the phagocytes ineffective, and an accumulation of bacterial toxins and tryptic ferment, which would paralyse the phagocytes.

When we have appreciated that inflammation is associated with a transudation of blood fluids and an emigration of phagocytes, and when we have appreciated that inflammation may be associated with hyperplasic changes in the tissues, and may be complicated by secondary changes in the products of inflammation, and when we realise that one or more of these factors may predominate over the others, it will inevitably come home to us that we must expect to meet a number of different types of nidus, each corresponding with an inflammatory reaction which has miscarried in some special way, and each possessing characters which are special to itself.

The more important cases with which we have to deal are the following:

(*a*) the case where serous effusion is the characteristic feature in connexion with a nidus of infection;

(*b*) the case where the tissue spaces in the nidus of infection are blocked with leucocytes and coagulated lymph;

(*c*) the case where suppuration has occurred in the nidus of infection, and an abscess sac has been formed;

(*d*) the case where in connexion with a microbic infection of the skin a nidus has been formed under the shelter of a scab;

(*e*) the case where a nidus of infection has been formed on the surface of granulation tissue.

We may consider these cases seriatim.

(*a*) *Conditions which obtain where serous Effusion is the Characteristic Feature in connexion with a Nidus of Infection.*—In connexion with serous effusion, it is important to call to mind that, if we except the typhoid bacillus and the cholera vibrio, all the other pathogenic germs which come into consideration in connexion with human pathology have, so far as they have been examined, proved completely resistant to the bactericidal action of the blood fluids. It is an obvious corollary to this that any inflammatory reaction, which begins and ends in a serous effusion, must practically always be an ineffectual reaction. Furthermore, it will be plain to consideration that where serous effusion predominates over phagocytic reaction to such an extent as to make it difficult for the phagocytes to find and possess themselves of the bacteria, the excess of effusion must constitute a hindrance to the destruction of these by the agency of the phagocytes.

There is yet a further point which has to be borne in mind in connexion with serous effusion. It is now a familiar matter that when microbes are brought in contact with the blood fluids they rapidly absorb from these the bacteriotropic elements for which they have a chemical affinity. It is a corollary to this that wherever within the organism a serous effusion stands in contact with bacteria, it will lose more and more of its antibacterial potency. Douglas and I have shown that it actually does so.

(*b*) *Conditions which obtain where the Tissue Spaces in the Nidus of Infection are blocked with Leucocytes and with Coagulated Lymph.*—The conditions, which we have here to consider, may be regarded as the direct converse of the conditions which are met with in connexion with serous effusion. Whereas *there* we had a preponderance of transudation over emigration, *here* we have a preponderance of emigration over transudation; and, whereas *there* the effused lymph had little tendency to clot, *here* the effused lymph clots in the tissues binding the inflammatory products together into a consolidated mass.

Inflammatory reactions which eventuate in this manner may be met with both in animals and man. In the rabbit, for instance, pus would appear normally to take the form of a solid cheesy mass, consisting of leucocytes held together by meshes of fibrin. In man the inflammatory products take this form only under quite special conditions. They do so in acute infections of the lungs, perhaps most characteristically in croupous pneumonia. There, as you know, we have in the alveoli of the consolidated lung not fluid pus, but a solid inflammatory product consisting principally of polynuclear leucocytes embedded in a meshwork of fibrin. A quite similar fibrinous pus may be formed also in the spaces of the subcutaneous tissue. Where we speak of a carbuncle, or of brawny infiltration, or simply of induration in connexion with any pyogenic invasion,

we are in reality speaking of lesions which are characterised by a more or less complete infiltration of the tissue spaces by a fibrinous pus.

If we now ask ourselves in what manner the blocking of the tissue spaces by a consolidated pus will influence the survival of the invading bacteria, the answer immediately suggests itself. Such blocking of the tissues will prevent, or render difficult, the conveyance of any additional lymph or of any reinforcing phagocytes into the focus of infection. If now the phagocytes which are on the spot have, owing to deficient opsonic power in the lymph originally effused, been from the outset ineffective; or, if having originally been effective, they have been confined by the coagulation of the lymph, or have been rendered ineffective, either directly by the accumulation of bacterial toxins, or indirectly by lymph gradually losing its opsonic potency; it will be intelligible that the invading bacteria should—in the interior of the infiltrated tissues—be able to maintain themselves safe from attack, at any rate, until such time as the barrier against the protective agencies of the organism shall have been broken down by the sloughing of the infected tissues.

(*c*) *Conditions which obtain in the case where Suppuration has occurred and an Abscess Sac has been formed.*—What occurs in connexion with suppuration and abscess formation would seem to be as follows:—

When the leucocytes disintegrate in the focus of infection—and they will die and disintegrate not only under the influence of the bacterial toxins which are generated, but also independently of this—there will, as has been shown in a masterly manner by Opie, be liberated in the focus of infection larger and larger quantities of tryptic ferment, until finally the antitryptic power,[1] which the lymph possessed when it transuded

[1] It may be of interest here to briefly describe a simple technique by which the tryptic potency of the leucocyte when isolated from the blood fluids, and the antitryptic power of those fluids may be demonstrated and measured. For the demonstration of the tryptic power of the leucocyte we may have recourse either to leucocytes isolated from pus, or to leucocytes isolated from the circulating blood. Where we are concerned to avoid sources of error from bacterial contamination and to employ irreproachable leucocytes, we may most conveniently have recourse to the circulating blood. The procedure which will be appropriate will be indicated by the following instructions:—

Take a piece of glass tubing, about three-fifths of an inch diameter and 2 to 2½ inches long. Draw it out at one end into a capillary stem forming thus a pipette with a moderately long barrel-shaped upper extremity. Employing a rubber teat and placing a mark upon the stem, draw up first any convenient measured quantity of blood (say, 50 to 100 cmm.) into the pipette, and then 5 volumes of distilled water. Mix in the barrel of the pipette and then seal off the capillary stem a little below the point where it expands into the neck, and place the diluted hæmolysed blood, which will thus have been obtained, in an incubator at 37 C. Leave it there for 30 minutes. Now, using another capillary pipette, direct a stream of water on to the clot which will have formed and continue washing the clot and removing the wash water until a contracted and almost colourless clot shall have been obtained. (Microscopic examination of such a clot shows that it consists of a solid mass of leucocytes embedded in a meshwork of fibrin.) Now liquefy some 10 to 15 per cent. gelatine—a tube of the nutrient gelatine which is employed as a culture medium will serve for this purpose—and taking up in a pipette a measured volume of this, corresponding with, say, 2 to 2½ times the volume of the undiluted blood which was employed, introduce this into the tube which contains the washed and drained clot. Now seal the upper

from the blood vessels, is overpowered. When this condition is arrived at and the pus fluid has become definitely tryptic, the trabeculæ of connective tissue between the tissue spaces, together with any strands of fibrin which may envelop the leucocytes, are rapidly dissolved, with the result that an abscess sac is formed and definite fluctuation is obtained. The pus fluid may now proceed to eat into the surrounding tissues, and then either burrow in the depth or point upon the surface.

Of these facts those which are material in connexion with the survival of the infecting microbes are the following :—The fluid in the abscess sac, being more or less completely shut off from the circulating lymph by a barrier of infiltrated tissue, furnishes a nidus for the growth of bacteria. Under the influence of those bacteria, the lymph in the nidus, which originally possessed both antibacterial and antitryptic properties, becomes first impoverished in antibacterial elements, then charged with bacterial products and finally (in particular where pyogenic micro-organisms, as distinguished from tubercle bacilli, are at work) endowed with tryptic properties. It will be clear, *a priori*, on consideration of these facts, that fresh phagocytes (should such arrive upon the scene) would, even, if they escaped paralysis by bacterial toxins and digestion by the tryptic ferment, find in the abscess fluid no opsonic substances to co-operate with them.

The sequence of events which has just been described can, as a matter of fact, be readily followed by direct examination. While in the early stages which precede abscess formation phagocytosis may be encountered, microscopic examination of pus after an abscess has been formed will practically always show that the leucocytes have degenerated, and that phagocytosis is entirely absent. And separate examination of the

end of this tube in the flame and place in an incubator at a temperature of 50 to 55 C., which is the optimum temperature for a tryptic digestion.

Prepare, using in each case exactly the same volumes of blood, distilled water, and gelatine, a whole series of tubes. Into certain of these introduce, mixing carefully with the gelatine, a measured volume of normal serum corresponding with $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ the volume of the blood originally employed.

After incubating the tubes at 50 to 55 C. for 2 to 3 days—that interval of time is required to allow of the disintegration of the leucocytes—examine the condition of the clot in the tubes, and place these upright in cold water or on the laboratory bench so as to give opportunity for the solidification of the gelatine. It will now be found that the clot will have disintegrated and the gelatine will have lost its power of setting in the case of the tubes which contain only gelatine and clot, while in the tubes which received an addition of serum, the tryptic action will have been inhibited, with the result that the clot will be intact and the gelatine will have retained its power of setting.

The measurement of the tryptic or antitrpytic power of a fluid may be carried out by the aid of throttled pipettes and the technique for progressive dilution, mixture and storage which I have described in connexion with the measurement of the agglutinating power of the blood (*Lancet*, July 25, 1903).

Into companion throttled pipettes there would be introduced (combined in the one case with serum and in the other case with an equivalent of water) progressive dilutions of the tryptic fluid mixed in each case with indicator fluid. That indicator fluid would consist of a milky suspension of very fine floccules of coagulated albumen, such as is obtained by heating a normal serum diluted sixfold with a very attenuated acetic acid. The clarification or, as the case may be, non-clarification of such a fluid by the progressive dilutions of the digestive fluid renders manifest to the eye the action of the digestive ferment or the inhibition of its action.

leucocytes and the pus fluid shows, in the case of the leucocytes, that, even after they have been washed and have been furnished with normal serum, they are incompetent to ingest bacteria, and in the case of the pus fluid that it paralyses healthy leucocytes, and that it is incapable of exerting any opsonic action upon bacteria which are obtained from the abscess.

(*d*) *Conditions which obtain where in connexion with a Microbic Infection of the Skin a Nidus has been formed under the Shelter of a Scab.*—A word or two will serve to make clear the conditions which obtain where a surface infection has led to the formation of a scab. It will be appreciated that the outflow of lymph from the superficial vessels, which is associated with inflammatory response to a superficial infection, staunches as soon as the lymph begins to coagulate on the surface, and is definitely arrested when the coagulated lymph desiccates and hardens into a scab. In association with this, such phagocytes as may be contained in that lymph will be, in the first instance, immobilised, and then killed by desiccation. It will be quite otherwise with any surviving bacteria. These, when they become involved in the scab, will be sheltered from the attacks of the phagocytes. If now they succeed in multiplying in the deeper and correspondingly moister layers of the scab, they will reduce the antibacterial potency of the comparatively stagnant lymph which underlies the scab and will then be in a position to invade the underlying subcutaneous tissue or epithelium, and thus to extend the area of infection.

(*e*) *Conditions which obtain in the Case where we have to deal with a persistent Sinus.*—Where a sinus is freely discharging pus the conditions are, I take it, not dissimilar from those which prevail in an abscess. The pus, in such a case, possesses a low opsonic power, it contains no effective leucocytes, it may be charged with bacterial toxin, and it contains—as a glance at the sodden and digested appearance of the skin-surface in the neighbourhood of a discharging sinus informs us—a tryptic ferment.

In a case of a sinus which does not furnish any discharge we have, I take it, to deal with conditions somewhat comparable with those which would obtain in a well in the case where the inflowing water had deposited on its walls an insoluble element in such a manner as to choke all the conduits of inflow. Upon the walls and floor of such a well forms of life might quite well maintain themselves, which would be incapable of holding their own in the face of a copious inflow of water. So is it, I take it, in the case of the dry sinus. Here we may assume that the density of the granulation tissue which lines the walls, and the continual deposition of fibrin upon the surface of that lining membrane, prevent the free outflow of lymph on to the surface.

Consideration of the therapeutic measures by which we may bring the antibacterial agencies of the circulating blood into effective operation upon the microbes in a nidus of infection.

We have already appreciated that the spontaneous cure of localised

bacterial infections is effected by the transfer of antibacterial agencies from the circulating blood to the invaded tissues, and we have further appreciated that we can, in those cases of localised infection where a spontaneous cure is not effected, give aid, on the one hand, by increasing the antibacterial resources which are at disposal in the circulating blood, and, on the other hand, by bringing those antibacterial agencies into effective operation upon the bacteria in the invaded tissues. We have here to consider the problem as to how the latter object can be achieved in the case where the invading bacteria have already made for themselves a nidus in the invaded tissues. This will involve the discussion of (1) *the measures which may be employed to favour the egress of antibacterial agencies from the blood*, and (2) *the measures which may be employed to open the way for the entrance of the antibacterial substances and phagocytes into the actual nidus of infection.*

(1) *Measures which may be employed to favour the egress of Antibacterial Agencies from the Blood.* Although it might at first sight seem that it would be necessary, in connexion with the egress of antibacterial agencies from the blood to the tissues, to consider separately the case of the emigrating leucocytes and the transuding lymph, it becomes clear, on reflection, that, inasmuch as increased transudation is normally associated with increased emigration, and, inasmuch as we cannot promote the former of these without at the same time favouring the latter, it will be both legitimate and convenient to confine ourselves here to the discussion of the means we have at disposal for increasing transudation.

There are, in point of fact, two main factors which come into consideration in connexion with lymph—the first is the hydrostatic pressure in the local capillaries, the second is the coagulability and viscidity of the blood. I pass, therefore, to discuss the therapeutic measures we have at command for raising the hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries, and for diminishing the coagulability and viscidity of the blood.

(*a*) *Measures for raising the Hydrostatic Pressure in the Capillaries of the infected Part.*—It will be clear that, where the focus of infection is so situated as to make it possible to exercise control over the blood which circulates in it, there will be a possibility of increasing the hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries of the infected region, on the one hand, by determining a fuller supply of arterial blood to the affected region, and, on the other hand, by banking up the blood in the veins which carry off the blood from the affected part. We can raise the capillary pressure by the former method by applying hot fomentations, or heat in any other form, or rubefacients. We can raise the pressure by the latter method if, following the procedure of Bier, we apply a bandage loosely round the limb.

The consideration of the question as to how we can raise the hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries naturally leads on to the consideration of the question as to when and in what circumstances it will be expedient

to have recourse to measures for raising that pressure. Two different considerations must here be kept in view. On the one hand, the question as to whether the normal blood-supply to the infected part is capable of furnishing an adequate lymph-stream must be considered; on the other hand, we must weigh the advantage which would be derived from the determination of increased protective substances to the affected part against the disadvantages which might result from the fact that the ampler lymph-stream would carry into the blood bacterial products which were previously locked up in the focus of infection. The decision as to where the balance of advantage lies in a particular case may thus be a very delicate matter. It is in many cases a question which cannot be resolved without a trial supplemented by a series of blood-examinations. It may, however, be laid down as a general working rule that the advantage will be greatest where the bacterial focus is situated in a poorly vascularised tissue, and that the disadvantage will be least (*a*) in the earlier stages of an infection (*b*) where the bacterial focus is of strictly moderate dimensions, and (*c*) where it has just been evacuated. In the case where the dimensions of a bacterial focus are considerable, the disadvantages of determining an increased lymph-stream to the affected tissues will generally altogether outweigh the advantages.

(*b*) *Measures for diminishing the Coagulability and Viscidity of the Blood.*—In the course of my studies in connexion with the causation of urticaria and other forms of serous hæmorrhage, on the one hand, and thrombosis, on the other hand, I have repeatedly pointed out that a condition of diminished blood-coagulability is associated with increased transudation into the tissues, and that a condition of increased blood-coagulability is associated with restricted transudation and with the transudation of a lymph which is very prone to coagulate in the tissues. I have, further, in connexion with the studies here referred to, shown that transudation can be increased or diminished at pleasure by rendering the blood more coagulable by the exhibition of calcium salts or, as the case may be, by diminishing its coagulability by the administration of a decalcifying agent, such as citric acid (citric acid, 2–4 grammes, t.i.d.).

The fact that diminished coagulability of the blood goes hand in hand with increased transudation of lymph is of interest to us here, inasmuch as it suggests that diminished blood-coagulability may be a factor in the production of serous effusion.

The fact that increased blood-coagulability goes hand in hand with diminished transudation of lymph and with a tendency on the part of the effused lymph to clot in the meshes of the tissues, in like manner suggests that a hypercoagulable condition of the blood may be a factor in the production of brawny swelling and carbuncle.

The fact that transudation can be decreased by the administration of calcium salts has a possible therapeutic application in connexion with those cases where spontaneous auto-inoculations are occurring in re-

sponse to a conveyance of bacterial products into the blood by the agency of the lymph.

Lastly, the fact that lymph transudation may be increased, and the fact that the tendency on the part of a lymph to coagulate in the tissues may be counteracted by the administration of citric acid, has, it seems to me, a very important application in connexion with the treatment of brawny swelling. I have already [1] given details of a case of Ludwig's angina, where an obvious change for better ensued upon the administration of this decalcifying and lymphagogic agent.

In this connexion it is interesting to note that our grandmothers employed with success a similar method of treatment in connexion with infections of the respiratory passages. They were, as you remember, wont to administer decalcifying draughts of black currant tea for the purpose of "loosening a hard cough," and they often followed these up by another lymphagogue in the form of oatmeal gruel.

(2) *Measures that may be employed to open the way for the entrance of Antibacterial Elements into the Focus of Infection.*—We have already, in connexion with the suggestion that citric acid may with advantage be administered for the purpose of counteracting the clotting of the lymph in the focus of infection, considered one of the measures that may be employed to facilitate the entrance of phagocytes and antibacterial elements into the focus of infection. There are, however, other obstacles to that entrance. There is, in the first place, the barrier which is opposed by the infiltration of the tissues by leucocytes, and there is again the obstacle which is constituted by the accumulation of fluid in the focus of infection. Moreover, as we have seen when we were considering the conditions which obtain in abscesses, there are other hindrances, in the form of bacterial toxins and digestive ferments, which interfere with the functioning of the phagocytes. All these obstacles and hindrances can be got out of the way only by resort to evacuation.

We may briefly consider four different methods of evacuation—(*a*) *evacuation by incision;* (*b*) *evacuation by aspiration;* (*c*) *evacuation by puncture, or incision, combined with cupping;* (*d*) *evacuation by puncture, or incision or removal of scabs combined with the local application of a chemical lymphagogue.*

(*a*) *Evacuation by Incision.*—It is an axiom in surgery that all pus must be cut down upon, and it is almost equally a precept of surgical obligation, to carry free incisions through the infiltrated tissues where an inflammatory reaction culminates, instead of in pus, in brawny swelling, or in carbuncle. It is perfectly well understood in the case of abscess—not so well understood, I think, in connexion with brawny swelling or carbuncle—that the object of incision is in all cases the evacuation of the products of inflammation. We have witness to this in the fact that, in the case of suppurative processes, operative interference is postponed until fluctuation is obtained, and that provision is made for drainage either by opening

[1] *Lancet*, August 24, 1907.

the abscess at the most dependent part or by introducing tubes into the wound. But where, in the case of brawny swelling, incision has not resulted in evacuation, the surgeon does not seek a remedy for this condition. And the illogicality of surgery does not stop here. While in certain cases the evacuation of the contents of an abscess is followed up by measures which bring phagocytes and antibacterial substances from the blood into the evacuated focus—I am thinking here of hot fomentations—in most cases evacuation is regarded as if it were an end in itself, instead of being only a means for bringing the antibacterial agencies of the blood into effective operation. And yet where this is not achieved by incision, nothing is accomplished in the matter of the extinction of the infection. In fact, in such a case, nothing useful is achieved by operation, unless it be the safeguarding of the skin from erosion by the tryptic ferment of the pus, the prevention of burrowing, and the arrest of absorption.

(*b*) *Evacuation by Aspiration.*—Between evacuation by incision and evacuation by aspiration there are only few and comparatively unimportant differences. From the point of view of the complete evacuation of the contents of the abscess the advantage clearly rests with the method of incision. From the point of view of the avoidance of an external wound with the opportunity it furnishes for secondary infection, the advantage equally clearly lies with the method of aspiration. There remains only the question of the greater or less freedom of access of antibacterial agencies to the nidus of infection in either case, and the question of drainage. On the whole the advantage would here seem to rest with the method of aspiration, for no sooner is an abscess sac evacuated than it begins to fill up again with an antitryptic and opsonic lymph, and the equivalent of drainage is easily provided by repeating the aspiration.

(*c*) *Evacuation by Incision or Multiple Puncture combined with Cupping.*—The procedure here in question is a procedure which is recommended by Bier and Klapp as useful in connexion with the treatment of furuncles and carbuncles and localised tubercular affections.

At first sight, this method would seem to furnish exactly the kind of motive force which an immunisator would wish to employ for evacuating the inspissated inflammatory products from the choked tissues, and for drawing out from the blood, and carrying through the infiltrated or hyperplasic tissues, a stream of immunising lymph.

Practical experience and reflection, however, make clear that one requisite to success has here been overlooked.

In reality the procedure of Bier and Klapp is a filtration process carried out with the help of an exhaust. And it will be clear that where a viscid and coagulable fluid has to be drawn through a very fine system of pores, the clotting of the fluid in or at the mouths of those pores may very readily bring the filtration to a standstill. In the case of a laboratory experiment, the filter, if it is a paper filter, will then bulge and give way. In the case of the animal tissues in like manner, even when the negative pressure is kept within strict limits, inevitably something will give way.

What will in point of fact give way will be the delicate capillary walls, and in the case of a carbuncle thus treated its last state is, in my experience, worse than the first.

(*d*) *Evacuation by Incision, Puncture, or Removal of Scabs combined with the local Application of a chemical Lymphagogue.*—Attention has just been directed to the defects which must attach to every method which seeks to achieve by mechanical force the evacuation of obtruding material and the passage of a coagulable fluid through a choked filter.

There is a more excellent way.

If we can either clear the surface of the filter (I am here thinking of the removal of scabs from an infected surface), or pierce through the surface layer of the filter (I am thinking here of incision or puncture into a nidus of infection), and if we can then, without the application of any violence, cause the fluid to well out through the pores, depriving at the same time that fluid of its coagulability, we shall gradually open up, and then keep open our choked filter.

I have already, on more than one occasion, pointed out that we have in a citrated hypertonic salt solution a chemical agent which will, applied to the surface of any open system of tissue spaces, cause a lymph stream to set outwards through those tissue spaces towards the surface, while it will, at the same time, deprive that lymph of its coagulability.

I have suggested that this agent should be prescribed in the form of a powder consisting of five parts of common salt and one half part of citrate of soda, with instructions that it should be dissolved when required in 100 parts of boiling water. A concentration of 1·5 to 2 per cent. of salt will, however, in certain cases be preferable, the concentration of the citrate remaining as before at 0·5 per cent.

Where incisions have been carried down into infiltrated tissues, lint soaked in the stronger solution may with advantage be brought into the wounds.

In the case where an abscess cavity cannot be effectively drained, the stronger solution may with advantage be introduced into the sac, the fluid which collects being of course, from time to time, evacuated. Whereas in the thick pus obtained before treatment, phagocytosis will have been absent, it will, if the blood is not gravely at fault, be conspicuous in the thin sero-pus which now collects in the sac.

Sinuses may with advantage be syringed out with the same lotion, a piece of lint soaked in the lotion being afterwards introduced into their orifices. Here again, after the citrate and salt application, evidence of phagocytic activity will be found on examining the discharge. If not, the fault may with advantage be sought in the blood.

Keeping in view the fact that it is always possible, by continuously "drawing," to keep an orifice permanently open, it will be advisable in the case where we are dealing with a sinus, to suspend the citrate and salt applications from time to time, for a few days at a time, to ascertain what has been accomplished.

In the case of a boil or a tubercular abscess, it will be well, after the pus has been evacuated, to apply the citrate and salt solution to the orifice, and to continue to do so as long as any induration persists or any definitely purulent discharge is obtained.

The skin in the neighbourhood of the orifice may with advantage be protected against the irritating effect of the brine by a coating of vaseline.

In the case where a surface is covered with scab, it will be advisable, after this has been removed, to apply the weaker solutions of citrate and salt, and to continue the applications only for a few minutes to half an hour.

After the wound has in this way been sufficiently washed with a stream of immunising lymph, it will be well to staunch the lymph flow by powdering the surface with a styptic powder, consisting of calcium chloride 1 part, precipitated chalk 400 parts.

It is, I think, of interest, in connexion with these therapeutical applications of the citrate and salt, to recall that we have in this decalcifying and hydragogue application only a variant of the soap and sugar plasters which our grandmothers were wont to employ for "drawing" boils.

A similar interest attaches to the fact that another of the therapeutic applications of this citrate and salt solution was anticipated by the West Indian slave-owners.

I find it recorded of them that it was their practice, when they had scourged a slave and had cut the skin of his back into ribbons, to prevent the supervention of gangrene by rubbing into the wounds a concentrated brine, fortified by a decalcifying agent in the form of the juice of green lemons, and a further lymphagogue in the form of allspice. It was brutal, but it was very intelligent.

Finally, in this connexion we may note that brine springs and sea water have acquired, and probably have deserved, a certain reputation in connexion with the treatment of scrofulous ulceration.

Organisation of the Medical Profession for carrying out the Work of Therapeutic Immunisation.

In conclusion, a final word may be appropriate on the subject of the organisation of the medical profession for carrying out the work of therapeutic immunisation.

I have already said that, in the future of my expectation, the physician will be an immunisator. I conceive that the task of making, by bacteriological methods, a direct or inferential diagnosis of the nature of the patient's infection, the task of preparing and standardising special vaccines, the task of controlling the output of protective substances by blood examinations, and the direction of immunisation procedures where blood examinations are required as a guide will all fall upon his shoulders. To carry out these difficult and delicate tasks the physician will needs have to be trained as a laboratory worker.

But the physician—so I conceive of the matter—will not be the only immunisator.

Upon the general practitioner, when he shall have been trained in the physiology of immunisation, as he is now trained in the physiology of the circulatory system or the digestive system, will devolve, I take it, all such therapeutic immunisation, whether it be in the form of vaccine-therapy or auto-inoculation, as it shall prove practicable to reduce to a system of routine, or to conduct under the control of the clinical symptoms.

And upon the general practitioner, or, as the case may be, upon the surgeon, will devolve the task of directing such antibacterial agencies as may be available in a patient's blood to the destruction of microbes in the local focus of infection. When the surgeon comes to regard it as his function in connexion with bacterial infections to minister to immunisation he will not, in the case where he has to deal with infiltrated and infected tissues, stop short at mere incision and drainage, but will work to secure that free lymph flow through the focus of infection which is essential to immunisation. In like manner, when he has to deal with a suppurating focus he will not rest satisfied with evacuating the pent-up pus, but will recognise that such evacuation contributes to the extinction of the infection only in such measure as it serves to bring the antibacterial agencies of the blood into effective operation upon the pathogenetic microbes. And again, where the surgeon has to deal with a wound which refuses to heal, or with a wound which is pouring out day by day a wholly ineffective pus, he will realise that what is required in such a case is an increase of the antibacterial power of the blood and a more effective lymph flow such as would bring the antibacterial agents of the blood into active operation upon the infecting microbes.

Conclusion.

In conclusion, let me say this, that while I anticipate that the methods of increasing the antibacterial powers of the blood will be constantly improved, and while better methods for measuring the antibacterial power of the blood than any which we now have at disposal will no doubt be discovered, and while indubitably more effective methods for bringing the antibacterial agencies of the blood into operation in the focus of infection will be devised, we have already gone far enough in the path of therapeutic immunisation to see that we have in the power of increasing the antibacterial power of the blood by the agency of vaccines and in our power of bringing the antibacterial agencies of the blood into operation in the focus of infection beyond all comparison the most valuable assets in medicine.

LIST OF SCIENTIFIC PAPERS PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHOR.

On Immunisation; Preventive and Therapeutic Inoculation; and the Measurement of the Content of Blood in Antibacterial Substances.

WRIGHT.—"On Wooldridge's method of producing immunity against anthrax by the injections of solutions of tissue-fibrinogen." *British Medical Journal*, September 19, 1891.

" & BRUCE.—"On Haffkine's method of vaccination against Asiatic cholera." *British Medical Journal*, February 4, 1893.

" & SEMPLE.—"On the presence of typhoid bacilli in the urine of patients suffering from typhoid fever." *Lancet*, July 27, 1895.

" "On the association of serous haemorrhages with conditions of defective blood coagulability." *Lancet*, September 19, 1896. (Contains the records of the first two cases of typhoid inoculation in man.)

" "Note on the technique of serum diagnosis of acute specific fevers." *British Medical Journal*, January 16, 1897.

" & SEMPLE.—"On vaccination against typhoid fever." *British Medical Journal*, January 30, 1897.

* " & SMITH.—"On the application of the serum test to the differential diagnosis of typhoid and Malta fever." *Lancet*, March 6, 1897.

* " & SMITH.—"A note on the occurrence of Malta fever in India. *British Medical Journal*, April 10, 1897.

" "A further note on the technique of serum diagnosis." *British Medical Journal*, February 5, 1898.

* " & LAMB.—"Observations bearing on the question of the influence which is exerted by the agglutinins in the infected organism." *Lancet*, December 23, 1899.

" & LEISHMAN.—"On the results which have been obtained by the antityphoid inoculations, and on the methods which have been employed in the preparation of the vaccine." *British Medical Journal*, January 20, 1900.

" "On a method of measuring the bactericidal power of the blood for clinical and experimental purposes." First communication. *Lancet*, December 1, 1900.

" "On the quantitative estimation of the bactericidal power of the blood." *Lancet*, March 2, 1901.

" (conjointly with other Members of the Indian Plague Commission).—"On Haffkine's antiplague inoculation." REPORT OF INDIAN PLAGUE COMMISSION, 1901.

" "On the changes effected by antityphoid inoculation in the bactericidal power of the blood, with remarks on the probable significance of these changes." *Lancet*, September 14, 1901.

" "Note on the results obtained by antityphoid inoculation in the case of an epidemic of typhoid fever which occurred in the Richmond Asylum, Dublin." *British Medical Journal*, October 26, 1901.

* " "Notes on the treatment of furunculosis, sycosis, and acne, by the inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine, and generally on the treatment of localized bacterial invasions by therapeutic inoculations of the corresponding bacterial vaccines." *Lancet*, March 29, 1902.

" "On some new procedures for the examination of the blood and bacterial cultures." *Lancet*, July 5, 1902.

" "Synopsis of the results which have been obtained by antityphoid inoculation." *Lancet*, September 6, 1902.

*Wright & Windsor.—"On the bactericidal effect exerted by human blood on certain species of pathogenetic micro-organisms, and on the antibactericidal effects obtained by the addition to the blood *in vitro* of dead cultures of the micro-organisms in question." *Journal of Hygiene*, vol. ii., No. 4, October, 1902.

* ,, "On the measurement of the bactericidal power of small samples of blood under aerobic and anaerobic conditions, and on the comparative bactericidal effect of human blood drawn off and tested under these contrasted conditions." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxi, 1902.

,, "On the bacteriolytic power of the blood, and on its relation to the problems of anti-typhoid inoculation and the recent work of Dr. Macfadyen." *British Medical Journal*, April 4, 1903.

,, "A note on the serum reaction of tubercle, with special reference to the intimate nature of agglutination reactions generally, and to the therapeutic inoculation of the new tuberculin." *Lancet*, May 9, 1903.

* ,, "A lecture on the therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines and their practical exploitation in the treatment of disease." *British Medical Journal*, May 9, 1903.

,, "On some further improvements in the procedures for testing and judging by the naked eye of the agglutinating and bacteriolytic efforts exerted by the sera of patients suffering from, or preventively inoculated against typhoid fever, Malta fever, and tuberculous affections." *Lancet*, July 25, 1903.

,, "On the protective effect achieved by antityphoid inoculation as exhibited in two new statistical reports." *British Medical Journal*, October 10, 1903.

* ,, & Douglas.—"An experimental investigation of the rôle of the blood-fluids in connexion with phagocytosis." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxii, September 1, 1903.

* ,, & Douglas.—"Further observations on the rôle of the blood fluids in connection with phagocytosis." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxiii, 1904.

* ,, "On the treatment of acne, furunculosis, and sycosis by the therapeutic inoculation of a staphylococcus vaccine." *British Medical Journal*, May 7, 1904.

,, "A Short Treatise on Anti-Typhoid Inoculation." 1904. Constable, London, 3*s.* 6*d.* net. (Vide fly-leaf of this book.)

,, "Note on the preparation of microscopic slides for blood films; on the possible application of formalin gelatin as an antiseptic and disinfectant protective skin; and as a trypanosome-like organism found in association with some chronic pathological affections of the mouth." *Lancet*, July 9, 1904.

* ,, & Douglas.—"On the action exerted upon the staphylococcus pyogenes by human blood, and on the elaboration of protective elements in the human organism in response to inoculations of a staphylococcus vaccine." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, p. 147, July 26, 1904.

* ,, & Douglas.—"On the action exerted upon the tubercle bacillus by human blood fluids, and on the elaboration of protective elements in the human organism in response to inoculations of a tubercle vaccine." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxiv, 1904.

* ,, "A lecture on the inoculation treatment of tuberculosis." *Clinical Journal*, November 9, 1904.

* ,, "On the general principles of the therapeutic inoculation of bacterial vaccines as applied to the treatment of tuberculous infection." *Transactions, Royal Medico-Chirurgical Society*, vol. lxxxix, 1905, and *Lancet*, December 2, 1905, and December 9, 1905.

* ,, & Reid.—"On the possibility of determining the presence or absence of tubercular infection by the examination of the blood and tissue fluids." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

* ,, & Reid.—"On spontaneous phagocytosis and on the phagocytosis which is obtained with the heated serum of patients who have responded to tubercular infection, or, as the case may be, to the inoculation of a tubercle vaccine." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lxxvii, 1906.

*Wright.—"A criticism of the foundations of serum-therapy." *Clinical Journal*, May 16, 1906.

* ,, "A lecture on the Principles of Vaccine-Therapy." Delivered before the Harvey Society of New York. Originally published in the *Lancet*, August 17 and 24, 1907. Revised and brought up to date, January 1, 1908.

* ,, Douglas, Freeman, Wells & Fleming. "Studies in Connexion with Therapeutic Immunisation." *Lancet*, November 2, 1907.

* ,, "On some points in connexion with vaccine-therapy and therapeutic immunisation generally." *Practitioner* (Special Number, "On the Opsonic Method and Vaccine-therapy"), May, 1908.

** The papers which are marked with an asterisk are reprinted in the present volume.*

On Blood Coagulation and the Treatment of Thrombosis, Hæmorrhage, and Serous Effusions.

Wright.—"On the conditions which determine the distribution of the coagulation following the intra-vascular injection of a solution of Wooldridge's tissue-fibrinogen." *Journal of Physiology*, vol. xii, No. 2, 1891.

,, "Upon a new styptic, and upon the possibility of increasing the coagulability of the blood in the vessels in cases of haemophilia and aneurism and internal haemorrhage." *British Medical Journal*, December 19, 1891.

,, "A study of the intra-vascular coagulation produced by the injection of Wooldridge's tissue-fibrinogen." *Proceedings, Royal Irish Academy*, 3rd Series, vol. ii., No. 2, December 14, 1891.

,, "Lecture on tissue or cell-fibrinogen in its relation to the pathology of the blood." *Lancet*, February 27 and March 5, 1892.

,, "A note on the preparation and employment of physiological styptics." *Lancet*, 1893.

,, "A contribution to the study of the coagulation of the blood." *Journal of Pathology and Bacteriology*, June, 1893.

,, "On a method of determining the condition of blood coagulability for clinical and experimental purposes, and on the effect of the administration of calcium salts in haemophilia, and actual, or threatened, haemorrhage." *British Medical Journal*, July 29, 1893.

,, "On the influence of carbonic acid and oxygen upon the coagulability of the blood *in vivo*." *Proceedings Royal Society*, vol. lv, February 8, 1894.

,, "A note on certain improvements in the method of determining the condition of blood coagulability for clinical and experimental uses." *British Medical Journal*, February 3, 1894.

,, "On methods of increasing and diminishing the coagulability of the blood." *British Medical Journal*, July 14, 1894.

,, "On the treatment of the haemorrhages and urticarias which are associated with deficient blood coagulability." *Lancet*, January 18, 1896.

,, "Notes on two cases of urticaria treated by the administration of calcium chloride." *British Journal of Dermatology*, No. 89, vol. viii.

,, "On the association of serous haemorrhages with conditions of defective blood coagulability." *Lancet*, September 19, 1896.

,, "On the pathology and treatment of chilblains." *Lancet*, January 30, 1897.

,, "A contribution to the discussion on the blood in disease." *Transactions, Pathological Society of London*, vol. li, part 3, 1900.

,, & Knapp.—"A note on the causation and treatment of thrombosis occurring in connexion with typhoid fever." *Lancet*, December 6, 1902, and *Transactions of the Royal Medico-Chirurgical Society*, vol. lxxxvi, 1903.

,, "On the effect exerted on the coagulability of the blood by an admixture of lymph." *Journal of Physiology*, vol. xxviii, No. 6, December 15, 1902.

WRIGHT & PARAMORE.—"On certain points in connexion with the exaltation and reduction of blood coagulability by therapeutic measures; and in particular on the effect produced upon the blood by the ingestion of calcium chloride, calcium lactate, magnesium carbonate, cow's milk, and other medicinal agents." *Lancet*, October 14, 1905.

On Blood Alkalinity and the Pathology of Scurvy.

„ "On the pathology and therapeutics of scurvy." *Scientific Appendix to Report of the Army Medical Department for the year* 1895.

„ "On a simple method of measuring the alkalinity of the blood." *Lancet* September 18, 1897.

„ "On the pathology and therapeutics of scurvy." *Lancet*, August 25, 1900.

„ "Discussion on the ætiology of scurvy." *Transactions, Epidemiological Society of London.* New Series, vol. xxiii, pp. 94–97 and 108.

On Diabetes, the Measurement of Salt-Excreting Power of the Kidney, and the Differential Diagnosis between Physiological Albuminuria and that due to Renal Disease.

KULZ, E., & WRIGHT.—"Zur Kenntniss der Wirkungen des Phlorhizins resp. Phloretins." *Ztschrft. f. Biologie*, xxvii, N.F. IX.

WRIGHT.—"On some points connected with the pathology and treatment of diabetes." *British Medical Journal*, April 11, 1891.

„ & KILNER.—"On a new method of testing the blood and the urine, with special reference to the determination of the excretory efficiency of the kidney." *Lancet*, April 2, 1904.

„ & ROSS.—"On the discrimination of 'physiological' albuminuria from that caused by renal disease." *Lancet*, October 21, 1905.

On the Morphology of the Blood, and on Methods of measuring and counting the formed Elements in the Blood.

WRIGHT.—"On the leucocytes of peptone and other varieties of liquid extra-vascular blood." *Proceedings, Royal Society*, vol. lii, January 30, 1893.

„ & BRUCE.—"A note on the staining reactions of leucocytes." *British Medical Journal*, February 25, 1893.

„ "On certain new methods of blood examination, with some indications of their clinical importance." *Lancet*, January 23, 1904.

„ "On the preparation of microscopic slides for blood films, etc." *Lancet*, July 9, 1904.

On the preparation of a Sugarless Milk for the use of Diabetics, and of a Milk which does not clot in the Stomach for the feeding of Infants and Invalids.

WRIGHT.—"On some points connected with the pathology and treatment of diabetes." *British Medical Journal*, April 11, 1891.

„ "On the possible advantage of employing decalcified milk in the feeding of infants and invalids." *Lancet*, July 22, 1893.

On the Microscope.

WRIGHT.—"Method of projecting a micrometic scale upon a microscopic specimen." 1897. *Journal of Royal Microscopical Society*, 1897.

„ "On certain new methods of measuring the magnifying power of the microscope and of its separate elements." *Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society*, March 16, 1904.

„ "PRINCIPLES OF MICROSCOPY," being a handbook to the microscope. 1906. Constable, London, 21*s.* net. (*Vide* fly-leaf of this book.)

Various.

"A suggestion as to the possible cause of the corona observed in certain after-images." *Journal of Anatomy and Physiology*, vol. xxvi.

"On the nature of the physiological element in emotion." *Brain :* vol. xviii, 1895.

"Colour blindness." *Nineteenth Century*, April, 1892.

"Colour shadows." *Nineteenth Century*, May, 1895.

WORKS IN PREPARATION.

On the technique of the teat and the capillary glass tube, and on the application of that technique and other laboratory methods in bacteriological work and in the investigation and scientific treatment of disease.

Collected papers dealing with the coagulability and alkalinity of the blood and with the treatment of hæmorrhage, thrombosis, urticaria, physiological albuminuria, and scurvy, and with certain points in connexion with dietetics.

The Physiology of Belief—a Study in Physiological Psychology.

INDEX

A

Abscess—
Conditions obtaining in ——, 346
Formation of —— sac and burrowing, of pus due to digestive ferments liberated from disintegrating leucocytes, 346
Opsonic and antitryptic power of blood fluids abolished in ——, 346
Paralysis of phagocytosis in—— under influence of bacterial poisons and of the tryptic ferment liberated from disintegrated leucocytes, 346
Treatment of —— by incision and aspiration, 348, 354
Comparative advantages of incision and aspiration, 355
Fluctuation in —— does not necessarily indicate that resorption is impossible, 354 (footnote)
Absorption Experiments—
Fallacies of —— when undertaken in connexion with phagocytosis, 886 (footnote 1), 450 (footnote 2)
See also Opsonins, Specificity of
Absorption of Complement Test, 344
Acne—
Results obtained by vaccine therapy in ——, 268
See also Staphylococcus Infections
Active Congestion—
See Fomentations (Hot) and Rubefacients
Agglutinins and Agglutinating Power—
Agglutinins are bacteriotropic and therefore *ex hypothesi* antibacterial and protective substances, 36
Consideration of the argument that agglutinins are inoperative *in vivo*, and fallacy which may lurk in that argument, 36, 37
Investigation of the question as to whether the micro-organisms which maintain their vitality in the infected organism in typhoid fever and Malta fever do in point of fact maintain themselves in the presence of agglutinins, 37–39
Agglutinins and Agglutinating Power, *continued*—
Data with regard to the comparative content in agglutinins of the circulating blood and spleen, 37–39
Data with regard to the comparative content in agglutinins of the circulating blood and typhoid spots, 44
Correlation between the production of agglutinins in Malta fever and the clinical event of the case. *See Malta Fever*
Widal's view that the production of agglutinins stands in no relation whatever to immunisation, 344 and footnote
Author's use of the agglutinating power of blood as a measure of immunity in connexion with anti-typhoid inoculation based on assumed correlation between production of agglutinins and clinical event, 334
Measurement of agglutinating power employed by Koch and afterwards by author as a guide in immunisation against tubercle, 124, 125 and Table, 261, 335
Rationale of use of agglutinins in diagnosis of disease depends on fact that these are produced in response to auto-inoculation, 344
Table showing increase of agglutinins after inoculation of T.R., 125
Negative phases in agglutinating power after administration of excessive doses, 124, 271, Chart 1
Chart showing negative and positive phases of agglutinating power after inoculation of glanders vaccine into a guinea pig, 380, Chart 2
Toxic effects supervene upon inoculation of an "anti-typhoid" and an "anti-Malta fever" serum in spite of high agglutinating powers, 308, 312
Technique for measuring the agglutinating power of the blood:

Agglutinins and Agglutinating Power, *continued*—
In connexion with *tubercle bacillus*—
Fallacy of spontaneous agglutination can be circumvented by reducing the salt content of the fluid used for progressive dilution of serum and suspension of bacillary fragments, 113, 262
In connexion with *plague bacillus*—
Fallacy of spontaneous agglutination can be circumvented by reducing the salt content of the fluid used for progressive dilution of serum and suspension of bacillary fragments, 113 (footnote)
Disturbing factor which is introduced into opsonic measurements by agglutination
See Opsonic Power of Blood, Technique for Measuring
Agglutination Test—
Rationale of, 344
See also Agglutinins.
Aldridge, 22
Amboceptor (Haemolytic)—
Investigation as to the identity of the —— with the haem-opsonin and conclusion that these bodies are not identical, 189–195
Anthrax Bacillus—
Opsonic power of the normal blood fluids with respect to ——, 94–95 and Plate
Spores of —— form ideal elements for quantitative measurement of phagocytosis, 164 (footnote)
Observations showing growth of —— in regions of lowered bacteriotropic pressure, 164, 391–392, Charts 11 and 12
Charts showing changes in opsonic power of blood in anthrax infection of rabbits, 391–392
Antibacterial Elements of Blood Fluids—
See Agglutinating Power, Bactericidal Power, Bacteriolytic Power, Opsonic Power, and Inhibitory Power
Evaluation of —— for purpose of measuring immunising effect, *see Immunising Effect*
Distribution of antibacterial elements in normal organism, 453
Inflammation, Nature's method of conveying —— into focus of infection, 454
Bacterial nidus formed in tissues when inflammatory reaction non-effective, 455
Such niduses present themselves in the form of serous effusions, brawny infiltration, or carbuncle, abscesses, scabs on infected surfaces, granulations, and sinuses. *See under these and under Nidus of Lowered Bacteriotropic Pressure.*
Conveyance of —— into the focus of infection, can be determined by—
(*a*) increasing hydrostatic pressure in capillaries;
(*b*) diminishing viscidity of blood;
(*c*) evacuation of products of inflammation;
In connexion with (*a*) *see Fomentations, Rubefacients and Bier's Method of Passive Congestion*
In connexion with (*b*) *see under Citric Acid.*
In connexion with (*c*) *see Evacuation by Incision, Evacuation by Aspiration, Evacuation by Bier and Klapp's Method of Cupping, and Evacuation by Opening and Application of Citrate and Salt*
Antiplague Inoculation—
Haffkine claims that condition of immunity to plague acquired twenty-four hours after inoculation of his antiplague vaccine, 338
Risk of —— in incubation period, 201, 234
Favourable results from such inoculations reported, 202
Antiseptics—considered in connexion with treatment of bacterial infections.
(*a*) Inefficacy of —— when administered internally, due to fact that the ordinary antiseptics are more *histotropic* than *parasitotropic*, 318 and footnote
(*b*) Local application of ——, 318–320
Sabouraud's summary of effect of —— in treatment of bacterial infections of the skin, 319
Reasons of inefficacy of —— 319, 320
Antitryptic Power of Blood Fluids, 346, 457–458
Measurement of ——, 458 (footnote)
Antityphoid Inoculation—
Alterations produced in the blood by —— 230, 231, 233, Charts 3*a*, 3*b*, 5 and 6
Measurement of agglutinating and bactericidal power as an index of immunity based on anticipation of correlation between immunity and increased agglutinating power, 334, and increased bactericidal power, 335
Risk of inoculation in incubation period, 234
Arloing, 113, 263

Aspiration—*See Evacuation*
Auscultation and Percussion—
Chart showing auto-inoculation produced by ——, 418, Chart 32
Auto-Inoculations—
General doctrine of ——, 342–344
Spontaneous —— first described in connexion with phthisis, 297
Artificially induced —— first described in connexion with massage, 282
Question of comparative value of treatment by —— and vaccines, 350–352
Possibility of checking —— by resting and by administration of calcium salts, 297, 352, 461
Spontaneous —— in connexion with particular infections—
Tubercular Infection, first beginnings of, 381–386, Charts 4 and 5
Advanced phthisis, 387–390, Charts 7–10
Anthrax in rabbits, 391–392, Charts 11 and 12
How far has patient been brought in the direction of a cure when his auto-inoculations have been arrested ? 298
See also Expectant Treatment and Bacterial Infections (Generalized Infections)
Induced—— produced by various agencies—
by massage, 410–415, Charts 22–27 and in Table, 426–433
by active and passive movements, 415–419, Charts 28–34 and in Table, pp. 426–433
by operation, 416–420, Charts 34–37
by active hyperaemia, 421, Chart 38
by Bier's passive congestion, 421–425, Charts 39–44 and Table, pp. 426–433
by physical examination of chest, 414, Chart 32
by malignant disease, 415, Chart 27, Table, 426–433, Serial Number 27
Employment of —— for purposes of diagnosis, 344, 426–433 (Table)
Employment of —— for the purpose of determining whether bacterial focus has been extinguished or is still aglow, 345, 426–433 (Table)
Chart and Table showing diagnostic and therapeutic problems resolved by —— test, 425–433. *See also Serum Diagnosis.*

B

Bacteria—
Effect of attenuation of —— upon measurement of opsonic power, 451 (footnote)
Bacterial Infections—
Generalized Infections—
Conditions which obtain in —— 294–296
Association of with spontaneous auto-inoculation and auto-immunisation manifested by a fluctuating opsonic index, 275
Tables and Charts showing auto-inoculations in connexion with ——, 153, 387–409, Charts 7–21
Localized Infections—
Are indefinite in duration, do not tend to get well spontaneously, and are generally associated with a low opsonic index and absence of spontaneous auto-inoculation, 276, 323
— are the really serious ills of life, 323
Where —— attain considerable dimensions spontaneous inoculations may occur, and artificially induced auto-inoculations can be obtained, 343
Suggested explanation of low opsonic power found in blood in ——, 276
See also Localized Infection, Foci of
Diagnosis of—
In open infections diagnosis by culture and microscopical examination may require to be supplemented by inferential (serum-) diagnosis, 374–375
In "closed infections," serum-diagnosis to be employed 375
See Serum-diagnosis
Treatment of—
(*a*) Current methods of —— and criticism of, 318–323
See under Antiseptic Treatment, Extirpation Operations, Determination of Lymph to Focus of Infection, Serum Therapy, Expectant Treatment
(*b*) Therapeutic immunisation
See under Therapeutic Immunisation
Bactericidins—*See Bactericidal Power*
Bactericidal Action of Blood Fluids—
Initiating work of Nuttall, 101
Work of Stern on —— of human blood fluids, 101
Criticism of the above, 101
—— exerted by human blood fluids on the *bacillus typhosus*, quantitative data 46, Table i
Diminished by addition to the serum of sterilized typhoid cultures and filtrates from typhoid cultures, 46 and 47, Tables i and ii
Diminished by addition of cholera cultures, 50, Table iv

Bactericidal Action of Blood Fluids, *continued*—
Not diminished, or not appreciably diminished, by cultures of staphylococcus, plague, and micrococcus Melitensis, 58, Table ix; 64, Table xiii; and 69, Table xviii
Abolished by addition of an anti-typhoid serum, 308
—— exerted by human blood fluids on the *cholera vibrio*, quantitative data 49, Table iii
Diminished by addition to the serum of sterilized cholera cultures, 50, Table iv; of typhoid cultures, 51, Table v
Not diminished, or not appreciably diminished, by addition of staphylococcus, plague, or micrococcus Melitensis cultures, 59, Table x; 65, Table xiv; and 70, Table xix
Is a —— exerted upon the *staphylococcus* by human serum, 55–6
No —— exerted upon staphylococcus by 50 per cent. dilution of serum, 56, Table vii
No —— exerted upon staphylococcus by undiluted serum, 57, Table viii
No —— exerted upon staphylococcus by serum of a patient who had been inoculated with staphylococcus vaccine, 57, Table viii; and 209
Is a —— exerted upon the *bacillus pestis* by human serum, 61–63
No —— exerted upon plague bacillus by 50 per cent diluted serum of a normal man nor of a man who had two years previously been inoculated with plague vaccine, 61, Table xi
No —— exerted upon plague bacillus by undiluted serum of the last mentioned nor by undiluted sera of two normal men, 62, Table xii
Is a —— exerted by human serum upon the *micrococcus Melitensis*, 66–69
No —— exerted upon micrococcus Melitensis by 50 per cent. diluted sera of four normal men and of a man who had three years previously suffered from Malta fever, 66, Table xv; 66, Table xvi; and 25–27
No —— exerted upon micrococcus Melitensis by undiluted serum of last mentioned or serum of a normal man, 68, Table xvii

Bactericidal Action of Blood Fluids, *continued*—
Conclusion that —— is not an action exerted upon all microbes but only, so far as is known, an action exerted on the bacillus typhosus and vibrio cholerae. The contrary might have been expected if —— were derived from the white blood corpuscles, since these exert a digestive action indifferently upon a variety of microbes, 71
—— of human serum exerted to practically the same extent in aerobic and anaerobic conditions, 74 (Table)
Bacteriolysins, 325
Bacteriotropic Pressure—
Employment of term suggested and technical signification assigned to the term, 41. *See also Nidus of Lowered Bacteriotropic Pressure*
Bacteriotropic Substances—
Term originally suggested in 1899 by author as a generic term to denote, in accordance with Ehrlich's scheme of terminology, all the substances in the blood fluids which turn towards (τρεπω = I turn) and enter into chemical combination with bacteria, 36 and footnote
Term diverted from this meaning by Neufeld and Rimpau and employed by them with the special signification of thermostable opsonins. Contention that this use is illegitimate and inconvenient, 169 (footnote)
See Antibacterial Elements. Agglutinins, Bactericidins, Bacteriolysins, Opsonins.
Probable incompleteness of the above list, 332
Discussion of site of formation of ——, 340–341
Bannerman, 202
Barratt, 188
Bias, Fallacy of—
Discussion of fallacy of ——
(*a*) In connexion with clinical observations, 360
(*b*) In connexion with opsonic estimations, 360
Bier & Klapp's Method of Cupping—
Rationale of ——, 348, 355
Criticism of ——, 463–464
Bier's Method of Passive Congestion—
A method of accelerating lymph stream in focus of infection, 279, 321

Bier's Method of Passive Congestion, *continued*—
——is a method of therapeutic immunisation, which induces both an auto-inoculation and a determination of lymph to focus of infection, 321, 349
Charts showing auto-inoculations produced by ——, 421–426, Charts 39–43 and pp. 426–433, Table
We have evidence of benefit from the auto-inoculations in the fact that improvement may occur in foci remote from bandaged part, 350, 420
But risks may also attach to the auto-inoculations, 321, 350
Biliary Calculus—
See Cholecystitis
Black Currant Tea—
See Expectorants
Blood Plasma—
Experiment on the relative opsonic power of —— and serum, 80
Boils—
See Furunculosis
Bordet, 344
Brawny Infiltration (characterized by preponderance of emigration over transudation and by clotting of lymph in tissues)
Conditions in ——, 347, 456, 457
Treatment by diminishing coagulability of blood by internal administration of citric acid, 356
Local treatment by citrate and salt applications, 461, 464
Brine Springs—
Suggested explanation of value in treatment of chronic ulceration, 465

C

Calcium Salts—
Use of —— for checking lymph flow and associated auto-inoculations, 297, 352
Use of —— in connexion with treatment of chilblains, 444
Use of a powder of precipitated chalk and calcium chloride as a local application for staunching lymph flow, 352, 465
See Serous Haemorrhages and Urticaria
Cancer—
See under Malignant Disease
Carbuncle, 348, 461
See also Brawny Infiltration
Chantemesse's Antityphoid Serum—
Suggestion that it is a typhoid vaccine in disguise, 313–316
Tacit adoption of this view by Chantemesse, 316 (footnote)
Dosage employed in harmony with suggestion that —— functions as vaccine, 313–314
Chilblains—
Aggravation of lupus may be simulated by ——, 444
Frequent occurrence in adults in connexion with tubercular infection, 444 (footnote)
Treatment by calcium salts, 444
Cholecystitis—
Treated by vaccine-therapy, 268
Citrate and Salt Lotion—
Suggested employment of —— as a local lymphagogue, 280
See also Drawing
Citric Acid—
Administration of, for the purpose of promoting lymph flow by decalcifying and diminishing the viscidity of blood, 279, 356, 462
Administration of in connexion with treatment of brawny infiltration, 356; and treatment of thrombosis, 397 (footnote)
Coli Bacillus—
Results of vaccine therapy in infections of urinary passages, gall bladder, and intestinal mucous membrane by ——, 268, 369
Case and Chart, 403–406
Effect of attenuation of —— on opsonic index arrived at, 402
Agglutination of —— in urine, 405, 442
Colitis—*See Coli Bacillus*
Collodion Bags—
May favour the growth of micro-organisms in the body not only by excluding leucocytes, but also by interfering with free flow of lymph, 41 (footnote)
See Nidus of Lowered Bacteriotropic Pressure
Compound Fractures—*See Staphylococcus Infections* (prophylactic inoculations)
Correlation—
Evidence of efficacy of vaccine-therapy obtained by showing that there is a close —— between rise and fall of the bacteriotropic power, and in particular of the opsonic power of blood, and clinical progress or regress of patient, 362–367
Partial evaluation of antibacterial power of blood may be taken as

CORRELATION, *continued*—
a guide in immunisation if there can be shown to be —— between results of such evaluation and clinical events, 334–335
—— of pain with change in opsonic power, 366
—— of positive phase with sense of vigour and euphoria, 271, 367
—— of negative phase with low spirits, 367
—— between the rise and fall of the agglutinating power of the blood and clinical event in typhoid fever, 35, in Malta fever, *see Malta Fever*
COURMONT, 35, 39
CORTHORNE, 202
CRISIS—
Correlation of crisis with a rise in opsonic power. *See Pneumonia*
CUMULATION (of effects produced upon the blood by the inoculation of vaccines)—
—— effects obtained by daily administrationof minimal doses of vaccines, 259
Suggestion that disastrous results following original inoculations Koch's tuberculin probably due to a —— in direction of negative phase, 243
—— in the direction of a negative phase, exhibited in Chart of agglutination power, 271
Importance of —— in the direction of negative phase considered in connexion with preparation of antibacterial sera. *See serum-therapy*
—— in the direction of a positive phase, 272, Curve 2, not realized in the case of opsonic curve after inoculation of tubercle vaccine, 273, Curve 3

D

DEAN, 168, 179
DECALCIFYING AGENTS—
See Citric Acid and Citrate and Salt Lotion
DEEP BREATHING—
Chart showing auto-inoculations produced by, 418, Chart 31
DENTAL ALVEOLI—
Results of vaccine-therapy in infections of ——, 368
DENYS AND LECLEF, 169 (footnote)
DIABETES (PANCREATIC)—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be tried in connexion with, 435
DIPHTHERIA—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be tried in cases where diphtheria bacilli survive on the throat, 435
DOSAGE OF VACCINES—
See Vaccine-Therapy
DOUGLAS, 113 (footnote 2), 168
DOYEN—*See Malignant Diseases*, 366
DRAINAGE, 348, 466
DRAWING—i.e. the evacuation of lymph or pus from a focus of infection
Suggestion that this should be effected by a solution of a decalcifying agent (citrate of soda) in a hypertonic salt or sugar solution, 280, 355, 464–465
Recommendations with respect to strength of citrate and salt lotions, 464
Employment of lemon juice in brine by slave owners to prevent mortification of wounds, 465
See also Soap and Sugar Plasters, Brine and Lemon Juice, Brine Springs, Expectorants, Bier and Klapp's Method of Cupping, also Carbuncles, Brawny Infiltration and Sinuses, Treatment of
DURHAM, 34, 344

E

ECZEMA—
Treated by staphylococcus vaccine, 203
EMERY PAPER—
Use for preparing slides for film preparations, 151
ENDOCARDITIS, INFECTIVE—
Cases of —— treated by vaccine therapy, 395–403
EUPHORIA—
Associated with positive phase, 271, 367
EVACUATION (OF INFLAMMATORY PRODUCTS)— 62
Rationale of ——, 348, 354–355, 435–465
—— by aspiration, 355, 463
—— by incision, 462, 463
—— by cupping. *See Bier & Klapp's Method*
—— by chemical lymphagogues. *See Drawing*
EXPECTANT TREATMENT—
In reality a method of expecting auto-inoculations, 343
Suggestion that —— is of no avail where auto-inoculations have been arrested, 298
—— often successful in generalized infections, 322
—— uniformly unavailing in purely localized infections, 323

EXPECTORANTS—
Rationale of their use, 279
Decalcifying agents, "Black currant tea" and other general lympha-gogues used as ——, 462,
EXTIRPATION OPERATIONS (in reality operations for extirpation of the obtrusive focus of infection)
Treatment by ——, 280, 320, 348
EYRE, 366

F

FINSEN LIGHT TREATMENT—
Patients refractory to —— shown to have low opsonic indices, 146–148
Suggestion that the treatment acts by determination of blood to the site of infection, 149, 279, 280, 321
FITZGERALD, WHITEMAN AND PIGG STRANGEWAYS—
Rejoinder to assertion of —— that the opsonic technique is inaccurate, 450 and footnote
FIXATEUR, 169
See Incitor Element
FLEMING, 450 and footnote
FOMENTATIONS (HOT), 321
In essence a method of therapeutic immunisation, 349
Auto-inoculations produced by ——, 421, Chart 38; 428, Table, Serial Number 17
FURUNCULOSIS—
Results obtained by vaccine-therapy in ——, 203–224, 248–254
In connexion with vaccine-therapy improvement may be observed within a few hours of inoculation, 367
Appropriate dosage of staphylococcus vaccine for treatment of —— already definitely ascertained, 439
See also Staphylococcus Infections and Abscesses
FORMALIN GELATINE—
Employment for sterilization and covering in of ulcerated surfaces, 265, 285
FREEMAN, 282
See Auto-Inoculations induced by Massage, 343

G

GENERALIZED INFECTIONS—
See Infections
GENGOU, 344
GODLEE—Rejoinder to remarks of —— on inordinate amount of labour involved in determining the opsonic index, 441 (*e*)
GONOCOCCAL RHEUMATISM—
Correlation of pain in —— with variations in opsonic power, 366
Chart showing correlation, 386, Chart 6
Chart showing diagnosis of —— by the auto-inoculation test, 425, Chart 44
GLANDERS—
Chart showing curve of immunisation in guinea pig, obtained in response to inoculation of —— vaccine, 380, Chart 2
Chart shewing curve of immunisation in case human glanders treated by vaccine-therapy, 406–409, Chart 21
GRANULATION-TISSUE
Part played by —— in sinuses, 347, 459
GRUBER, 344
GRÜNBAUM, 344

H

HAEMAGGLUTINATION—
Fallacy of in connexion with opsonic technique, 450 (footnote)
See Opsonic Power, Technique for measuring
HAEMOLYSINS—
Haemolytic effect may be exerted in absence of haemopsonic effect, 195
HAEMOPSONINS—
Haem-opsonic effect exerted in absence of agglutinating and haemolytic effect, 188
HAFFKINE, 202, 234, 338
HAY FEVER—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be tried in connexion with ——, 435
See also Serum-Therapy
HEKTOEN, 366, 367
HORTON SMITH, 3 (footnote 2)
HOUSTON, 451 (footnote)

I

IMMUNISATION, MACHINERY OF—
Responds to inoculation of bacterial vaccines by production of bacteriotropic substances, 257
Services rendered by ——, 256

Immunisation Machinery of, *continued*—
With regard to phagocytosis and respective parts played by leucocytes and blood fluids, *see Phagocytosis*
With regard to leucocytes, *see these*
With regard to antibacterial power of blood fluids, *see Agglutinating Power, Bactericidal Power, Bacteriolytic Power and Opsonic Power*
Immunisation, Physiology of—
(*a*) Machinery of immunisation. *See under this*
(*b*) Sequence of events after inoculation of vaccines. *See Immunising Response, Curve of*
(*c*) Manner in which these events are modified by alteration of dose. *See Vaccine-Therapy, Dosage of Vaccines*
Immunising Effect—
Enumeration of methods that have been employed for gauging the —— of a vaccination, 328
Test inoculations with living cultures undertaken upon vaccinated men or animals. Criticism of value of this, 328–329
Test inoculations undertaken vicariously upon animals treated with serum obtained from vaccinated animal or man. Criticism of value of this, 329–330
Consideration of toxic effects produced by inoculation. Criticism of value of this, 330
Consideration of improvement or aggravation of clinical condition of patient. Criticism of value of this, 330–331
Evaluation of antibacterial power of a sample of patient's blood, and question whether we should aim at a complete or partial evaluation, 330–334
Partial evaluation recommended wherever it can be shown that results of evaluation which is undertaken are correlated with important changes in clinical condition of patient, 334
Author has consistently restricted himself to partial evaluations, made upon this principle, 334–335
See Correlation
Immunising Response, Curve of—
Phases of —— originally followed out by Ehrlich in connexion with inoculation of tetanus toxin, 228, Chart 1
Later work of Salamonsen and Madsen in connexion with inoculation of diphtheria toxin, 229, 230, Chart 2
Similar succession of phases found to occur in connexion with the inoculation of typhoid vaccine, 229–233
Detailed study of —— which supervenes upon inoculation of vaccine, 270–272, 336–338, 378–381
Chronology of phases of —— 338–339
Correlation of these with clinical symptoms, *see Correlation*
Initial Rise, 337, 338 (footnote), 379 (footnote 1)
Negative Phase—
Importance in connexion with prophylactic inoculations undertaken in infected surroundings, 234
Also in connexion with patients inoculated during incubation period, 201
Suggestion that —— may occur after inoculation of small-pox vaccine, 234
Positive Phase—See above under Detailed Study of ——
Maintained High Tide of Immunity—
Comes under observation in prophylactic inoculation and where infection is being extinguished, 272, 367
Secondary Ebb, 379 (footnote 2)
Importance of following out —— where immunisation is to be correctly carried out, 334
Incision—
See Evacuation
Incitor Element—
Experiments which establish that the normal blood fluids incite phagocytosis, 80–81
Does the incitor element in the normal blood fluids act as a "stimulin" on the phagocytes, or does it modify the microbes in such a manner as to render them a ready prey to the phagocytes? Data showing that it acts in the latter manner in the case of staphylococcus, 82–83
Also in the case of the tubercle bacillus, 115–116
Suggestion that this action should be called an "opsonic action," 83
In case of serum obtained after inoculation (or auto-inoculation) in citor power is not destroyed by heating to 60° C., 156–157, 165
This observed first by Neufeld and Rimpau, afterwards confirmed by others, 168
Views of different observers with re-

INCITOR ELEMENT, *continued*—
gard to the nature of the —— in heated serum, and criticism of these, 168–170
Fallacy of spontaneous phagocytosis considered in connexion with demonstration of any ——, 170–171
Conclusion that the —— in heated serum from tubercular patients is an opsonin and not a stimulin, 174–175
INCUBATION PERIOD—
Effect of inoculation of vaccines in —— of typhoid and plague. *See Anti-Typhoid Inoculation and Anti-Plague Inoculation*
INDIAN INK AND CARMINE PARTICLES, Experiments with
See Phagocytosis
INFANTS—
Observations in connexion with their opsonic power at birth and later *See Opsonic Power of Blood*
INFANTILE PARALYSIS—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be resorted to in early stages of ——, 244
INFLAMMATION—
Metchnikoff's theory that —— conveys Anti-Bacterial Elements in the form of phagocytes from the Blood into the Focus of Infection, criticism and further development of same, 454
Variety of forms assumed by ——. *See Serous Effusions, Brawny Infiltration, Abscesses, Granulation-Tissue, Scabs on Infected Surfaces*
INHIBITORY POWER OF BLOOD—
Experiments on —— *See Staphylococcus*
INTRACELLULAR DISINTEGRATION OF BACTERIA—*See Spherulation*
INTESTINAL TRACT AND GALL BLADDER, INFECTIONS OF—
Results of vaccine-therapy in ——, 369

J

JAUNDICE—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be employed in the treatment of ——, 431
See Cholecystitis
JOHNS HOPKINS' UNIVERSITY, SCHOOL OF—
Suggested explanation of assertion of —— that the opsonic technique is inaccurate, 450 and footnote

K

KÄMMERER, 336 (footnote)
KJER PETERSEN—
Probable cause of his ill-success in vaccine-therapy of lupus. *See Lupus* (*Importance of Mixed Infection*)
KOCH, 113, 225, 335
KOCH'S PHENOMENON—
Suggestion that a similar phenomenon comes under observation in connexion with inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine, 222, 224
KRETZ, 24

L

LEISHMAN, 76, 101, 168, 169, 206
LEMON JUICE AND BRINE—
Use of, for preventing mortification of wounds. *See Drawing*
LEUCOCYTES—
(*a*) Phagocytic power.
Do differences in phagocytic power depend on —— or on blood fluids? 87, 89–90, 117, 134–136
Experiments showing comparison between phagocytic power of human —— from different normal sources and also between human and rabbit's ——, 135.
Experiments showing results obtained with sera of different normal persons, tested in each case with the same ——, 135
(*b*) Digestive power of —— and liberation of tryptic ferment from disintegrated ——, 325, 346, 457
Method of demonstrating and measuring digestive power of ——, 457 (footnote)
LISTON, 23, 43
LOCALIZED INFECTION, Foci of—
A lowered bacteriotropic pressure prevails in all ——, 345
Special conditions prevailing in serous effusions, abscesses, sinuses and brawny infiltration. *See these*
LUPUS—
Cases which are refractory to Finsen treatment are characterized by very low tuberculo-opsonic index, 146–148
Results of treatment of —— by vaccine therapy, 267, 268, 284–285
Importance of mixed infection in connexion with vaccine-therapy of ——, 369
See also Tubercular Ulceration

LYMPH—
Determination of —— to focus of infection, 321
LYMPHAGOGUES—
Citric acid and other decalcifying agents, use as general ——, 356
Local —— *See Drawing*

M

MACDONALD, 366
MADSEN AND JÖRGENSEN, 259
MALIGNANT DISEASE, 366
Inoculation against the "micrococcus neoformans" of Doyen, 366, 435
Correlation of pain in —— with variation of "neo-opsonic" power, 366
Diagnosis of —— by induced auto-inoculation, blood being tested with "micrococcus neoformans," 415, Chart 27; 425, Table, Serial Number 27
Doubtful whether inoculations of Doyen's micrococcus have any effect in retarding the growth of the tumour, 435
Differential serum diagnosis between tubercular pleurisy and tubercular peritonitis and malignant disease, 158, 163
MALTA FEVER—
Symptomology of ——, 12
History of bacteriology of —— and causal connexion of the micrococcus Melitensis of Bruce with the disease, 12–15
Work of Bruce and confirmatory work of Hughes, Gipps, and author and Semple, 12–13
Further confirmation of the causal association of the micrococcus melitensis with —— by discovery of agglutination test by author and Smith, 3–9
Final proof of causal association of the micrococcus Melitensis with —— obtained by direct inoculation experiments on man and laboratory infections, 14–15, 72
Further laboratory infections with ——, 72
Geographical distribution of the disease arrived at by use of the agglutination test. Occurrence of the disease in India (at Nowshera, Sabathu, Meean-Meer, Calcutta and in the Deccan), in Hong-kong, Puerto Rico, and Corsica (Ajaccio), 7, 10–11, 23–24
Occurrence of a case in England apart from laboratory infection, 24
MALTA FEVER, *continued*—
Data with regard to date at which appear in the blood, 22
Rate of development of agglutinins in blood stands in relation with the severity of infection, 22
Data with regard to the highest dilutions of serum in which agglutination is obtained in the course of the disease, 18–21 (Table)
Data with regard to persistence of agglutinins in the blood after recovery, 22–23
History of cases and charts showing the evolution of the agglutinins during the course of —— and the correlation between the evolution of agglutinins and the course of the fever, 25–32
Inferences drawn from these as to the significance of agglutinins in —— in man, 33–35
Conformity of the conclusions here arrived at with those arrived at by Durham in the case of —— in guinea pigs, and by Courmont in human typhoid, 34, 35
Distribution of agglutinins in the body in ——, 38, 39
Vaccine-therapy in ——, 295, 395, and Chart 13
See also Vaccine Therapy
Serum-therapy in ——, 235, 237, 312
See also Serum-Therapy and further under Agglutinins and Micrococcus Melitensis
MARMOREK'S ANTI-TUBERCULAR SERUM
Suggestion that it is a tubercle vaccine in disguise, 316 (footnote)
MASSAGE—
Auto-inoculation produced by ——, and chart in which this was first shown by Freeman, 282, Chart 5, 343
Further charts and Table showing auto-inoculation effects produced by ——, 410–415, 426–433
MEAKIN AND WHEELER, 296
MENNES, 169 (footnote)
MENTAL SYMPTOMS—
Correlation between —— and opsonic power of the blood, 367, 443
METCHNIKOFF, 168, 169, 277, 454
MICROCOCCUS MELITENSIS—
Biological characters of ——, 13–14
History of bacteriology of ——, 12–13
Effect of inoculation of —— into monkeys, guinea pigs, rabbits, and man, 13, 14–15
Great infectivity of cultures, 72
Vide also Malta Fever, Agglutinins Bactericidal Power, and Opsonic Power

"Micrococcus Neoformans"—
Inoculation against ——. *See Malignant Disease*
Miculicz' Disease, 442
Middle Ear Infections—
Results obtained by vaccine-therapy in ——, 368
Milk Dietary—
Suggestion that it may by its calcium content arrest auto-inoculations, 298
Mixed Infections—
Importance of recognition of —— and treatment of, 369–370
Mucous Membranes—
General results of vaccine-therapy in infections of——, 368
Musser and Sailer, 23

N

Negative Phase—
See Immunising Response, Curve of
Netter, 302
Neufeld and Rimpau, 168, 169 (footnote 3)
See also under Incitor Elements and Bacteriotropic Substances
Nidus of Lowered Bacteriotropic Pressure—
General discussion of the question in connexion with distribution of agglutinins in infected organism. *See Agglutinins*
Data showing that there is a deficiency of opsonins in the focus of infection, 103–105, 119–120, 161–164
Summary of evidence showing that wherever there is a localized growth of microbes in the system, this growth occurs in a ——, 277

O

Oatmeal Gruel—
Rationale of employment of —— for loosening a cough, 462
Opie, 325, 457
Opsonic Index—
Definition of, 103
—— varies only between very narrow limits in the healthy, 144–145, 151 (footnote 2)
Average —— in lupus patients is subnormal, 146
Effect of the attenuation of the culture on the —— obtained, 402, 447 (footnote)
Opsonic Power of Blood—
General Considerations—
Derivation and signification assigned to the term ——, 83
—— power, a general function of the blood fluids
Demonstrated in connexion with the staphylococcus, 80–87; plague bacillus, 90–91; Shiga's bacillus, 92–93; micrococcus Melitensis, 92; coli bacillus, 93; pneumococcus, 94; anthrax bacillus, 94–95; cholera vibrio, 95–96; typhoid bacillus, 96–97; but not in connexion with the diphtheria bacillus and the xerosis bacillus, 97–98
Effect of heating normal blood fluids to 60° C. Destroys the opsonic power of the normal blood fluids, 80–81, 133
Temperature below 50° C. does not affect the ——, 86
Experiment on effect of temperatures varying between 50° C. and 55° C. on the ——, 134
Effect of cold upon —— of normal blood fluids, 134
Effect of light upon —— of normal blood fluids, 134
Heating to 60° C. does not destroy the —— of blood fluids derived from an inoculated or auto-inoculated tubercular patient 157–158
Effect of light upon such serum, 178
Effect of dilution on —— of normal blood fluids. Appreciable reduction of —— not effected until a considerable dilution is arrived at, 82
—— disappears on standing. Data with regard to this, 85
—— diminished when digested with typhoid bacteria, 86
Fallacy which may lurk in the absorption method here in question, 86 (footnote)
Effect of daboia poison on ——, 86
Is —— present in infant at birth with regard to staphylococcus, 105–106; with regard to tubercle, 121–122
—— may be almost entirely absent in older infants, 332
In connexion with Bacterial Infections generally—
Lowered —— found in connexion with localized infections, 276
See Staphylococcus and Tubercular Infections
Fluctuating ——found in connexion with generalized infections, 275
See Tubercular Infections

*

Opsonic Power of Blood, *continued*—
Measurement of the Opsonic Power—
(*a*) Use of —— for diagnostic purposes; principles and illustrative cases. *See Tubercular Infections, Serum diagnosis of*
(*b*) Use of —— as a guide in immunisation proceedings
See under Immunising Effect; and Immunisation, Curve of, and Vaccine-Therapy
Grounds for taking the —— as a routine guide, 335
Technique for measuring the Opsonic Power of the blood fluids with washed leucocytes—
Original form of ——, 77
Data with regard to the accuracy of the method, 78 *et seq.*
Question as to whether results affected by calibre of capillary tubes, 78–79
Question of the effect of citrate of soda on the phagocytic activity of the leucocytes, 79
Data with regard to the length of time during which leucocytes maintain their phagocytic activity, 79
Technique employed for ascertaining whether the changes associated with immunisation are changes in the leucocytes or changes in the blood fluids, 89
General discussion of the accuracy of the opsonic technique, 326, 360, 361, 445–448
Fallacies which may interfere with the accuracy of ——, 334 (footnote 1)
Difficulties introduced into the technique for determination of the tuberculo-opsonic index by agglutination of the tubercle bacillus, 114
Method of circumventing the difficulty, 114 and 114 (footnote)
Fleming's synopsis of control experiments made to test accuracy of opsonic technique, 450
Enumeration of the more important advances which have been made by the assistance of the opsonic technique, 451–452
No clinical observation can be accepted as equivalent to a measurement of the ——, 375–376
No other blood examination can at present be substituted for measurement of the, 376
Opsonins (hypothetical substances in serum which incite phagocytosis by action on bacteria)—
See Opsonic Power and Absorption Experiments
Opsonins, *continued*—
Advantage and convenience of employing the term ——, 169 (footnote 3)
—— which are destroyed at 60° C. when free in the blood fluids, are not destroyed by that temperature after entering into combination with the bacteria, 82, 83, 137, 138
—— combine with bacteria even after these have been heated to a temperature of 115° C. or over, 84, 136–7
—— Combine with spores, 164 (footnote)
Rate at which —— are extracted from the serum at 0° and 37° C. by bacterial suspensions, 139
Questions with regard to constitution and mode of action of——, 139–140
Are the —— found in the heated immune serum identical with those found in unheated normal blood fluids? 175–178
Experiment on effect of light upon "immune serum," 178
Experiments on effect of heat on diluted and undiluted "immune serum," 176–178, 179
Specificity of Opsonins—
Tested by absorption experiments on normal blood (*a*) with staphylococcus aureus and bacterium pyocyaneum, and (*b*) with staphylococcus aureus and tubercle bacillus, 180–185
(For fallacy incident to such experiments, *see Absorption Experiments*)
Tested by following out on immunisation curves the effect of alternate inoculations of staphylococcus and tubercle vaccine, 183–185

P

Pain, 366
Correlation of —— with variations of opsonic power in gonococcal rheumatism, malignant disease and tubercular cystitis
See under Correlation
Pancreatitis—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy may be useful in treatment of ——, 435
Paper—
Sterilization of sand verified by aid of white ——, mixed in with it, 280 (footnote 1)

PARONYNCHIA—
Results of vaccine-therapy in ——, 248
PASSIVE CONGESTION—
See Bier's Method of Passive Congestion
PHAGOCYTOSIS—
Makes default in abscesses and in pus generally, 346, 458
Do differences in the phagocytic power of the blood depend on differences in the phagocytic potency of the white blood corpuscles or in the opsonic power of the blood? 87, 89–90, 117, 134-136
See also Immunisation, Machinery of
Experiments showing results obtained with sera of different normal persons tested in each case with the same leucocytes, 135
Experiments in which leucocytes and blood fluids of normal persons are separately and reciprocally compared with those of patients immunised against staphylococcus, 87, 90
Similar experiments in connexion with tubercular patients, 117, 136
—— on Indian ink and carmine particles, 84, 171 (footnote)
Distinction between "spontaneous" and "induced," —— 170–171 and footnote 324
Spontaneous —— may be suppressed by use of concentrated salt solutions, 171–174
Charts showing effect of various concentrations of salt in the phagocytic mixture, 171–174
Technique for measuring the Phagocytic Power of the Blood—
Leishman's original ——, 76
Modification of this technique by addition of a volume of citrate of soda to the mixture of blood and bacteria, 70–71, procedure No. 1
Employment of method thus modified in comparing phagocytic power of normal persons with that of persons suffering from staphylococcus infections, 102
This method re-discovered by others, 336 (footnote)
Theoretical grounds for preferring data furnished by the determination of the opsonic power to data furnished by the method above mentioned, 336
See also Opsonic Power
PHTHISIS—
Conditions which obtain in pyrexial phthisis, 296–297
PHTHISIS, *continued*—
Spontaneous auto-inoculations occur in ——, 296–297
Induced auto-inoculations occur in ——, 296–297
Suggestions for arrest of auto-inoculations in ——, 297
Suggested programme of treatment in, 298–299
Chart showing auto-inoculation effects in very first beginnings of ——, 381–386, Chart 5
Charts showing auto-inoculation effects in advanced ——, 387–388, Charts 7 and 8
PHYSIOLOGY OF IMMUNISATION—
See Immunisation
PIGG STRANGEWAYS—
See under Fitzgerald
PIRQUET AND SCHICK, 301
PLAGUE AND PLAGUE BACILLUS—
Opsonic power of normal blood with respect to ——, 90–91
Characteristic involution forms obtained in interior of phagocytes, 91
Absence of any bactericidal power of the blood with respect to ——, 61–65
See Bactericidal Power
Laboratory infections with ——, 72
Agglutination of ——. *See Agglutinins*
See also Anti-Plague Inoculation and Serum-Therapy
PNEUMONIA—
Correlation of clinical events in —— with variations of opsonic power, 366
POSITIVE PHASE—
See Immunising Response (Curve of)
PROTECTIVE SUBSTANCES—
See Bacteriotropic Substances
PUS—
Phagocytic power makes default in ——, 346, 458, 466
Burrowing properties of —— explained, 346
Characters of —— in rabbits, 456

R

RADIANT HEAT, 279
RADIO-THERAPY, 279
READING ALOUD AND TALKING—
May induce auto-inoculations, 346, 426, Table, Serial Number 28
REST IN BED—
Suggestion that it may serve to arrest auto-inoculations, 297
See Auto-Inoculations

Rest in Bed, *continued*—
Question whether —— is of any further value when auto-inoculations have been arrested, 298
Rimpau—
See Neufeld
Rubefacients, 279, 354
Ruppel, 123, footnote

S

Sabouraud—
Dictum of —— with respect to inefficacy of antiseptics 319
Salivary Glands, 368
Infections of —— treated by vaccine-therapy, 268
See also Miculicz Disease
Sandbags—
Employment of hot——for determining a flow of blood to seat of infection, 280
Method of sterilizing the sand employed, 280 (footnote)
Savtschenko, 168, 187–188
Scabs on Infected Surfaces—
Conditions which obtain where we have ——, 455
Septicaemia—
Charts showing results vaccine-therapy in (*a*) streptococcic ——, 395–400; (*b*) staphylococcic——, 401–403
See also Bacterial Infections (*Generalized Infections*)
Serous Effusions, 345, 456
In connexion with micro-organisms which are not killed by blood fluids, —— constitute an ineffective form of inflammatory reaction, 456
See also Tapping, Tuberculous Peritonitis, and Nidus of Lowered Bacteriotropic Pressure
Serous Haemorrhage—
Associated with diminished coagulability and diminished viscidity of the blood, 301
Author's suggestion that —— should be treated by exhibition of calcium salts, 302
Serum Diagnosis (an "inferential" as distinguished from a "direct diagnostic" method)
Aims at detection of changes occurring in blood as result of auto-inoculation, 344
In absence of spontaneous auto-inoculation diagnosis can be arrived at by resort to artificially induced auto-inoculation, 425, Chart 44, and 426–433 Table.
Serum Diagnosis, *continued*—
See Auto-inoculation Agglutinins, Opsonins, Thermostable Opsonins, and Absorption of Complement
Sensibilitrice, Substance, 169
Serum Disease—
Nature and pathology of ——, 301
Treatment of ——, 302
Serum-Therapy—
Explanation of the failure of —— in treatment of generalized bacterial infections as distinguished from intoxications, 301
—— has been applied in generalized bacterial infections without preliminary trial in localized infections, 321
Unjustified faith of profession in innocuousness and in utility of —— 302
Assumptions underlying this faith, 303
Suggestion that a serum may not contain protective substances in sufficient concentration to be of clinical value, 305–306
Suggestion that the sera employed may contain unneutralized bacterial poisons, 306
Responsibility for the administration of such sera, 307
Method by which presence of bacterial elements in serum can and ought to be tested before issue, 307-308, 309
Evidence pointing to presence of toxic elements in sera issued for administration in treatment of plague, streptococcus infections, Malta fever, typhoid fever, tuberculosis, hay fever, etc., 235, 237, 308–309
Presence of these would be indicated by preliminary exacerbation and subsequent improvement in patient's symptoms, 309
Suggestion that serum-therapy may in certain instances be vaccine-therapy in disguise, 309–316
This suggestion supported by observations in connexion with specimens of anti-Malta fever serum, 312; anti-streptococcic serum, 312; Chantemesse's anti-typhoid serum, 312–316; and Marmorek's anti-tubercular serum, 316 (footnote)
Further criticisms of ——, 321, 322, 348
Sinuses—
Conditions which prevail respectively in discharging sinuses and dry sinuses, 347, 459
Method of increasing the lymph flow

SINUSES, *continued*—
into the sinus. *See Citrate and Salt Lotion*
Results of treatment of ——, 369
SMALL-POX, Vaccination against—
Suggestion that a negative phase and a temporary increase of susceptibility may possibly occur in period immediately following ——, 234
Suggestions for reducing this risk, 235
Suggestion that inoculations of staphylococcus vaccine might be usefully employed both prophylactically and therapeutically for sepsis associated with ——, 224
Suggestion that with might usefully be employed in animals which serve for preparation of vaccine lymph, 224
SNAKE VENOM—
Effect of daboia poison is to reduce phagocytosis by impairing the opsonic power, 86
Suggestion that reduced resistance to septic infection which follows upon viperine bites may be referable to this, 86
SOAP AND SUGAR PLASTERS—
Rationale of use of ——, 279, 465
See also Drawing
SPERMATOZOA—
Effect of inoculation of guinea pig with ——, 239
SPES PHTHISICA—
Suggested explanation of, 367
See also Correlation
SPHERULATION—
Question as to whether —— in the case of the typhoid bacillus and cholera vibrio occurs inside or outside the phagocyte, 95–97, Plate
SPIRILLUM OBERMEYERI—
Lamb's observations with regard to survival of —— during apyrexic intervals in a nidus of lowered bacteriotropic pressure in the spleen, 104, 277
SPONTANEOUS CURE—
Fallacy of ——, 359–360
SPONTANEOUS PHAGOCYTOSIS (Fallacy of)—
See Incitor Element and Opsonic Power, Technique for Measurement of
SPORES—
Acted upon like ordinary bacteria by opsonins, 164 (footnote)
Anthrax —— form ideal objects for enumeration in opsonic estimations, 164 (footnote)
STAPHYLOCOCCUS INFECTIONS—
Observations on the staphylo-opsonic index in localized —— 203–224 passim; 103 (Table)
Observations on the distribution of the Staphylo-opsonins in the infected organism, 103–105
Observations on agglutinating power exerted on the staphylococcus by the serum of normal, infected, and immunised persons, 204, 205, 208
Observations on inhibitory power exerted on growth of staphylococcus by serum of normal, infected, and immunised persons, 204, 205 (Table), 207, 208 (Table)
Observations showing absence of bactericidal power in serum of normal, infected, and immunised persons, 55–60 (Table), 208–209 (Table)
Observations on phagocytic power exerted by blood of normal, infected, and immunised persons, 210–224 passim
Table showing comparison between staphylo-opsonic power of normal blood and that of infected persons, 103
Growth of staphylococcus in organism takes place in nidus of lowered bacteriotropic 'pressure, 103–105, 277
Prophylactic Inoculations against ——
Suggested employment of staphylococcus vaccines in connexion with compound fractures and septic operations where access of microbes to wound cannot be prevented, 223
Suggested employment in connexion with small-pox vaccination and preparation of small-pox vaccine, 224
Vaccine-Therapy of ——
First series of cases in which —— was employed, and tables and charts showing effects of inoculation of staphylococcus vaccine, 203–224 passim
Second series of cases in which —— was employed, 248–254
Further charts showing effects of such inoculation, 106–111
Doses applicable in ordinary cases of local staphylococcic infections already definitely ascertained, 439
STIMULIN—
Question as to whether the element in the normal blood fluids which incites phagocytosis is a —— 84–85

Stimulin, *continued*—
Question as to whether the incitor element in heated blood fluids from an inoculated or auto-inoculated animal is a ——, 168, 169
Streptococcic Lymphangitis—
Dosage of streptococcic vaccine for treatment of —— already definitely ascertained, 439
Styptic Powder—
See Calcium Salts
Surgical Operations—
Charts showing auto-inoculations produced by ——, 419–420, Charts 34–37
Sycosis—
Results obtained by vaccine-therapy in ——, 246–250
See Staphylococcus Infections

T

Tapping—
Rationale of in bacterial infections, of serous cavities 345
Thermostable Opsonins (of Immunised Bloods)—
Question as to whether —— are identical with opsonins of normal bloods. *See Opsonins*
—— utilized for purposes of diagnosis, 344
Therapeutic Immunisation—
Exposition of the two leading principles in therapeutic immunisation (*a*) *and* (*b*) *below*), 347
Rationale of these, 349–350
Which of these is to be followed when they conflict ? 350
Comparison of the policy embodied in the above principles with the policies embodied in other accepted therapeutic methods, 347–349
(*a*) Inoculation of vaccines. *See Vaccine-Therapy*
Comparative value of treatment by auto-inoculations and vaccines, 350–352
(*b*) Conveyance of anti-bacterial agencies of the blood into the focus of infection, 354–356
See Evacuation, Fomentations, Rubefacients, Bier's Method of Passive Congestion, Bier and Klapp's Method of Cupping, and Drawing
Toothache—
Suggestion that vaccine-therapy might be employed in treatment of ——, 431
Toxi-therapeutics—
Koch's tuberculin inoculations originally in intention a system of ——
T. R.—
See Tuberculin.
Tryptic Power—
Demonstration of and measurement of —— of leucocytes. *See Leucocytes*
Tubercle Bacillus and Tubercular Infections generally—
Tubercular patients do not differ sensibly from normal persons with respect to their tuberculo-agglutinating power, 118
Patients affected with strictly localized tuberculosis have a low opsonic index, 118 (Table), 152 (Table)
Interpretation of this, 119, 153, 276
Distribution of tuberculo-opsonins in infected and normal organism, 119–120
Observations showing fluctuating tuberculo-opsonic power in tubercular infections when associated with constitutional disturbance, 152–153
Interpretation of this, 154
See also Auto-inoculations
Serum-diagnosis of ——
Inferences that can be drawn from measurement of opsonic power of blood, illustrative cases, 154–156
Inferences that can be drawn from measurement of opsonic power of heated blood fluids, Tables and illustrative cases, 156–159. Further Tables, 165–166.
Inferences that can be drawn from measurement of the opsonic indices after inoculation of tubercle vaccine, 159–161
Inferences that can be drawn from comparison of opsonic power of circulating blood with opsonic power of fluids derived from focus of infection, with illustrative cases, 161–164
Facts which have been ascertained with regard to appropriate dosage of tubercle vaccine (Koch's tubercle powder) for localized infections taken generally, 439
Summary of results of vaccine-therapy in localized tubercular infections, 293–294
Tubercular Infections of Genito-Urinary System—
Results of vaccine-therapy in ——, 264, 292, 293, 368
Correlation of pain and frequency of micturition with variations in opsonic power, 366

Tuberculär Infection of Glands—
Results of vaccine-therapy in ——, 265–267, 289–290
Tuberculär Peritonitis—
Effect of tapping in ——, 345
Result obtained by vaccine-therapy in ——, 263
Low opsonic power of the ascitic fluid in ——, 120
Tuberculär Ulceration—
Results of vaccine-therapy in ——, 265, 285–289
Tuberculin—
Old Tuberculin (the inspissated filtrate from tubercle cultures) in reality a tubercle vaccine, though not originally employed as such, 123
See Tuberculin Treatment
New Tuberculin—
See T.R.
T.R., a suspension of Koch's tubercle powder made by triturating tubercle bacilli and extracting with water. Misunderstanding with respect to amount of tubercle powder contained in this, and manner in which this arose, 123 (footnote)
Employed by author after heating to 60° C. for one hour, 123, 260
Bacillary Emulsion, a suspension of Koch's tubercle powder after washing in physiological salt solution
Tuberculin Test and Tuberculin Reaction—
Inflammatory reaction similar to that observed in connexion with tuberculin test, may occur with staphylococcus inoculations, 216 (Table), 224
Measurements of tuberculo-opsonic index in connexion with tuberculin test, 159–161
Tuberculin reaction observed in connexion with administration of anti-tubercular sera to tubercular patients, 309
Tuberculin Treatment, Koch's original—
Distinction between procedure in vaccine-therapy ——, and that followed in——, 225
—— introduced as a method of toxi-therapeutics, 243
Subsequent change of policy and employment of tuberculin by Koch as an anti-tubercle vaccine, 248
Disastrous results of —— probably due to a cumulative negative phase, 243
Results of —— in a case afterwards
Tuberculin Treatment, *continued*—
treated by vaccine-therapy, 266, 286
Typhoid Bacillus—
Agglutinating power of blood upon ——. *See Agglutinating Power*
Bactericidal power of blood fluids upon ——. *See Bactericidal Power*
Typhoid Fever—
Spots shown to be niduses of lowered bacteriotropic pressure, 43–44
Suggested that inoculation of anti-typhoid vaccine might be tried in the treatment of typhoid carriers, 435

U

Urticaria and Articular Pains—
See Serum Disease
Author's suggestion that —— should be treated by administration of calcium salts. Confirmatory work of Netter, 302
Urwick, 151 (footnote), 297

V

Vaillard, 41 (footnote)
Vaccines—
Definition of ——, 257
Composition of ——
Must be affiliated to the microbe against which proection is sought, 326
Pasteur's view that living vaccines were required for effective immunisation, 259
Discussion of this, 259, 327
Cultures sterilized by heating to 60° C. constitute effective ——, 260
A priori objections which have been urged against such vaccines, 327
A priori assumption that cause of unsatisfactory immunising effect is always to be sought in a defect in the vaccine, 326
Superiority of anyone variety of vaccine over another has not yet been established, 327–328
Method of preparing staphylococcus vaccine employed in original experiments, 204, 207 (footnote)
Method of preparation employed in later experiments, 106, 107
Vaccines may be standardized by enumeration of microbes, 107
Or in case of tubercle vaccines by weighing bacterial substance, 122, 123

Vaccines, *continued*—
Satisfactory results obtained from use of stock ——, 375
See Tuberculin
Vaccine Therapy—
See also Vaccines
A priori objections which might be raised to —— in localized diseases, 200, 238–239
Preliminary discussion of principles of dosage of vaccines, 258
Traditional and erroneous conceptions with regard to dosage of vaccines, 274
Principles followed by author in regulating dosage of vaccines, 274, 275, 340
Discussion of expediency of increasing dose at each successive inoculation, 339
Effect of *over-dosage*, 337
Danger that machinery of immunisation may be overtaxed by excessive dosage, 274
Over-dosage to be feared chiefly in first inoculations, 338 (footnote)
Policy to be pursued in case overdosage, 275, 338 (footnote)
Can treatment by vaccines be advantageously employed in generalized infections? Author's original opinion that this would not be justifiable? 238
Reconsideration of this opinion and theoretical justification of such employment, 296, 310, 353
Suggestion that effect of bacterial products may be different according as they are introduced directly into the blood or as they come into application directly upon the tissues, 310, 353.
Practical results obtained by —— in generalized infections, 392–409, Charts 13–21
General discussion as to how results of —— ought to be evidenced and adjudicated upon, 356–357
Synopsis of results obtained by vaccine-therapy, 367–371
Can good results always be guaranteed? 245, 359, 376
Can vaccine-therapy be successfully carried out without periodical measurement of the antibacterial power of the blood? 436–442
Criticism of the suggestion that clinical observation and the experience already gained by blood examination will suffice for guidance in vaccine-therapy, 437–447
For certain types of bacterial infection appropriate dosage has been ascertained, 439
And in cases of superficial localized infections which have an acute evolution clinical symptoms may serve as a guide in vaccine-therapy, 441–442
Further cases in which clinical symptoms may serve as a guide, 441–443
Fallacies in connexion with interpretation of clinical symptoms, 443–445
Cases in which clinical symptoms cannot serve as a guide, 445, 446, 447
Discussion of most advantageous site for inoculation, 340, 341
Inoculation during incubation period, 202, 338
Inherent limitations of ——, 372–373
Unreasonable demands made from ——, 358–359, 371–372
What bacteriological training required for proper conduct of ——? 373–374
What amount of bacteriological labour required? 375
What are the cases which give largest return of advantage to the patient for the labour expended in ——? 376
Veitch, 336 (footnote)

W

Wasserman, 344
Whiteman—
See Fitzgerald
Widal, 35
Agglutination test in typhoid fever, 344

Butler & Tanner, The Selwood Printing Works, Frome, and London.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

THE PRINCIPLES OF MICROSCOPY

BEING AN INTRODUCTION TO WORK WITH THE MICROSCOPE.

By Sir A. E. WRIGHT, M.D., F.R.S., D.Sc. Dublin,

With many Illustrations and Coloured Plates. Royal 8vo. 21s. net.

THE general scope of this important work is *the technique of the microscope* to the study of which the author has devoted many years.

Part I. treats of the development of the object or stage-picture, *i.e.*, of the development upon the stage of the microscope of that pattern of radiant points which constitutes the original of the magnified image formed upon the retina by the microscope.

Part II. treats of the development of the magnified microscopic image, and the instrumental adjustments which are required for the satisfactory development of that image.

The text of the book goes hand in hand with experiment. The illustrations and experiments are provided to enable the reader to place himself in relation with the facts.

CONTENTS.

General Considerations with regard to the Object Picture. Development of the Object Picture in the case where Objects are disposed upon a Single Optical Plane. Development of the Object Picture in the case where the Elements, which are viewed by the Unaided Eye, or, as the case may be, by the Microscope, are piled one upon the other. On the principles which govern the Staining Operations which are undertaken for the purpose of developing a Microscopic Colour-Picture. On the restrictions which hamper the Microscopist in the matter of the Selection and Development of the Stage-Picture; on the Defects and Sources of Fallacy which attach to the Microscopic Outline-Picture and Microscopic Colour-Picture respectively: and on the limitations which are imposed upon Microscopic achievement by the inadequate representation of the object in the Stage-Picture. Image Formation by the Simple Aperture. On Image Formation by the Lens-Armed Aperture. On the Defects which are introduced into the Image by Spherical and Chromatic Aberration in the Lens. On the Defects introduced into the Image by Diffraction occurring in the Aperture of the Lens. Image Formation in the case where the Object is viewed by the Unaided Eye. Image Formation in the case where an Object is viewed through a Simple Microscope. Image Formation in the case where the Object is viewed through the Compound Microscope. On the Optical Elements of the Microscope considered separately. On the Instrumental Adjustments required for the achievement of Dark Ground Illumination and Stereoscopic Illumination in particular in connexion with Wide-Angled High-Power Objectives. On the Adjustments required for the achievement of a Critical Image. On the Question as to whether there are Definite Limits imposed upon Microscopic Vision and Resolution; and on the Real Nature of the Limitations encountered in connexion with the employment of High Magnifications.

"This book is beautifully printed and its numerous figures really illustrate the text. In a word it is the clearest and most authoritative exposition of the microscope and its accessories, and the interpretation of microscopic appearances to be found in any single work. It is sincerely hoped that it will speedily find its way into the hands of teachers and advanced students."—*Science* (America).

ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE & CO. LTD.
10, ORANGE STREET, LONDON, W.C.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

A SHORT TREATISE ON ANTI-TYPHOID INOCULATION

AN EXPOSITION OF THE PRINCIPLES OF THE METHOD AND A SUMMARY OF THE PRACTICAL RESULTS ACHIEVED BY THE APPLICATION OF THESE PRINCIPLES.

By Sir A. E. WRIGHT, M.D., F.R.S.,

Director of the Department for Therapeutic Immunisation, St. Mary's Hospital, London, W.; Late Professor of Pathology, Army Medical School, Netley

Demy 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d. net.*

"The general principles of immunisation are first of all briefly discussed, their application to the particular problem of producing immunity to typhoid fever and the technique and clinical effects of anti-typhoid inoculation are dealt with, and lastly there is a chapter devoted to the practical results of anti-typhoid inoculation as disclosed in the Statistical records. An appendix gives a detailed description with illustrations of the procedure employed for preparing and standardising anti-typhoid vaccine. The book is a very valuable contribution to medicine, is clearly written and easily followed."—*Edinburgh Medical Journal.*

"Deals with the whole subject of immunity, with the more special subject of immunity to typhoid fever, and with the technique of anti-typhoid inoculation . . . this volume will enable the author's methods to be followed."—*Athenæum.*

"The appearance of a short treatise on that particular method of anti-typhoid inoculation for which Dr. A. E. Wright is responsible is welcome."—*Lancet.*

"Professor Wright has done well to collect into a single volume the various papers with amplifications, he has from time to time contributed to various journals on the subject of anti-typhoid vaccination."—*Nature.*

"This admirable work of Dr. Wright. The book deserves the attention and study of all medical men and sanitarians."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"The descriptions throughout the book are clear, and it can be recommended as giving a very good summary of the present condition of the problem."—*Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin.*

"To Dr. Wright the practical introduction of inoculation as a prophylaxis against enteric fever is entirely due. In this book we have a clear account of a most excellent piece of research."—*Guy's Hospital Gazette.*

ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE & CO. LTD.
10, ORANGE STREET, LONDON, W.C.

QR
181
W7

AUG 4 1975

RAYMOND H. FOGLER LIBRARY
DATE DUE

BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO
RECALL AFTER TWO WEEKS

QR181.W7 ORO
Studies on immunisation and their applic
3 7550 00098484 0